





**AYURVEDIC CLINICAL
DIAGNOSIS
PART I**

MĀDHAVA—NIDĀNA

PART I (Ch. 1-32)

**G.D. SINGHAL
S.N. TRIPATHI
K.R. SHARMA**

**माधव-निदान
भाग १ (अध्यायाः १-३२)**

**THE FIVE BASIC CRITERIA
OF DIAGNOSIS AND PROGNOSIS**

**पञ्चनिदान एवं
साध्यासाध्यता**

- | | |
|-----------------------|---------------------|
| 1. AETIOPATHOGENESIS | १. हेतु-सम्प्राप्ति |
| 2. PRODROMAL FEATURES | २. पूर्वरूप |
| 3. CLINICAL FEATURES | ३. लक्षण |
| 4. THERAPEUTIC TRIALS | ४. उपशय/अनुपशय |
| 5. PROGNOSIS | ५. साध्यासाध्यता |

12 THINGS THIS BOOK WILL DO FOR YOU

1. Help you DISCOVER AYURVEDA.
2. Give you AN INSTANT QUOTATION.
3. Help you CHANGE HISTORY OF MEDICINE.
4. Begin/end your LECTURE WITH A QUOTATION.
5. Begin PAPER/THESIS WITH A QUOTATION.
6. An IDEAL ECONOMIC GIFT.
7. RAISE INDIA'S NAME.
8. Realise AUVRVEDIC DIAGNOSIS MADE EASY.
9. RECOGNISE MĀDHAVA historically/medically.
10. Give you NEW RESEARCH IDEAS.
11. USE AYURVEDA CLINICALLY.
12. REMOVE ALLERGY FROM AYURVEDA.

HOW TO GET AN INSTANT REFERENCE

1. Comprehensive TABLE OF CONTENTS provides an instant reference and page no.
2. GISTS in the INTRODUCTION of the book provide further help.
3. SUMMARY at the beginning of the chapter gives the verse/stanza number.

AYURVEDIC CLINICAL DIAGNOSIS

Part I

Based on Chapters 1-32, Mādhava-Nidāna
(Original Sanskrit Text, Authentic Medical Interpretation
in English & Hindi, Notes and Research Aspects)

by

G.D. SINGHAL

M.B.B.S., (Gen. Surg.), F.R.C.S. (Ed.)
Vaidya Kirti (Hon. Causa, Sri Lanka)
Professor & Head of Paediatric Surgery
Ex-Head, Deptt. of Surgery and
Senior Surgeon, Children Hospital

&

S.N. TRIPATHI

B.A., A.B.M.S. (B.H.U.)
H.P.A. (Jamnagar)
Ph. D. (Ay.) B.H.U.
Dean, Faculty of Ayurveda,
Professor & Head,
Dept. of Kaya Chikitsa
Senior Physician, S.S. Hospital
and Superintendent,
Ayurvedic Pharmacy

K.R. SHARMA

A.B.M.S., D.Ay. M.,
Ph. D. (B.H.U.)
F.R.A.S. (London)
F.I.A.P. (U.S.A.),
Reader, Dept. of
Shalya Shalakya, and
Ayurvedic Surgeon
S.S. Hospital

INSTITUTE OF MEDICAL SCIENCES
BANARAS HINDU UNIVERSITY
VARANASI, INDIA.

FOREWORD

DR. JAN ERIK SIGDELL
STUDIENZENTRUM für
AYURVEDA
STUDY CENTRE FOR
AYURVEDA
BASEL, SWITZERLAND.

PREFACE

VAIDYA S.K. MISHRA
ADVISER (AYURVEDA &
SIDDHA), MINISTRY OF
HEALTH & FAMILY WEL-
FARE, GOVT. OF INDIA.
NEW DELHI, INDIA,

COPY RIGHT

(C) 1985 by Dr. G.D. Singhal

All rights reserved.

PUBLISHED BY

Singhal Publications

C/o Dr. G.D. Singhal

17, Medical Enclave

Banaras Hindu University

Varanasi-221005, India.

Permanent address

C/o Sh. R.S. Agarwal

14, Sammelan Marg

Allahabad-211003, India.

ALSO AVAILABLE

Through all booksellers of the world

Printers : Sh. Nirmal Kumar

Sarasvati Mudranalaya

Varanasi.

U.S. LIBRARY OF CONGRESS CARD NO.

PUBLISHER'S NOTE

We congratulate you on your acquiring this excellent and unique treasure book on the Ayurvedic Clinical Diagnosis.

Arrangements for sending Free Information, Free Sample Copies, Gift copies and copies for Book Review are available. For these and for all your enquiries please write to :

Dr. G.D. Singhal

Singhal Publications

17, Medical Enclave

Banaras Hindu University

Varanasi-221005, India.

While every effort is made to keep prices low, it is sometimes necessary to increase them at short notice. Singhal Publications reserve the right to show new retail prices on covers which may differ from those previously advertised in the text or elsewhere.

समर्पण



स्व. डा. सर पद्मपत जी सिंहानिया

(१९०५-१९७९)

की पुण्य स्मृति में

आधुनिक उन्नतिशील औद्योगिक भारत के निर्माता, युगद्रष्टा,
उद्योगपति, समाजसेवी, लोकोपकारी और चिन्तक एवं
भारतीय संविधान सभा के सदस्य

(चित्र श्रीमती अरूणा डालमियां के सौजन्य से प्राप्त)

EDITORIAL BOARD

Patrons

Dr. Iqbal Narain

Dr. K. N. Udupa

Chief Editor

Dr. G. D. Singhal

Editors

Dr. S. N. Tripathi

Dr. K. R. Sharma

Associate Editors

Dr. B. N. Upadhyaya

Dr. Km. P. V. Tewari

Dr. K. P. Shukla

Dr. L. M. Singh

Dr. Mrs. S. D. Singhal

Dr. K. C. Chuneekar

कर्मण्येवाधिकारस्ते मा कलेषु कदाचन ।

मा कर्मफलहेतुर्भूर्मा ते सङ्गोऽस्त्वकर्मणि ॥

श्रीमद्भगवद् गीता

Thy right is to work only, but never to its fruits; let not the fruit of action be thy motive, nor thy attachment be to inaction.

Śrī Mad Bhagvad Gītā

FOREWORD

It is a great pleasure and a valuable stimulation for those interested in the important science of Āyurveda, that another Sanskrit work of basic importance becomes available in an English translation, so as to also reach a growing group in Western countries.

After elaborating a most valuable translation of the Suśruta Samhitā under the title of "Ancient Indian Surgery Series", published by Dr. G. D. Singhal, the same team is now bringing a translation of the Mādhavanidāna, which is a work of fundamental importance to ayurvedic diagnostics. The Bṛhatrayi is well known to persons in the West, devoting interest and work to Āyurveda, since the Caraka Samhitā has become available in a few translations¹⁻⁵ (of which, regrettably, not all have been finished), as has also the Suśruta Samhitā⁶⁻¹⁰ especially in the series mentioned above. The Aṣṭāṅgahṛdaya Samhitā, however, has been fully translated only into German¹¹—translations into English^{12, 13} are so far not complete. The Aṣṭāṅgasamgraha¹⁴ has not yet been fully translated. The Laghutrayi has, except for partial translations of the Mādhavanidāna^{15, 16} and a small part of the Bhāvaprakāśa¹⁷, not been accessible to Westerners without a profound knowledge of Sanskrit. The only translation of the Mādhavanidāna into English is incomplete, but constitutes a very important work by the Dutch physician and sanskritologist Dr. C. J. Meulenbeld, an internationally known authority on Āyurveda. English translations of the Śārṅgadhara Samhitā and the Bhāvaprakāśa are still lacking, and are much wished for. It would also be valuable, if the existing parts of the Bhela (Bheḍa) Samhitā¹⁸⁻²⁰ were to be translated, and if the narrow selection of other translated ancient scriptures on Āyurveda were to be completed and widened. We are, after all, dealing with a medical philosophy of fundamental importance.

In the interest of Western readers, I add a list of translations of ancient scriptures on Āyurveda into Western language.

ages (excluding a few articles in journals, which only bring extracts, except for works mentioned above). Where no other language is mentioned, the translation is into English.

I wish to congratulate Dr. G. D. Singhal and his team for another monumental work and an important effort for bringing Āyurveda closer to readers not well-versed in Sanskrit, for thus aiding to spread the knowledge of this important science beyond the borders of India.

21 Nov. 1984

Dr. J. E. Sigdell

Study Center for Ayurveda
Gellertstrasse 72
CH-4052 Basel
Switzerland

Ancient scriptures on Āyurveda, translated into western languages*

1. Caraka Saṁhitā, Sūtrasthāna 1-3, translated by M. L. Sircar, Calcutta Journal of Medicine Vol. III, 1870, pp. 449-480 and Vol. 10, 1871, pp. 33-41 and 155-162.
2. Caraka Saṁhitā, private publication by A. Chandra Kaviratna and P. Sharma, Calcutta, in 68 fasciculi 1890-1925.
3. Caraka Saṁhitā, Shri Gulabkunverba Ayurvedic Society, Jamnagar (Gujarat), 1949. (Translations into English, Hindi and Gujarati.)
4. Caraka Saṁhitā, translated by R. K. Sharma and Bhagwan Dash, Chowkhamba Sanskrit Series office, Varanasi, Vol. 1 : 1976, Vol. 2 : 1977, Unfinished.
5. Caraka Saṁhitā, translated by P. V. Sharma, Chowkhamba Orientalia, Varanasi, Vol. 1 : 1981. To be continued.
6. Suśruta Saṁhitā, translated into Latin by F. Hessler, Enke (publisher). Erlangen (Germany), Vol. 1 : 1844, Vol. 2 : 1847, Vol. 3 : 1850.

*Where no other language is given, the translation is into English.

7. Suśruta Saṁhitā, Sūtrasthāna 1-46. translated by U. Ch. Dutt and A. Chattopadhyaya, Asiatic Society of Bengal, Calcutta, fasc. 1-2 : 1883, fasc. 3 : 1891. Unfinished.
8. Suśruta Saṁhitā, Sūtrasthāna 1-54, translated by A. F. R. Hoernle, Asiatic Society of Bengal, Calcutta, 1897. Unfinished.
9. Suśruta Saṁhitā, translated and published by K. L. Bhishagratna, Calcutta. Vol. 1 : 1907, Vol. 2 : 1911, Vol. 3 : 1916. Reprint : Chowkhamba Sanskrit Series Office, Varanasi, 1963.
10. Suśruta Saṁhitā, published by G. D. Singhal, Singhal Publications, B.H.U., Varanasi, Vol. 1 : 1981, Vol. 2 : 1982, Vol. 3 : 1972, Vol. 4 : 1973, Vol. 5 : 1982, Vol. 6 : 1979, Vols. 7-8 : 1976, Vol. 9 : 1980, Vols. 10-12 in preparation. ("Ancient Indian Surgery Series".)
11. Aṣṭāṅgahrdaya Saṁhitā of Vāgbhaṭa, translated in German by L. Hilgenberg and W. Kirfel, E. J. Brill (publisher), Leiden (The Netherlands), 1941.
12. Aṣṭāṅgahrdaya Saṁhitā of Vāgbhaṭa, Chapters 1-5, translated by C. Vogel, Franz Steiner (publisher), Wiesbaden (W. Germany), 1965.
13. Aṣṭāṅgahrdaya Saṁhitā of Vāgbhaṭa, a few chapters only, *Bulletin of the Department of History of Medicine*, Osmania Medical College, Hyderabad, Vol. 2, 1964, pp. 67-76 and 141-158.
14. Aṣṭāṅgasamgraha of Vāgbhaṭa, Sūtrasthāna 22, 23 and 38, *Bulletin of the Department of History of Medicine*, Osmania Medical College, Hyderabad. Vol. 1, 1963, pp. 199-218, and Vol. 2., 1964, pp. 1-13.
15. Mādhavanidāna, Chapters 1-5, translated into Italian by M. Vallauri, *Giornale della Società Asiatica Italiana*, Florence (Italy), Vol. 26, 1915, pp. 253-290.
16. Mādhavanidāna, Chapters 1-10, translated and commented by C. J. Meulenbeld, E. J. Brill (publisher), Leiden (The Netherlands), 1974.

17. Bhāvaprakāśa of Bhāvamīśra, only sections on ophthalmology, translated into German by E. Esser, Part 1 : *Studien zur Geschichte der Medizin*, Separatum, Barth (publisher), Leipzig, Vol. 19, 1930, Part 2 : *Sudhoffs Archiv für Geschichte der Medizin*, Vol. 25, 1932, pp. 183-213; addenda in *Klinische Monatsblätter für Augenheilkunde*, Vol. 86, 1931, pp. 245-246, and Vol. 90, 1933, pp. 85-87.
18. Bhela (Bheḍa) Saṁhitā, Sūtrasthāna 16, translated into French, in : J. Filliozat: "*La doctrine classique de la médecine indienne*". Imprimerie Nationale, Paris (France), 1949, pp. 170-173 (English translation : "*The classical doctrine of Indian medicine*", N. Delhi, 1964).
19. Bhela (Bheḍa) Saṁhitā, Sūtrasthāna 16, translated into German by R. F. G. Muller, *Wiener Zeitschrift für die Kunde Süd- und Ostasiens*, Vienna. Vol. 6, 1962, pp. 29-39.
20. Bhela (Bheḍa) Saṁhitā, various chapters, *Bulletin of the Department of History of Medicine*, Osmania Medical College, Hyderabad. Vol. 1, 1963, pp. 131-155.
21. Hārīta Saṁhitā, Prathamasthānam, translated into French by A. Raison, French Institute of Indology, Pondicherry, 1974.
22. Yogaśataka, in : Bhagwan Dash : "*Tibetan medicine with special reference to Yoga Śataka*", Library of Tibetan Works and Archives, Dharamsala, 1976.
23. Yogaśataka, translated into German by H. H. M. Schmidt, thesis at the Rheinische Friedrich-Wilhelm University, Bonn (W. Germany), 1978 ("*Das Yogaśata*").
24. Yogaśataka, translated into French by J. Filliozat, French Institute of Indology, Pondicherry, 1979.
25. Āyurveda Saukhyam of Toḍarānanda, translated by Bhagwan Dash and L. Kashyap, Concept Publishing Co., N. Delhi, Vol. 1-2 : 1980, to be continued.

6. Siddhasāra of Ravigupta, translated by R. E. Emmerich, Franz Steiner (publisher), Wiesbaden (W. Germany), Vol. 1 (Sanskrit text only) : 1982, Vol. 2 : (Tibetan text and English translation) : 1983.
27. The Bower Manuscript, including the Nāvanītaka, preliminary translation by A. F. R. Hoernle, *Journal of the Asiatic Society of Bengal*, Vol. 60, 1891, pp. 174-195.
28. The Bower Manuscript including the Nāvanītaka, final translation by A. F. R. Hoernle, Office of the Superintendent of Government Printing, Calcutta, 1893-1909 (Series "Archeological Survey of India" New Imperial Series, Vol. 22).
29. Rasārnavakalpa, translated by Mira Roy and B. V. Subbarayappa, Indian National Science Academy, N. Delhi, 1976.
30. "An eight hundred year old book of Indian medicine" translated by E. Sharpe, Luzac & Co., London (England), 1937. Reprint : Asian Educational Services, N. Delhi, 1979.

Note : Some Indian sources mention a "German translation of the Suśruta Saṁhitā by Vullurs". Searches have only resulted in locating a brief extract on obstetrics, translated by J. H. Vullers in *Janus*, Breslau, Vol. 1, 1846, pp. 225-256. Apparently, no more extensive translation into German has been made.

(J. E. SIGDELL)

VICE-CHANCELLOR



Banaras Hindu University

Varanasi-221005.

February 2, 1985.

MESSAGE

I am happy to know that Dr. G. D. Singhal and his team are bringing out a series of books dealing with Ancient Indian Surgery based on Suśruta Saṁhitā. I am further happy to note that they have now taken up another important Ayurvedic treatise entitled 'Mādhava-Nidāna' for purposes of authentic translation in English using medical terminology. It is also a good idea to publish Hindi translation of some of these classical texts. By all these efforts Dr. G. D. Singhal and his team are fulfilling the dream of Mahamana which was to acquaint both India and the world with the rich wealth of knowledge in all fields including Ayurveda which is part and parcel of our cultural heritage and also to bring about a synthesis between the traditional and modern systems of medicine.

The more efforts of this type are made, the greater will be the impact particularly on our youth who would thereby inculcate a sense of patriotism and a stake in nation-building so that India of today proves to be worthy of her great inheritance of culture and knowledge.

I, therefore wish the effort all success.

(Iqbal Narain)

**WHY BANARAS HINDU UNIVERSITY IS THE BEST
PLACE WHERE THIS WORK COULD HAVE BEEN
DONE BY THE ONE TEAM QUALIFIED TO DO SO**

Do you know of any other place in the world where the highest Ayurvedic talents work so intimately with the latest and the best in modern medicine ?

The Institute of Medical Sciences at the Banaras Hindu University, Varanasi with its two wings—Faculty of Indian Medicine and Faculty of (Modern) Medicine—proudly claims this unique privilege.

The excellent team of the Editorial Board, with its knowledge of Ayurveda, Sanskrit, modern Medicine and English, has worked for over ten years with a sense of dedication, perseverance and service to the nation to give you this unparalleled work 'Ayurvedic Clinical Diagnosis' based on Mādhava-Nidāna in two parts in a lucid yet scientific and research oriented medical English with original text in Sanskrit and its Hindi translation side by side.

The same team having worked for over 23 years with several more members from Varanasi and Oxford has already given you the now famous Ancient Indian Surgery series based on Suśruta Saṁhitā, which is changing the History of Medicine and calling Suśruta of India as the Father of Surgery.

PATRON'S MESSAGE

I am very happy to send this brief message of good wishes to Dr. G. D. Singhal, Professor & Head of Paed. Surgery, Dr. S. N. Tripathi, Prof. & Head of Kaya Chikitsa and Dr. K. R. Sharma, Reader, Deptt. of Shalya Shalakya, all of the Institute of Medical Sciences, Banaras Hindu University, Varanasi who are bringing out Ch. 1-32 of Mādhava-Nidāna as Ayurvedic Clinical Diagnosis-Part I.

I have known Drs. Singhal, Tripathi and Sharma and their colleagues in the Editorial Board of this book for more than two decades now. They are all sincere, dedicated and missionary people interested in uplifting Ayurveda and bringing it in front of the world in the modern style.

Mādhava-Nidāna is one of the classical treatises in Ayurveda. It is a simple, easy to read and understand and a very practical and useful book on diagnosis for the students and teachers of Ayurveda. Now that its modern version Ayurvedic Clinical Diagnosis is being made available by the scholars of the famous Banaras Hindu University its utility has increased to reach the modern doctors, clinicians, research workers and historians of medicine.

The Ayurvedic Clinical Diagnosis contains the original Sanskrit text of Mādhava-Nidāna with its authentic English translation using modern medical terminology, comments, notes, suggested research problems, etc. It also has the Hindi translation which makes it much more useful.

A much bigger Editorial Board has worked for the last 23 years under the Chief Editorship of Prof. Singhal at the IMS, BHU and has given to the world the now famous Ancient Indian Surgery series of books based on Suśruta Saṁhitā, nine volumes of which are printed and available and five more, I understand, are under preparation/in press.

The same team is also working in the same style on yet another great Ayurvedic treatise Śārāṅghara Saṁhitā to bring it out in three volumes.

Dr. G. D. Singhal and his team are thus giving to the scholars and doctors of the world twenty volumes on Ayurveda, in a modern style as yet unknown in this field. This all Dr. Singhal has done in his spare time which is very creditable. He has reached to the highest level in his own profession of Paediatric Surgery having been elected President of the Indian Association of Paediatric Surgeons this year for all of which I congratulate him and wish him and his team all success in their mission.

Varanasi
4th Feb. 1985

K. N. Udupa
Emeritus Professor,
Banaras Hindu University

CONTENTS	Page No.
12 Things this book will do for you	ii
How to get any instant reference	ii
Publisher's note	iv
Dedication (Dr. Sir Padam Pat Singhania)	v
Editorial Board	vi
Foreword (Dr. Jan Erik Sigdell)	vii
Patron's message (Dr. Iqbal Narain)	xii
Why B.H.U. is the best place where this work could have been done	xiii
Patron's Message (Dr. K.N. Udupa)	xiv
Contents	xvi
Chapter headings and their main contents	xvii
Contributor's to this volume	xxxvi
Chief Editor's Note (Dr. G. D. Singhal)	xxxviii
Acknowledgement	xlii
Co-Author's Note (Dr. S.N. Tripathi)	xlvi
Co-Author's Note (Dr. K.R. Sharma)	xlvi
Abbreviations	li
References	lv
Key to transliteration	lvi
Preface (Dr. S. K. Mishra)	lvii
Introduction	lxi
Text	1-558

TEXT CONTENTS

(CHAPTER HEADINGS AND THEIR MAIN CONTENTS)

CHAPTERS	Page	अध्याय	पृष्ठ
1. The Five Aspects of Diagnosis	1	पञ्च निदान लक्षण	1
SUMMARY	3	SRP	17
Actiology	7	निदान	8
Prodromal features	8	पूर्वरूप	9
Clinical features	9	रूप	9
Therapeutic trial	10	उपशय और अनुपशय	10
Pathogenesis	11	सम्प्राप्ति	12
2. The Diagnosis of Fever	19	ज्वर निदान	19
SUMMARY	21	SRP	61
Mythological origin	23	उत्पत्ति	24
General features	24	सामान्य लक्षण	24
Prodromal features	25	पूर्व रूप	26
Vātaja fever	26	वात ज्वर	26
Pittaja fever	26	पित्त ज्वर	27
Kaphaja fever	27	कफ ज्वर	28
Vāta-pittaja fever	28	वात-पित्तज ज्वर	29
Vāta-kaphaja fever	29	वात-कफज ज्वर	29
Kapha-pittaja fever	29	कफ-पित्तज ज्वर	30
Sānnipātika (tridoṣaja) fever	30	सान्निपातिक ज्वर	31
Abhinyāsa fever (? meningo- encephalitis)	33	अभिन्यास ज्वर	34
Fever due to exogenous causes	34	आगन्तुक ज्वर	35
Fever due to poisons	35	विषजन्य ज्वर	35
Fever due to herbal drugs (? Hay fever)	35	ओषधिगन्धज ज्वर	36
Fever due to sex craving	36	कामज्वर	36
Fever due to psychic trauma	36	मनोविकारज ज्वर	36
Intermittent fever (? Malaria)	37	विषम ज्वर	38

<i>Vāta- balāsaka fever</i>	42	वात बलासक ज्वर	42
<i>Pralepaka fever</i>	42	प्रलेपक ज्वर	42
<i>Dhātugata fever</i>	45	धातुगत ज्वर	45
Seasonal fever	49	कालानुसार प्राकृत वैकृत ज्वर	50
Internal fever	51	अन्तर्बैग ज्वर	52
Fever with an external pre- dominance	52	बहिर्बैग ज्वर	53
<i>Āma fever</i>	53	आम ज्वर	53
<i>Pacyamāna fever</i>	54	पच्यमान ज्वर	54
<i>Nirāma fever</i>	54	निराम ज्वर	55
Prognosis	55	साध्यासाध्यता	55
Incurable types of fever	55	असाध्य ज्वर	55
Fatal complications	57	घातक उपद्रव	57
Features on subsidence	59	ज्वर मोक्ष के पूर्वरूप	60
Features on cure	60	ज्वर मुक्ति	60
3. The Diagnosis of Diarrhoea	63	अतिसार निदान	63
SUMMARY 65	SRP 80		
Aetiology	67	हेतु	68
Pathogenesis	68	सम्प्राप्ति	69
Types	68	भेद	69
Prodromal features	69	पूर्वरूप	69
<i>Vātika diarrhoea</i>	70	वातिक अतिसार	70
<i>Paṭtika diarrhoea</i>	70	पैतिक अतिसार	70
<i>Kaphaja diarrhoea</i>	70	श्लेष्मिक अतिसार	71
<i>Tridoṣaja diarrhoea</i>	71	सान्निपातिक अतिसार	7 —
Psychogenic diarrhoea	71	शोकज अतिसार	72
<i>Āmaja diarrhoea</i>	72	आमातिसार	73
<i>Āma versus pakva faeces</i>	73	आम/पक्व मल भेद	73
Incurable diarrhoea	74	असाध्य अतिसार	75
Blood diarrhoea	76	रक्तातिसार	77
Dysentery	77	प्रवाहिका	77

Signs of cure	78	अतिसार मुक्त के लक्षण	79
Fever with diarrhoea	79	ज्वरातिसार	79
4. The Diagnosis of <i>Grahaṇi</i> Disease	81	ग्रहणी रोग निदान	81
SUMMARY	83	SRP	95
Aetiopathogenesis	85	हेतु एवं सम्प्राप्ति	86
Premonitory features	86	पूर्वरूप	86
<i>Vātika grahaṇi</i> disease	87	वातिक ग्रहणी रोग	88
<i>Paittika grahaṇi</i> disease	89	पैत्तिक ग्रहणी रोग	89
<i>Kaphaja grahaṇi</i> disease	90	कफज ग्रहणी रोग	91
<i>Tridoṣaja grahaṇi</i> disease	91	त्रिदोषज ग्रहणी रोग	92
<i>Saṅgraha grahaṇi</i> disease (sprue syndrome)	92	संग्रह ग्रहणी रोग	92
<i>Ghaṭīyantra grahaṇi</i> disease	93	घटीयन्त्र ग्रहणी रोग	93
<i>Sāma / nirāma</i> concept	93	साम/निराम लक्षण	93
Prognosis	94	साध्यासाध्यता	94
5. The Diagnosis of Piles	97	अर्श निदान	97
SUMMARY	99	SRP	119
I. The Anal Piles		1. गुदा अर्श	
Types	101	भेद	101
Origin	101	उत्पत्ति	102
Aetiology	102	हेतु	102
Clinical features	105	लक्षण	105
Prodromal features	113	पूर्वरूप	113
Prognosis	114	साध्यासाध्यता	115
II. Other 'Piles'	117	2. अन्य अर्श	117
Warts	117	चर्मकील	118
6. The Diagnosis of Dyspepsia, Indigestion, Gastro-enteritis, <i>Alasaka</i> (? Mechanical Intestinal obstruction) and <i>Vilambikā</i> (? Paralytic Ileus)	121	अग्निमान्द्य, अजीर्ण, विसूचिका, अलसक और विलम्बिका निदान	121

SUMMARY 123	SRP 140	
I Dyspepsia	127	अग्निमान्द्य 127
II. Indigestion	129	अजीर्ण 130
III. Gastroenteritis	134	विसृचिका 134
IV. Mechanical Intestinal Obstruction	135	अलसक 135
V. Paralytic Ileus	136	विलम्बिका 136
<i>Āma doṣa</i>	136	आम दोष 137
7. The Diagnosis of Worm Infestations	141	कृमि निदान 141
SUMMARY 143	SRP 152	
Classifications	145	वर्गीकरण 145
External worms	145	बाह्य कृमि 146
Internal worms	145	आन्तरिक कृमि 147
<i>Kaphaja</i> worms	148	कफज कृमि 149
<i>Raktaja</i> (vascular) worms	149	रक्तज कृमि 150
<i>Purīṣaja</i> (faecal) worms	150	पुरीषज कृमि 151
8. The Diagnosis of Anaemia, Jaundice, <i>Kumbha kāmālā</i> and <i>Halīmaka</i>	153	पाण्डुरोग, कामला, कुम्भकामला एवं हलीमक निदान 153
SUMMARY 155	SRP 170	
I. Anaemia	157	पाण्डु रोग 157
<i>Mṛjja</i> anaemia	160	मृज्ज पाण्डु 160
Prognosis	162	साध्यासाध्यता 162
II. Jaundice	164	कामला 165
Jaundice with ascites	166	कुम्भ कामला 166
Hepatic failure	167	असाध्य कुम्भ कामला 168
<i>Halīmaka</i>	168	हलीमक 168
<i>Pānakī</i>	168	पानकी 169

9. The Diagnosis of the

Haemorrhagic Disorders	171	रक्तपित् निदान	171
SUMMARY	173	SRP	184
Actio-pathogenesis	175	हेतु एवं सम्प्राप्ति	176
Prodromal features	176	पूर्वरूप	176
General clinical features	176	सामान्य लक्षण	177
Prognosis	179, 181	साध्यासाध्यता	179, 182
Complications	180	उपद्रव	181

10. The Diagnosis of *Rajayakṣmā*,

<i>Kṣata</i> and <i>Kṣīṇa</i>	185	राजयक्ष्मा, क्षत एवं क्षीण निदान	185
(Tuberculosis and other emaciating diseases)			

SUMMARY 187 SRP 205

Tuberculosis	189	राजयक्ष्मा	189
Non-tubercular consumption or emaciation	196	शोष	196
<i>Urahkṣata</i> (Chronic suppurative lung disease)	200	उरः क्षत	201
<i>Kṣata</i> versus <i>Kṣīṇa</i>	203	क्षत क्षीण भेद	203

11. The Diagnosis of Cough

	207	कास निदान	207
--	-----	-----------	-----

SUMMARY 209 SRP 219

Actiopathogenesis	211	हेतु एवं सम्प्राप्ति	211
Classification	212	भेद	212
Premonitory symptoms	212	पूर्वरूप	213
Clinical features	213	लक्षण	213
<i>Kṣataja</i> cough	215	क्षतज कास	215
Consumptive cough	216	क्षयज कास	216
Prognosis	217	साध्यासाध्यता	218

12. The Diagnosis of Hiccough

and Dyspnoea	221	हिकका श्वास निदान	221
SUMMARY	223	SRP	244
Aetiology	225	हेतु	226
I. Hiccough	226	हिकका	226
Definition	226	परिभाषा	226
Types	227	भेद	227
Premonitory symptoms	227	सामान्य पूर्वरूप	227
Dietatic hiccough	227	अन्नजा हिकका	228
Twin hiccough	228	यमला हिकका	228
Mild hiccough	229	क्षुद्रा हिकका	229
Severe hiccough	229	गम्भीरा हिकका	229
Serious hiccough	230	महाहिकका	230
Prognosis	230	साध्यासाध्यता	231
II. Dyspnoea	232	श्वास रोग	232
Types	232	भेद	232
Doṣika predominance	232	दोषों का अनुबन्ध	233
Prodromal features	233	पूर्वरूप	233
Pathogenesis	233	सम्प्राप्ति	234
Mahāśvāsa (Stridor breathing)	234	महाश्वास	235
Urdhvaśvāsa (Rapid and shallow respiration)	235	ऊर्ध्वश्वास	235
Chinnaśvāsa (Interrupted breathing)	236	छिन्न श्वास	237
Tamakaśvāsa (Bronchial asthma)	237	तमक श्वास	239
Pratamaka śvāsa (Acute bronchitis and broncho-pneumonia)	240	प्रतमक श्वास	240
Saintamaka śvāsa (? Cor pulmonale)	241	संतमक श्वास	241

<i>Kṣudra śvāsa</i> (Dyspnoea on effort)	241	क्षुद्र श्वास	242
Prognosis of dyspnoea	242	श्वास की साध्यासाध्यता	243
Dreadfulness of Hiccough and Dyspnoea	243	हिकका एवं श्वास की भयंकरता	243
13. The Diagnosis of Hoarseness of Voice			
SUMMARY	247	SRP	254
Aetiopathogenesis	249	हेतु एवं सम्प्राप्ति	249
Types	249	भेद	250
<i>Vātika</i> type	250	वातिक स्वर भेद	250
<i>Pittaja</i> type	250	पैत्तिक स्वर भेद	251
<i>Kaphaja</i> type	251	क्लेश्मिक स्वर भेद	251
<i>Tridoṣaja</i> type	251	सान्निपातिक स्वर भेद	252
<i>Kṣaya</i> (Tubercular) type	252	क्षयज स्वर भेद	252
<i>Medaja</i> type	252	मेदज स्वरभेद	252
Prognosis	253	साध्यासाध्यता	253
14. The Diagnosis of Anorexia			
SUMMARY	257	SRP	264
Aetiological factors	259	हेतु	259
<i>Vātika</i> anorexia	260	वातिक अरोचक	360
<i>Paiṭṭika</i> anorexia	260	पैत्तिक अरोचक	260
<i>Kaphaja</i> anorexia	260	कफज अरोचक	261
Psychic anorexia	261	मानसिक अरोचक	261
<i>Tridoṣaja</i> anorexia	261	त्रिदोषज अरोचक	262
General clinical features	262	सामान्य लक्षण	262
15. The Diagnosis of Emesis			
SUMMARY	267	SRP	278
Types	269	भेद	269
Aetiopathogenesis	270	हेतु एवं सम्प्राप्ति	270

Premonitory symptoms	271	पूर्वरूप	271
<i>Vātaja</i> emesis	271	वातज छदि	272
<i>Pittaja</i> emesis	272	पित्तज छदि	272
<i>Kaphaja</i> emesis	273	कफज छदि	273
<i>Sannipātaja</i> emesis	273	सान्निपातिक छदि	274
Fatal vomiting	274	अरिष्ट लक्षण	274
<i>Āgantuja</i> (psychosensory) emesis	275	आगन्तुज छदि	275
<i>Kṛmija</i> emesis	275	कृमिज छदि	276
Incurable vomiting	276	असाध्य छदि	276
Complications	276	उपद्रव	277
16. The Diagnosis of Thirst	279	तृष्णा निदान	279
SUMMARY	281	SRP	290
Actiopathogenesis	283	निदान एवं सम्प्राप्ति	283
Types	284	भेद	284
<i>Vātaja</i> thirst	284	वातजन्य तृष्णा	284
<i>Pittaja</i> thirst	285	पित्तजन्य तृष्णा	285
<i>Kaphaja</i> thirst	285	कफजन्य तृष्णा	285
<i>Kṣataja</i> thirst	286	क्षतजन्य तृष्णा	286
<i>Kṣayaja</i> thirst	286	क्षयजन्य तृष्णा	287
<i>Āmaja</i> thirst	287	आमजन्य तृष्णा	287
<i>Bhaktaja</i> thirst	287	भक्तोद्भव तृष्णा	288
<i>Upasargaja</i> thirst	288	उपसर्गज तृष्णा	288
Complications	288	उपद्रव	289
Incurable thirst	289	असाध्यता	289
17. The Diagnosis of Fainting,			
Vertigo, Sleep, Drowsiness		मूर्छा, भ्रम, निद्रा, तन्द्रा	
and Coma	291	एवं संन्यास निदान	291
SUMMARY	293	SRP	307
Fainting	295	मूर्छा	296
Vertigo	304	भ्रम	304
Drowsiness	305	तन्द्रा	305
Coma	305	संन्यास	306

18. The Diagnosis of Excessive Drinking, Hangover, Alcoholic Gastritis and Chronic Alcoholism	पानात्यय, परमद, पानाजीर्ण एवं पानविभ्रम निदान	309
SUMMARY		311 SRP 324
<i>Madātyaya</i> (Alcoholism)	मदात्यय	313
<i>Pānātyaya</i> (Acute intoxication)	पानात्यय	319 320
<i>Paramada</i> (Hangover)	परमद	321 321
<i>Pānājirṇa</i> (Alcoholic gastritis)	पानाजीर्ण	321 321
<i>Pānavibhrama</i> (Chronic alcoholism)	पानविभ्रम	322 322
19. The Diagnosis of the Burning Sensation	दाह निदान	325 325
SUMMARY		327 SRP 335
Burning sensation due to drinking	मद्यज दाह	329 329
<i>Raktaja</i> burning sensation	रक्तज दाह	330 330
<i>Pittaja</i> burning sensation	पित्तज दाह	330 331
Burning sensation due to suppression of thirst	तृष्णा निरोधज दाह	331 331
Burning sensation due to blood in the body cavities	रक्तपूर्ण कोष्ठज दाह	331 332
Burning sensation due to tissue depletion	धातुक्षयज दाह	332 332
Burning sensation of traumatic origin	क्षतज दाह	332 333
Burning sensation due to injury to the vital organs	मर्माभिघातज दाह	333 333
Prognosis	साध्यासाध्यता	333 334

20. The Diagnosis of	उन्माद निदान	337
Psychoses	337	
SUMMARY 339	SRP 360	
Definition	341 निरुक्ति	341
Types	341 भेद	342
Psychoneurosis (Mada)	342 मद	312
Aetiological factors	342 कारण	343
Pathogenesis	343 सम्प्राप्ति	343
Clinical features	343 लक्षण	344
Vātika insanity	344 वातिक उन्माद	345
Paittika insanity	345 पैत्तिक उन्माद	346
Kaphaja insanity	346 कफज उन्माद	347
Tridoṣaja psychoses	347 सान्निपातिक उन्माद	347
Psychoses due to mental trauma	348 मानसिक आघातजन्य उन्माद	348
Psychoses due to poisoning	348 विषजन्य उन्माद	349
Fatal signs	349 असाध्य लक्षण	349
Bhūtonmāda	349 भूतोन्माद	350
Psychoses due to divine visitation	350 देवजुष्टोन्माद	350
Psychoses due to visitation by demons	351 देवशत्रु (दानव) जुष्टोन्माद	351
Psychoses due to Gandharva Grahas	351 गन्धर्व ग्रह जुष्टोन्माद	352
Psychoses due to the Yakṣa Grahas	352 यक्ष ग्रहाविष्ट उन्माद	352
Psychoses due to the Bhujāṅga Grahas	353 सर्पग्रहजुष्ट उन्माद	354
Psychoses due to the Rākṣasa Grahas	354 राक्षस ग्रह जुष्ट उन्माद	354

Psychoses due to the			
<i>Piśāca</i> Grahās	354	पिशाच ग्रह जुष्ट उन्माद	355
Incurable features	355	असाध्य उन्माद	355
Astrological time of			
invasion by the Grahās	356	देवादि ग्रहों के आक्रमण का काल	356
Entry of the			
organisms (Grahās)	356	ग्रहों का प्रवेश	356
21. The Diagnosis of		अपस्मार निदान	361
Epilepsy	361		
SUMMARY	363	SRP	371
Actiopathogenesis	365	हेतु एवं सम्प्राप्ति	365
Prodromal features	366	पूर्वरूप	366
<i>Vātika</i> epilepsy	366	वातिक अपस्मार	367
<i>Paittika</i> epilepsy	367	पैत्तिक अपस्मार	367
<i>Kaphaja</i> epilepsy	367	कफज अपस्मार	368
<i>Sannipātika</i> epilepsy	368	सन्निपातिक अपस्मार	368
Periodicity	369	प्रकोप काल	369
22. The Diagnosis of <i>Vātika</i> Diseases	373	वातव्याधि निदान	373
SUMMARY	375	SRP	418
Classification of the <i>Vātika</i> diseases	418		
1. Diseases due to vitiated <i>Vāta</i> afflicting various		organs/regions	418
2. Diseases due to <i>vāta</i> afflicting various tissues ...	...		419
3. Diseases due to <i>vāta</i> envelopment by other humours			419
4. Paralytic & spastic conditions ...	...		419
5. Paralytic conditions with or without loss of sensation			420
6. Hyperaesthesia ...	...		420
7. Speech disorders ...	...		420
8. Tympanitis and obstructive conditions ...	...		420
9. Specific joint disorders ...	...		420
10. Pain and colics ...	...		421
11. Unmentioned diseases ...	...		421

Aetiopathogenesis	377	निदान एवं सम्प्राप्ति	378
Prodromal features	378	पूर्वरूप	379
Clinical features	379	लक्षण	380
Vāyu afflicting the different tissues/organs/regions			
Vāyu afflicting the <i>koṣṭha</i>	380	कोष्ठाश्रित वायु	381
Vāyu afflicting the entire body			
(? Peripheral neuritis)	381	सर्वाङ्गगत वायु	381
Vāyu afflicting the ano-rectal region	381	गुद प्रदेश मे कुपित वायु	382
Vāyu afflicting the stomach	382	आमाशय गत कुपित वायु	382
Vāyu afflicting the colon	383	पक्वाशयगत कुपित वायु	383
Vāyu afflicting the sense organs	383	इन्द्रियगत वात	383
Vāyu afflicting the skin	384	त्वचागत वात	384
Vāyu afflicting the blood	384	रक्तगत वायु	385
Vāyu afflicting the muscles and fatty tissue	385	मांस एवं मेदगत वायु	385
Vāyu afflicting the bones and bone marrow	385	अस्थि एवं मज्जागत वायु	386
Vāyu afflicting the semen/ovum	386	शुक्र/शोणितगत वायु	386
Vāyu afflicting the vessels (sirās)	387	सिरागत वायु	387
Vāyu afflicting the ligaments	387	स्नायुगत वायु	387
Vāyu afflicting the joints (? osteoarthritis)	388	सन्धिगत वायु	388
Vāyu envelopment by other humours	388	अन्य दोषों से आवृत वात	388
Paralytic, spastic conditions			
Akṣepaka (Convulsive disorders)	391	आक्षेपक	391
Apatantraka (? Hysterical fits)	391	अपतन्त्रक	392
Āpaṣānaka	392	अपतानक	393
Dandāpaṣānaka	393	दण्डापतानक	393

<i>Dhanuṣṭambha</i>	394	धनुःस्तम्भ	394
<i>Abhyantarāyāma</i>	394	अभ्यन्तरायाम	395
<i>Bāhyāyāma</i>	395	बाह्यायाम	395
<i>Ākṣepaka</i>	396	आक्षेपक	396
Prognosis of <i>apatānaka</i>	396	अपतानक की साध्यासाध्यता	396
<i>Pakṣavadha</i> (Hemiplegia)	396	पक्षवध	397
<i>Ardita</i> (Facial paralysis)	399	अर्दित	399
<i>Hanugraha</i> (Dislocation jaw)	402	हनुग्रह	403
<i>Manyāstambha</i> (Torticollis)	403	मन्यास्तम्भ	403
<i>Jihvāstambha</i> (Tongue paralysis)	403	जिह्वास्तम्भ	404
<i>Sirāgraha</i>	404	सिराग्रह	404
<i>Gṛdhrasī</i> (Sciatica)	404	गृध्रसी	405
<i>Viśvācī</i> (Brachial neuralgia)	406	विश्वाची	406
<i>Kroṣṭukaśīrṣa</i> (Synovitis of the knee joint)	406	क्रोष्टुक शीर्षं	407
<i>Khañja and Paṅgu</i> (Lame and Cripple)	407	खञ्ज एवं पङ्गु	407
<i>Kaśāyakhāñja</i> (Khesari palsy, Lathyrism)	407	कलायखञ्ज	408
<i>Vātakṇṭaka</i> (Ankle sprain)	408	वातकण्टक	408
<i>Pādadāha</i> (Burning feet syndrome)	408	पाददाह	409
<i>Pādaharṣa</i> (Peripheral neuritis of the feet)	409	पादहर्ष	409
<i>Aṁśaśoṣa</i> (Shoulder atrophy)	409	अंशशोष	410
<i>Avabāhuka</i> (? Frozen shoulder)	410	अवबाहुक	410
<i>Mūka, Minmina and Gadgada</i> (Speech disorders)	410	मूक, मिन्मिन एवं गदगद	410
<i>Tūnī</i> (Bladder pain)	411	तूनी	411
<i>Pratitūnī</i> (Proctalgia)	411	प्रतितूनी	411

<i>Ādhmāna</i> (Tympanitis, meteorism)	411	आध्मान	412
<i>Pratyādhmāna</i> (? Acute gastric dilatation)	412	प्रत्याध्मान	412
<i>Vātāsthilā</i> (Benign prostatic enlargement)	412	वाताष्ठीला	413
<i>Pratyasthīlā</i> (Malignant prostatic enlargement)	413	प्रत्याष्ठीला	413
Urinary reflux	413	वातविकृतिजन्य मूत्रावरोध	414
<i>Kampavāta/Vepathu</i> (? Parkinsonism)	414	कम्पवात/वेपथु	414
<i>Khallī</i> (Cramps/ ?Tetany)	414	खल्ली	415
<i>Ūrdhvavāta</i> (eructation)	415	ऊर्ध्ववात	415
Unmentioned <i>vāta</i> diseases	415	अवर्णित वात रोग	415
Prognosis	416	साध्यासाध्यता	416
Complications	416	उपद्रव	417
Importance of normal <i>vāyu</i>	417	प्रकृतिस्थ वायु के लक्षण	417
23. The Diagnosis of the <i>Vāta-rakta</i> (Gout)	423	वातरक्त निदान	423
SUMMARY	425	SRP	437
Aetiology	427	हेतु	428
Pathogenesis	428	सम्प्राप्ति	429
Prodromal features	429	पूर्वरूप	430
<i>Vāta-rakta</i>			
with <i>Vāta</i> predominance	430	वातोल्वण वातरक्त	431
with <i>Rakta</i> predominance	431	रक्तोल्वण वातरक्त	431
with <i>Pitta</i> predominance	432	पित्तजन्य वातरक्त	432
with <i>Kapha</i> predominance	432	कफजन्य, द्वन्दज	
		तथा त्रिदोषज वातरक्त	432
Spread	433	प्रसार	433
Prognosis	433	साध्यासाध्यता	433

24. The Diagnosis of the

<i>Urustambha</i>	439	उरुस्तम्भ निदान	439
SUMMARY	441	SRP	448
Aetiopathogenesis	443	निदान एवं सम्प्राप्ति	444
Clinical features	444	लक्षण	444
Prodromal features	445	पूर्वरूप	445
Disease aggravation	445	अनुपशय	446
Prognosis	446	साध्यासाध्यता	447

25. The Diagnosis of *Āmavāta*

(Rheumatoid arthritis, etc.)	449	आमवात निदान	449
SUMMARY	451	SRP	458
Aetiopathogenesis	453	निदान एवं सम्प्राप्ति	454
Clinical features	455	लक्षण	455
Exacerbation	455	प्रवृद्ध आमवात	456
<i>Doṣika</i> predominance	456	दोषानुबन्ध	457
Prognosis	457	साध्यासाध्यता	457

26. Diagnosis of the Abdominal colics,

Duodenal ulcer and		शूल, परिणाम शूल एवं	
Gastric ulcer	459	अग्निद्रव शूल	459
SUMMARY	461	SRP	474
Types of colics (<i>Śūlas</i>)	463	भेद	463
<i>Vātika</i> colic	464	वातिक शूल	465
<i>Paṭtika śūla</i>	465	पैत्तिक शूल	467
<i>Kaphaja śūla</i>	467	श्लैष्मिक शूल	468
<i>Sannipātaśa śūla</i>	468	सन्निपातज शूल	468
<i>Āmaja śūla</i>	469	आमज शूल	469
<i>Dvi-doṣaja śūla</i>	469	द्विदोषज शूल	469
Prognosis of <i>doṣika śūlas</i>	470	साध्यासाध्यता	470
<i>Parigāma śūla</i> (? Duodenal ulcer)	470	परिणाम शूल	470

<i>Tridoṣaja pariṇāma śūla</i>			
(? Ulcer cancer)	472	त्रिदोषज परिणाम शूल	472
<i>Annadrava Śūla</i> (? Gastric ulcer)	472	अन्नद्रव शूल	473
27. The Diagnosis of		उदावर्त एवं आनाह	
<i>Udāvarta and Ānāha</i>	475	निदान	475
SUMMARY	477	SRP	490
I. <i>Udāvarta</i> —Suppression of the urge		निरोधजन्म उदावर्त	
to pass flatus	479	अपान वायु	480
to pass faeces	480	पुरीष	480
to pass urine	480	मूत्र	481
to yawning	481	जृम्भा	481
to shed tears	481	अश्रु	482
to sneeze	482	क्षवथु	482
for belching	482	उद्गार	483
to vomit	483	हृदि	483
to ejaculation	483	शुक्र	484
of hunger	484	क्षुधा	484
of thirst	484	तृष्णा	485
of rapid respiration	485	श्वासवेग	485
to sleep	485	निद्रा	485
<i>Vātaja udāvarta</i>	486	वातज उदावर्त	487
Incurable <i>udāvarta</i>	489	असाध्य उदावर्त	489
II. <i>Ānāha</i> (? Chronic			
Intestinal Obstruction)	487	आनाह रोग	488
<i>Amaja ānāha</i> (? Upper			
G. I. Tract Obstruction)	488	आमाशयज (आमज)	
		आनाह	488

<i>Pakvāśayaja (Puriśaja)</i>	पक्वाशयज (पुरीषज)	
<i>Anāha</i> (Lower bowel obstruction)	आनाह	489
		488

28. Diagnosis of Gulma

(Abdominal Swellings)	गुल्म निदान	491
SUMMARY		493 SRP 506
Aetiopathogenesis	कारण एवं सम्प्राप्ति	495
Definition	परिभाषा	495
Types	भेद	496
Premonitory symptoms	पूर्वरूप	496
Clinical features	सामान्य लक्षण	497
<i>Vātika gulma</i>	वातिक गुल्म	497
<i>Paittika gulma</i>	पैत्तिक गुल्म	499
<i>Kaphaja gulma</i>	श्लैष्मिक गुल्म	500
Dual <i>doṣas gulmas</i>	द्वन्द्व गुल्म	501
<i>Tridoṣaja gulma</i>	सान्निपातिक गुल्म	501
<i>Raktaja gulma</i>	रक्तज गुल्म	502
Fatal prognostic features (Malignancy/ complications/bursting)	असाध्य गुल्म	503

29. The Diagnosis of the

Heart Diseases	हृद्‌रोग निदान	507
SUMMARY		509 SRP 516
Aetiological factors	कारण	511
<i>Doṣika</i> heart diseases	दोषजन्य हृद्‌रोग	512
<i>Vātika</i> heart disease	वातिक हृद्‌रोग	513
<i>Paittika</i> heart disease	पैत्तिक हृदय रोग	513
<i>Kaphaja</i> heart disease	श्लैष्मिक हृदय रोग	513
<i>Tridoṣaja</i> heart disease	सान्निपातिक हृद्‌रोग	514
<i>Kṛmija</i> heart disease	कृमिज हृद्‌रोग	514
Complications	उपद्रव	515

30. The Diagnosis of Mūtra

Kṛcchra (Dysuria)	517	मूत्र कृच्छ्र निदान	517
SUMMARY	519	SRP	527
Aetiopathogenesis	521	हेतु एवं सम्प्राप्ति	522
Doṣika dysurias	522	दोषज मूत्रकृच्छ्र	523
Dysuria due to a foreign body/trauma	523	शल्य/अभिघातज मूत्रकृच्छ्र	523
Dysuria due to a faecal retention	523	शकृद्विघातज मूत्रकृच्छ्र	524
Dysuria due to urinary calculi	524	अश्मरीजन्य मूत्रकृच्छ्र	524
Dysuria with spermaturia	524	शुक्रज मूत्रकृच्छ्र	525
Dysuria due to gravel	525	शर्कराजन्य मूत्रकृच्छ्र	526

31. Diagnosis of the Obstructive

Uroopathy	529	मूत्राघात निदान	529
SUMMARY	531	SRP	544
Vātakuṇḍalikā (Painful spasmodic dysuria)	533	वातकुण्डलिका	534
Aṣṭhīlā (Enlarged prostate)	534	अष्ठीला	534
Vātabastī (Bladder outlet obstruction	535	वातबस्ति	535
Mūtrātita (Temporary bladder atonia)	535	मूत्रातीत	536
Mūtrajāṭhara (Bladder outlet obstruction with ? paralytic ileus)	536	मूत्रजठर	536
Mūtrotsāṅga (Urethral obstruction)	537	मूत्रोत्सङ्ग	537
Mūtrakṣaya (Suppression of urine)	537	मूत्रक्षय	538
Mūtragranthī (Enlarged prostate/tumour bladder	538	मूत्रग्रन्थि	538

<i>Mūtraśukra</i> (Spermaturia)	538	मूत्रशुक्र	539
<i>Uṣṇāñā</i> (? Acute cystourethritis)	539	उष्ण वात	540
<i>Mūtrasāda</i> (Chyluria)	540	मूत्रसाद	540
<i>Vidvighāta</i> (Rectovesical or rectourethral fistula)	541	विद्विघात	541
<i>Bastikuṇḍala</i> (? Ac. cystitis with retention)	541	बस्तिकुण्डल	543
32. The Diagnosis of Urolithiasis	545	अश्मरी निदान	545
SUMMARY	547	SRP	558
Types	549	भेद	549
Pathogenesis	549	सम्प्राप्ति	550
Prodromal features	550	पूर्वरूप	550
General clinical features	550	सामान्य लक्षण	551
<i>Vātika</i> (Oxalate) calculus	551	वातज अश्मरी	552
<i>Paittika</i> (Uric acid and urate) calculi	552	पित्तज अश्मरी	553
<i>Kaphaja</i> (phosphate) calculus	553	कफज अश्मरी	553
Vesical calculus in paediatric surgery	553	वस्ति अश्मरी—एक बाल शल्य रोग	554
Spermoliths	554	शुक्राश्मरी	555
Gravel in the urine	555	शर्करा	555
Renal colic and other complications of gravel	556	शर्कराजन्य उपद्रव	556
Prognostic features	556	अश्मरी की असाध्यता	557

Contributors To This Volume

DR. G. D. SINGHAL

M. B. B. S., M. S. (Gen. Surg.), F. R. C. S. (Ed.)
Vaidya Kirti (Hony. Causa, Sri Lanka),
Professor & Head of Paediatric Surgery,
Ex-Head, Department of Surgery,
Senior Surgeon, Children Hospital,
Institute of Medical Sciences,
Banaras Hindu University, Varanasi
President, Indian Association of Paediatric Surgeons,
President, History of Medicine Society, B. H. U.
Fellow/Member of many National/International Societies/
Associations of Surgery/Paediatric Surgery/History of
Medicine.
Chief Editor and Publisher, Ancient Indian Surgery Series
based on *Suśruta Samhitā*.

DR. S. N. TRIPATHI

B. A., A. B. M. S. (B. H. U.), H. P. A. (Jamnagar),
Ph. D. (*Kāya Cikitsā*, B. H. U.)
Professor of Kaya Chikitsa and Ex-Head of the Department
Senior Consultant, S. S. Hospital,
Superintendent, Ayurvedic Pharmacy,
Dean, Faculty of Indian Medicine,
Institute of Medical Sciences,
Banaras Hindu University, Varanasi
Hony. Editor, J. of Research in Indian Medicine,
Homoeopathy & Yoga, New Delhi
Member, Central Council of Indian Medicine,
Member, Governing Body, Central Council of Research
in Ayurveda and Siddha.

DR. K. R. SHARMA,

A. B. M. S. (B. H. U.), D. Ay. M., Ph. D.,
F. I. A. P. (U. S. A.), F. R. A. S. (Lond.)
Reader, Department of Shalya Shalakya, and
Consultant Surgeon in Indian Medicine,
S. S. Hospital,
Institute of Medical Sciences,
Banaras Hindu University, Varanasi

DR. (Miss) P. V. TIWARI

A. M. B. S., Ph. D ,

Professor & Head, Department of Prasuti Tantra,

Consultant Obstetrician & Gynaecologist,

S. S. Hospital,

Institute of Medical Sciences,

Banaras Hindu University, Varanasi

DR. B. N. UPADHYAYA,

M. D. (Ayurveda, Kaya-Chikitsa),

Ph. D. (Kaya-Chikitsa, B. H. U.),

Lecturer, Department of Kaya-Chikitsa,

Institute of Medical Sciences,

Banaras Hindu University, Varanasi

DR. L. M. SINGH

A. M. S. (B.H.U.), Ph. D.

Professor of Shalya Shalakya & Head of the Department,

Consultant Surgeon in Indian Medicine,

S. S. Hospital,

Institute of Medical Sciences,

Banaras Hindu University, Varanasi,

Former Colombo Plan Expert on Ayurveda,

Tribhuvan University, Kathmandu, Nepal.

DR. K. P. SHUKLA,

B.A., A. B. M. S. (B. H. U.), Ph. D.

Reader, Department of Kaya Chikitsa.

Ex-Asstt. Medical Superintendent,

S. S. Hospital,

Institute of Medical Sciences,

Founder Member, Academy of Yoga

Banaras Hindu University, Varanasi

DR. (Mrs.) S. D. SINGHAL,

Kavya Tirtha, D. Litt. (Holland),

Reader, Department of Ancient Indian History, Culture

& Archaeology,

Banaras Hindu University, Varanasi

CHIEF EDITOR'S NOTES

The Vedas

India has a great heritage. Our four Vedas, the repository of learning in all fields of knowledge as science, art, philosophy, astronomy, medicine, etc., are regarded atleast 5000 B. C. old.

Ayurveda (The Big Three and the Smaller Three treatises)

Our ancient Indian medical science, Ayurveda (Ayu = life + Veda = Science), the Science of Life, also has its roots in the Vedas, especially the Atharva Veda.

Ayurveda was at its zenith about 500 B. C. when the three big treatises (bṛhatrayi) of Caraka, Suśruta and Vāgbhaṭ were written in Sanskrit.

These were followed (period debatable) by their several commentaries and the three classical and more compact smaller treatises (laghutrayi) of Mādhava, Śāraṅgadharma and Bhāva Prakāśa, the first on diagnosis and the second and third on treatment and pharmaceutical preparations.

Significant Contribution of Banaras Hindu University

The scholars of Banaras Hindu University are proud that in due course of time they would be able to give to the world modern versions of one of the big three (Suśruta Saṁhitā) and two of the smaller three (Mādhava Nidāna and Śāraṅgadharma Saṁhitā).

Banaras Hindu University, a noted centre of learning for all branches of education, is the only unique place in the world where the latest and the best in modern medicine work side by side with the highest in Ayurveda in the country in its two wings—the Faculty of (Modern) Medicine and the Faculty of Indian Medicine (Ayurveda) in the common Institute of Medical Sciences.

How the work was started—Surgical Ethics in Ayurveda

I joined this University in 1962 as a modern surgeon and got interested in Ayurveda. As I could not find any good book on Ayurveda in English and my knowledge of Sanskrit was not perfect, I started learning both from my colleagues in the Ayurvedic faculty. As a result 'Surgical Ethics in Ayurveda' was published in 1963.

Ancient Indian Surgery series based on Suśruta Saṁhitā

I then felt a great necessity of bringing out the Ayurvedic Sanskrit texts in a more widely known language such as English, so that the doctors, historians and research workers of the world could know about our great and ancient Indian medical heritage and the pharmaceutical concerns could pick out the drugs for the benefit of humanity.

Being a surgeon, I chose to start work on Suśruta Saṁhitā, which though a compendium of all branches of the medical science, has most of surgery in Ayurveda. Ancient Indian Surgery series of books based on Suśruta Saṁhitā were thus published from 1972.

I, as the Chief Editor, had gradually to take in addition to the Ayurvedic colleagues in the team, scholars from other oriental faculties such as Indology and History, etc. Latest to have joined the team is Dr. T. J. S. Patterson, the plastic surgeon of Oxford University and the Historian of Medicine at the Wellcome Unit of History of Medicine there.

When the manuscript of Ancient Indian Surgery series (Suśruta Saṁhitā) was nearing completion, necessity to do similar work on some more modern Ayurvedic treatises was also felt; consequently two of the smaller three were selected viz. Mādhava Nidāna and Śaraṅgadhara Saṁhitā. This book is a result of the same.

Mādhava-Nidāna : The Team and Problems

Work on Mādhava Nidāna was started in 1977. The long, tedious and painstaking process of the first translation was

completed by 1982. Then the task of checking, rechecking and final editing of each chapter was started. Obviously, works of this magnitude are best done by a team. We were fortunate, many of the same team which have given Ancient Indian Surgery series based on Suśruta Samhitā, continued to help and support me for Mādhava Nidāna. With experience, we were able to improve the quality of the translation and presentation also. Hindi Translation has also been given as this book is taught as a text book in many of the Ayurvedic colleges in India.

The publication presented another problem. As six varieties of types had to be used on each page, it was no easy job to find a suitable press to do it.

Style

The style of presentation has been made as simple as possible. The Contents have been given in a greater detail than usual to make the job of reference hunting easy; numerous subheadings have been given after each main chapter heading for this purpose. Introduction contains four-line gists of each chapter. Each Chapter has a comprehensive Summary in English in the beginning with verse numbers in brackets for each topic. A Heading has been provided for each verse followed by the original Sanskrit text and its authentic English syntax translation using modern medical terminology. A similar heading and translation in Hindi follows immediately. Footnotes have been added wherever essential—not too much to make the book very bulky but just enough to explain the text or provide appropriate references, especially for the Western reader. Each chapter ends by a list of Suggested Research Problems for the modern investigator. Part I contains Chapters 1–32 and Part II would have Chapters 33–69. Index for both parts would be provided at the end of Part II. In spite of all this no one is more conscious of its deficiencies than ourselves, Suggestions from the readers would be welcome to be incorporated in the future.

For Whom the Book is Meant

It is hoped that the book will be of use to all Ayurvedic students and teachers, modern doctors keen to know about Ayurveda in an easy and lucid way, various specialists who would like to get an instant historical reference or quotation for beginning their lecture/thesis/paper, orientalist, indologists, philosophers, historians in general and historians of medicine in particular, pharmaceutical concerns and to those who would like to know about the great Indian medical heritage.

International Cooperation

One of the great desires of the team is for some National/International agency to recognise and patronise it.

God willing, some person/agency genuinely interested in Ayurveda will appreciate our sincerity to the cause and offer recognition to our work and help for further study and propogation of this ancient Indian medical science.

17, Medical Enclave
Banaras Hindu University
Varanasi.
23rd Dec. '84.

G. D. Singhal

ACKNOWLEDGEMENT

It is indeed a matter of great relief and satisfaction that the day has come when I am writing these lines of thanks to those who have helped me during the last ten years which have gone in different stages of preparation of this book I am specially grateful to the following :

Dr. Iqbal Narain, Vice Chancellor, B. H. U., Varanasi for sending us a short message of blessing and for giving us encouragement throughout.

Dr. K. N. Udupa, Emeritus Professor, B. H. U., and former Director, I. M. S. and Rector, B. H. U. for agreeing to be a patron of this book, for setting an ideal of hard work, sincerity, honesty and dedication in front of me, and for helping us always by words and deeds.

Smt. Aruna Dalmia for helping us get a photograph of her father, Dr. Sir Padampat Singhania, to whom the book is dedicated and for being kind and willing to help always.

Dr. Jan Erik Sigdell, the creator of the Study Centre of Ayurveda at Basel, Switzerland, for always admiring our books, for being so concerned to see this and all Avurvedic Sanskrit texts brought out in front of the world in medical terminology for general use and research and for writing such a scholarly Foreword.

Dr S. K. Mishra, Advisor in Ayurveda and Siddha to the Government of India for sincerely appreciating our work, encouraging us in every possible way and for writing such an excellent preface.

Dr. S.N. Tripathi, Professor & Head of the Dept. of Kaya Chikitsa and Superintendent of the Ayurvedic Pharmacy, I.M.S., B.H.U. for actually giving the modern shape to this book. Inspite of being so busy as a very popular clinician and a great Ayurvedic physician and as member/advisor/examiner at so many high academic institutions/Govt. of India bodies, etc. in addition to his academic, administrative

and research responsibilities, he always could find time for me at all odd hours of the day and night to check and recheck all the chapters, to add comments in the light of his vast experience and to support me throughout even when I might have lost courage and patience.

Prof. Tripathi has also been instrumental in getting the Preface from such an eminent personality as Dr. S.K. Mishra. In fact, the book could not have been written without Prof. Tripathi. I am a very small person to thank him for his kindness and generosity. The nation will always be grateful to him.

Dr. K. R. Sharma, Reader in Shalya Shalakya, I. M. S., B. H. U. is the main architect of this book. Every single word in it has his scholarly stamp. His devotion to Ayurveda, supreme sacrifice of his time regularly for years in helping me complete the book, sincerity towards accurateness of translation and comments, the highest quality of academic excellence and continued help to me as a friend, colleague and teacher when many others have left because of my unending demands of accuracy can never be repaid by any amount of words or rewards. His name will remain a beacon light in the realms of Ayurveda. My only regret is that our own University has not recognised the merits of such a nice Ayurvedic surgeon and a great scholar.

Dr. P. V. Tewari, Prof. and Head, Deptt. of Prasuti-tantra for doing the Hindi translation of so many chapters and for guiding me throughout.

Dr. B. N. Upadhyaya, of the Dept. of Kaya Chikitsa for completing the Hindi translation of numerous chapters even at great personal inconvenience.

Dr. L. M. Singh, Prof. and ex-Head, Dept. of Shalya-Shalakya, & Dr. K. P. Shukla, Reader in Kaya Chikitsa, I. M. S., B. H. U. for helping me to a great extent with the editorial work.

Dr. Mrs. S. D. Singhal, Reader in Ancient Indian History, Culture & Archaeology, Faculty of Arts, B. H. U. (and my wife) for doing any and all remaining odd jobs like help with manuscript preparation, proof reading, encouragement when the task seemed formidable and specially for providing hospitality to the members of the editorial board at home at all odd hours.

Dr. K. C. Chuneekar, Reader in Dravya Guna, I. M. S., B. H. U. for consistently supporting and guiding this and all our other academic projects.

Sh. Nirmal Kumar of Saraswati Mudranalaya for printing the text and **Sh. Amrit Kumar Bajpai** of Jagannath Printers for printing the initial pages.

Sh. Sunil Kumar for kindly giving the final typed shape to the manuscript

Other teachers and colleagues in the Faculty of Indian Medicine and the Faculty of (Modern) Medicine who have given me academic and moral support to such works over such long periods.

Family members and Friends for being so generous in allowing me to remain unsocial when I should have given them more time.

Readers & Reviewers throughout the world for reading the books and letting us have their opinions and suggestions. All this effort has been made for them. If they are happy we will be happy. It will make us more happy if they could point us our shortcomings so that we can improve upon them next time.

Co-author's Note

In spite of the development of sophisticated technology of modern diagnosis, many patients remain undiagnosed, specially in the out-patient department with limited investigative facilities. On the other hand, there is a rising trend, misleading at times, in the young doctors to depend more on the laboratory findings for the diagnosis and treatment. The gradual deterioration in the clinical sense and more dependence on investigations has wider repercussions on the socio-economics of the developing countries due to the costlier diagnosis and treatment.

According to Caraka, the well known Ayurvedic physician, a doctor should use all his senses for a correct diagnosis and proper treatment. For this Mādhava Nidāna (Ayurvedic Clinical Diagnosis) can be of great help. Mādhava has particularly emphasized the five methods of diagnosis known as pañcanidāna : nidāna (aetiology), pūrvārūpa (prodromata), rūpa (clinical features), upaśaya (therapeutic trial) and saṁprāpti (pathogenesis). In his opinion, although the diagnosis may be possible by any one of these methods, but as it may sometimes be misleading, one should confirm it by all the five parameters. These become specially relevant when more than one pathology is present or complications have developed. Mādhava has described these five criteria of diagnosis in the first chapter itself and has then followed the same pattern for all diseases throughout. In addition to getting at the diagnosis, pañcanidāna is a plan to describe all aspects of any disease, known, unknown or new and even iatrogenic ones, e. g. due to radiation, pollution, etc. Thus, the adaptation of these practical criteria would prove of great benefit to the medical profession and to the suffering humanity.

Mādhava Nidāna is generally considered to be a compilation work; however, it includes many original contributions of Mādhava also. Further, he has identified and described

several new disease entities, e. g. āmavāta, pariṇāmaśūla, amlapitta, etc., even though some of them were implicit in texts describing treatment, which goes to show that not only his textual knowledge was sound but he was a keen observer and a practical physician also. Later Ayurvedic texts have described the diseases in the same pattern as in Mādhava Nidāna, thus accepting his approach. Moreover, no other book has as yet replaced Mādhava Nidāna for teaching of diagnosis in Ayurveda. All these prove that Mādhava Nidāna is a book of high order and is complete in itself from the diagnosis point of view.

The 'Ayurvedic Clinical Diagnosis' based on Mādhava Nidāna is not only a correct English and Hindi translation of the original Sanskrit text, but also gives an insight into the entire spectrum of Ayurveda through the light of the latest scientific developments, giving modern medical equivalents, foot notes, headings, etc. to make it upto date. This book is an attempt to make a bridge between the Ayurvedic and modern medical diagnosis so that the students, teachers and research workers of both the systems can be benefitted.

In this endeavour, the contributions of Professor G. D. Singhal are immense. He has taken all pains to keep us with him and to get the work done. The presentation of the work was possible only because of the excellent team comprising of myself and Dr. K. R. Sharma with Dr. Singhal as its leader.

I hope the readers will take our endeavour in the same spirit in which it has been done. There may be short-comings or some ideas not befitting to the popular concept for which we may be excused. If any suggestions are available, we would try to incorporate them in the future editions.

Basant Panchami
26th January, 1985
Varanasi.

S. N. Tripathi

COAUTHOR'S NOTE

Ayurveda is one of the most ancient medical sciences of the world. Its antiquity in India can be traced as far back as the Vedic period; however, its systematic and methodical presentation has been effective since the Saṁhitā age only when many important books dealing with different branches of Ayurveda were written, out of which Caraka Saṁhitā and Suśruta Saṁhitā are the earliest and the most authentic medical writings. It is difficult to specify the period in which these books were written; but it is believed that they are contemporary and date as far back as 1000 B. C. or even earlier.

From the teaching point of view, the literature of Ayurveda is usually divided into two groups, viz. (1) the Major Trio (Bṛhatrayi), and (2) the minor Trio (Laghutrayi). The first group comprises of the three big volumes called (i) Caraka Saṁhitā, (ii) Suśruta Saṁhitā, and (iii) Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya; while the second group includes three relatively smaller and later volumes, namely (i) Mādhava Nidāna, (ii) Śāraṅgadhara Saṁhitā, and (iii) Bhāvaprakāśa. These six volumes form the back-bone of the Ayurvedic literature; from the practitioner's point of view, however, the Minor Trio has gained more popularity.

Mādhava Nidāna is the first component of the group of Minor Trio and occupies the highest place of importance for the teaching and learning of Ayurveda. In the olden days, it was compulsory for every student of Ayurveda to learn Mādhava Nidāna by heart so that the reference could be readily quoted for the diagnosis of diseases. It acted as a dependable diagnostic aid in absence of the modern pathological laboratories and radiological investigations. Although it appears to deal with the diagnosis of certain diseases only it is so comprehensive that most of the diseases known today have been incorporated in its text.

Besides Mādhava Nidāna, there is one more book, Añjana Nidāna, which deals with the diagnosis of diseases and which

is believed to have been written by Agniveśa and therefore is much older than Mādhava Nidāna, Agniveśa being the first author of Caraka Saṁhitā. But it is a very small volume and describes only a limited number of diseases. Consequently, it could not gain the reputation which was achieved by Mādhava Nidāna during a short period.

The main bulk of Mādhava Nidāna has been borrowed from various original text books of Ayurveda viz Caraka Saṁhitā, Suśruta Saṁhitā, Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya, Aṣṭāṅga Saṁgraha, Hārīta and others and therefore it is more of a compilation work and less of an original contribution. It is true that there are many diseases which have not been described in the original text books, but have been incorporated in Mādhava Nidāna for the first time, yet it is not a sufficient ground to place this book at par with the original contributions. At the same time, it is also true that this book commands no less reputation than the original text books. The reason evidently is that the idea of compiling all the diseases in one volume, which makes the diagnosis easy, is original. That is why this book is more popular amongst the practising Vaidyas

The book has been named after its author Mādhava Kara who lived sometimes during the 9th century A. D. in the state of Bengal in India. He was a learned man and had a deep insight into all the eight branches of Ayurveda which have been incorporated in this volume. That the book is a compilation of the works of various authorities in the field, has been accepted by the author himself which is evident in the following verse -

नानामुनीनां वचनैरिदानीं समासतः सद्भिषजां नियोगात् ।

सोपद्रवारिष्टनिदानलिङ्गो निबध्यते रोगविनिश्चयोऽयम् ॥

(मा० नि० १.२)

The verse also indicates that the book was originally named as 'Rogaviniścaya' by Mādhava Kara which means 'the clinical methods in the diagnosis of diseases'. The book

was re-named as 'Mādhava Nidāna' by the commentators probably after the death of the author. The chief commentators of Mādhava Nidāna are Śrī Kāṇṭha Datta and Vijaya Rakṣita who have jointly written the most exhaustive and the only authentic commentary called Madhukoṣa. As a matter of fact, this commentary presents a critical analysis of the diagnostic criteria presented by Mādhava Kara by elaborating, supporting or discarding his views with the evidence of quotations and references from various other books which have been ignored by Mādhava Kara or which came into existence after the Mādhava Kara era.

The present commentary has been written in English and Hindi with a view to popularise this book amongst the students and the scholars of medicine in India and abroad. There are many commentaries on this book in Hindi and other regional Indian languages which are popular amongst the students and the teachers of various Ayurvedic Colleges; but the need of a good and authentic commentary in English has been a long felt necessity of the day. So far, no such commentary was available. The only attempt to translate Mādhava Nidāna into English was made by Meulenbeld of Holland who could only complete the first ten chapters of the book in a volume; but the author, being an European and not so well versed with the Ayurvedic concepts has not been able to interpret the text accordingly.

In the present volume, an attempt has been made to convey the exact sense that was carried in the original sanskrit verses as far as possible, keeping in view the clinical manifestations of the pathological conditions described in order to provide a practical approach to the problem of diagnosis. At the same time, an attempt has also been made to keep intact the literal meaning of the Sanskrit words. The same rule has been followed in its Hindi translation also. The doubtful conditions have been explained by the possible interpretations in the form of foot-notes at relevant places. This has added to MN VIII

the authenticity of the work. If the students and the interested scholars of medicine at large, are benefitted by this, the object of the team would have been achieved.

It is only due to the untiring and devoted efforts of Prof. G. D. Singhal that the work of such a nature could be accomplished within a reasonable time. He, being a renowned clinician himself and basically a surgeon, would not compromise with any short-cut procedure regarding the quality of the work. I have been discussing each word with him very thoroughly, sometimes for hours together, before arriving at a conclusion. He has now established his authority on *Suśruta Saṁhitā* and would quote any reference readily in support of his views. Similarly, Prof. S. N. Tripathi is a known authority on *Kāya Cikitsā* and a renowned Ayurvedic physician. He has a vast experience of correlating the Ayurvedic concepts with the theories of modern medicine both from the patho-physiological as well as from the clinical view-points. The interpretations which he has given in this book, represent his wide experience and knowledge and are authentic. I am highly indebted to both these authorities for giving me an opportunity of working with them. I am also thankful to all my colleagues who have helped in translating the original Sanskrit text into English and Hindi at many places. In the end, I would pay my sincere gratitude to all persons who have contributed to this volume in any form.

Varanasi

29th Nov. '84

K. R. Sharma

ABBREVIATIONS

Apte, V. S., Sanskrit English Dictionary, Jainendra Press, Delhi, 1905	Apte C. D.
Cakrapāṇi Datta	Coll.
Colloquial	K. S.
Kāśyapa Saṁhitā	M. N.
Mādhava Nidāna	M. S.
Manu Smṛti	M. W.
Monier Williams, Sanskrit English Dictionary, Oxford, 1899	S. D. S.
Śārṅgadharma Saṁhitā	SRP
Suggested Research Problems	Var
Variant	

Style of numbering the verses of Mādhava-Nidāna

Full form	Abbreviation
Mādhava-Nidāna	M. N.
Mādhava-Nidāna, Chapter 5	M. N. 5
Mādhava-Nidāna, Chapter 7, Verse 1.	M. N. 7. 1
Mādhava-Nidāna, Chapter 9, Verse 2, first line	M. N. 9. 2/1
Mādhava-Nidāna, Chapter 11, Verse 1, second line	M. N. 11. 1/2
Mādhava-Nidāna, Chapter 15, Verse 7, 1st half of first line	M. N. 15. 7/1a
Mādhava-Nidāna, Chapter 15, Verse 8, 2nd half of first line	M. N. 15. 8/1b
Mādhava-Nidāna, Chapter 17, Verse 9, 1st half of second line	M. N. 17. 9/2a
Mādhava-Nidāna, Chapter 19, Verse 11, 2nd half of second line	M. N. 19. 11/2b

Avurvedic Treatises (SĀMĪHĪTĀ'S) and their Abbreviations

Canto : Caraka Samhitā चरक संहिता : Suśruta Samhitā सुश्रुत संहिता : Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya स्थान			
First : Sūtra-sthāna	सूत्र स्थान	Sūtra-sthāna	सूत्र स्थान
प्रथम : C. S. I.	च० सू०	S. S. I.	सु० सू०
Second : Nīdāna-sthāna निदान स्थान		Nīdāna-sthāna	निदान स्थान
द्वितीय : C. S. II.	च० नि०	S. S. II.	सु० नि०
Third : Vīmāna-sthāna विमान स्थान		Sārīra-sthāna	शरीर स्थान
तृतीय : C. S. III.	च० वि०	S. S. III.	सु० शा०
Fourth : Sārīra-sthāna शरीर स्थान		Cikitsā-sthāna	चिकित्सा स्थान
चतुर्थ : C. S. IV.	च० शा०	S. S. IV.	सु० चि०
Fifth : Indriya-sthāna इन्द्रिय स्थान		Kalpa-sthāna	कल्प स्थान
पंचम : C. S. V.	च० इ०	S. S. V.	सु० क०
Sixth : Cikitsā-sthāna चिकित्सा स्थान		Uttara-tantra	उत्तर तन्त्र
षष्ठ : C. S. VI.	च० चि०	S. S. VI.	सु० उ०
Seventh : Kalpa-sthāna कल्प स्थान			
सप्तम : C. S. VII.	च० क०		
Eighth : Siddhi-sthāna सिद्धि स्थान			

Avurvedic Treatises (SĀMHIĀ'S) and their Abbreviations

Canto : अष्टांग हृदय	: Aṣṭāṅga Saṅgraha	अष्टांग संप्रह	: Hārīta Saṁhitā	हारीत'संहिता
स्थान :				
First : सूत्र स्थान	: Sūtra sthāna	सूत्र स्थान	: Prathama-sthāna	प्रथम स्थान
प्रथम : अ० ह० सू०	: A. S. I.	अ० सं० सू०	: H. S. I.	हा० प्र०
Second : शारीर स्थान	: Śārīra-sthāna	शारीर स्थान	: Dvitiya-sthāna	द्वितीय स्थान
द्वितीय : अ० ह० शा०	: A. S. II.	अ० सं० शा०	: H. S. II.	हा० द्वि०
Third : निदान स्थान	: Nidāna-sthāna	निदान स्थान	: Tritiya-sthāna	तृतीय स्थान
तृतीय : अ० ह० नि०	: A. S. III	अ० सं० नि०	: H. S. III.	हा० तृ०
Fourth : चिकित्सा स्थान	: Cikitsā-sthāna	चिकित्सा स्थान	: Calurtha-sthāna	चतुर्थ स्थान
चतुर्थ : अ० ह० चि०	: A. S. IV.	अ० सं० चि०	: H. S. IV.	हा० च०
Fifth : कल्पसिद्धिस्थान	: Kalpa-sthāna	कल्प स्थान	: Pañcama-sthāna	पंचम स्थान
पंचम : अ० ह० क०	: A. S. V.	अ० सं० क०	: H. S. V.	हा० प०
Sixth : उत्तर स्थान	: Uttara-sthāna	उत्तर स्थान	: Śaṣṭha-sthāna	षष्ठ स्थान
षष्ठ : अ० ह० उ०	: A. S. VI.	अ० सं० उ०	: H. S. VI.	हा० ष०

Ancient Indian Surgery books and their abbreviations

Volume	Name of the book	Abbreviation
1.	Fundamental & Plastic Surgery Considerations in Ancient Indian Surgery by G. D. Singhal, S. N. Tripathi and G. N. Chaturvedi (1981).	FPC
2.	Pharmaceutical Considerations in Ancient Indian Surgery by G. D. Singhal and K. C. Chuneekar (1982).	PC
3.	Diagnostic Considerations in Ancient Indian Surgery by G. D. Singhal, L. M. Singh and K. P. Singh (1972).	DC
4.	Anatomical and Obstetric Considerations in Ancient Indian Surgery by G. D. Singhal and L. V. Guru (1973).	AOC
5.	Operative Considerations in Ancient Indian Surgery by G. D. Singhal and L. M. Singh (1982).	OC
6.	Non-operative Considerations in Ancient Indian Surgery by G. D. Singhal, R. H. Singh and K. P. Shukla (1979).	NOC
7.	Toxicological Considerations in Ancient Indian Surgery by G. D. Singhal and R. N. Dwivedi (1976).	TC
8.	Ophthalmic & Otorhinolaryngological Considerations in Ancient Indian Surgery by G. D. Singhal and K. R. Sharma (1976).	OOC
9.	Paediatric & Gynaecological Considerations and Aphorisms in Ancient Indian Surgery by G. D. Singhal and J. Mitra (1980).	PGC
10.	Medical & Psychiatric Considerations in Ancient Indian Surgery by G. D. Singhal and K. P. Shukla (in press).	MPC

Publisher : Singhal Publications

C/o Dr. G. D. Singhal

17, Medical Enclave

B. H. U., Varanasi-221005.

OR

C/o Dr. G. D. Singhal

14, Sammelan Marg

Allahabad-211003.

REFERENCES

1. Aṣṭāṅga Hṛdaya
Edited by
Pt Bhiṣagāchārya Hariśāstri
Parādkar Vaidya
Published by
Pāṇḍuraṅg Jiwajī
Nirṇaya Sāgar Press
Bombay
1939.
2. Aṣṭāṅga Saṅgraha
Published by
Nirṇaya Sāgar Press
Bombay-2
1951.
3. Caraka Saṁhitā
Edited and Published by
Shree Gulabkunverba
Ayurvedic Society
Jamnagar
India
1949.
4. Hārīta Saṁhitā
Edited by Vaidya
Ravidatta Shastri
Revised by Kaviratna
Kali Prasad Tripathi
Published by
Shri Kṣemarāja Śrī
Kṛṣṇa Das
at Śrī Venkaṭeśvara
Press
Bombay
1927.
5. Śārṅgadhara Saṁhitā
Edited by
Paṇḍit Paraśurama
Śāstri, Vidyāsāgar
Published by
Pāṇḍuraṅg Jāwajī
Nirṇaya Sagar Press
Bombay
1931.
6. Suśruta Saṁhitā
Edited by
Nārāyaṇa Rāma
Achārya "Kāvyatīrtha"
with the co-operation of
Vaidya Jādavjī
Trikamjī Achārya
Published by
Satyabhāmābai
Pāṇḍuraṅg
Nirṇaya Sāgar Press
Bombay
1945.

KEY TO TRANSLITERATION

अ	आ	इ	ई	उ	ऊ	ऋ
a	ā	i	ī	u	ū	r̥
ए	ऐ	ओ	औ	अं	अः	
e	ai	o	au	aṁ	aḥ	
क्	क	ख्	ख	ग्	ग	घ ङ
k	ka	kh	kha	g	ga	gha ṅ
च	छ	ज	झ	ञ		
ca	cha	ja	jha	ña		
ट	ठ	ड	ढ	ण		
ṭa	ṭha	ḍa	ḍha	ṇa		
त	थ	द	ध	न		
ta	tha	da	dha	na		
प	फ	ब	भ	म		
pa	pha	ba	bha	ma		
य	र	ल	व	श		
ya	ra	la	va	śa		
ष	स	ह	क्ष	त्र	ज्ञ	
ṣa	sa	ha	kṣa	tra	jña	

P R E F A C E

The subject of 'Nidāna' or Rogavijñāna always had a special place in Ayurveda. Ancient sages axiomated that knowing the causation, prodromal symptoms, stagewise progression, complications, prognosis and the entire spectrum of disease was essential before starting the treatment. It still holds true that unless the diseases are known in this way, it is not possible for any physician to treat them effectively and rationally. Depending upon the disease, its severity, constitution of the patient, etc., actual treatment may differ from individual to individual. Based upon these considerations, the Ayurvedic treatment is divided into the following¹ :—

1. *Hetu-viparīta* (Measures² directly against the causative factors)
2. *Vyādhi-viparīta* (Measures² directly against the disease process)
3. *Hetuvyādhi-viparīta* (Measures² directly against the causative factors and the disease process)
4. *Hetuviparītārthakāri* (Measures similar to the causative factors, but opposite in action)³
5. *Vyādhi-viparītārthakāri* (Measures similar to the disease process, but opposite in action)⁴

1. Also Refer 'Therapeutic Trial' (*upāśaya* and *anupāśaya*)
M. N. 1. 8, 9 (p. 10 of this book. Ed.)

2. Drugs, diet and daily regimen.
3. Therapeutic trial with measures-drugs, diet and daily regimen-similar to the aetiological factors, thus seemingly having harmful effects, but indirectly and actually producing good results.
4. Therapeutic trial with measures-drugs, diet and daily regimen-similar to the disease process, thus seemingly having harmful effects but indirectly and actually producing good results.

6. *Hetuyādhi-viparīṭhakarī* (Measures similar to the causative factors and the disease process, but opposite in action)¹.

The ancient Ayurvedic classics like Caraka Saṁhitā, Suśruta Saṁhitā, etc. described Rogavijñāna separately in Nidāna-sthāna. However, it was Mādhavakara who developed this subject into a discipline by writing the book 'Rogavinīścaya' which is now famous as 'Mādhavanidāna'. This book became so popular that traditional Ayurvedic studies in those days were started with this book.

The very fact that the work of Mādhava is considered a classic even today reflects that the author's approach to the subject, arrangement of diseases and the style of presentation are of a standard as yet unsurpassed. As can be seen, Mādhava collected his material from Saṁhitās to a great extent. His work became the trend setter for later works like Siddha Yoga of Vṇḍamādhava, Cikitsā Saṁgraha of Cakra-pāṇidatta, Cikitsāsāra Saṁgraha of Vaṅgasena, Bhāvaprakāśa of Bhāva Miśra, etc. as can be seen by the scheme of arrangement adopted. The book became so popular that many scholars of Ayurveda have written authentic commentaries on the book. Madhukośa by Vijayarakṣita and Śrīkaṇṭha Datta, Ātma-kadarpaṇi by Vācaśpati, Siddhāntacintāmaṇi of Narasiṁha Kavirāja, Subodhini on different portions of Nidāna of Vādeva Vāsudeva ?), Mādhavanidāna tippaṇi of Bhāvamisra, Rugvinirṇayatikā of Bhavāni Sahāya, Vaidyamanoramā of Rāma-kriṣṇa, Rugvinīścaya pariśiṣṭa of Hārādhana are just a few of the works cited as commentaries on this treatise. The book was translated in foreign languages also in various countries. Khateefa Harun ul Rashid got it translated in the Arabic in

1. Therapeutic trial with measures-drugs, diet and daily regimen-similar to both the causative factors and the disease process, thus seemingly having harmful effects, but indirectly and actually producing good results.

8th century. This book was translated and popularised in Tibetan language also. First five chapters of this book were translated in Italian language in 1913-14 by Dr. Mario Vallauri which was published in Florence. Ten chapters of this book alongwith Mādhukośa and Ātāmkadarpaṇa commentary were translated by Dr. Meulenbeld which was published by E. J. Brill at Leiden in 1974.

The text and commentaries of Mādhavanidāna being in Sanskrit, its accessibility and understanding has been restricted to those who know that language. It is necessary that an important work of this kind on Nidāna should be translated into English and Hindi so that a larger section of readers can have the benefit of grasping the text of Mādhava-nidāna.

Dr. G. D. Singhal, M. S., F. R. C. S., Prof. and Head of the Paediatric Surgery Section of the Institute of Medical Sciences, Banaras Hindu University, Varanasi is famous all over the medical world for his renowned work on Ancient Indian Surgery series. His valuable contribution for dissemination of ancient Ayurvedic knowledge to the modern medical world has been widely recognised and appreciated. By translating the Mādhavanidāna in English and Hindi in joint authorship with the well known Ayurvedic scholar, teacher and physician, Dr. S. N. Tripathi, Professor and Head of the Deptt. of Kayachikitsa of the same Institute, Dr. Singhal is presenting a vast medical knowledge for greater utility of the medical profession. The work is not a mere translation but a novel presentation and a monumental work in an impressive style.

Inclusion of a summary in the beginning of every chapter and suggested research problems in the end has made the work much more valuable.

I congratulate Dr. Singhal, Dr. Tripathi and their associates for this commendable job. I am sure this work will be well appreciated by the medical and Ayurvedic scholars, teachers, students and physicians all over the world.

Vaidya S. K. Mishra
Adviser (Ayurveda & Siddha)
Ministry of Health and Family
Welfare, Government of India.

New Delhi

Dated : 1st January 1985.

INTRODUCTION

Mādhava Nidāna is one of the three treatises comprising laghutrayī ('the small three, i. e. Mādhava Nidāna, Śārṅga-dhara Saṁhitā and Bhāva Prakāśa Nighaṇṭu), as opposed to bṛhatrayī ('the big three' i. e. Caraka Saṁhitā, Suśruta Saṁhitā and Vāgbhaṭ Saṁhitā).

Mādhava Nidāna is the classical book on 'Diagnosis made easy in Ayurveda.' Its author, Śrī Mādhava Kara, selected the important diseases which all Ayurvedic practitioners should know. The important diagnostic Sanskrit quotations on these diseases were then picked out by him from all other authoritative Ayurvedic treatises, especially from 'The Big Three', to which he added some original contributions of his own and rearranged them all, using the five pillars of diagnosis (aetiology, prodromata, clinical features, therapeutic trials and pathogenesis), and prognosis as outlined in his first chapter. This style of his compilation is popularly compared to the long and difficult process of the diligent bee collecting the sweet essence from various flowers, adding some of its own secretions and storing it in its nest as the delicious and easily available honey for easy use by us.

Mādhava Nidāna has 69 chapters. They are being brought out in two volumes. This first volume contains Chapters 1-32 in original Sanskrit with accurate English and Hindi translations of each verse. An easily understandable heading in English and Hindi of each verse, a summary and a list of suggested research problems of each chapter with cross-references and appropriate modern medical comments have been added throughout.

The salient features of these chapters are :

Chapter 1

The Five Aspects of Diagnosis

It describes the five aspects of diagnosis, viz. aetiology, prodromata, clinical features, therapeutic trials and pathogenesis, including complications and prognosis of diseases.

(1-17)

Chapter 2

The Diagnosis of Fever

It deals with all aspects of fever as a disease : its origin, pathogenesis, general and prodromal features, clinical presentations, seasonal considerations, tissue involvement, different stages, prognosis and the modes of remission.

Parotitis as a terminal complication and meningo-encephalitis as a serious type of fever associated with coma are described.

Other types of fever could be due to poisons, odour of herbs and psychogenic.

Malarial fever has been discussed vividly.

(19-61)

Chapter 3

The Diagnosis of Diarrhoea

It deals with the aetiology, pathogenesis, prodromal and clinical features and types of diarrhoea and dysentery along with their prognosis.

(63-80)

Chapter 4

The Diagnosis of Grahani Disease

It deals with the aetiopathogenesis, types, clinical features and prognosis of the grahani disease, a syndrome with the predominant feature of persistent chronic diarrhoea. Three individual doshika varieties, one due to a combination of all

the doṣas and two special types, viz. saṅgrahagrahaṇī (? sprue syndrome) and ghaṭīyantra disease (? Koch's abdomen) are described.

(81-95)

Chapter 5

The Diagnosis of Piles

It deals with the aetiopathogenesis, clinical features and prognosis of six types of anal piles and certain pile like lesions in various other areas of the body, e.g. skin warts, umbilical polyp, etc.

(97-119)

Chapter 6

The Diagnosis of Dyspepsia, Indigestion, Gastro-enteritis, Alasaka (? Mechanical Intestinal Obstruction) and Vilambikā (Paralytic Ileus)

It deals with the four states of digestive fire, viz. hypofunctioning, hyperfunctioning, inconstant and normal.

It also deals with the aetio-pathogenesis, clinical features, complications and prognosis of six types of indigestion : four pathological, three due to vitiated humours and the fourth due to delayed absorption; and two physiological ones.

It further deals with the diagnostic features of three serious complications of indigestion, viz. gastro-enteritis, mechanical intestinal obstruction and paralytic ileus.

(121-140)

Chapter 7

The Diagnosis of Worm Infestations

It gives the origin and diagnostic criteria of 20 worms infesting the human beings, 2 being external and 18 internal.

(141-152)

Chapter 8

The Diagnosis of Anaemia, Jaundice, Kumbha Kāmalā and Halimaka

It describes the diagnosis of the various conditions manifesting with pallor of the skin, viz. anaemia and jaundice (with and without complications).

(153-170)

Chapter 9

The Diagnosis of the Haemorrhagic Disorders

It deals with the aetiology, pathogenesis, clinical features, diagnosis, complications, prognosis and the fatal signs of the various haemorrhagic disorders.

(171-184)

Chapter 10

The Diagnosis of Rājyakṣamā, Kṣāta and Kṣīṇa (Tuberculosis and other Emaciating Diseases)

It deals with the aetiopathogenesis, clinical features, differential diagnosis and prognosis of tuberculosis (pulmonary, intestinal and renal), suppurative lung diseases and various other chronic emaciating diseases.

(185-205)

Chapter 11

The Diagnosis of Cough

It deals with the aetiopathogenesis, clinical features and prognosis of the five types of cough.

(207-219)

Chapter 12

The Diagnosis of Hiccough and Dyspnoea

It deals with the aetiology, pathogenesis, clinical features and prognosis of hiccough and dyspnoea, considered as diseases related to respiration.

(221-244)

Chapter 13

The Diagnosis of the Hoarseness of Voice

It deals with the actio-pathogenesis, clinical features and prognosis of the six types of speech disorders.

(245-254)

Chapter 14

The Diagnosis of Anorexia

It deals with the aetiology and the clinical features of the five types of anorexia.

(255-264)

Chapter 15

The Diagnosis of Emesis

It deals with the aetiological factors, pathogenesis, clinical features, prognosis and complications of five types of vomiting.

(265-278)

Chapter 16

The Diagnosis of Thirst

It deals with the aetiopathogenesis, clinical types, complications and prognosis of thirst as a disease.

(279-290)

Chapter 17

The Diagnosis of Fainting, Vertigo, Sleep, Drowsiness and Coma

It deals with the aetiopathogenesis and features of five conditions, viz. fainting, vertigo, sleep, drowsiness and coma, manifesting with the common symptom of partial or total loss of consciousness.

(291-307)

Chapter 18

The Diagnosis of Excessive Drinking, Hangover, Alcoholic Gastritis and Chronic Alcoholism.

It deals with the beneficial effects of judicious drinking and with the clinical features and prognosis of the four conditions, viz. acute intoxication, hangover, alcoholic, gastritis and chronic alcoholism, resulting from excessive drinking.

(309-324)

Chapter 19

The Diagnosis of the Burning Sensation

It deals with the aetiological factors and diagnostic features of seven types of burning sensation.

(325-335)

Chapter 20

The Diagnosis of Psychoses

It deals with the aetiology pathogenesis, initial (psycho-neurosis) and established clinical features of six types of psychoses, as also those due to invasion by superhuman agencies like evil spirits, ghosts, divine visitations, etc. and with their prognosis.

(337-360)

Chapter 21

The Diagnosis of Epilepsy

It deals with the aetiopathogenesis, prodromal and clinical features of the four types of epilepsy.

(361-371)

Chapter 22

The Diagnosis of the Vātika Diseases

It deals with the aetiology, pathogenesis, diagnosis and prognosis of the various diseases caused by vitiated *vāta*.

(373-421)

Chapter 23

The Diagnosis of the Vāta-rakta (Gout)

It deals with the aetiology, pathogenesis, prodromal features, clinical features and prognosis of gout.

(423-437)

Chapter 24

The Diagnosis of the Urustambha

It deals with the aetiopathogenesis, prodromal features, clinical features and prognosis of the *urustambha* or *ādhyavāta* (painful lower limbs with sensory and motor disturbances associated with fever, etc.).

(439-448)

Chapter 25

The Diagnosis of Āmavāta

It deals with the aetiopathogenesis, clinical features and prognosis of āma-vāta (rheumatoid arthritis and allied conditions).

(449-458)

Chapter 26

The Diagnosis of the Abdominal Colics, Duodenal Ulcer and Gastric Ulcer

It gives the aetiopathogenesis and diagnosis of eight types of abdominal colics, as well as of duodenal and gastric ulcers.

(459-474)

Chapter 27

The Diagnosis of Udāvarta and Ānāha

It deals with two important abdominal conditions, viz. udāvarta (14 groups of conditions due to suppression of the normal physiological evacuator reflexes, etc.) and ānāha (? chronic intestinal obstruction discernible into two types viz. upper or lower bowel obstruction).

(475-490)

Chapter 28

The Diagnosis of Gulma (Localised Abdominal Swellings)

It describes the definition, aetiopathogenesis, types, diagnosis and prognosis of the various abdominal swellings (*gulmas*).

(491-506)

Chapter 29

The Diagnosis of the Heart Diseases

It deals with the aetiological factors, pathogenesis, clinical features and the complications of the heart diseases.

(507-516)

Chapter 30

The Diagnosis of Mūtrakṣcchra (Dysuria)

It describes the aetiopathogenesis and clinical features of the various types of dysuria.

(517-527)

Chapter 31

Diagnosis of the Obstructive Uropathy

It deals with the clinical features of thirteen types of obstructive uropathy.

(529-544)

Chapter 32

The Diagnosis of Urolithiasis

It deals with the pathogenesis and diagnosis of urolithiasis, mainly the three types of vesical calculi (*vātika* or oxalate, *paittika* or uric acid and urate and *kaphaja* or phosphate), and seminal concretions. It also considers gravel (*crys-talluria*), renal colic, etc,

(545-558)

माधव निदान

पूर्व-खण्ड

अध्यायाः १—३२

CHAPTERS 1—32

PART ONE

MĀDHAVA—NIDĀNA

WISCONSIN

1917

1917

CHAPTERS 1-35

PART ONE

WISCONSIN

माधवनिदानम्

प्रथमोऽध्यायः

पञ्चनिदानलक्षणम्

THE FIVE ASPECTS OF DIAGNOSIS

CHAPTER ONE

MĀDHAVA-NIDĀNA



M. N. 1

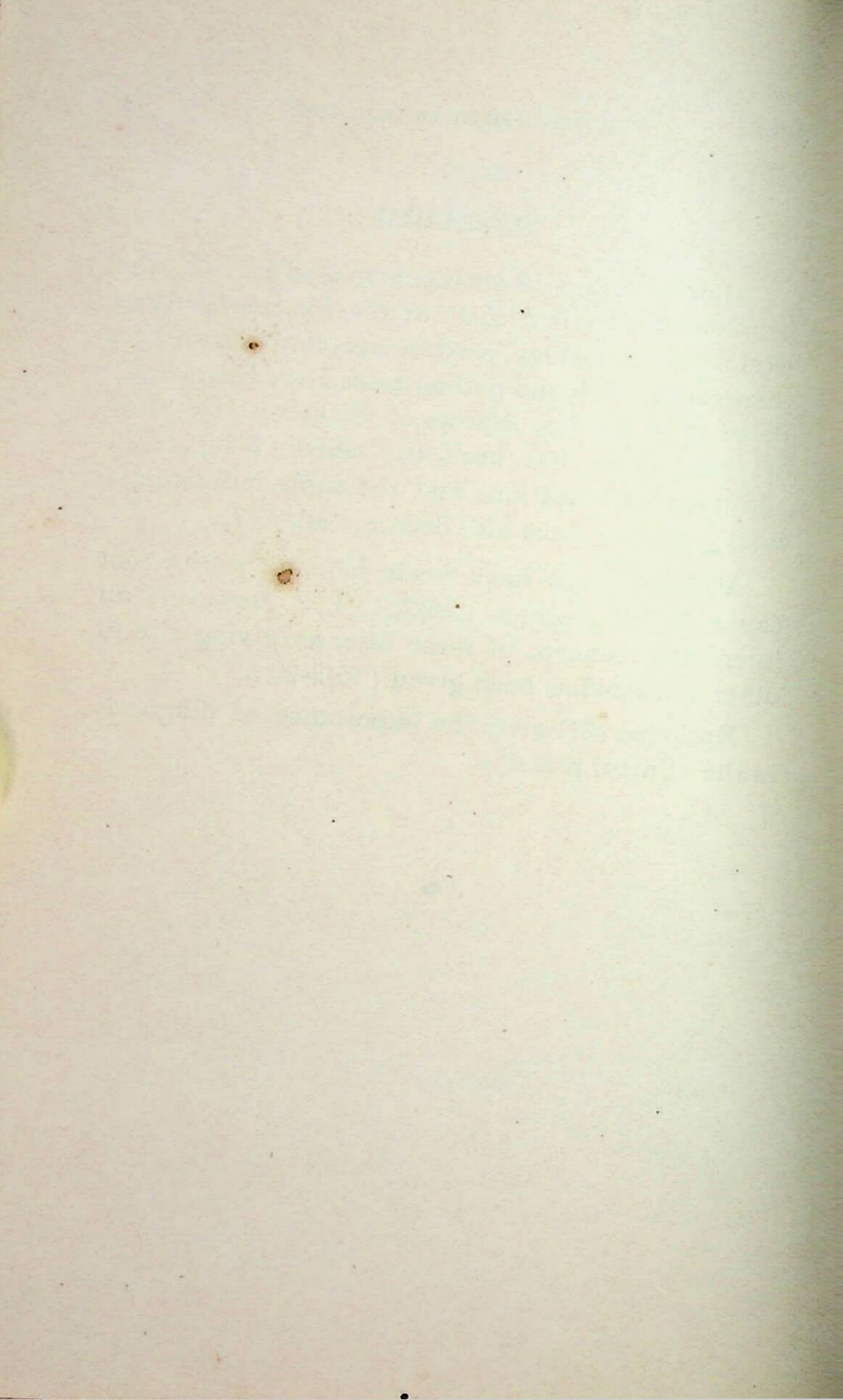
SUMMARY

After having paid obeisance to God Śiva (1), the basis and the utility (2,3) of the treatise has been explained. Aetiology, prodromata, clinical features, therapeutic trials and pathogenesis have been considered to be the five aspects of diagnosis (4); each of these terms has been explained (5-14/1); in addition, complications and the signs indicating a fatal prognosis have also been included (3).

Vitiated *doṣas* have been held to be the root cause of all diseases (14/2, 15/1); however, an interesting concept of some diseases giving rise to other diseases has been given (15/2-20).

Epilogue (21) gives the importance of diagnosis in the clinical practice.





प्रथमोऽध्यायः
CHAPTER ONE

पञ्चनिदानलक्षणम्
THE FIVE ASPECTS OF DIAGNOSIS

1. 1. Obeisance to God Śiva

प्रणम्य जगदुत्पत्तिस्थितिसंहारकारणम् ।
स्वर्गापवर्गयोर्द्वारं त्रैलोक्यशरणं शिवम् ॥ १ ॥

Having paid obeisance to God Śiva, who is the cause of the creation, maintenance and destruction of the universe, who grants heaven and liberation and who is the protector of the three worlds (I begin the treatise).

१. १. शिव-स्तुति

समस्त जगत् की उत्पत्ति, स्थिति एवं संहार को करनेवाले, स्वर्ग एवं अप-
वर्ग को प्रदान करने वाले, त्रैलोक्य के शरणदायक भगवान् शिव को प्रणाम कर
(मैं ग्रन्थ की रचना प्रारम्भ करता हूँ) ।

1. 2, 3. Basis and Utility of the Treatise¹

नानामुनीनां वचनैरिदानीं समासतः सद्भिषजां नियोगात् ।
सोपद्रवारिष्टनिदानलिङ्गो निब्रूयते रोगविनिश्चयोऽयम् ॥ २ ॥

1. The four aspects of the treatise discussed in these two verses
are :

(i) *Alhidheya* : subject matter.

(ii) *Sambandha* : interrelationship between the subject matter
and the treatise.

(iii) *Prayojana* : aims and objects of the treatise.

नानातन्त्रविहीनानां भिषजामल्पमेधसाम् ।

सुखं विज्ञातुमातङ्कमयमेव भविष्यति ॥ ३ ॥

This (treatise on the) 'Diagnosis of Diseases' is compiled on the inspiration of good doctors and is based on the teachings of numerous sages; briefly, it consists of the aetiology and clinical features (of the diseases) along with their complications and the signs which forecast death.

This (compilation) will enable the immature¹ doctors who are not conversant with the various other treatises to know about the diseases easily.

१. २, ३. शास्त्र का आधार एवं उपयोग^२

सद्भिषगों की प्रेरणा से, अनेक ऋषियों के वचनों का समावेश कर उपद्रव, अरिष्ट, निदान एवं लिंगों (रूप एवं पूर्वरूप) का संक्षेप में वर्णन करते हुए, इस रोग-विनिश्चय नामक ग्रन्थ की रचना करता हूँ ।

अनेक तन्त्रों (शास्त्रों) के ज्ञान से विहीन, अल्प बुद्धि वाले भिषगों^३ को आतङ्कों (रोगों) का ज्ञान सरलतापूर्वक कराने में यह पुस्तक सहायक होगी ।

(iv) *Adhikāri* : for whom the treatise is meant.

In the mediaeval period it was customary to keep the above four aspects in view when writing any book.

1. Beginners, i.e. medical students or undergraduates.
2. उपर्युक्त दो श्लोकों में निम्न चार भावों का समावेश किया गया है :—
 - (i) अभिधेय—विषय-द्रव्य ।
 - (ii) सम्बन्ध—विषय-द्रव्य एवं शास्त्र का पारस्परिक सम्बन्ध ।
 - (iii) प्रयोजन—शास्त्र का लक्ष्य एवं उद्देश्य ।
 - (iv) अधिकारी—शास्त्र जिसके उद्देश्य के लिए हो ।

मध्यकालीन युग में, जब पुस्तक लिखी जाती थी तो इन चार भावों पर विचार करना व्यावहारिक था ।

3. आरम्भ करनेवाला—जैसे चिकित्सक छात्र एवं स्नातक ।

1. 4. The Five Aspects¹ of Diagnosis

निदानं पूर्वरूपाणि रूपाण्युपशयस्तथा ।

संप्राप्तिश्चेति विज्ञानं रोगाणां पञ्चधा स्मृतम् ॥ ४ ॥

(अ० हृ० नि० १.२.)

Aetiology, prodromata, clinical features, therapeutic trials and pathogenesis are considered to be the five aspects of the diagnosis of diseases.

(A. H. III. 1.2)

१.४. व्याधि-ज्ञान की पाँच विधियाँ²

निदान, पूर्वरूप, रूप, उपशय एवं संप्राप्ति व्याधि-ज्ञान के पाँच उपाय हैं ।

1. 5 a-c. Aetiology

निमित्तहेत्वायतनप्रत्ययोत्थानकारणैः ।

निदानमाहुः पर्यायैः,—

(अ० हृ० नि० १.३/१-३)

1. Diagnosis could be in relation to any of these five aspects, but this chapter entitled *pañcanidana* emphasizes that all five of them (or as many of them as possible) should be taken into consideration before arriving at the final diagnosis.

These five terms are explained in the subsequent verses (M.N. 1. 5-13, loc. cit.).

All the diseases described in this treatise have been dealt with only within the framework of these five aspects.

2. रोग-विनिश्चय, किसी भी इन पाँच सिद्धान्तों के आधार पर किया जा सकता है, परन्तु पञ्चनिदान नामक पाठ में उन पाँचों सिद्धान्तों का विशेष रूप से वर्णन किया गया है जिनका रोग-विनिश्चय पक्का करने में विचार अवश्य करना चाहिए ।

इस शास्त्र में सभी व्याधियों का इन्हीं पाँच सिद्धान्तों के आधार पर वर्णन किया गया है ।

The synonyms¹ of *nidāna*² are said to be *nimitta*³, *hetu*⁴, *āyatana*⁵, *pratyaya*⁶, *utthāna*⁷ and *kāraṇa*⁸.

(A. H. III. 1.3/1-3)

१.५/१-३. निदान

निमित्त, हेतु, आयतन, प्रत्यय, उत्थान एवं कारण, निदान के पर्याय^९ बताये गये हैं।

1.5d, 6. Prodromal Features

—प्राग्रूपं येन लक्ष्यते ॥ ५ ॥

उत्पित्सुरामयो दोषविशेषेणानधिष्ठितः ।

लिङ्गमव्यक्तमल्पत्वाद्वाचाधीनां तद्यथायथम् ॥ ६ ॥

(अ० ह० नि० १.३/४,४)

The prodromal features are those which appear before the onset of the disease, that is before the involvement of the specific *doṣas*. The clinical features manifested incompletely due to the patho-

1. One of the methods to describe and interpret any term is to give its various self-explanatory synonyms, which all combined together would cover its total picture.
2. Aetiology.
3. Predisposing factors/Exogenous causes.
4. Endogenous factors.
5. Factors related to the site of lesion.
6. Nature of lesion.
7. Aggravating factors.
8. Precipitating cause.
- 2-8. These words are capable of various interpretations. One such interpretation applicable to the word *nidāna* is given here.

9. एक अर्थवाले अनेक पर्याय शब्दों के द्वारा जो एक-दूसरे से मिल कर रोग के हेतु का पूर्ण स्वरूप देते हैं। यह एक प्रकार की शैली है।

genic process being minimal should be taken as the specific prodromal features of the disease.

(A. H. III. 1.3/4,4)

१. ५/४,६. पूर्वरूप

पूर्वरूप उन्हें कहते हैं जो व्याधि के आरम्भ में उत्पन्न होते हैं जब कि विशिष्ट दोष के विकृति एवं उनके लक्षण उत्पन्न नहीं होते। अल्प मात्रा में अभिव्यक्त रूप उस व्याधि का पूर्वरूप कहा जाता है।

1. 7. Clinical Features

तदेव व्यक्तां यातं रूपमित्यभिधीयते ।

संस्थानं व्यञ्जनं लिङ्गं लक्षणं चिह्नमाकृतिः ॥ ७ ॥

(अ० ह० नि० १.५)

When the same (prodromal features) reach the stage of manifestation they are called *rūpa*¹; *samsthāna*², *vyañjana*³, *liṅga*⁴, *lakṣaṇa*⁵, *cinha*⁶ and *ākṛti*⁷ (are its synonyms).

(A. H. III. 1.5)

१. ७. रूप

जब वही (पूर्वरूपावस्था के) अव्यक्त लक्षण व्यक्त होकर व्याधि विशेष को निर्दिष्ट करें तो उन्हें रूप या संस्थान, व्यञ्जन, लिङ्ग, लक्षण, चिह्न एवं आकृति पर्याय कहा जाता है।

1. Clinical features.

2. Syndrome.

3. Manifestation of groups of diseases.

4. Typical characteristics.

5. Symptoms.

6. Signs.

7. Clinical appearance.

1-7. These terms are considered as synonyms, hence the overlapping interpretation.

1. 8,9. Therapeutic Trial¹

हेतुव्याधिविपर्यस्तविपर्यस्तार्थकारिणाम् ।

औषधान्नविहाराणामुपयोगं सुखावहम् ॥ ८ ॥

विद्यादुपशयं व्याधेः स हि सात्म्यमिति स्मृतः ।

विपरीतोऽनुपशयो व्याध्यसात्म्याभिसंज्ञितः ॥ ९ ॥

(अ० हृ० नि० १.६,७)

The trial with drugs, diet and daily regimen having specific beneficial effects by acting directly or indirectly² against the causative factors, the disease process or both, is known as *upaśaya*¹; the same is also called *sātmya*³.

(Similarly the trial with drugs, diet and regimen having) unbeneficial effects is known as *anupaśaya*² which is also termed as *vyādhi asātmya*⁴.

(A. H. III. 1.6,7).

१. ८, ९. उपशय और अनुपशय

हेतु एवं व्याधि विपरीत, हेतु व्याधि उभय विपरीत तथा हेतु एवं व्याधि विपरीतार्थकारी और हेतु-व्याधि उभय विपरीतार्थकारी औषधि, अन्न एवं विहार के सुखदायक उपयोग को उपशय कहते हैं और इसी को सात्म्य भी कहते हैं ।

इसके विपरीत अनुपशय होता है । इसे व्याध्यासात्म्य भी कहते हैं ।

1. Both *upaśaya* and *anupaśaya* can be considered as methods of establishing the diagnosis by therapeutic trial or by the method of trial and error.
2. The drugs, diet and regimen seemingly having harmful effects but really producing good results are known as *viparīṭṭhakarī*.
3. Salutory, wholesome.
4. Unsalutory, unwholesome.

1. 10-13. Pathogenesis

यथा दुष्टेन दोषेण यथा चानुविसर्पता ।

निर्वृत्तिरामयस्यासौ संप्राप्तिर्जातिरागतिः ॥ १० ॥

संख्याविकल्पप्राधान्यबलकालविशेषतः ।

सा भिद्यते यथाऽत्रैव वक्ष्यन्तेऽष्टौ ज्वरा इति ॥ ११ ॥

दोषाणां समवेतानां विकल्पोऽंशांशकल्पना ।

स्वातन्त्र्यपारतन्त्र्याभ्यां व्याघ्रेः प्राधान्यमादिशेत् ॥ १२ ॥

हेत्वादिकात्स्न्यविवर्तलाबलविशेषणम् ।

नक्तं दिनतुंभुक्तांशैर्व्याधिकालो यथामलम् ॥ १३ ॥

(अ० ह० नि० १.८-११)

The process of the production of disease by the spreading vitiated *doṣas* is called pathogenesis- (*saṁprāpti*), genesis (*jāti*) or onset (*āgati*).

That (pathogenesis) is discussed on the basis of number, specificity, predominance, severity and time:

(i) For instance, (as an example of *saṁkhyā saṁprāpti* or number) fever is said to be of eight types.

(ii) Qualitative and quantitative analysis of the involved *doṣas* is called as *vikalpa saṁprāpti* (specificity).

(iii) Consideration of the primary and secondary involvements in the disease process is known as *prādhānya saṁprāpti* (predominance).

(iv) Consideration of the severity or otherwise of the disease on the basis of the presence of all or some of the aetiological factors, (prodromal and clinical features,) etc. is known as *bala saṁprāpti* (severity of the disease).

(v) Consideration of the disease and the involved *doṣas* in relation to the nocturnal, diurnal, seasonal and dietary variations is known as the *kāla saṁprāpti* (time factor)¹.

(A. H. III. 1.8-11)

१. १०-१३. सम्प्राप्ति

स्वकारणों से दूषित दोष जिस प्रकार विसर्पण करते हुए रोग को उत्पन्न करते हैं उसे सम्प्राप्ति, जाति अथवा आगति कहते हैं ।

संख्या, विकल्प, प्राधान्य, बल और काल की विशेषता के आधार पर सम्प्राप्ति का वर्णन किया गया है । उदाहरण स्वरूप अन्यत्र (ज्वर-निदान में) कहेंगे कि ज्वर आठ प्रकार का होता है (संख्या-सम्प्राप्ति) ।

रोगोत्पत्ति में विकृति दोषों की अंशांश कल्पना की विवेचना विकल्प-सम्प्राप्ति के अन्तर्गत तथा स्वतन्त्र अथवा परतन्त्र रूप से दोषों का प्राधान्य या अप्राधान्य विवेचन प्राधान्य-सम्प्राप्ति के अन्तर्गत किया जाता है ।

हेत्वादि की सवलता या निर्वलता के आधार पर व्याधि की प्रबलता का ज्ञान बल-सम्प्राप्ति और रात्रि, दिन, ऋतु तथा भोजन के सेवन-काल के अनुसार दोष-विकृति का ज्ञान काल-सम्प्राप्ति के अन्तर्गत किया जाता है ।

1. 14/1.

इति प्रोक्तो निदानार्थः तद्व्यासेनोपदेक्ष्यते ।

(अ० ह० नि० १.१२/१)

The methods of clinical diagnosis have thus been described; their details would be discussed later.

(A. H. III. 1.12/1)

१. १४/१.

इस प्रकार रोग-निदान के सामान्य विधियों का वर्णन किया गया है जिनका विस्तृत वर्णन आगे किया जायगा ।

1. Chronobiological variations.

1. 14/2, 15/1. The Basic Aetiology of Diseases

सर्वेषामेव रोगाणां निदानं कुपिता मलाः ॥ १४ ॥

तत्प्रकोपस्य तु प्रोक्तं विविधाहितसेवनम् ।

(अ० ह० नि० १.१२/२, १३/१)

Vitiated *doṣas*¹ are necessarily involved in the aetiology (as the root cause) of all the diseases; and the cause of their excitation is said to be the indulgence in various unsalutary² regimens.³

(A. H. III. 1.12/2, 13/1)

१. १४/२, १५/१. व्याधियों का मूल हेतु

सभी व्याधियों का हेतु प्रकुपित दोष⁴ ही होता है और विविध प्रकार के अहित पदार्थों का सेवन दोष के प्रकोप का कारण होता है⁵ ।

1. 15/2–19/1. Diseases as Aetiological Agents

निदानार्थकरो रोगो रोगस्याप्युपजायते ॥ १५ ॥

तद्यथा ज्वरसन्तापाद्रक्तपित्तमुदीर्यते ।

रक्तपित्ताज्ज्वरस्ताभ्यां शोषाश्चाप्युपजायते ॥ १६ ॥

प्लीहाभिवृद्ध्या जठरं जठराच्छोथ एव च ।

अशोभ्यो जाठरं दुःखं गुल्मश्चाप्युपजायते ॥ १७ ॥

प्रतिश्यायादथो कासः कासात्संजायते क्षयः ।

क्षयो रोगस्य हेतुत्वे शोषस्याप्युपजायते ॥ १८ ॥

1. Immediate cause.

2. Distant cause.

3. The above pattern of involvement of *doṣas* is true only for the endogenous diseases. With exogenous diseases, however, the disease is produced first and the vitiation of *doṣas* follows it.

4. सन्निकृष्ट और विप्रकृष्ट कारण ।

5. दोष-प्रकोप की उपरोक्त विधियाँ निज रोगों के लिए सत्य उपयुक्त होती हैं, परन्तु आगन्तुक रोगों में व्याधि पहले उत्पन्न होती है और दोष प्रकोप बाद में होता है ।

ते पूर्व केवला रोगाः पश्चाद्वैतवर्थकारिणः ।

(च० नि० ङ. १६/२-२०/१)

Sometimes some diseases acting as aetiological agents, may give rise to other diseases.

For example :

- (i) Haemorrhagic disorders may be a sequelae of hyperpyrexia.
- (ii) Consumption may be a sequelae of haemorrhagic disorders and/or fever.
- (iii) Ascites may be a sequelae of splenomegaly.
- (iv) General anasarca may be a sequelae of ascites.
- (v) Massive ascites as well as abdominal lumps may be a sequelae of piles.
- (vi) Cough² may similarly be a sequelae of cold.¹
- (vii) Consumption³ may be a sequelae of cough.
- (viii) Severe emaciation may be a sequelae of the consumption disease.

The above diseases begin as a single disease; later on, (if not treated properly) they become the cause of other diseases.

(C. S. II. 8.16/2-20/1)

१. १५/२-१६/१. निदानार्थकर व्याधियाँ

कुछ व्याधियाँ हेतु के समान अन्य व्याधियों को उत्पन्न करती हैं—
उदाहरणार्थ ज्वर के सन्ताप से रक्तपित्त उत्पन्न हो जाता है और रक्तपित्त एवं/अथवा ज्वर से शोष उत्पन्न होता है । म्लीहा की वृद्धि से उदर-रोग तथा उदर-

1. Upper respiratory tract infection.

2. Bronchitis and ? Bronchopneumonia.

3. ? Bronchiectasis, Lung Abscess, Pulmonary Tuberculosis, etc.
(Ref. M.N. 11. 12, 13).

रोग से शोथ की उत्पत्ति होती है । अर्श से उदर-रोग तथा गुल्म की उत्पत्ति होती है ।

प्रतिश्याय से कास और कास से क्षय हो जाता है और यह क्षय, शोष नामक रोग का कारण होता है ।

उपरोक्त रोग प्रारम्भ में एक रोग ही रहते हैं । उसके पश्चात् रोग बढ़ने पर वे ही दूसरे रोगों के कारण बन जाते हैं ।

1.19/20. Co-existence of Multiple Diseases

कश्चिद्धि रोगो रोगस्य हेतुर्भूत्वा प्रशाम्यति ॥ १९ ॥

न प्रशाम्यति चाप्यन्यो हेतुत्वं कुत्सेऽपि च ।

एवं कृच्छ्रतमा नृणां दृश्यन्ते व्याधिसङ्कराः ॥ २० ॥

(च० नि० ८. २१, २२/१)

Some diseases subside after acting as an aetiological agent of another disease; while others do not subside even after having produced another disease. That is how people are seen to be suffering from multiple diseases simultaneously which are very difficult to treat.

(C. S. II. 8. 21, 22/1)

१. १९/२, २०. व्याधि-सांकर्य

इनमें से कुछ व्याधियाँ दूसरे व्याधियों को उत्पन्न कर स्वयं शान्त हो जाती हैं । इसके विपरीत कुछ रोग को उत्पन्न करके भी शान्त नहीं होतीं । इस प्रकार रोगी व्याधि-सांकर्य से कष्ट-साध्य दृष्टिगोचर होता है ।

1.21. Epilogue

तस्माद्यत्नेन सदैवैरिच्छद्भिः सिद्धिमुद्धताम् ।

ज्ञातव्यो वक्ष्यते योऽयं ज्वरादीनां विनिश्चयः ॥ २१ ॥

Therefore, good doctors wishing to attain high proficiency in the clinical practice should try to

learn efficiently the diagnosis of all diseases beginning from that of fever as described hereafter.

१. २१. निदान-पंचक ज्ञान की आवश्यकता

इसलिए चिकित्सा में सफलता की कामना करनेवाले भिषग् को ज्वरादि रोगों का विनिश्चय (पञ्चनिदानादि के द्वारा) भलीभाँति करना चाहिए ।

इति श्रीमाधवकरविरचिते माधवनिदाने पञ्चनिदानलक्षणं समाप्तम् ॥१॥

Thus ends (the first chapter entitled) 'The Five Aspects of Diagnosis' of Mādhava Nidāna, as compiled by Śrī Mādhavakara.

इस प्रकार श्रीमाधवकर द्वारा सङ्कलित माधव-निदान का पञ्चनिदानलक्षण (नामक प्रथम अध्याय) समाप्त हुआ ।

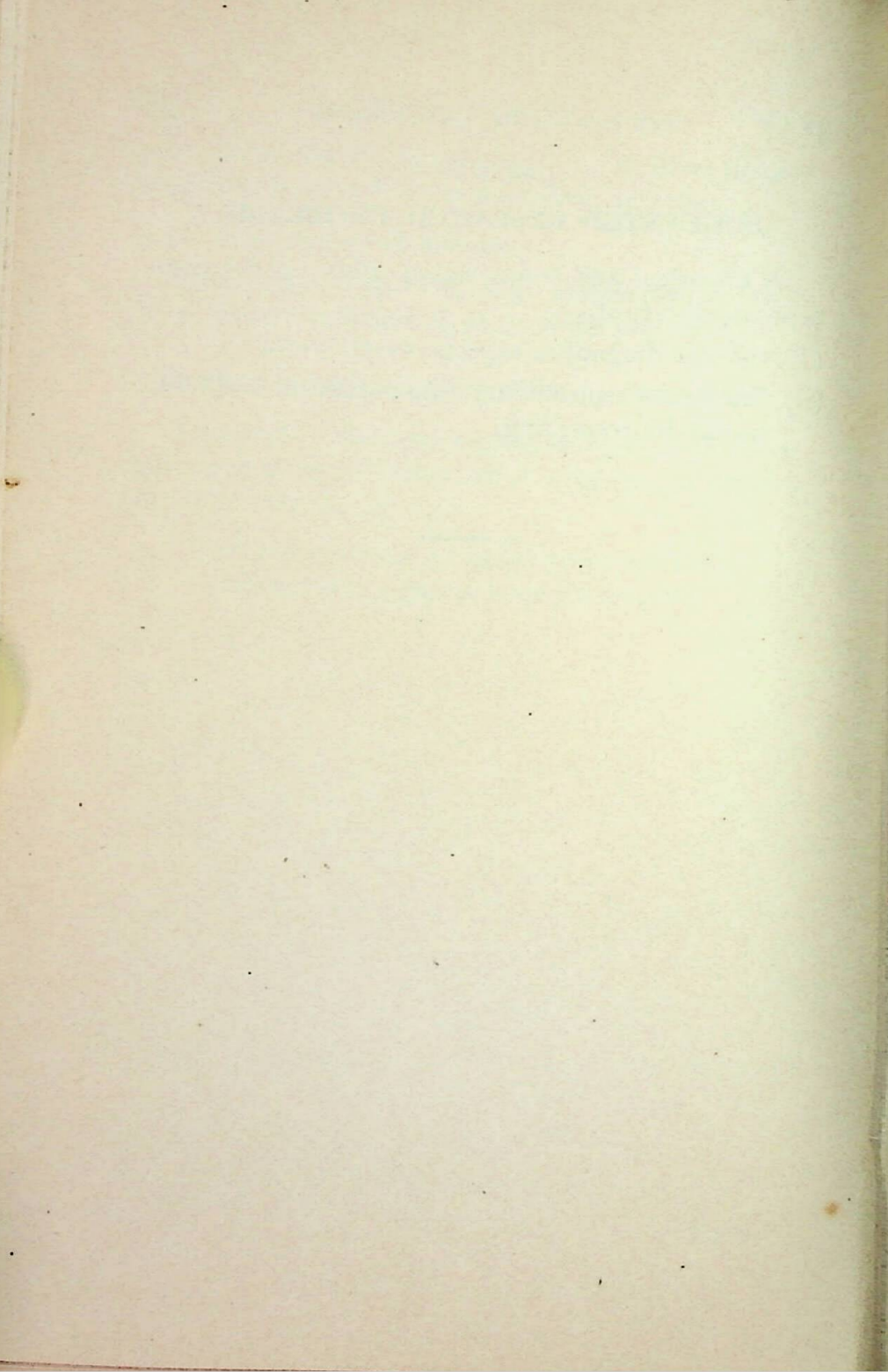
M. N. 1

SUGGESTED RESEARCH PROBLEMS

A historical and comparative study on the conceptual aspects of

- (i) the five diagnostic aspects (4-14/1), and
- (ii) the diseases producing other diseases (15/2-20) would be rewarding.





माधवनिदानम्

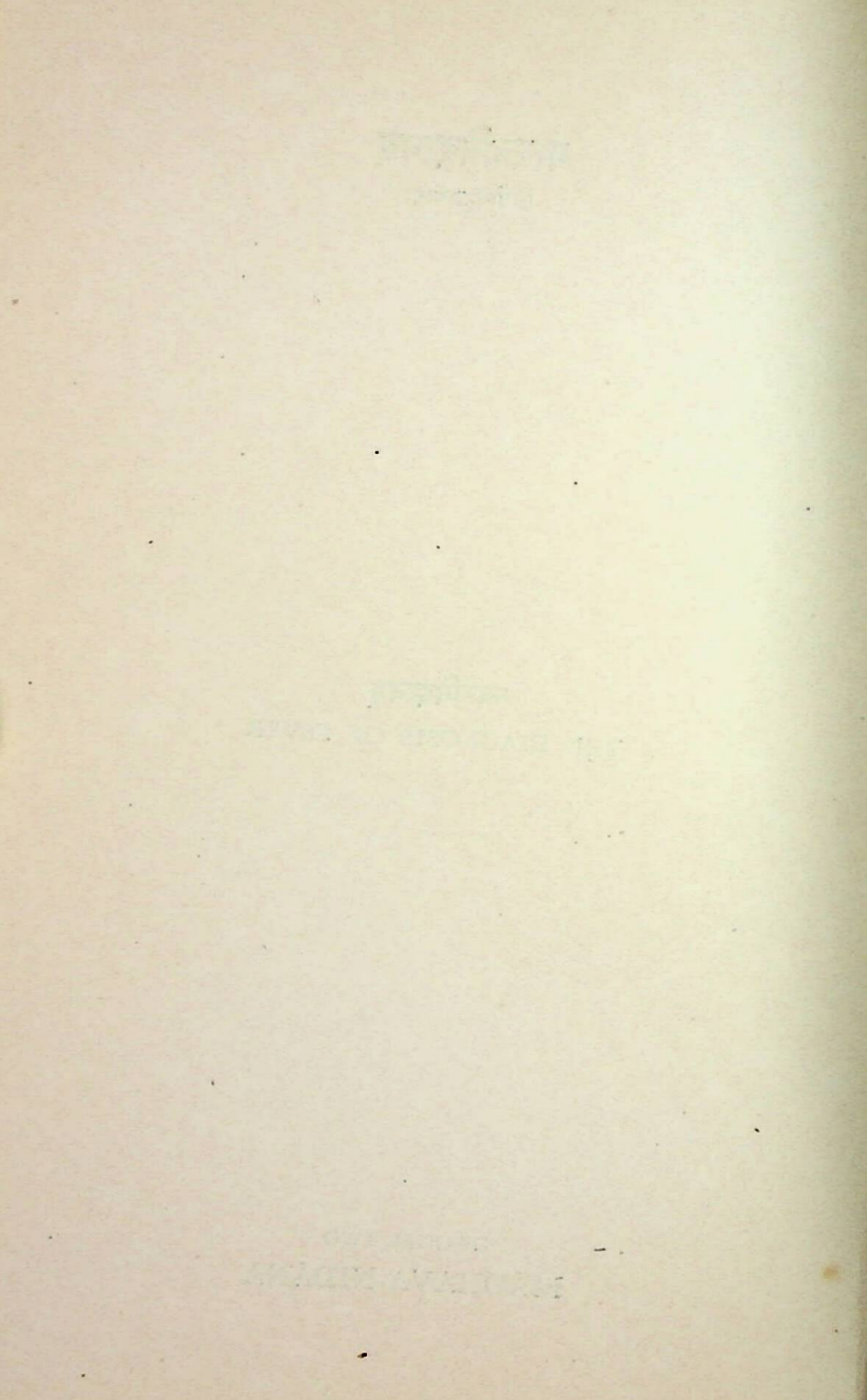
द्वितीयोऽध्यायः

ज्वरनिदानम्

THE DIAGNOSIS OF FEVER

CHAPTER TWO

MĀDHAVA-NIDĀNA



M. N. 2

SUMMARY

This chapter deals with the etiology and clinical features of 'fever' as a disease.

Its origin (1), pathogenesis (2), general (3) and prodromal (4-8) features, clinical presentation of the seven *doṣika* types (8-23), poor prognosis of the *tridoṣaja* fever (24) and the mode of remission (25/1-4) have been mentioned. Parotitis (25/5, 6) has been mentioned as a complication of the *sannipātaja* fever; another severe form of *sannipātaja* fever called the *abhinyāsa* fever (? meningo-encephalitis) has been described to be associated with coma (26).

Various types of fever caused by poisons and herbs (27, 28) and the psychogenic varieties (28-31/1) have been mentioned separately. The malarial fever (*viṣama jvara*) and its various forms, including their periodicity, has been described (31/2-39).

Two special types of fever, the *vāta-balāsaka* (? beri-beri) (40) and *pralepaka* (41) have also been described. It has been mentioned that in certain types of fever, some parts of the body could be cold and at the same time other parts could be warm (42-44). The onset of fever could also be with rigor or a burning sensation (45-47).

Different types of fever involving the specific tissues of the body have also been discussed (48-54). Prognostic features of fever have also been included (55/1, 2 and 66-74/1).

Seasonal considerations in relation to different types of fever have been given (55/3,4-58/1). The factors responsible for fever could also be established by the method of diagnosis by trial and error (58/2). 'Internal fever' (59, 60/1) and fever with external manifestations (60/2, 61/1) have been described which could be used as another method of the classification of fever.

Āma, *pacyamāna* and *nirāma* have been pointed out as the different stages of fever (61/2-65). Features on the subsidence (74/2, 3) and on getting cured (75) from fever have been given.



द्वितीयोऽध्यायः

CHAPTER TWO

ज्वरनिदानम्

THE DIAGNOSIS OF FEVER

2. 1. Mythological origin and types

दक्षापमानसंकुद्धरुद्रनिःश्वाससम्भवः ।

ज्वरोऽष्टधा पृथग्द्वन्द्वसंघातागन्तुजः स्मृतः ॥ १ ॥

Fever owes its origin¹ to the exhalation of the enraged Rudra² consequent upon (his) humiliation by *Dakṣa*³. It is known to be of eight types, viz. (three, due to each *doṣa*) separately⁴, (three due to their) dual combinations⁵, (one due to all the three *doṣas*) combined together⁶ and (the eighth one due to) exogenous⁷ causes.

-
1. The legend is interpreted by some scholars that it probably points out the origin of all types of fever to be due to some changes within the brain, (perhaps a specific disturbance at the thermo-regulating centre or in the heat-regulating mechanism of the body as a whole).
 2. God Śiva.
 3. Father-in-law of God Śiva.
 4. *Vātaja*, *Pittaja* and *Kaphaja*.
 5. *Vāta-pittaja*, *Vāta-kaphaja* and *Pitta-kaphaja*.
 6. Due to the combined vitiation of *vāta*, *pitta* and *kapha*.
 7. Out of the eight types of fever, the last is due to the exogenous causes and the previous seven are of endogenous origin.

२. १. उत्पत्ति एवं भेद

दक्ष द्वारा अपमानित क्रुद्ध रुद्र के निःश्वास से उत्पन्न ज्वर, पृथक्-पृथक् दोषों से, द्वन्द्वज, त्रिदोषज तथा आगन्तुज भेद से आठ प्रकार का होता है ।

2. 2. Pathogenesis

मिथ्याहारविहाराभ्यां दोषा ह्यामाशयाश्रयाः ।

बहिर्निरस्य कोष्ठाग्निं ज्वरदाः स्यू रसानुगाः ॥ २ ॥

Due to improper dietary and other behavioural regimen, the (vitiated) *doṣas* expel out the *koṣṭhāgni* (the digestive fire) of the stomach, which following the route of *rasa* (the nutrient fluid) produces fever.

२. २. सम्प्राप्ति

मिथ्या आहार-विहार से प्रकुपित आमाशय में आश्रित वातादि दोष रस का अनुगमन करते हुए कोष्ठाग्नि को बाहर निकाल कर ज्वर को उत्पन्न करते हैं ।

2. 3. General features

स्वेदावरोधः सन्तापः सर्वाङ्गग्रहणं तथा ।

युगपद्यत्र रोगे च स ज्वरो व्यपदिश्यते ॥ ३ ॥

(सु० उ० ३६. १३/२, १४/१)

The syndrome comprising of (the three symptoms and signs as) absence of perspiration, rise of temperature and generalized bodyache occurring simultaneously is known as fever.

(S. S. VI. 39. 13/2, 14/1)

२. ३. सामान्य लक्षण

जिस रोग में स्वेदावरोध, सन्ताप एवं सर्वाङ्ग में पीड़ा एक साथ उत्पन्न हो उसे ज्वर कहते हैं ।

2. 4-7. Prodromal Features

श्रमोऽरतिविवर्णत्वं वैरस्यं नयनप्लवः ।

इच्छाद्वेषौ मुहुश्चापि शीतवातातपादिषु ॥ ४ ॥

जृम्भाऽङ्गमर्दो गुस्ता रोमहर्षोऽरुचिस्तमः ।

अप्रहर्षश्च शीतं च भवत्युत्पत्स्यति ज्वरे ॥ ५ ॥

सामान्यतो—

—विशेषात्तु जृम्भाऽत्यर्थं समीरणात् ।

पित्तान्नयनयोर्दाहः कफादन्नारुचिर्भवेत् ॥ ६ ॥

रूपैरन्यतराभ्यां तु संसृष्टैर्द्वन्द्वजं विदुः ।

सर्वलिङ्गसमवायः सर्वदोषप्रकोपजे ॥ ७ ॥

(सु० उ० ३६. २५-२८)

Prodromal symptoms of fever, in general, are tiredness, uneasiness, discolouration of the body, bad taste, watering of the eyes, repeatedly changing longing for and aversion to cold, wind and heat, etc., yawning, bodyache, feeling of heaviness in the body, horripilation, anorexia, appearance of darkness in front of the eyes, absence of sexual pleasure and a feeling of chill.

The specific (prodromal symptoms), however, are excessive yawning in the case of *vātika* fever, burning sensation in the eyes in *paittika* and an aversion for food in the *kaphaja* fever.

The vitiation of dual *doṣas* should be known by the coupling of any of these two symptoms; and the simultaneous presence of all (the three specific) symptoms indicates vitiation of all the (three) *doṣas*.

(S. S. VI. 39. 25-28)

२. ४-७. पूर्व रूप

थकावट, कार्य में अनिच्छा, विवर्णता, मुख का स्वाद खराब होना, आँखों में पानी भरना, शीत, वायु और ताप के प्रति कभी इच्छा तथा कभी द्वेष होना, जृम्भा, अंगमर्द, गुरुता, रोमहर्ष, अरुचि, अन्धकार की प्रतीति, मैथुन में अरुचि तथा ठंडक लगना, ज्वर के सामान्य पूर्वरूप होते हैं। वात के कारण अत्यधिक जृम्भा, पित्त के कारण आँखों में जलन और कफ के कारण अन्न में अरुचि इन ज्वरों के विशिष्ट पूर्वरूप हैं। किन्हीं दो विशेष पूर्वरूप मिलने पर द्रव्दज एवं सभी लक्षणों के होने पर तीनों दोषों को प्रकुपित समझना चाहिए।

2. 8, 9. Vātaja fever

वेपथुर्विषमो वेगः कण्ठौष्ठपरिशोषणम् ।

निद्रानाशः क्षवस्तम्भो गात्राणां रौक्ष्यमेव च ॥ ८ ॥

शिरोहृद्गात्ररुग्बक्त्रवैरस्यं गाढविट्कता ।

शूलाध्माने जृम्भणं च भवन्त्यनिलजे ज्वरे ॥ ९ ॥

(सु० उ० ३६. २६, ३०)

Rigor, irregular course (of fever), dryness of the throat and lips, insomnia, absence of sneezing, dryness of the body, headache, precordial pain, body-ache, bad taste in the mouth, hard stools, colics, flatulence and yawning occur in fever due to *vāta*.

(Variant of S. S. VI. 39. 29, 30).

२. ८, ९. वातज्वर

शरीर में कम्प, ज्वर का विषम वेग, कण्ठ और ओष्ठ का सूखना, निद्रानाश, छींक न आना, गात्र में रूक्षता, सिर, हृदय और शरीर में पीड़ा, मुख वैरस्य, मल का कठोर होना, शूल, आध्मान और जृम्भा : ये वातिक ज्वर के लक्षण होते हैं।

2. 10, 11. Pittaja fever

वेगस्तीक्ष्णोऽतिसारश्च निद्राल्पत्वं तथा वमिः ।

कण्ठौष्ठमुखनासानां पाकः स्वेदश्च जायते ॥ १० ॥

प्रलापो वक्त्रकटुता मूर्च्छा दाहो मदस्तृषा ।

पीतविण्मूत्रनेत्रत्वं पैत्तिके भ्रम एव च ॥ ११ ॥

(सु० उ० ३६. ३१, ३२)

Hyperpyrexia, diarrhoea, disturbed sleep, vomiting, inflammation of the throat, the lips, the mouth and the nose, and (excessive) perspiration, as also delirium, acrid taste in the mouth, fainting, burning sensation, inebriation, thirst, yellowness of stools, urine and eyes, and disorientation occur in the fever due to *pitta*.

(S. S. VI. 39. 31, 32)

२. १०, ११. पित्तज्वर

ज्वर का वेग तीव्र होना, अतिसार, निद्रा की कमी, वमन, कण्ठ, ओष्ठ, नासा एवं मुख में पाक होना तथा पसीने का आना, प्रलाप, मुख में कड़ुवापन, मूर्च्छा, दाह, मद एवं तृष्णा, मल, मूत्र एवं नेत्र का पीला होना तथा भ्रम पैत्तिक ज्वर के लक्षण हैं ।

2. 12, 13. Kaphaja fever

स्तमित्यं स्तिमितो वेग आलस्यं मधुरास्यता ।

शुक्लमूत्रपुरीषत्वं स्तम्भस्तृप्तिरथापि च ॥ १२ ॥

गौरवं शीतमुत्क्लेदो रोमहर्षोऽतिनिद्रता ।

स्रोतोरोधो रुगल्पत्वं प्रसेको लवणास्यता ॥

नात्युष्णगात्रता छर्दिलालास्रावोऽविपाकता ।

प्रतिश्यायोऽरुचिःकासःकफजेऽक्ष्णोश्च शुक्लता ॥ १३ ॥

(सु० उ० ३६. ३३, ३४)

A sensation of dampness, low grade rise (of temperature), lassitude, sweet taste in the mouth,

light coloured urine and stools, stiffness and a feeling of satiety, a feeling of heaviness, chills, nausea, horripilation, excessive sleep, obstruction of the channels, mild pain, retching, saltish taste in the mouth, not excessively raised temperature of the body, vomiting, (excessive) salivation and indigestion, coryza, aversion to food, cough, and whitishness of the eyes occur in the *kaphaja* fever.

(Variant of S. S. VI. 39, 33, 34)

२. १२, १३. कफ ज्वर

शरीर का आर्द्र वस्त्र से आच्छादित प्रतीत होना, ज्वर का मन्द वेग होना, आलस्य, मुख का स्वाद मीठा होना, मल एवं मूत्र का श्वेत होना, स्तम्भ, तृप्ति, गौरव, शीत का अनुभव, उत्क्लेद, रोमहर्ष, अतिनिद्रा का होना, स्रोतों में अवरोध, शरीर में अल्प पीड़ा, प्रसेक, मुख का स्वाद नमकीन होना, शरीर का ताप अधिक न होना, छर्दि, लालास्राव, अविपाक, प्रतिश्याय, अरुचि, कास तथा नेत्र की शुक्लता कफ ज्वर के लक्षण हैं ।

2. 14, 15/1. Vāta-pittaja fever

तृष्णा मूर्च्छा भ्रमो दाहः स्वप्ननाशः शिरोरुजा ।

कण्ठास्यशोषो वमथू रोमहर्षोऽरुचिस्तमः ॥ १४ ॥

पर्वभेदश्च जृम्भा च वातपित्तज्वराकृतिः ।

(सु० उ० ३६. ४७, ४८/१)

Thirst, fainting, dizziness, a burning sensation, insomnia, headache, dryness of the throat and the mouth, vomiting, horripilation, anorexia, a feeling of darkness (before the eyes), pain in the joints and yawning are the features of *vāta-pittaja* fever.

(S. S. VI. 39. 47, 48/1)

२. १४, १५/१. वात-पित्तज ज्वर

तृष्णा, मूर्छा, भ्रम, दाह, निद्रानाश, शिर में पीड़ा, कण्ठ एवं मुख का सूखना, वमन, रोमहर्ष, अरुचि, आँखों के आगे अँधेरा छा जाना, सन्धियों में पीड़ा तथा जुम्भा वातपित्तज ज्वर के लक्षण होते हैं।

2. 15/2, 16. Vāta-kaphaja fever

स्तैमित्यं पर्वणां भेदो निद्रा गौरवमेव च ॥ १५ ॥

शिरोग्रहः प्रतिश्यायः कासः स्वेदाप्रवर्तनम् ।

सन्तापो मध्यवेगश्च वातश्लेष्मज्वराकृतिः ॥ १६ ॥

(सु० उ० ३६. ४८/२, ४९)

A feeling of dampness (as if being covered with wet clothes), pain in the joints, sleepiness, as also a feeling of heaviness, headache, coryza, cough, excessive perspiration and a moderate rise of temperature are the features of *vāta-kaphaja* fever.

(S. S. VI. 39. 48/2, 49)

२. १५/२, १६. वातकफज ज्वर

स्तैमित्य, पर्वों में पीड़ा, निद्रा, गौरव, शिरोग्रह, प्रतिश्याय, कास, स्वेद की अधिकता तथा ज्वर का वेग मध्यम होना वातकफज ज्वर के लक्षण होते हैं।

2. 17. Kapha-pittaja fever

लित्ततिक्तास्यता तन्द्रा मोहः कासोऽरुचिस्तृषा ।

मुहुर्दाहो मुहुः शीतं श्लेष्मपित्तज्वराकृतिः ॥ १७ ॥

(सु० उ० ३६. ५०)

A feeling of stickiness and bitter taste in the mouth, drowsiness, mental confusion, cough, anorexia, thirst and a frequently changing feeling of a

burning sensation and cold are the features of *kapha-pittaja* fever.

(S. S. VI. 39. 50)

२. १७. कफपित्तज ज्वर

मुख का लिप्त होना तथा कडुवापन, तन्द्रा, मोह, कास, अरुचि, तृष्णा और बार-बार कभी उष्ण तथा कभी शीत की अनुभूति होना कफपित्तज ज्वर के लक्षण होते हैं ।

2. 18-23. Sannipātika (Tridoṣaja) fever

क्षणे दाहः क्षणे शीतमस्थिसन्धिशिरोरुजा ।
 सास्त्रावे कलुषे रक्ते निर्भुग्ने चापि लोचने ॥ १८ ॥
 सस्वनौ सरुजौ कणौ कण्ठः शूकैरिवावृतः ।
 तन्द्रा मोहः प्रलापश्च कासः श्वासोऽरुचिर्भ्रमः ॥ १९ ॥
 परिदग्धा खरस्पर्शा जिह्वा स्रस्ताङ्गता परम् ।
 धीवनं रक्तपित्तस्य कफेनोन्मिश्रितस्य च ॥ २० ॥
 शिरसो लोठनं तृष्णा निद्रानाशो हृदि व्यथा ।
 स्वेदमूत्रपुरीषाणां चिराद्दर्शनमल्पशः ॥ २१ ॥
 कृशत्वं नातिगात्राणां प्रततं कण्ठकूजनम् ।
 कोठानां श्यावरक्तानां मण्डलानां च दर्शनम् ॥ २२ ॥
 मूकत्वं स्रोतसां पाको गुरुत्वमुदरस्य च ।
 चिरात्पाकश्च दोषाणां सन्निपातज्वराकृतिः ॥ २३ ॥

(च० चि० ३. १०३/२-१०६/१)

A burning sensation at one moment and a feeling of coldness at the next moment, pain in the bones and joints, headache, and also dirty, red and sunken eyes with a discharge, bilateral earache with tinnitus, a sensation in the throat as if it is full of bristles, drowsiness, mental confusion, delirium,

cough, dyspnoea, anorexia, giddiness, the tongue looks (extremely dry) as if burnt and feels rough to touch, extreme laxity of the limbs, spitting of blood or else of a rusty sputum, rolling of the head, thirst, insomnia, precordial pain, scanty sweat, urine and stools at long intervals, almost extreme emaciation of the body, frequent sound from the throat, urticarial patches, appearance of blackish-red¹ rashes, loss of speech, suppuration of the channels, distension of the abdomen and delayed disintegration of the *doṣas* are the features of the *sannipātika* fever (due to all the three combined *doṣas*).

(C. S. VI. 3. 103/2-109/1)

२. १८-२३. सन्निपातिक ज्वर

क्षण में दाह एवं क्षण में शीत, अस्थि, सन्धि एवं सिर में वेदना, नेत्रों का सावयुक्त, मलिन, लाल तथा धँसे होना, सनसनाहट की ध्वनि के साथ दोनों कानों में पीड़ा, कण्ठ का यवशूकों से आवृत्त होना, तन्द्रा, मोह, प्रलाप, कास, श्वास, अरुचि, भ्रम, जिह्वा का झुलसी हुई तथा खुरदरी होना, अंगों में बहुत अधिक शिथिलता, रक्त-पित्त एवं कफमिश्रित छीवन, शिर का हिलाने रहना, तृष्णा, निद्रानाश एवं हृदय में पीड़ा, स्वेद, मूत्र एवं पुरीष का देर से तथा अल्प मात्रा में निकलना, शरीर का अत्यधिक कृश न होना, कण्ठ में निरन्तर खुरखुराहट होना, चकत्ते उभर आना, शरीर पर श्याव-रक्त वर्ण के दाने निकलना, रोगी का मूक हो जाना, खोतसों में पाक हो जाना, उदर में भारीपन तथा दोषों का परिपाक देर में होना सन्निपातिक ज्वर के लक्षण हैं।

2. 24. The Prognosis of Sannipātika Fever

दोषे विबद्धे नष्टेऽन्तौ सर्वसम्पूर्णलक्षणः ।

सन्निपातज्वरोऽसाध्यः, कृच्छ्रसाध्यस्ततोऽन्यथा ॥२४॥

(च० चि० ३. १०६/२, ११०/१)

1. Chocolate coloured.

The *sannipātika* fever (due to all the three *doṣas*) becomes incurable when the *doṣas* are obstructed, the metabolic fire is (almost) extinguished and all the clinical features are fully manifest; otherwise, it is difficult to cure.

(C. S. VI. 3. 109/2, 110/1)

२. २४. सन्निपातज्वर की साध्यासाध्यता

दोषों के विवद्ध होने पर, अग्नि के नष्ट होने पर और सर्वसम्पूर्ण लक्षणों से युक्त होने पर सन्निपातिक ज्वर असाध्य होता है, अन्यथा यह कृच्छ्रसाध्य रहता है ।

2. 25/1, 2. Course of Sannipātika fever

सप्तमे दिवसे प्राप्ते दशमे द्वादशेऽपि वा ।

पुनर्घोस्तरो भूत्वा प्रशमं याति हन्ति वा ॥ १ ॥

(सु० उ० ३६. ४५/२, ४६/१)

सप्तमी द्विगुणा चैव नवम्येकादशी तथा ।

एषा त्रिदोषमर्यादा मोक्षाय च वधाय च ॥ २ ॥

(अ० हृ० नि० २. ६२/२, ६३/१)

By the seventh day, or even by the tenth or the twelfth (day), the condition (*sannipātika* fever) subsides or else it may exacerbate again (and this crisis could be) followed by death.

(S. S. VI. 39. 45/2, 46/1)

The time limits of recovery from or death due to the *sannipātika* fever are twice that of seven, nine and eleven days (i.e. 14, 18 and 22 days respectively).

(A. H. III. 2. 62/2, 63/1)

२. २५/१, २. सन्निपातज्वर की मर्यादा

७वें दिन, १०वें अथवा १२वें दिन सन्निपातिक ज्वर पुनः अत्यन्त प्रबल होकर या तो शान्त हो जाता है अथवा रोगी का नाश कर देता है । त्रिदोषज

ज्वर से मोक्ष या मृत्यु की काल-मर्यादा सात, नौ तथा ग्यारह के द्विगुणों (अर्थात् १४, १८ तथा २२) दिनों की है ।

2. 25/3. Parotitis as a complication of Tridoṣaja fever

सन्निपातज्वरस्यान्ते कर्णमूले सुदारुणः ।

शोथः संजायते तेन कश्चिदेव प्रमुच्यते ॥ २५ ॥

(च० चि० ३. २८७/२, २८८/१)

If during the final stage of the *sannipātaja* fever a very painful (inflammatory) swelling occurs at the base of the ear, only a few would recover from it.

(C. S. VI. 3. 287/2, 288/1)

२. २५/३. कर्णमूलशोथ (उपकर्णग्रन्थिशोथ, पैरोटाइटिस)

सन्निपातिक ज्वर के अन्त में कर्णमूल में दारुण शोथ हो जाने पर कोई-ही रोगी बच पाते हैं ।

2. 26/1-5. Abhinyāsa fever (? Meningo-encephalitis)

त्रयः प्रकुपिता दोषा उरःस्रोतोऽनुगामिनः ।

आमाभिवृद्ध्या ग्रथिता बुद्धीन्द्रियमनोगताः ॥ १ ॥

जनयन्ति महाघोरमभिन्यासं ज्वरं दृढम् ।

श्रुतौ नेत्रे प्रसुप्तिः स्यान्न चेष्टां कान्चिदीहते ॥ २ ॥

न च दृष्टिर्भवेत्तस्य समर्था रूपदर्शने ।

न घ्राणं न च संस्पर्शं शब्दं वा नैव बुध्यते ॥ ३ ॥

शिरो लोठयतेऽभीक्ष्णमाहारं नाभिनन्दति ।

कूजति तुद्यते चैव परिवर्तनमीहते ॥ ४ ॥

अल्पं प्रभाषते किञ्चिदभिन्यासः स उच्यते ।

प्रत्याख्यातः स भूयिष्ठः कश्चिदेवात्र सिध्यति ॥ ५ ॥

(All) the three aggravated *doṣas*, following the channels going upwards from the chest get localised

in the area of the sensory, (motor) and the psychic centres and get knotted due to an excess of the *āma doṣa* (exudates). This produces the very serious fulminating *abhinyāsa* fever. The ears and the eyes become functionally inactive and the patient does not like to do any movement. Neither the eyes are capable of seeing anything, nor there is any sense of smell, touch or sound. The patient keeps on shaking the head, does not relish any food, makes sounds like that of a pigeon, feels pain as if pricked, desires (frequent) change of posture and speaks a little infrequently; this condition is called *abhinyāsa* (fever). He should be treated only after due warning as only a few would survive from it.

२. २६/१-५. अभिन्यास ज्वर

तीनों कुपित दोष ऊर्ध्व स्त्रोतों में अनुगमन करते हुए आमदोष की अत्यधिक वृद्धि के कारण ग्रथित होकर इन्द्रिय बुद्धियों एवं मन को प्रभावित कर निश्चय ही अभिन्यास नामक भयंकर ज्वर को उत्पन्न करते हैं। इससे रोगी कानों से सुनने तथा नेत्र से देखने में असमर्थ हो जाता है तथा कोई भी चेष्टा प्रिय नहीं लगती। उसका नेत्र रूप को ग्रहण करने में असमर्थ हो जाता है तथा घ्राण, स्पर्श एवं शब्द ज्ञान नष्ट हो जाता है। वह सिर को इधर-उधर पटकता रहता है तथा उसकी भोजन में अनिच्छा होती है। रोगी कबूतर के सदृश कूजता है। उसके शरीर में चुभन-सी पीड़ा होती है, उसे बार-बार करवटें बदलने की इच्छा होती है तथा वह कभी-कभी थोड़ा सा बोलता है। इसे अभिन्यास ज्वर कहते हैं। इसकी प्रत्याख्येय चिकित्सा करनी चाहिए, क्योंकि इससे ग्रसित कोई ही रोगी बच पाता है।

2. 26/6. Fever due to Exogenous causes

अभिघाताभिचाराभ्यामभिशापाभिषङ्गतः ।

आगन्तुर्जायते दौर्षैर्यथास्वं तं विभावयेत् ॥ २६ ॥

Fever arising from the exogenous causes are due to trauma, magical spells, curses and possession by the evil spirits; these should be ascertained by the characteristics of the specific individual *doṣas*.

२. २६/६. आगन्तुक ज्वर

अभिघात, अभिचार, अभिशाप तथा अभिषङ्ग से आगन्तुक ज्वर होता है। इसमें भी लक्षणों के आधार पर दोषों की कल्पना करनी चाहिए।

2. 27. Fever due to poisons

श्यावास्या विषकृते तथाऽतिसार एव च ।

भक्तारुचिः पिपासा च तोदश्च सहमूर्च्छया ॥ २७ ॥

(सु० उ० ३६. ७६/२, ७७/१)

The fever produced after poisoning is associated with cyanosis of the face, as well as diarrhoea and aversion to food, thirst, and pricking pain with fainting.

(Variant of S. S. VI. 39. 76/2, 77/1)

२. २७. विषजन्य ज्वर

विषजन्य ज्वर में मुख का वर्ण श्याव हो जाता है तथा अतिसार, अरुचि, पिपासा, तोद तथा मूर्च्छा के लक्षण पाये जाते हैं।

2. 28/1. Fever due to the odour of herbal drugs

(Hay fever)

ओषधीगन्धजे मूर्च्छा शिरोरुग्मयुः क्षवः ।

(सु० उ० ३६. ७७/२)

Fever due to the (inhalation of the) odour of the

herbal drugs¹ is associated with fainting, headache, vomiting and sneezing.

(S. S. VI. 39. 77/2)

२. २८/१. ओषधिगंधज ज्वर

ओषधिवर्ग के गन्ध से उत्पन्न ज्वर में मूर्च्छा, शिरःशूल, वमन एवं छींकें आती हैं ।

2. 28/2, 29/1. **Fever due to the unfulfilled sexual desire**

कामजे चित्तविभ्रंशस्तन्द्राऽऽलस्यमभोजनम् ॥ २८ ॥

हृदये वेदना चास्य गात्रं च परिशुष्यति ।

(सु० उ० ३६. ७८)

The fever resulting from (the non-fulfilment of or excessive desire for) sex is characterised by a nervous breakdown, drowsiness, lassitude, anorexia and precordial pain; eventually he gets emaciated.

(S. S. VI. 39. 78)

२. २८/२, २९/१. कामज्वर

कामज ज्वर में चित्त-विभ्रंश, तन्द्रा, आलस्य, भोजन से द्वेष, हृदय में वेदना तथा शरीर का सूखना लक्षण होते हैं ।

2. 29/2,3, 30/1. **Fever due to the psychic trauma**

भयात्प्रलापः शोकाच्च भवेत्कोपाच्च वेपथुः ।

अभिचाराभिशापाभ्यां मोहस्तृष्णा च जायते ॥ २९ ॥

भूताभिषङ्गादुद्वेगो हास्यरोदनकम्पनम् ।

(सु० उ० ३६. ७९, ८०/१)

Fever due to fright or grief is associated with delirium, that due to anger with tremor, whereas

1. S. S. I. 1. 29 (F.P.C. p. 30).

that due to the magical spell or curse is accompanied with confusion and thirst. Fever under the influence of bad spirits produces uneasiness, bursts of laughter, weeping or shivering (in the patient).

(S. S. VI. 39. 79, 80/1)

२. २६/२, ३, ३०/१. मनोविकार ज्वर

भय अथवा शोक से उत्पन्न ज्वर में प्रलाप एवं क्रोधजन्य ज्वर में कम्पन का वाहुल्य होता है। अभिचार एवं अभिशाप से होनेवाले ज्वर में मोह और तृष्णा होती है। भूताभिषङ्गज ज्वर में उद्वेग, कदाचित हास्य एवं कदाचित रोने की प्रवृत्ति तथा कम्पन होता है।

2. 30/2, 31/1. Influence of psychic states (emotions) on the somatic doṣas

कामशोकभयाद्वायुः क्रोधात्पित्तं, त्रयो मलाः ॥ ३० ॥

भूताभिषङ्गात्कुप्यन्ति भूतसामान्यलक्षणाः ।

(च० चि० ३. ११५/२, ११६/१)

Lust, grief and fear excite *vāta* and anger excites *pitta*; whereas, possession by the evil spirits excites all the three *doṣas* and this is also associated with the general clinical features of the affliction by the corresponding evil spirit.

(C. S. VI. 3. 115/2, 116/1)

२. ३०/२, ३१/१. विविध मनोविकारों का शारीरिक दोषों पर प्रभाव

काम, शोक एवं भय से वायु तथा क्रोध से पित्त का प्रकोप होता है। भूत के सामान्य लक्षणों के साथ भूताभिषङ्ग से तीनों दोषों का प्रकोप होता है।

2. 31/2, 32/1. Pathogenesis of intermittent fever (Malaria)

दोषोऽल्पोऽहितसंभूतो ज्वरोऽसृष्टस्य वा पुनः ॥ ३१ ॥

धातुमन्यतमं प्राप्य करोति विषमज्वरम् ।

(सु० उ० ३६. ६६)

In case the pathogenic element is small in quantity or else if some residual pathogenic element remains just after recovery from fever and if the same gets exacerbated due to indulgence in unbeneficial (diet and behavioural) regimen and gets localised in the various tissues it produces the corresponding types of intermittent fever.

(S. S. VI. 39. 66)

२. ३१/२, ३२/१. विषम ज्वर की सम्प्राप्ति

ज्वर के छूट जानेपर भी अवशिष्ट अल्पदोष मिथ्या आहार-विहार से पुनः प्रकुपित होकर एक या अधिक धातुओं को प्राप्त होकर विषम ज्वर को उत्पन्न करता है ।

2. 32/2, 33. Tissue locations in Viṣama Jvara (Malaria)

सन्ततं रसरक्तस्थः सोऽन्येद्युः पिशिताश्रितः ॥ ३२ ॥

मेदोगतस्तृतीयेऽह्नि, त्वस्थिमज्जगतः पुनः ।

कुर्याच्चतुर्थकं घोरमन्तकं रोगसंकरम् ॥ ३३ ॥

(सु० उ० ३६. ६७, ६८/१)

(The pathogenic element in) the continuous fever (and the fever with a double rise of temperature in a day) subsists in the plasma and the blood (respectively), (in) the quotidian (intermittent) fever in the muscular tissues, (in) the tertian type in the fatty tissue and (in) the quartan type which is a very serious, complicated and (almost) fatal disease in the bones and the bone-marrow.

(S. S. VI. 39. 67, 68/1)

२. ३२/२, ३३. विषम ज्वर में दोषों की स्थिति

सन्तत (तथा सतत) ज्वर (क्रमशः) रस एवं रक्ताश्रित होते हैं एवं अन्येद्युष्क ज्वर मांसाश्रित होता है । तृतीयक ज्वर मेदगत तथा दोषों का अस्थि एवं

मज्जागत होने पर अत्यन्त ही विनाशकारी और अनेक उपद्रवयुक्त चतुर्थक ज्वर उत्पन्न होता है ।

2. 34-36/1. Periodicity in (Malaria) fever

सप्ताहं वा दशाहं वा द्वादशाहमथापि वा ।
 सन्तत्या योजविसर्गी स्यात्सन्ततः सनिगद्यते ॥ ३४ ॥
 अहोरात्रे सततको द्वौ कालावनुवर्तते ।
 अन्येद्युष्कस्त्वहोरात्र एककालं प्रवर्तते ॥ ३५ ॥
 तृतीयकस्तृतीयेऽह्नि, चतुर्थेऽह्निः चतुर्थकः ।

(सु० उ० ३६. ६६-७१/१)

The fever in which a rise of temperature continues without any break for a period of seven, ten or twelve days, is known as a continuous fever (*santata jvara*). In *santata* type of fever, there is a double rise of temperature in a day. In *anyedyuska* type of fever, temperature rises once only in twenty-four hours. In the tertian type of fever (*tritiyaka jvara*) temperature rises on alternate days; and, in the quartan type of fever (*caturthaka jvara*), on every fourth day.

(S. S. VI. 39. 69-71/1)

२. ३४-३६/१. सन्ततादि ज्वरों के लक्षण

जो ज्वर लगातार सात दिन, दस दिन अथवा बारह दिन तक बना रहता हो उसे सन्तत ज्वर कहते हैं ।

जिस ज्वर के दिन रात में दो आवेग आते हों उसे सतत ज्वर कहते हैं । दिन में एक बार आवेग आनेवाले ज्वर को अन्येद्युष्क कहते हैं ।

तृतीयक ज्वर प्रति तीसरे दिन तथा चतुर्थक ज्वर चौथे दिन आता है ।

2. 36/2. Aetiology of Intermittent fever

केचिद्भूताभिषङ्गोत्थं ब्रुवते विषमज्वरम् ॥ ३६ ॥

(सु० उ० ३६. ६८/२)

Some authorities hold the view that intermittent types of fever are due to infection (affliction/possession) by organisms (superhuman agencies/evil spirits).

(S. S. VI. 39. 68/2)

२. ३६/२. विषम ज्वर का कारण

कुछ विद्वान विषम ज्वर को भूताभिषङ्ग के कारण उत्पन्न मानते हैं ।

2. 37. Tertian fever

कफपित्तात्रिकग्राही पृष्ठाद्वातकफात्मकः ।

वातपित्ताच्छिरोग्राही त्रिविधः स्यात्तृतीयकः ॥ ३७ ॥

(च० चि० ३. ७१)

• *Tṛtiyaka* (tertian) fever is of three varieties :

(1) One begins due to (the dual combination of vitiated) *kapha* and *pitta* (by pain) which afflicts the sacral region (first, followed by fever); (2) due to (the dual combination of) *vāta* and *kapha* which afflicts the back; and (3) due to (the dual combination of) *vāta* and *pitta* when it afflicts the head (first).

(C. S. VI. 3. 71)

२. ३७. तृतीयक ज्वर

यह तीन प्रकार का होता है । कफ पित्त जन्य ज्वर प्रथम त्रिक प्रदेश में, वात कफज पृष्ठ प्रदेश में तथा वात पित्तज शिर प्रदेश में पीड़ा करके ज्वर की उत्पत्ति करते हैं ।

2. 38. Quartan fever

चतुर्थको दर्शयति प्रभावं द्विविधं ज्वरः ।

जङ्घाभ्यां श्लैष्मिकः पूर्वं शिरस्तोऽनिलसंभवः ॥ ३८ ॥

(च० चि० ३. ७२)

Caturthaka (quartan) fever manifests its effect in (either of these) two ways : (1) those caused by *śleṣma* begin with an affliction (pain) in the calves; and (2) those caused by *vāta* begin with a headache.
(C. S. VI. 3. 72)

२. ३८. चतुर्थक ज्वर

चतुर्थक ज्वर का प्रभाव दो प्रकार का होता है । कफ दोष के बाहुल्य से प्रथम पिंडलियों में तथा वायु के बाहुल्य से शिर में वेदना को उत्पन्न करके तत्पश्चात् ज्वर का वेग आता है ।

2. 39. Reversed Quartan fever

विषमज्वर एवान्यश्चतुर्थकविपर्ययः ।

(च.० चि.० ३.७३/१)

स मध्ये ज्वरयत्यह्नी आदावन्ते च मुञ्चति ॥ ३९ ॥

Further, *caturthaka viparyaya* (reversed quartan) fever is another variety of intermittent fever.

(C. S. VI. 3. 73/1)

In this, fever is present in the middle¹ two days and the patient is free (apyrexial) from it in the beginning² and at the end³ (of the cycle⁴ of four days).

२. ३९. चतुर्थक विपर्यय ज्वर

चतुर्थक विपर्यय ज्वर भी विषम ज्वर का एक प्रकार है । इसमें मध्य में

1. Days two and three.
2. Day one.
3. Day four.
4. This type of fever runs in a cycle of 4 days. Fever is not present on day one and day four but is present on day two and day three.

दो दिन ज्वर आता है तथा इसके आदि और अन्त के दिनों में ज्वर नहीं रहता है ।

2. 40. Vāta-balāsaka fever (? Beri-Beri)

नित्यं मन्दज्वरो रूक्षः शूनकस्तेन सीदति ।

स्तब्धाङ्गः श्लेष्मभूयिष्ठो वातबलासकी ॥ ४० ॥

(अ० सं० नि० २.८८/२, ८९/१)

The patient suffering from *vāta balāsaka* fever has a low grade fever all the time, dry skin, oedema, fatigue, and numbness of the limbs; it is due to the predominance of *śleṣman*.

(A. S. III. 2. 88/2, 89/1)

२. ४०. वात-बलासक ज्वर

वात-बलासक ज्वर से पीड़ित रोगी में नित्य मंद ज्वर रहता है तथा त्वचा शुष्क रहती है और शोथ एवं अवसाद के साथ रोगी के अंगों में जकड़ाहट होती है । यह कफ दोष के बाहुल्य से होता है ।

2. 41. Pralepaka fever

प्रलिम्पन्निव गात्राणि धर्मेण गौरवेण च ।

मन्दज्वरविलेपी च सशीतः स्यात्प्रलेपकः ॥ ४१ ॥

(अ० सं० नि० २.८७/२, ८८/१)

When the patient feels as if covered with sweat, has heaviness in the body along with a low grade fever and a sensation of coldness, he is suffering from *pralepaka* fever.

(A. S. II. 2. 87/2, 88/1)

२. ४१. प्रलेपक ज्वर

जब रोगी का शरीर स्वेद से लिप्त हुआ प्रतीत होता है, शरीर में भारीपन

रहता है तथा शीतयुक्त मन्द-मन्द ज्वर बना रहता है तो उसे प्रलेपक ज्वर कहते हैं ।

2. 42-44. Raised temperature in half of the body only

२. ४२-४४. एकदेशीय सन्तापयुक्त ज्वर

42. विदिग्धेऽन्नरसे देहे श्लेष्मपित्ते व्यवस्थिते ।

तेनार्धं शीतलं देहमर्धमुष्णं प्रजायते ॥ ४२ ॥

(अ० सं० नि० ६२/२, ६३/१)

When *anna rasa*¹ is not properly digested and the (vitiated) *kapha*² and *pitta*³ get compartmentalised, half of the body remains cold² (i.e. normal) and the other half gets hot³.

(A. S. III. 92/2, 93/1)

४२. आहार रस के विदिग्ध होने से तथा (दूषित) कफ और पित्त के एक भाग में स्थित होने पर शरीर का आधा भाग शीतल तथा आधा भाग उष्ण हो जाता है ।

43. काये दुष्टं यदा पित्तं श्लेष्मा चान्ते व्यवस्थितः ।

तेनोष्णत्वं शरीरस्य शीतत्वं हस्तपादयोः ॥ ४३ ॥

(अ० सं० नि० ६३/२, ६४/१)

When the vitiated *pitta* is situated in the (central portion of the) body and *kapha* is localised in the

-
1. The liquidy product of digestion (after the stage of chyme) or the nutrient fluid.
 2. *Kapha* has a property of producing cold effects; hence wherever it would get localised, that part of the body would feel cold.
 3. *Pitta* has a property of producing warmth; hence wherever in the body it would get localised, that part would feel warm.

extremities, the trunk feels warm and the hands and feet (remain normal, i.e.) are cold.

(A. S. III. 93/2, 94/1)

४३. जब शरीर के कोष्ठ भाग में दुष्ट पित्त तथा हस्त एवं पाद में दुष्ट कफ क्रमशः स्थित हो जाते हैं तो शरीर उष्ण रहता है परन्तु हस्त एवं पाद शीतल रहते हैं ।

44. काये श्लेष्मा यदा दुष्टः पित्तं चान्ते व्यवस्थितम् ।

शीतत्वं तेन गात्राणामुष्णत्वं हस्तपादयोः ॥ ४४ ॥

(On the other hand) when the vitiated *kapha* is situated in the body and *pitta* in the extremities the body feels cold (i.e. remains normal) and the hands and feet are warm.

४४. (इसके विपरीत) जब कोष्ठ में (दुष्ट) कफ तथा हस्त एवं पाद में दुष्ट पित्त स्थित होते हैं तो शरीर शीतल रहता है और हाथ तथा पैर उष्ण रहते हैं ।

2. 45-47. Onset of fever with rigor or burning sensation

त्वक्स्थौ श्लेष्मानिलौ शीतमादौ जनयतो ज्वरे ।

तयोः प्रशान्तयोः पित्तमन्ते दाहं करोति च ॥ ४५ ॥

करोत्यादौ तथा पित्तं त्वक्स्थं दाहमतीव च ।

तस्मिन् प्रशान्ते त्वितरौ कुरुतः शीतमन्ततः ॥ ४६ ॥

द्वावेतौ दाहशीतादिज्वरौ संसर्गजौ स्मृतौ ।

दाहपूर्वस्तयोः कष्टः कृच्छ्रसाध्यतमश्च सः ॥ ४७ ॥

(सु० उ० ३६. ५६-६१)

When (the vitiated) *kapha* and *vāta* are located in the skin, fever begins with rigor; on their getting alleviated *pitta* ultimately produces a burning sensation.

When (on the other hand, vitiated) *pitta* is located in the skin, it gives rise to an extreme burning sensation in the beginning (and fever later on). On its subsidence the other two (*doṣas*) produce a feeling of coldness in the end.

Thus, these two types of fever starting either with the sensation of heat or cold are known to arise due to combinations of two *doṣas* together. Out of the two, the one with a burning sensation at the onset is troublesome and very difficult to treat.

(S. S. VI. 39. 59-61)

२. ४५-४७. ज्वर के आरंभ में शीत या दाह का होना

जब प्रकुपित कफ और वायु त्वचा में होते हैं तो ज्वर के प्रारम्भ में शीतलता होती है और उनके शान्त होने पर पित्त के कारण शरीर में दाह होता है ।

जब प्रकुपित पित्त त्वचा में रहता है तो प्रारम्भ में यह दाह उत्पन्न करता है तथा इसके शमन होने पर शेष दो दोषों से ठंडक होती है ।

दोनों प्रकार के ज्वर जो दाहयुक्त या शीतयुक्त होते हैं वे दो-दो दोषों के मिश्रण से होते हैं । जो ज्वर दाह के साथ उत्पन्न होता है वह कष्टदायक एवं कृच्छ्रसाध्य होता है ।

2. 48-55/1, 2. DHĀTUGATA JVARA (INVOLVEMENT OF THE SPECIFIC TISSUES IN FEVER)

२. ४८-५५/१, २. धातुगत ज्वर

2. 48. Fever with *rasa* (plasma) involvement

गुरुता हृदयोत्क्लेशः सदनं छर्द्यरोचकौ ।

रसस्थे तु ज्वरे लिङ्गं दैन्यं चास्योपजायते ॥ ४८ ॥

(सु० उ० ३६.८३)

Fever (with the pathogenic process) involving

rasa (plasma) produces a feeling of heaviness in the body, precordial discomfort with nausea, lassitude, vomiting, anorexia and depression.

(S. S. VI. 39. 83)

२. ४८. रसगत ज्वर

ज्वर ज्वर रस धातु में स्थित होता है तो शरीर में गुरुता, हृदय में पीड़ा, भारीपन, वमन, अरुचि तथा दैन्य ये लक्षण पाये जाते हैं ।

2. 49. Fever with rakta (blood involvement)

रक्तनिष्टीवनं दाहो मोहश्छर्दनविभ्रमौ ।

प्रलापः पिडका तृष्णा रक्तप्राप्ते ज्वरे नृणाम् ॥ ४९ ॥

(सु० उ० ३६. ८४)

Fever (with the pathogenic process) involving *rakta* (blood) in the human beings produces haemoptysis, burning sensation, mental confusion, vomiting, giddiness, delirium, skin rashes and thirst.

(S. S. VI. 39. 84)

२. ४९. रक्तगत ज्वर

ज्वर ज्वर रक्त धातु में आश्रित रहता है तो रक्त निष्टीवन, दाह, मोह, छर्दि, विभ्रम, प्रलाप, शरीर में पिडकाओं का होना तथा तृष्णा ये लक्षण पाये जाते हैं ।

2. 50. Fever with māṁsa (muscles) involvement

पिण्डिकोद्वेष्टनं तृष्णा सृष्टमूत्रपुरीषता ।

ऊष्माऽन्तर्दाहविक्षेपौ ग्लानिः स्यान्मांसगे ज्वरे ॥ ५० ॥

(सु० उ० ३६. ८५)

Fever (with the pathogenic process) involving *māṁsa* (muscles) produces cramp in the calf muscles,

thirst, frequent passage of urine and faeces, burning sensation externally as well as internally, convulsions and mental depression.

(S. S. VI. 39. 85)

२. ५०. मांसगत ज्वर

पिण्डलियों में ऐंठन, तृष्णा, मल-मूत्र की प्रवृत्ति, ऊष्मा, अन्तर्दाह, विक्षेप और ग्लानि मांसगत ज्वर के लक्षण होते हैं ।

2. 51. Fever with medas (adipose tissue) involvement

भृशं स्वेदस्तृषा मूर्च्छा प्रलापश्छदिरेव च ।

दौर्गन्ध्यारोचकौ ग्लानिर्मंदःस्थे चासहिष्णुता ॥ ५१ ॥

(सु० उ० ३६. ८६)

Fever (with the pathogenic process) involving *medas* (adipose tissues) produces excessive perspiration, thirst, fainting, delirium, vomiting, bad odour, anorexia, depression and intolerance.

(S. S. VI. 39. 86)

२. ५१. मेदगत ज्वर

स्वेद का अधिक आना, अत्यधिक तृष्णा, मूर्च्छा, प्रलाप, वमन, दुर्गन्ध, अरुचि, ग्लानि और असहिष्णुता मेदगत ज्वर के लक्षण हैं ।

2. 52. Fever with asthi (bones) involvement

भेदोऽस्थनां कूजनं श्वासो विरेकश्छदिरेव च ।

विक्षेपणं च गात्राणामेतदस्थिगते ज्वरे ॥ ५२ ॥

(सु० उ० ३६. ८७)

Pain in the bones as if being broken, production of inarticulate sounds, dyspnoea, loose motions, vomiting and aimless flinging movements of the

limbs are the clinical features of fever when *asthi* (bone) is involved (by the pathogenic process).

(S. S. VI. 39. 87)

२. ५२. अस्थिगत ज्वर

भेटनवत पीड़ा, कूजन, श्वास, विरेचन, वमन तथा शरीर में विक्षेपण अस्थिगत ज्वर के लक्षण हैं ।

2. 53. Fever with *majjā* (bone marrow) involvement

तमःप्रवेशनं हिक्का कासः शैत्यं वमिस्तथा ।

अन्तर्दाहो महाश्वासो मर्मच्छेदश्च मज्जगे ॥ ५३ ॥

(सु० उ० ३६. ८८/१, ८८/२)

Fever (with the pathogenic process involving *majjā* (bone marrow) gives rise to a feeling as if entering into an absolute darkness, hiccough, cough, rigor, vomiting, a burning sensation internally, laboured breathing and a cutting sensation in the vital organs.

(S. S. VI. 39. 88/1, 88/2)

२. ५३. मज्जागत ज्वर

तमः प्रवेश, हिक्का, कास, ठण्डक, वमन, अन्तर्दाह, महाश्वास तथा मर्म स्थानों में छेदनवत पीड़ा होना मज्जागत ज्वर के लक्षण हैं ।

2. 54. Fever with *śukra* (semen) involvement

मरणं प्राप्नुयात्तत्र शुक्रस्थानगते ज्वरे ।

शेफसः स्तब्धता मोक्षः शुक्रस्य तु विशेषतः ॥ ५४ ॥

(सु० उ० ३६. ८८/३, ८६/१)

The stage of fever (with the pathogenic process) involving *śukra* (semen) is characterised by persistent

penile priapism and spermatorrhoea and may be fatal.

(S. S. VI. 39. 88/3, 89/1)

२.५४. शुक्रगत ज्वर

शुक्र एवं शुक्र स्थान में स्थित ज्वर में रोगी का शिश्न स्तब्ध हो जाता है तथा निरन्तर शुक्र निकलने लगता है और रोगी की मृत्यु हो सकती है ।

2. 55/1, 2. Prognosis

रसरक्ताश्रितः साध्यो मांसमेदोगतश्च यः ।

अस्थिमज्जागतः कृच्छ्रः शुक्रस्थस्तु न सिध्यति ॥

(च० चि० ३.८३)

Fever (with the pathogenic process) located in the *rasa*, *rakta*, *māmsa* or *medas* is curable, while that located in the *asthi* or *majjā* is difficult to cure and that located in the *śukra* is incurable.

(C. S. VI. 3. 83)

२. ५५/१, २. साध्यसाध्यता

रस, रक्त, मांस और मेद में स्थित ज्वर साध्य, तथा अस्थि एवं मज्जा में होनेवाला ज्वर कृच्छ्र साध्य, और शुक्राश्रित ज्वर असाध्य होता है ।

2. 55/3, 4-58/1. Seasonal fever

2. 55/3, 4. Definition

वर्षाशिरद्वसन्तेषु वाताद्यैः प्राकृतः क्रमात् ।

वैकृतोज्यः स दुःसाध्यः प्रकृतश्चानिलोद्भवः ॥ ५५ ॥

(अ० ह० नि० २.५०)

In the rainy, autumn and spring seasons the fever arising due to *vāta*, *pitta* and *kapha* respectively is called the seasonal (fever). Any other type is called (the) abnormal (fever); all these (abnormal) and the seasonal *vātaja* fever are difficult to cure.

(A. H. III. 2. 50)

२. ५५/३, ४. कालानुसार प्राकृत वैकृत ज्वर

वर्षा, शरद् एवं वसन्त में क्रमशः वातज, पित्तज तथा कफज ज्वर प्राकृत कहे जाते हैं। इसके विपरीत उत्पन्न होनेवाले ज्वर वैकृत होते हैं। सभी वैकृत तथा प्राकृत वातज ज्वर कृच्छ्रसाध्य होते हैं।

2. 56, 57. Doṣas in relation to the seasonal fever

वर्षासु मारुतो दुष्टः पित्तश्लेष्मान्वितो ज्वरम् ।

कुर्यात्पित्तं च शरदि तस्य चानुबलः कफः ॥ ५६ ॥

तत्प्रकृत्या विसर्गाच्च तत्र नानशनाद्भयम् ।

कफो वसन्ते तमपि वातपित्त भवेदनु ॥ ५७ ॥

(अ० ह० नि० २.५१, ५२)

The vitiated *vāta* in association with *pitta* and *kapha* produces the (ordinary seasonal type of) fever in the rainy season. And (similarly) the *pitta* with the help of *kapha* (produces the ordinary seasonal type of fever) in the autumn; here, because of the nature of the *doṣa* concerned and the season being favourable, fasting therapy is not contraindicated.

Further, the *kapha* in association with *vāta* and *pitta* produces (the ordinary seasonal fever) in the spring season.

(A. H. III. 2. 51, 52)

२. ५६, ५७. प्राकृत-ज्वर में दोषों का सम्बन्ध

वर्षा में वात दोष प्रकुपित होकर पित्त एवं कफानुबन्धी प्रकृति ज्वर उत्पन्न करता है तथा शरद् में पित्तज ज्वर कफानुबन्ध होता है। प्रकृति के अनुसार (दोष प्रकोप) तथा विसर्ग काल के होने से इसमें अनशन करने में कोई भय नहीं रहता है।

वसन्त ऋतु में श्लेष्मा वात और पित्तानुबन्धी ज्वर उत्पन्न करता है।

2. 58/1. Seasonal vitiation of *doṣas* and diseases

काले यथास्वं सर्वेषां प्रवृत्तिवृद्धिरेव वा ।

(अ० ह० नि० २.२३/१)

The onset as well as the progress of all (types of fever/diseases) occur during the seasons when the corresponding (*doṣa*) gets vitiated.

(A. H. III. 2.23/1)

२. ५८/१. काल-सम्प्राप्ति

दोष प्रकोपक ऋतु के अनुसार सभी ज्वर की प्रवृत्ति या वृद्धि होती है ।

2. 58/2. Therapeutic Diagnosis/Diagnosis by Trial and Error¹

निदानोक्तानुपशयो विपरोत्तोपशायिता ॥ ५८ ॥

(अ० ह० नि० २.२३/२)

The aetiological factors (of the disease) are not suitable² (as tools of its treatment); and the opposite factors are the favourable³ measures.

(A. H. III. 2.23/2)

२. ५८/२. अनुपशय एवं उपशय

निदान में वर्णित सभी कारण रोगी के प्रतिकूल (अनुपशय) होते हैं, तथा इसके विपरीत अनुकूल (उपशय) होते हैं ।

2. 59, 60/1. Internal fever

अन्तर्दाहोऽधिकस्तृष्णा प्रलापः श्वसनं भ्रमः ।

-
1. The principles enunciated in this line can be used to establish a therapeutic diagnosis or a diagnosis by trial and error.
 2. *Anupaśaya*.
 3. *Upaśaya*.

सन्ध्यस्थिशूलमस्वेदो दोषवर्चोविनिग्रहः ॥ ५९ ॥

अन्तर्वेगस्य लिङ्गानि ज्वरस्यैतानि लक्षयेत् ।

(च० चि० ३.३६/२, ४०)

A burning sensation inside (the body), excessive thirst, delirium, dyspnoea, hallucinations, pain in the bones and joints, anhidrosis and suppression of (the evacuation of) the *doṣas* and the stools are known to be the features of fever with an internal predominance¹.

(C. S. VI. 3. 39/2, 40)

२. ५६, ६०/१. अन्तर्वेग ज्वर

अन्तर्दाह, अत्यधिक प्यास, प्रलाप, तीव्र श्वास, भ्रम, सन्धि एवं अस्थि में शूल, पसीने का न आना और दोष तथा मल का अवरोध अन्तर्वेग ज्वर के लक्षण होते हैं ।

2. 60/2, 61/1. Fever with an external predominance

सन्तापो ह्यधिको बाह्यस्तृष्णादीनां च मार्दवम् ॥ ६० ॥

बहिर्वेगस्य लिङ्गानि सुखसाध्यत्वमेव च ।

(च० चि० ३.४१)

On the other hand, the external temperature being very high (hyperpyrexia) along with all the above mentioned² symptoms beginning with thirst in a milder form are the features of fever with an external predominance; this is relatively easy to manage.

(C. S. VI. 3.41)

1. Sometimes rectal temperature may be very high inspite of the skin temperature being normal or even low. This condition may also be found in some cases of fever with shock.

2. M. N. 2. 59, 60/1. loc. cit.

२.६०/२, ६१/१. बहिर्वेग ज्वर

वाह्य ताप की अधिकता, तृष्णा आदि लक्षणों की अल्पता होना बहिर्वेग ज्वर के लक्षण होते हैं। यह मुख साध्य होता है।

2. 61/2-64/1. *Āma Fever*¹

लालाप्रसेको हृल्लासहृदयाशुद्धचरोचकाः ॥ ६१ ॥

तन्द्रालस्याविपाकास्यवैरस्यं गुरुगात्रता ।

क्षुन्नाशो बहुमूत्रत्वं स्तब्धता बलवान् ज्वरः ॥ ६२ ॥

आमज्वरस्य लिङ्गानि न दद्यात्तत्र भेषजम् ।

भेषजं ह्यामदोषस्य भूयोज्वलयति ज्वरम् ॥ ६३ ॥

शोधनं शमनीयं च करोति विषमज्वरम् ।

Excessive salivation, nausea, a feeling of fullness in the precordium, anorexia, drowsiness, laziness, indigestion, a feeling of bad taste in the mouth and of heaviness of the body, loss of appetite, polyuria, stiffness and hyperpyrexia are the manifestations of *āma* fever; medicines should not be given in such a condition as any medicine would only flare up the fever caused by *āma doṣa*². Both the purificatory as well as the alleviative therapies would convert it into an intermittent fever.

२.६१/२-६४/१. आम ज्वर

लाला प्रसेक की अधिकता, हृल्लास, हृदय भाग (वक्ष) में पूर्णता, अरुचि, तन्द्रा, आलस्य, अविपाक, मुख में विरसता, शरीर में भारीपन, क्षुधा-नाश,

1. *Āma, pacyamāna* (2. 64/2, 3) and *nirāma* (2. 65) are the different stages of fever.

2. Early stage of vitiated *doṣa*.

बार बार मूत्र त्याग की प्रवृत्ति, स्तब्धता एवं ज्वर की तीव्रता आमज ज्वर के लक्षण होते हैं । इस अवस्था में भेषज का प्रयोग नहीं करना चाहिए क्योंकि औषधि के सेवन से आम दोष से उत्पन्न ज्वर और भी तीव्र हो जाता है । पुनश्च, शोधन अथवा शमन करनेवाली चिकित्सा देने से आम ज्वर विषम ज्वर में परिणित हो सकता है ।

2. 64/2,3. Pacyamāna Fever

ज्वरवेगोऽधिकस्तृष्णा प्रलापः श्वसनं भ्रमः ।

मलप्रवृत्तिरुत्क्लेशः पच्यमानस्य लक्षणम् ॥ ६४ ॥

(च० चि० ३.१३६/२, १३७/१)

A high grade fever, thirst, delirium, dyspnoea, hallucinations, resumption of the passage of the excretory products, and nausea are the manifestations of *pacyamāna* fever.

(C. S. VI. 3. 136/2, 137/1)

२. ६४/२, ३. पच्यमान ज्वर

ज्वर का वेग तीव्र होना, तृष्णा, प्रलाप, श्वास, भ्रम, मलों की प्रवृत्ति एवं उत्क्लेश पच्यमान ज्वर के लक्षण होते हैं ।

2. 65. Nirāma Fever

क्षुत्क्षामता लघुत्वं च गात्राणां ज्वरमार्दवम् ।

दोषप्रवृत्तिरष्टाहो निरामज्वरलक्षणम् ॥ ६५ ॥

(च० चि० ३.१३७/२, १३८/१)

A return of appetite, weakness, a feeling of lightness in the body, lessening of the fever and easy passage of the excreta are the features of the *nirāma* fever; it (usually reaches this stage) by the eighth day of onset.

(C. S. VI. 3. 137/2, 138/1)

२. ६५. निराम ज्वर

क्षुधा का लौटना, दुर्बलता और मलों की प्रवृत्ति होना निराम ज्वर के लक्षण होते हैं। यह अवस्था प्रायः आठवें दिन तक आ जाती है।

PROGNOSIS (2.66-74/1)

ज्वर की साध्यासाध्यता २.६६-७४/१.

2. 66/1. The curable types of fever

बलवत्स्वल्पदोषेषु ज्वरः साध्योऽनुपद्रवः ।

(च० चि० ३.५०/१)

Fever is easily curable in patients with a good general condition, if the vitiation of *doṣas* is mild and no complication has developed.

(C. S. VI. 3. 50/1)

२. ६६/१. ज्वर की साध्यता

बलवान रोगियों में यदि दोष अल्प हों और कोई उपद्रव न हुआ हो तो ज्वर साध्य होता है।

2. 66/2-74/1. THE FATAL/INCURABLE TYPES OF FEVER

२. ६६/२-७४/१. ज्वर की असाध्यता

2. 66/2, 67/1. The fatal type of fever

हेतुभिर्बहुभिर्जातो बलिभिर्बहुलक्षणः ॥ ६६ ॥

ज्वरः प्राणान्तकृद्यश्च शीघ्रमिन्द्रियनाशनः ।

(च० चि० ३.५०/२, ५१/१)

The fever due to multiple and powerful aetiological factors and with various manifestations is

fatal, as also that which quickly produces a loss of the sense faculties.

(C. S. VI. 3.50/2, 51/1)

२. ६६/२, ६७/१. प्राणघातक ज्वर

जो ज्वर अनेक एवं बलवान कारणों से उत्पन्न हो, अनेक लक्षणों से युक्त हो एवं शीघ्र ही इन्द्रियों को नष्ट कर देने वाला हो वह प्राणघातक होता है ।

2. 67/2, 68/1. The incurable type of fever

ज्वरः क्षीणस्य शूनस्य गम्भीरो दीर्घरात्रिकः ॥ ६७ ॥

असाध्यो बलवान् यश्च केशसीमन्तकृज्ज्वरः ।

(च० चि० ३.५२/२, ५३/१)

A high fever that occurs in the emaciated or in the oedematous and that which is deep-seated and chronic and makes partings in the hair of the head is incurable.

(C. S. VI. 3.52/2, 53/1)

२. ६७/२, ६८/१. असाध्य ज्वर

क्षीण तथा शोथयुक्त रोगी का बढ़ा हुआ ज्वर तथा गम्भीर एवं दीर्घ काल तक रहनेवाला ज्वर जिसमें बालों में मांग निकल आवे असाध्य होता है ।

2. 68/2, 69/1. The deep seated (serious) fever

गम्भीरस्तु ज्वरो ज्ञेयो ह्यन्तर्दाहेन तृष्णया ॥ ६८ ॥

आनद्धत्वेन चात्यर्थं श्वासकासोद्गमेन च ।

(सु० उ० ३६.६२/२, ६३/१)

A (case of) fever with a burning sensation internally, thirst, obstruction to the passage of faeces and

flatus and excessive dyspnoea and with bouts of cough should be considered deep-seated (serious).

(S. S. VI. 39. 92/2, 93/1)

२. ६८/२, ६९/१. गम्भीर ज्वर

अन्तर्दाहि, तृष्णा, मल एवं वायु का अवरोध, तथा कास एवं श्वास की अधिकता युक्त ज्वर को गम्भीर समझना चाहिए ।

2. 69/2, 70/1. The fatal deep-seated fever

आरम्भाद्विषमो यस्तु यश्च वा दीर्घरात्रिकः ॥ ६९ ॥

क्षीणस्य चातिरूक्षस्य गम्भीरो यस्य हन्ति तम् ।

The deep-seated fever which is intermittent from the beginning, or else is chronic occurring in the emaciated and the dehydrated patients is fatal.

२. ६९/२, ७०/१. प्राणघातक गम्भीर ज्वर

आरम्भ से ही गम्भीर ज्वर यदि विषम स्वरूप का हो तथा दीर्घकालिक हो तो क्षीण एवं अति रूक्ष शरीर वाले रोगी का नाश कर देता है ।

The fatal complications of pyrexia (2.70/2-74/1)

ज्वरित में घातक उपद्रव (२.७०/२-७४/१)

2. 70/2, 71/1.

विसंज्ञस्ताम्यते यस्तु शेते निपतितोऽपि वा ॥ ७० ॥

शीतादितोऽन्तरुष्णश्च ज्वरेण म्रियते नरः ।

(सु० सू० ३३.१५)

The pyrexial patient who feels darkness in front of the eyes and becomes unconscious, who falls down and/or is unable to stand up, and suffers from chills but feels hot internally dies.

(S. S. I. 33. 15)

२. ७०/२, ७१/१.

जो रोगी विह्वल होकर संज्ञाहीन हो जाय और उसी अवस्था में पड़ा रहे या पुनः उठने की शक्ति न हो तथा बाहर शीत से पीड़ित हो व अन्दर उष्णता हो तो वह भी ज्वर से मृत्यु को प्राप्त होता है ।

2. 71/2, 72/1.

यो हृष्टरोमा रक्ताक्षो हृदि संघातशूलवान् ॥ ७१ ॥

वक्त्रेणचैवोच्छ्वसिति तं ज्वरो हन्ति मानवम् ।

(सु० सू० ३३.१६)

Fever kills that person who has horripilation, blood shot eyes, a feeling of compression and severe piercing pain in the precordium and who is gasping through the mouth^{1,2}

(S. S. I. 33. 16)

२. ७१/२, ७२/१.

जिस ज्वर में रोगी के रोम खड़े हों, नेत्र रक्ताभ हों, हृदय में संघातवत् तीव्र वेदना हो तथा जो मुख से (ऊर्ध्व) श्वास ले रहा हो तो वह भी ज्वर से मृत्यु को प्राप्त होता है ।

2. 72/2, 73/1.

हिक्का-श्वास-तृषा-युक्तं मूर्धं विभ्रान्त-लोचनम् ॥ ७२ ॥

सन्ततोच्छ्वासिनं क्षीणं नरं क्षपयति ज्वरः ।

(सु० सू० ३३.१७)

The fever kills an emaciated person who has (the associated complications of) hiccough, dyspnoea.

1. Shallow respiration.

2. ? Myocardial infarction.

and thirst, is in stupor, has rolling eyes, and who has prolonged laboured breathing.

(S. S. I. 33. 17).

२. ७२/२, ७३/१.

हिक्का, श्वास, तृष्णा तथा संज्ञानाश से युक्त, विक्षिप्त नेत्रवाले और निरन्तर उच्छ्वास ले रहे क्षीण रोगी की ज्वर से मृत्यु हो जाती है ।

2. 73/2, 74/1.

हृत्प्रभेन्द्रियं क्षीणमरोचकनिपीडितम् ॥ ७३ ॥

गम्भीरतीक्ष्णवेगाऽऽर्तं ज्वरितं परिवर्जयेत् ।

(सु० उ० ३६.६३/२, ६४/१)

A pyrexial patient who has lost the lustre of the body as well as perception by the sense organs, is emaciated, has anorexia and has markedly sharp rise of temperature should be given up from treatment (as incurable).

(S. S. VI. 39. 93/2, 94/1).

२. ७३/२, ७४/१.

जिसकी कांति एवं इन्द्रिय शक्ति नष्ट हो गयी हो, जो क्षीण और अरोचक तथा गम्भीर एवं तीक्ष्ण वेग वाले ज्वर से पीड़ित हो तो वह भी असाध्य है ।

2. 74/2, 3. Features on subsidence of fever

दाहः स्वेदो भ्रमस्तृष्णा कम्पविड्भिदसंज्ञिता ।

कूजनं चास्यवैगन्ध्यमाकृतिज्वरमोक्षणे ॥ ७४ ॥

A burning sensation, perspiration, mental confusion, thirst, shivering, loose motions, unconsciousness, moaning sounds and foul odour from the mouth are the features on subsidence of fever.

२. ७४/२, ३. ज्वरमोक्ष के पूर्व रूप

दाह, स्वेद, भ्रम, तृष्णा, कम्प, विडम्भेद, संज्ञानाश एवं कूजन ज्वर मोक्ष के पूर्व लक्षण होते हैं ।

2. 75. Features on cure from fever

स्वेदो लघुत्वं शिरसः कण्ठः पाको मुखस्य च ।

क्षवथुश्चातलिप्सा च ज्वरमुक्तस्य लक्षणम् ॥ ७५ ॥

Perspiration, a feeling of lightness, an itching sensation in the head and stomatitis, as well as sneezing and a craving for food are the features in the person who has just been cured of fever.

२. ७५. ज्वरमुक्ति के लक्षण

स्वेद का आना, शरीर में लघुता, सिर में कण्ठ, मुखपाक, क्षवथु तथा भूख लगना ज्वर मुक्ति के लक्षण होते हैं ।

इति श्रीमाधवकरविरचिते माधवनिदाने ज्वरनिदानं समाप्तम् ॥२॥

Thus ends (the second chapter entitled) 'The Diagnosis of Fever' of Mādhava Nidāna, as compiled by Śrī Mādhavakara.

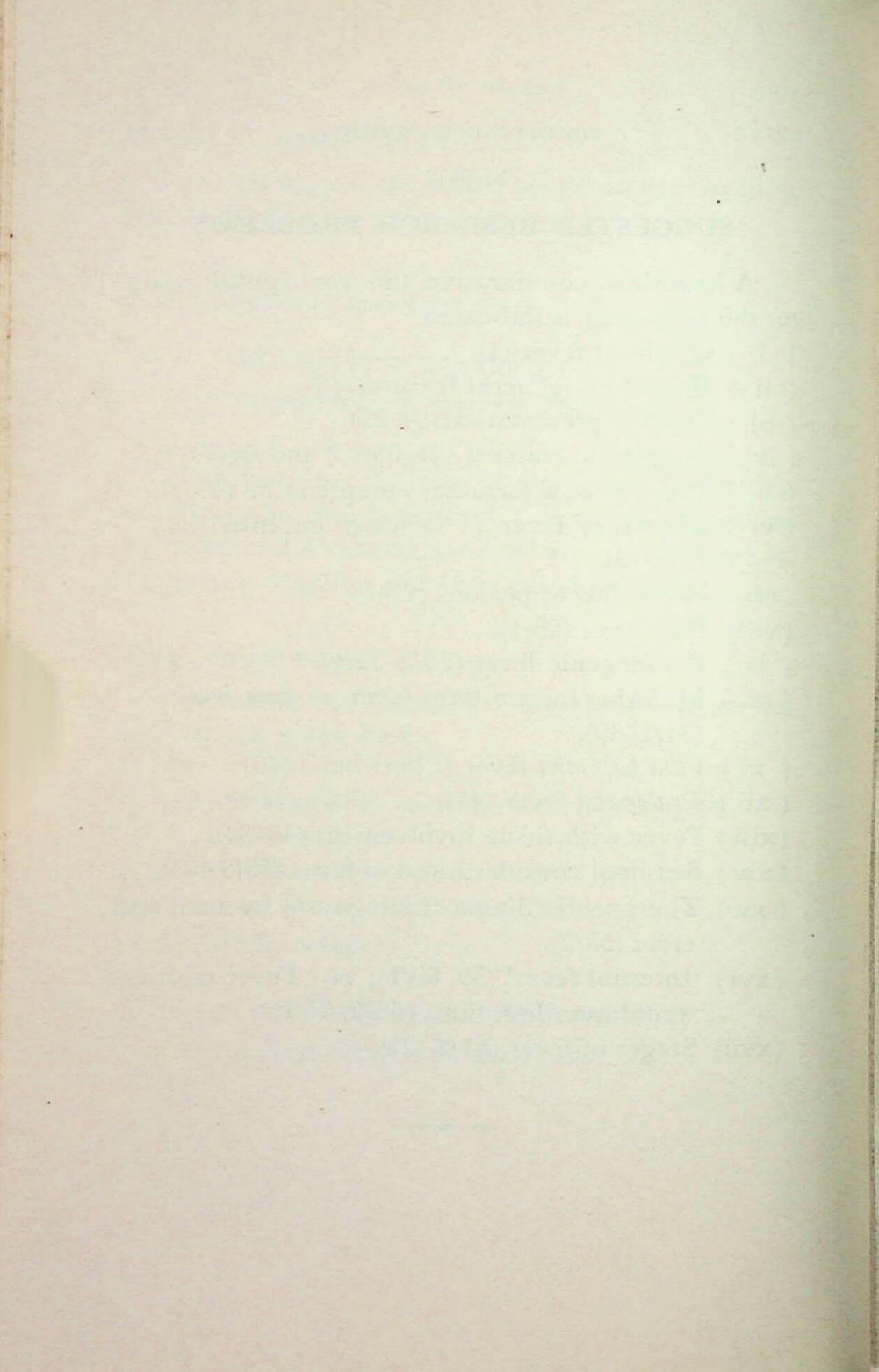
इस प्रकार श्रीमाधवकर द्वारा सङ्कलित माधव-निदान का ज्वरनिदान (नामक द्वितीय अध्याय) समाप्त हुआ ।

M. N. 2

SUGGESTED RESEARCH PROBLEMS

A historical, comparative and conceptual study on the following is indicated :

- (i) Origin of fever (1).
 - (ii) Definition (general features) (3).
 - (iii) Clinical presentations (4-23).
 - (iv) Prognostic features (24, 55/1,2 and 66-74/1).
 - (v) Parotitis as a terminal complication (25/3).
 - (vi) *Abhinyāsa* fever (? meningo encephalitis) (26/1-5).
 - (vii) Fever due to poisons (27).
 - (viii) Hay fever (28/1).
 - (ix) Psychogenic fever (28/2-31/1).
 - (x) Malaria (intermittent fever, *viṣama jvara*) (31/2-39).
 - (xi) *Vāta-balāsaka* fever (? beri-beri) (40).
 - (xii) *Praleṇaka* fever (41).
 - (xiii) Fever with tissue involvement (48-54).
 - (xiv) Seasonal considerations in fever (55/3,4-58/1).
 - (xv) Therapeutic diagnosis/diagnosis by trial and error (58/2).
 - (xvi) 'Internal fever' (59, 60/1), vs. Fever with external manifestations (60/2, 61/1).
 - (xvii) Stages of fever (61/2-65).
-



माधवनिदानम्
तृतीयोऽध्यायः

अतिसारनिदानम्
THE DIAGNOSIS OF DIARRHOEA

CHAPTER THREE
MĀDHAVA-NIDĀNA

M. N. 3

SUMMARY

This chapter deals with the diagnostic aspects of diarrhoea (*atisāra*) and dysentery (*pravāhikā*).

The aetiological factors (1-3) of diarrhoea have been mentioned as bad diet, irregular dietary habits, ingestion of toxic substances, contaminated water, emotional upsets and worm infestations, etc.

The pathogenesis (4) of diarrhoea has been explained to combine impaired digestion, with increased fluidity and hypermotility in the gastrointestinal tract leading to an excessive flow of liquid stools. Six types (4) of diarrhoea have been enumerated, viz. four due to humoral disturbances, the fifth due to the emotional upsets and the sixth one due to an improper digestion.

The prodromal features (5) of diarrhoea include pricking pain in the abdomen, tympanitis and indigestion, etc.

Clinical features (6-11) of the six types of diarrhoea have been described. Characteristics on physical examination of stools (12, 13) after proper (*pakva*) or improper digestion (*āma*) of food have been given.

Features of the incurable types of diarrhoea (14-20/2) include dark coloured stools with blood clots, cadaveric smell in the stools, severe constitutional symptoms like hyperpyrexia, delirium, etc., and perianal suppuration, as well as blood diarrhoea (20/3, 4).

Dysentery (21, 22) implies repeated passage of small quantities of faeces with mucus and/or blood and associated with griping pain; its varieties, etc. have been mentioned to be similar to those of diarrhoea.

Signs of cure from diarrhoea (23) include ability to pass urine without passing faeces at the same time and normal passage of flatus, etc.

Association of fever with diarrhoea (24) has been mentioned to be understood by combining the features of both.

तृतीयोऽध्यायः
CHAPTER THREE

अतिसारनिदानम्

THE DIAGNOSIS OF DIARRHOEA

3. 1-3. Aetiological Factors

गुर्वतिलिग्धरूक्षोष्णद्रवस्थूलातिशीतलैः ।
विरुद्धाध्यशनाजीर्णैर्विषमैश्चापि भोजनैः ॥ १ ॥
स्नेहाद्यैरतियुक्तैश्च मिथ्यायुक्तैर्विषैर्भयैः ।
शोकाद्दुष्टाम्बुमद्यातिपानैः सात्म्यतुर्पर्ययैः ॥ २ ॥
जलाभिरमणैर्वेगविघातैः कृमिदोषतः ।
नृणां भवत्यतीसारो लक्षणं तस्य वक्ष्यते ॥ ३ ॥

(सु० उ० ४०. ३-५)

People suffer from diarrhoea due to the intake of heavy, very fatty or very dry¹, very hot or very cold meals and excessively liquidy or excessively solid food.

It is also caused by the intake of incompatible articles of diet, by eating before the previous meal has been digested or during indigestion, and by the intake of an unbalanced diet. Excessive use or improper use of (*pañcakarma*, cleansing and purificatory therapies like) oleation, etc.², poisons, fear,

-
- 1, Food preparations almost without fat.
 2. Oleation, sudation, emesis, purgation, oily as well as non-oily (decoction) enema treatment, errhines, etc.

grief, use of impure water, excessive drinking of wine, actions opposite to the beneficial rules (of diet, etc.) and to the proper seasonal regimen, excessive playing about in water, suppression of the physiological evacuatory urges¹ and worm infestations may also result in diarrhoea in the human beings.

Its clinical features would now be described.

(S. S. VI. 40. 3-5)

३. १-३. हेतु

गुरु, अति स्निग्ध या अति रुक्ष, अति उष्ण या अति शीत तथा अति द्रव या अति स्थूल पदार्थों के सेवन से, विरुद्ध भोजन, अध्यशन, अनपच तथा विषम भोजन करने से, स्नेहनादि (पूर्वकर्म एवं पंचकर्म) के अति या मिथ्या योग से, विष, भय, शोक आदि से, अशुद्ध जल एवं मद्य के अत्यधिक सेवन से, असात्म्य एवं ऋतु विपर्यय से, जल में अति विचरण करने से, अधारणीय वेगों के धारण करने से तथा कृमि-दोष से मनुष्य अतिसार रोग से ग्रसित होता है । अब इसके लक्षण का वर्णन करते हैं ।

3. 4. Pathogenesis and Types

संशम्यापां घातुरग्निं प्रवृद्धः शकृन्मिश्रो वायुनाऽधः प्रणुन्नः ।

सरत्यतीवातिसारं तमाहुर्व्याधिं घोरं षड्विधं तं वदन्ति ॥

एकैकशः सर्वशश्चापि दोषैः शोकेनान्यः षष्ठ आमेन चोक्तः ॥ ४ ॥

(सु० उ० ४०. ६, ७/१)

Increased fluids of the body subdue the internal digestive fire, mix with the faeces, and being propelled down by *vāyu* flow out excessively; that serious disease is, therefore, called *atisāra* (diarrhoea).

1. Passage of urine, faeces and flatus, lacrymation, sneezing, etc.

It (the diarrhoea) is of six types, viz., (three) due to (one *doṣa*) each¹, one due to all the three *doṣas* together², another one due to grief³ and the sixth one due to *āma*⁴.

(S. S. VI. 40.6, 7/1)

३.४. सम्प्राप्ति एवं भेद

प्रवृद्ध जलीय धातु अग्नि को मन्द करके मल से मिश्रित होकर वायु के द्वारा प्रेरित अधोमार्ग से अत्यधिक मात्रा में बाहर निकलता है। इस दारुण व्याधि को अतिसार कहते हैं। यह एक एक दोषों से (तीन—वातिक, पैत्तिक तथा श्लैष्मिक), सभी दोषों से एक—सन्निपातिक और एक शोक से तथा छठवां आम से उत्पन्न होता है।

3. 5. Prodromal Features

हृन्नाभिपायूदरकुक्षितोदगात्रावसादानिलसन्निरोधाः ।

विट्सङ्ग आध्मानमथाविपाको भविष्यतस्तस्य पुरःसराणि ॥ ५ ॥

(सु० उ० ४०. ८/२, ६/१)

Pricking pain in the precordial, umbilical and anal regions, and in the abdomen as well as in the flanks, lassitude in the body, obstruction to the passage of flatus and faeces, flatulence and indigestion are the prodromal features of diarrhoea.

(S. S. VI. 40. 8/2, 9/1)

३.५. पूर्वं रूप

हृदय, नाभि, गुद, उदर एवं कुक्षि में सुई चुभने जैसी पीड़ा, शरीर में आलस्य, अपान वायु एवं मल का अवरुद्ध हो जाना, आध्मान तथा अपच अतिसार के पूर्वरूप हैं।

1. *Vātaja*, *Pittaja* and *Kaphaja*.

2. *Sannipātaja* (*tridoṣaja*).

3. Psychogenic.

4. Due to improper digestion.

3. 6. Vātika Diarrhoea

अरुणं फेनिलं रुक्षमल्पमल्पं मुहुर्मुहुः ।

शकृदामं सरक्शब्दं मास्तेनातिसार्यते ॥ ६ ॥

Reddish, frothy, dry and *āma* (mucus) type of faecal matter is passed in small quantities again and again along with griping pain and gurgling sound in a case of *vātika* diarrhoea.

३. ६. वातिक अतिसार

वातिक अतिसार का रोगी लाल वर्ण का, झागयुक्त, रुक्ष और थोड़ी-थोड़ी मात्रा में बार-बार वेदना एवं शब्द के साथ आम मल त्याग करता है ।

3. 7/1. Paittika Diarrhoea¹

पित्तात्पीतं नीलमालोहितं वा तृष्णामूर्च्छादाहपाकोपपन्नम् ।

(सु० उ० ४०. ११/१)

Yellowish, bluish or bloody stools are passed in a case of *paittika* diarrhoea; it is also associated with thirst, fainting, a burning sensation and (perianal) suppuration.

(S. S. VI. 40. 11/1).

३. ७/१. पित्तिक अतिसार

पैत्तिक अतिसार में पित्त के कारण मल पीला, नीला या रक्त वर्ण का होता है; इसमें प्यास, मूर्च्छा, दाह एवं गुद पाक भी होते हैं ।

3. 7/2. Kaphaja Diarrhoea

शुक्लं सान्द्रं श्लेष्मणा श्लेष्मयुक्तं विस्त्रं शीतं हृष्टरोमा मनुष्यः ॥७॥

(सु० उ० ४०. १२/१)

1. ? Ulcerative colitis.

Whitish, viscid and cold faeces mixed with mucus and having a foul odour are passed in a case of *kaphaja* diarrhoea; the patient has horripilation (also at the same time).

(S. S. VI. 40. 12/1)

३.७/२. श्लैष्मिक अतिसार

इसमें मल श्वेत, गाढ़ा, शीत, दुर्गन्धयुक्त और कफ से मिला हुआ होता है। रोगी को (मल-त्याग के समय) शरीर में रोमहर्ष भी होता है।

3.8. Tridoṣaja Diarrhoea

वराहस्नेहमांसान्बुसदृशं सर्वरूपिणम् ।

कृच्छ्रसाध्यमतीसारं विद्यादोषत्रयोद्भवम् ॥ ८ ॥

Diarrhoea due to (vitiation of) all (the three *doṣas*) has bacon fat and meat washings like stools, has characteristics of all (the three *doṣas*) together and is difficult to cure.

३.८. सन्निपातिक अतिसार

सन्निपातिक अतिसार में शूकर की वसा एवं मांस के धोवन के समान मल होता है एवं इसमें सभी दोषों के लक्षण होते हैं। यह कृच्छ्र साध्य होता है।

3.9,10. Psychogenic Diarrhoea/Nervous Diarrhoea/ Diarrhoea due to Stress

तैस्तैर्भावैः शोचतोऽल्पाशनस्य वाष्पोष्मा वै वह्निमाविश्य जन्तोः ।

कोष्ठं गत्वा क्षोभयेत्तस्य रक्तं तच्चाघस्तात्काकणन्तीप्रकाशम् ॥९॥

निर्गच्छेद्वै विड्विमिश्रं ह्यविड्वा निर्गन्धं वा गन्धवद्वाऽतिसारः ।

शोकोत्पन्नो दुश्चिकित्सोऽतिमात्रं रोगो वैद्यैः कष्ट एष प्रदिष्टः ॥१०॥

(सु० उ० ४०. १३/२-१५/१)

The patient, in grief due to various causes, takes small quantities of meals; his *vāṣpoṣmā*¹ affecting the digestive fire in the alimentary tract, (adversely affects the digestive process) and agitates the blood. Thereafter, this blood, looking (red) like *kākaṇaṇi*, is passed by the patient from the lower passage (anus) mixed with stool or without faeces and with or without an odour.

This (psychogenic) diarrhoea due to grief is excessively difficult to treat; the clinicians regard it as very troublesome.

(S. S. VI. 40. 13/2-15/1)

३. ६, १०. शोकज अतिसार

(बन्धु वियोग, धननाश आदि) विभिन्न कारणों से चिन्ता करते हुए अल्प भोजन करनेवाले मनुष्य में अति वाष्प त्याग से उत्पन्न उष्मा कोष्ठ में जाकर कोष्ठामि से मिलकर रक्त को क्षोभित करती है। फलस्वरूप गुंजा फल के वर्ण का रक्त मल-युक्त या बिना मल के और गंध-युक्त या निर्गंध (गुद मार्ग से) निकलता है। यह शोक से उत्पन्न शोकज अतिसार दुश्चिकित्स्य होता है। वैद्यों ने इसे कष्ट साध्य कहा है।

3. 11. Āmaja Diarrhoea

अन्नाजीर्णात्प्रद्रुताः क्षोभयन्तः कोष्ठं दोषा धातुसंघान्मलांश्च ।

नानावर्णं नैकशः सारयन्ति शूलोपेतं षष्ठमेनं वदन्ति ॥११॥

(सु० उ० ४०. १५/२, १६)

The sixth variety (of diarrhoea) is caused by *doṣas* vitiated on account of improper digestion of

-
1. Grief or any other emotional stress manifested by excessive tears.

food, which agitate the alimentary canal, the *dhātus* and the *malas*; further, they expel the faeces of various colours repeatedly with pain.

(S. S. VI. 40. 15/2, 16)

३. ११. आमामितिसार

अन्न के न पचने के कारण प्रकुपित दोष कोष्ठ, (रक्तादि) धातुओं एवं मलों को दूषित करता है, जिससे बार-बार अनेक वर्ण का मल शूल के साथ निकलता है। यह छठें प्रकार का अतिसार है।

3. 12, 13. Physical Examination of Āma and Pakva types of Faeces

संसृष्टमेभिर्दोषैस्तु न्यस्तमप्स्ववसीदति ।

पुरीषं भृशदुर्गन्धि पिच्छिलं चामसंज्ञितम् ॥ १२ ॥

एतान्येव तु लिङ्गानि विपरीतानि यस्य वै ।

लाघवं च विशेषेण तस्य पक्वं विनिर्दिशेत् ॥ १३ ॥

(सु० उ० ४०. १७, १८)

The faeces mixed with the above *doṣas*, sink when dropped in water, have a very foul odour and are mucilaginous; this is called *āma* (type of faeces). In case features opposite to the above are present, particularly that of the lightness (in density), it indicates the *pakva* type of faeces.

(S. S. VI. 40. 17, 18)

३. १२, १३. आम एवं पक्व मल के विभेदक लक्षण

उपरोक्त दोषों के लक्षणों से युक्त मल यदि अत्यन्त दुर्गन्धित एवं पिच्छिल (चिकनापन युक्त) हो और जल में डालने पर डूब जाये तब उसे आम मल कहते हैं; तथा जिसमें इसके विपरीत लक्षण हों, विशेष रूप से लघुता पायी जाय तो उसे पक्व मल समझना चाहिए।

3. 14-20/2. Incurable Types of Diarrhoea

3. 14-17. पक्वजाम्बवसंकाशं यकृतखण्डनिभं तनु ।
 घृततैलवसामज्जवेशवारपयोदधि— ॥ १४ ॥
 मांसधावनतोयाभं कृष्णं नीलारुणप्रभम् ।
 मेचकं स्निग्धकर्बूरं चन्द्रकोपगतं घनम् ॥ १५ ॥
 कुणपं मस्तुलुङ्गाभं सुगन्धि कुथितं बहु ।
 तृष्णादाहतमःश्वासहिक्का पार्श्वस्थिशूलिनम् ॥ १६ ॥
 समूच्छािरतिसंमोहयुक्तं पक्ववल्लीगुदम् ।
 प्रलापयुक्तं च भिषग् वर्जयेदतिसारिणम् ॥ १७ ॥

Those patients of diarrhoea should be discarded (from treatment as incurable) whose faeces are similar to a ripe *jambu*¹ fruit (in colour)² or are like a piece of liver, are thin (in consistency), or resemble *ghṛta*, oil, fat, bone-marrow, *veśavāra*³, milk or yoghurt, or have the appearance of meat washings, or have black, blue or reddish lustre, are (slightly black and dry) like pasted collyrium, are unctuous, are of variegated colours of the radiance of a peacock's tail, are dense, or which emit a cadaveric smell, have an appearance like cranial contents⁴, have a good smell, are stinking or are copious (in amount). That patient of diarrhoea need also not be taken up for treatment (as incurable) who feels thirst, a burning sensation, or darkness (in front of

1. *Syzygium cumini* (Linn.). A popular berry fruit of northern India.
2. Purple.
3. A type of minced meat preparation (S. S. I. 46. 364/2-366/1. P.C. p. 386).
4. Brain matter and C.S.F.

the eyes), or else who has dyspnoea, hiccough, severe pain in the flanks and the bones, fainting, disinclination, mental confusion, suppuration in the anal sphincteric regions or has delirium.

३.१४-२०/२. असाध्य अतिसार के लक्षण

३.१४-१७.

जब अतिसार का रोगी पके हुए जामुन के समान, यकृत के टुकड़े के समान, पतला, घी, तैल, वसा, मज्जा, वेशवार (कुट्टित मांस), दूध, दही एवं मांस के धोवन जल की आभा के समान, काला, नीला अथवा लाल रंग का मर्दित अंजन के पिण्ड के समान (कृष्ण रुक्ष) स्निग्ध, नाना वर्ण का मयूरपुच्छ के समान चन्द्रिका युक्त, घना, शव के समान गन्ध युक्त, मस्तु लुङ्ग के समान, सुगन्धित, सड़ा हुआ या अधिक मात्रा में मल त्याग करे तथा रोगी प्यास, दाह, तम, श्वास, हिक्का, पार्श्वशूल, अस्थिशूल, मूर्छा, अरति तथा मोह से पीड़ित हो, और जिसकी गुदवलियों में पाक हो एवं जो प्रलाप करता हो, ऐसे अतिसार के रोगी को असाध्य समझकर उसकी चिकित्सा नहीं करनी चाहिए।

3. 18. असंवृतगुदं क्षीणं दूराध्मात्मुपद्रुतम् ।

गुदे पक्वे गतोष्माणमतिसारकिणं त्यजेत् ॥ १८ ॥

(सु० उ० ४०.२१)

That patient of diarrhoea should also be discarded (from treatment as incurable) who has anal incontinence, is emaciated, has gross distension of the abdomen, or has developed (other) complications and whose body is not warm even though the anal region is suppurated.

(S. S. VI. 40. 21)

३.१८.

जिस रोगी की गुदा ढीली पड़ गयी हो, क्षीण एवं अतिशय आध्मान युक्त हो, उपद्रवों से पीड़ित हो तथा गुद पाक होने पर भी उष्मा न रह गयी हो ऐसे अतिसार ग्रस्त रोगी की चिकित्सा नहीं करनी चाहिए।

3.19. श्वासशूलपिपासार्तं क्षीणं ज्वरनिपीडितम् ।

विशेषेण नरं वृद्धमतीसारो विनाशयेत् ॥ १९ ॥

(सु० सू० ३३. १६)

Diarrhoea is specially fatal in old men with dyspnoea, colic, thirst, weakness and fever.

(S. S. I. 33. 19)

३. १६.

श्वास, शूल एवं पिपासा से पीडित, क्षीण और ज्वरग्रस्त विशेषकर वृद्ध मनुष्य को अतिसार नष्ट कर देता है ।

3. 20/1,2.

शोथं शूलं ज्वरं तृष्णां कासं श्वासमरोचकम् ।

छर्दि मूर्च्छां च हिक्कां च दृष्ट्वाऽतीसारिणं त्यजेत् ॥

(हा० ३. ३. ७७)

The patient of diarrhoea should be discarded if (the signs and symptoms of) oedema, colic, fever, thirst, cough, dyspnoea, anorexia, vomiting, fainting and hiccough are present.

(H. S. III. 3. 77)

३. २०/१,२.

जिस अतिसार के रोगी में शोथ, शूल, ज्वर, तृष्णा, कास, श्वास, अन्नद्वेष, छर्दि, मूर्च्छा एवं हिक्का आदि लक्षण दिखाई पड़ें तो असाध्य जानकर उसकी चिकित्सा नहीं करनी चाहिए ।

3. 20/3, 4. Blood Diarrhoea

पित्तकृन्ति यदाऽत्यर्थं द्रव्याण्यश्नाति पैत्तिके ।

तदोपजायतेऽभीक्ष्णं रक्तातीसार उल्बणः ॥ २० ॥

When a patient of *paittika* diarrhoea consumes excessive quantities of *pitta*-increasing substances for a long time, a very serious bloody diarrhoea ensues.

३.२०/३.४. रक्तातिसार

पैत्तिक अतिसार ग्रस्त रोगी जब पित्तवर्धक पदार्थों का निरन्तर सेवन करता है तो बहुत ही भयंकर रक्तातिसार की उत्पत्ति होती है ।

DYSENTERY (*PRAVĀHIKĀ*) 3. 21, 22.

3. 21. Aetiopathogenesis

वायुः प्रवृद्धो निचितं बलासं नुदत्यधस्तादहिताशनस्य ।

प्रवाहतोऽल्पं बहुशो मलाक्तं प्रवाहिकां तां प्रवदन्ति तज्ज्ञाः ॥२१॥

(सु० उ० ४०.१३८)

In persons who take unwholesome diet, excessively aggravated *vāyu* propels the accumulated mucus mixed with faeces down (the alimentary tract and out of anus) repeatedly in small quantities associated with a lot of griping; the wise call this condition as dysentery.

(S. S. VI. 40. 138)

३.२१. प्रवाहिका की सम्प्राप्ति

अहित आहार के सेवन करने से वायु प्रकुपित होकर संचित कफ को बाहर निकालने के लिए प्रेरित करता है तथा प्रवाहण (कुंथन) के साथ अल्प मात्रा में अनेक बार मल के साथ गुदा मार्ग से त्यागता है । इस अवस्था को विद्वान् प्रवाहिका कहते हैं ।

3. 22. Types

प्रवाहिका वातकृता सशूल, पित्तात्सदाहा, सकफा कफाच्च ।

सशोणिता शोणितसंभवा च ताः स्नेह्रूक्षप्रभवा मतास्तु ।

तासामतीसारवदादिशेच्च लिङ्गं क्रमं चामविपक्वतां च ॥२२॥

(सु० उ० ४०. १३६, १४०/१)

Pravāhikā of *vātika* origin presents predominantly with intestinal colic, that of *pañtika* origin (predominantly) with a burning sensation (during defaecation), that of *kapha* origin (predominantly) with mucus (in the stools) and that of *śoṇita* origin presents (predominantly) with blood (in the faeces); it is said that all these may occur due to taking (excessively) fatty or dry things. Their clinical features, lines of management and grading into *āma* or *pakva* stages should be known like those of *atisāra*.

(S. S. VI. 40. 139, 140/1)

३.२२. प्रवाहिका के भेद व लक्षण

वातजन्य प्रवाहिका में शूल एवं पित्तजन्य में दाह (मल-त्याग के समय) मुख्य रूप से होता है। श्लैष्मिक में कफ एवं रक्तज में रक्त की अधिकता (मल में) होती है। ये प्रवाहिकाएँ स्नेह एवं रूक्षादि कारणों से उत्पन्न हो सकती हैं। प्रवाहिकाओं के लक्षण, आम एवं पक्व के भेद तथा चिकित्सा अतिसार की भाँति समझना चाहिए।

3. 23. Signs of Cure

यस्योच्चारं बिना मूत्रं सम्यग्वायुश्च गच्छति ।

दीप्ताग्नेर्लघुकोष्ठस्य स्थितस्तस्योदरामयः ॥ २३ ॥

(सु० उ० ४०. १६२)

When the patient is able to pass urine without passing faeces at the same time, flatus is expelled out normally, digestive power is active and there is a feeling of lightness in the abdomen, he should be

considered to have been cured of the abdominal disorder (diarrhoea).

(S. S. VI. 40. 162)

३. २३. अतिसार-मुक्त के लक्षण

जो अतिसार का रोगी बिना मल प्रवृत्ति के मूत्र एवं अपान वायु का त्याग करे तथा जिसकी अग्नि प्रदीप्त हो गई हो और कोष्ठ लघु हो गया हो उसे अतिसार से मुक्त समझना चाहिए ।

3. 24. Fever with Diarrhoea

ज्वरातिसारयोस्तं निदानं यत्पृथक् पृथक् ।

तत्स्याज्ज्वरातिसारस्य तेन नात्रोदितं पुनः ॥ २४ ॥

The diagnosis of fever¹ and of diarrhoea² have been described separately for each; the features of fever with diarrhoea should, therefore, be understood accordingly (by combining them both) and hence, are not being repeated again.

३. २४. ज्वरातिसार

ज्वर एवं अतिसार के जो पृथक्-पृथक् निदान बताये गये हैं उन्हीं को मिलाकर ज्वरातिसार का निदान समझना चाहिये । अतएव इनका अलग से वर्णन नहीं किया जा रहा है ।

इति श्रीमाधवकरविरचिते माधवनिदाने अतिसारनिदानम् समाप्तम् ॥३॥

Thus ends (the third chapter entitled) 'The Diagnosis of Diarrhoea' of Mādhava Nidāna, as compiled by Śrī Mādhavakara.

इस प्रकार श्रीमाधवकर द्वारा सङ्कलित माधव-निदान का अतिसारनिदान (नामक तीसरा अध्याय) समाप्त हुआ ।

1. M. N. 2.

2. M. N. 3. loc. cit.

M. N. 3

SUGGESTED RESEARCH PROBLEMS

1. A historical and comparative study of the concept of diarrhoea and dysentery as outlined in this chapter would be interesting.
2. It would be worthwhile to correlate the types of diarrhoea (6-11) and dysentery (21, 22) with the clinical conditions seen today.
3. A clinical and experimental assessment of the aetiological factors (1-4) and varieties of diarrhoea and dysentery may yield valueable information.



माधवनिदानम्

चतुर्थोऽध्यायः

ग्रहणी रोग निदानम्

THE DIAGNOSIS OF *GRAHĀṆĪ* DISEASE

CHAPTER FOUR

MĀDHAVA-NIDĀNA

M. N. 4

SUMMARY

This chapter deals with all aspects of the diagnosis of *grahaṇī* disease.

Grahaṇī can be considered to be a syndrome with persistent chronic diarrhoea as the predominant feature; its aetiopathogenesis (1-3) includes the main aetiological factor as taking of non-beneficial diet by persons recovering from diarrhoea and with a poor digestive capacity.

The premonitory features (4) include thirst, lethargy, heartburn after meals and impaired digestion, etc.

Clinical features of the three main varieties due to the individual *doṣas*, viz. *vātika grahaṇī* (5-10), *pañtika grahaṇī* (11,12) and *kaphaja grahaṇī* disease (13-16) and one, the *tridoṣaja grahaṇī* (17) due to a combination of all the *doṣas* have been described; these include frequent motions of irregular consistency, most of the times liquid but sometimes well-formed and containing undigested food matter and with pain and foul smell, etc.

Two special types, the *saṁgrahagrahaṇī* disease (18. 1-4/1) and *ghaṭīyantra grahaṇī* (18. 4/2, 3) have been described which could respectively be sprue syndrome and partial intestinal obstruction, e.g. due to a tubercular stricture.

The prognosis (19, 20) has been given; it is specially bad in the elderly.



चतुर्थोऽध्यायः

CHAPTER FOUR

ग्रहणीरोगनिदानम्

THE DIAGNOSIS OF GRAHĀNĪ DISEASE

4. 1-3. Aetio-pathogenesis

अतीसारे निवृत्तेऽपि मन्दाग्नेरहिताशिनः ।

भूयः संदूषितो वह्निर्ग्रहणीमभिदूषयेत् ॥ १ ॥

(सु० उ० ४०. १६७)

एकैकशः सर्वशश्च दोषैरत्यर्थमूर्च्छितैः ।

सा दुष्टा बहुशो भुक्तमाममेव विमुञ्चति ॥ २ ॥

पक्वं वा सरुजं पूति मुहुर्वद्वं मुहुर्व्वम् ।

ग्रहणीरोगमाहुस्तमायुर्वेदविदो जनाः ॥ ३ ॥

(सु० उ० ४०. १७१, १७२)

When a person with a poor digestive power even after subsidence of diarrhoea takes non-beneficial diet his digestive power deteriorates more leading to malfunctioning of the *grahāṇī* (organ).

(S. S. VI. 40. 167)

When the *grahāṇī* gets severely afflicted by the excessively aggravated *doṣas* either by each one (of the three *doṣas*) separately or by all of them together, and expels the food (usually) in the undigested form itself when the stools are liquid and are passed

repeatedly with pain and foul smell. However, (sometimes) the process of digestion may have been completed and then the stools may be passed repeatedly in the well-formed state¹. This condition is known as the *grahani* disease by the Ayurvedic experts.

(S. S. VI. 40. 171, 172)

४. १-३. हेतु एवं सम्प्राप्ति

अतिसार के निवृत्त हो जाने पर भी, मन्दाग्नि युक्त पुरुष जब अहित आहार सेवन करता है तो पुनः अग्नि दूषित होकर ग्रहणी को भी दूषित करती है । इस प्रकार प्रकुपित वातादि दोष पृथक् पृथक् एक, (दो) अथवा तीनों से बहु दूषित ग्रहणी अपक्व आहार को अनेक बार त्यागती है । यह अन्न कभी पक्व तथा कभी आम युक्त, वेदना के साथ, दुर्गन्धयुक्त, कभी बद्ध तथा कभी द्रव रूप में बार-बार निकलता है । आयुर्वेद के ज्ञानी इसे ग्रहणी रोग कहते हैं ।

4. 4. Premonitory features

पूर्वरूपं तु तस्येदं तृष्णाऽऽलस्यं बलक्षयः ।

विदाहोऽग्नस्य पाकश्च चिरात्कायस्य गौरवम् ॥ ४ ॥

(च० चि० १५. ५५)

Its prodromal features are thirst, lethargy, loss of vitality, heartburn after meals, delayed digestion and a feeling of heaviness of the body.

(C. S. VI. 15. 55)

४. ४. पूर्वरूप

तृष्णा, आलस्य, बल नाश, अन्न का विदाह एवं देर में पाक होना, तथा शरीर में गौरव ग्रहणी के पूर्वरूप बताये गये हैं ।

1. Periodical exacerbations and remissions with alternate diarrhoea and normal stools.

4. 5-10. Vātika Grahaṇī Disease

कटुतिक्तकषयातिरूक्षसंदुष्टभोजनैः ।
 प्रमितानशनात्यध्ववेगनिग्रहमैथुनैः ॥ ५ ॥
 मास्तः कृपितो वर्द्धि संछाद्य कुरुते गदात् ।
 तस्यान्नं पच्यते दुःखं शुक्तपाकं खराङ्गता ॥ ६ ॥
 कण्ठास्यशोषोक्षुत्तृष्णा तिमिरं कर्णयोः स्वनः ।
 पार्श्वोत्खण्डक्षणग्रीवारुग्भीक्षणं विसूचिका ॥ ७ ॥
 हृत्पीडाकाश्यदौर्बल्यं वैरस्यं परिकर्तिका ।
 गृद्धिः सर्वरसानां च मनसः सदनं तथा ॥ ८ ॥
 जीर्णे जीर्यति चाध्मानं भुक्ते स्वास्थ्यमुपैति च ।
 स वातगुल्महृद्रोगप्लीहाशङ्की च मानवः ॥ ९ ॥
 चिराद्दुःखं द्रवं शुष्कं तन्वामं शब्दफेनवत् ।
 पुनः पुनः सृजेद्वर्चः कासश्चासादितोऽनिलात् ॥ १० ॥

(च० चि० १५.५६-६४)

Excessive intake of pungent, bitter, astringent, dry and contaminated food, taking deficient diet or complete starvation, walking long distances, suppression of natural evaculatory urges and (excessive) sexual intercourse vitiate *vāyu*, overpower the metabolic fire and produce various diseases.

There is difficulty in the digestion of food leading to acid eructations, roughness of the body, dryness of the throat and the mouth, loss of appetite, thirst, dimness of vision, tinnitus, fleeting pain in the sides (of the chest), thighs, groin and neck, vomiting and diarrhoea¹, pain in the cardiac region, emaciation, weakness, altered taste in the mouth,

1. *Visucika* (? gastro-enteritis).

pain (in the anal region) as if being cut by scissors¹, craving for (food of) various tastes and mental depression. Flatulence occurs during or after digestion; however, the patient feels a sense of well-being after taking meals. He is (always) anxious if he has developed *vāta gulma*², cardiac diseases or splenomegaly.

The patient suffering from the *vātika grahaṇī* disease takes a long time to evacuate the bowels because of pain. He passes stools repeatedly in the liquid or dry state, (which is also) thin, contains undigested food material, is frothy and is accompanied with (loud) sounds; he may also be distressed with cough and dyspnoea.

(C. S. VI. 15. 59-64)

४.५-१०. वातिक ग्रहणी रोग

कटु, तिक्त, कषाय रस युक्त, अति रुक्ष एवं दूषित भोजन के सेवन से, अल्प भोजन या उपवास से, अधिक पद यात्रा करने से, अधारणीय वेगों के धारण से तथा अति मैथुन से वायु प्रकुपित होकर, अग्नि को आच्छादित करके ग्रहणी रोग को उत्पन्न करती है। इस व्याधिग्रस्त मनुष्य के भोजन किये अन्न का पाक कष्ट से होता है या शुक्त (अम्लीय) पाक होता है तथा अंगों में रुक्षता हो जाती है। कण्ठ और मुख शुष्क हो जाता है। भूख नहीं लगती और प्यास अधिक लगती है। नेत्रों की रोशनी कम हो जाती है तथा कानों में शब्द सुनाई देता है। पार्श्व, उरु, वंक्षण एवं ग्रीवा में पीड़ा होती है। विस्मृत्तिका (अत्यधिक मलत्याग का होना), हृदय में पीड़ा, कृशता एवं दुर्बलता, मुख-वैरस्य तथा गुद में कर्तनवत् पीड़ा होती है। रोगी सभी रस युक्त पदार्थों को खाने की इच्छा करता है और उसके मन में अवसाद रहता है। भोजन के पाक हो जाने पर या पाकावस्थामें आध्मान होता है तथा हल्का भोजन करने पर वह स्वस्थ अनुभव

1. ? Fissure-in-ano.

2. Gaseous distension of the intestinal loops.

करता है। रोगी वातज गुल्म, हृद्‌रोग तथा झीहा विकार की शंका करता रहता है। वह रोगी बहुत काल तक दुःख के साथ कभी द्रव, कभी शुष्क, तनु, आम-युक्त एवं शब्द तथा फेनयुक्त मल को बार-बार त्यागता है। साथ में कास एवं श्वास से पीड़ित रहता है। इन लक्षणों से युक्त रोगी को वातिक ग्रहणी का रोगी समझना चाहिए।

4. 11, 12. Paittika Grahaṇī Disease

कट्वजीर्णविदाह्यम्लक्षाराद्यैः पित्तमुल्बणम् ।

आप्लावयद्धन्त्यनलं जलं तप्तमिवानलम् ॥ ११ ॥

सोज्जीर्णं नीलपीताभं पीताभः सार्यते द्रवम् ।

पूत्यम्लोद्गारहृत्कण्ठाहारचितृर्दितः ॥ १२ ॥

(च० चि० १५. ६५, ६६)

Intake of pungent and heartburn producing, as well as acidic or alkaline foods and drinks¹, etc. by the dyspeptic aggravate *pitta* which submerging the metabolic fire impairs its actions just as even hot water is capable of extinguishing a fire.

The patient passes undigested, bluish or yellowish liquid stools. His complexion becomes yellowish. He brings out foul smelling acid eructations, develops a burning sensation in the cardiac region and the throat, and has anorexia as well as thirst.

(C. S. VI. 15. 65, 66)

४. ११, १२. पैत्तिक ग्रहणी रोग

अजीर्ण होने पर भी कटु रस युक्त आहार, विदाही आहार, अम्ल रस, क्षार आदि पित्तवर्धक पदार्थों के सेवन से प्रकुपित पित्त अग्नि को आच्छादित कर इस प्रकार नष्ट कर देता है जैसे उष्ण जल भी अग्नि को बुझा सकती है।

1. Gastric irritants.

इस प्रकार पैत्तिक ग्रहणी से ग्रस्त मनुष्य का वर्ण पीला हो जाता है तथा वह अजोर्ण से पीड़ित होकर नीले और पीले रंग का द्रवरूप मल त्याग करता है और दुर्गन्ध युक्त अम्लोद्गार, हृदय एवं कंठ में दाह तथा अरुचि एवं प्यास से अधिक पीड़ित रहता है ।

4. 13-16. Kaphaja Grahani Disease

गुर्वतिस्लिग्धशीतादिभोजनादतिभोजनात् ।

भुक्तमात्रस्य च स्वप्नाद्धन्त्यग्निं कुपितः कफः ॥ १३ ॥

तस्यान्नं पच्यते दुःखं हृल्लासच्छर्द्यरोचकाः ।

आस्योपदेहमाधुर्यं कासश्चीवनपीनसाः ॥ १४ ॥

हृदयं मन्यते स्त्यानमुदरं स्तिमितं गुरु ।

दुष्टो मधुर उद्गारः सदनं स्त्रीष्वहर्षणम् ॥ १५ ॥

भिन्नामश्लेष्मसंसृष्टगुरु वर्चः प्रवर्तनम् ।

अकृशस्यापि दौर्बल्यमालस्यं च कफात्मके ॥ १६ ॥

(च० चि० १५. ६७-७०)

Intake of heavy, very fatty, cold and other similar types of food, overeating and sleeping immediately after taking meals aggravate *kapha* which impairs (the proper functioning of) the metabolic fire. The food is digested with difficulty and the patient suffers from nausea, vomiting, anorexia, a feeling of stickiness and sweet taste in the mouth, cough, (repeated) spitting and corrhyza.

The cardiac region¹ is felt to be distended and the abdomen tense and heavy. The patient brings out unp'essant and sweet eructations; he feels tired.

2. Implies fullness of the epigastric region here.

and remains disinclined towards enjoying (the company of) women.

He passes loose, mucoid and bulky stools with undigested food matter. Despite lack of emaciation he feels weak and lethargic in the *kaphaja* type (of *grahaṇī* disease).

(C. S. VI. 15. 67-70)

४. १३-१६. कफज ग्रहणी रोग

गुरु, अति स्निग्ध एवं शीतल आदि भोजन के सेवन से, अत्यधिक भोजन करने से तथा भोजन करने के तुरन्त पश्चात् शयन करने से प्रकुपित कफ अग्नि को मन्द कर देता है। ऐसे रोगी को खाया हुआ अन्न दुःखपूर्वक पचता है और वह हृत्तास, छर्दि एवं अरुचि से पीड़ित रहता है। मुख में चिपचिपाहट एवं मिठास का अनुभव होता है। कास, घ्रीवन तथा पीनस से वह व्यक्ति पीड़ित रहता है। उसे अपना हृदय (प्रदेश) बढ़ा हुआ लगता है। उदर स्तिमित (जकड़ा हुआ) और गुरु (भारी) हो जाता है। दूषित मधुर डकार, अंगों में भारीपन तथा स्त्री-प्रसंग (मैथुन) के प्रति अनिच्छा होती है। उसका मल भिन्न (पतला), आम एवं श्लेष्मा युक्त व गुरु (भारी) होता है। रोगी कुश न होते हुए भी दुर्बलता एवं आलस्य का अनुभव करता है। इन लक्षणों को श्लैष्मिक ग्रहणी का लक्षण समझना चाहिए।

4. 17. Tridoṣaja Grahaṇī Disease

पृथग्वातादिनिर्दिष्टहेतुलिङ्गसमागमे ।

त्रिदोषं निर्दिशेदेवं, तेषां वक्ष्यामि भेषजम् ॥ १७ ॥

(च० चि० १५. ७२)

When the aetiological factors and the clinical features as described for (all the three) *doṣas* like *vāta*, etc. are present together, the condition should be diagnosed as the *tridoṣaja grahaṇī* disease. Now I would describe their management.

(C. S. VI. 15. 72)

४. १७. त्रिदोषज ग्रहणी रोग

यदि वातिक, पैत्तिक एवं श्लैष्मिक ग्रहणी के पृथक् पृथक् वर्णित हेतु एवं लक्षण साथ-साथ पाये जायें तो उसे त्रिदोषज ग्रहणी समझना चाहिए। अब आगे इनकी चिकित्सा बतायेंगे।

4. 18. 1-4/1. Saṁgrahagrahaṇī Disease¹

अन्त्रकूजनमालस्यं दौर्बल्यं सदनं तथा ।

द्रवं शीतं घनं स्निग्धं सकटीवेदनं शकृत् ॥ १ ॥

आमं बहु सपैच्छिल्यं सशब्दं मन्दवेदनम् ।

पक्षान्मासाद्दशाहाद्वा नित्यं वाऽप्यथ मुञ्चति ॥ २ ॥

दिवा प्रकोपो भवति रात्रौ शान्तिं व्रजेच्च या ।

दुर्विज्ञेया दुश्चिकित्स्या चिरकालानुबन्धिनी ॥ ३ ॥

सा भवेदामवातेन संग्रहग्रहणी मता ।

(The clinical features of *saṁgrahagrahaṇī* disease are) borborygmy, lethargy, weakness, malaise, along with pain in the waist associated with the passage of liquid, cool, dense, unctuous and bulky, mucoid stools containing undigested food matter along with the production of sounds (during its passage) and mild pain. The attacks of diarrhoea may occur at intervals of a fortnight, a month, ten days or may even occur daily. The condition aggravates during the day time and subsides in the night. It is difficult to diagnose, difficult to treat and persists for a long time. This is known as the *saṁgrahagrahaṇī* disease and is caused by *āma vāyu*.

४. १८. १-४/१. संग्रहग्रहणी रोग

आंत्र कूजन, आलस्य, दुर्बलता, अंगों में अवसाद, कटि में पीड़ा के साथ रोगी द्रवरूप, शीत तथा गाढ़ा, स्निग्ध, आम एवं पिच्छिलता युक्त, शब्द एवं

1. Sprue syndrome.

मन्द वेदना के साथ मल का त्याग करता है । इसका प्रकोप एक मास, एक पक्ष या दस दिन के पश्चात् अथवा प्रतिदिन भी हो सकता है । दिन में इसका प्रकोप अधिक होता है तथा रात्रि में शांत हो जाता है । यह दुर्विज्ञेय एवं दुश्चिकित्स्य तथा चिरकालिक व्याधि होती है । यह आम वायु के कारण उत्पन्न होती है और इसे संग्रहग्रहणी रोग कहते हैं ।

4. 18. 4/2,3. Ghaṭīyantra Grahaṇī Disease

स्वपतः पार्श्वयोः शूलं गलज्जलघटीध्वनिः ।

तं वदन्ति घटीयन्त्रमसाध्यं ग्रहणीगदम् ॥ ४ ॥

When colicky pain occurs on either of the sides on lying down and (gurgling intestinal) sounds are heard similar to that produced by a pitcher dipped inside water, the condition is called *ghaṭīyantra grahaṇī*¹ disease; it is incurable.

४. १८. ४/२, ३. घटीयंत्र ग्रहणी रोग

लोटने पर पार्श्व में शूल तथा जल में डूबते हुए घड़े के सदृश्य ध्वनि से युक्त ग्रहणी रोग को घटीयंत्र ग्रहणी रोग कहते हैं । यह असाध्य होता है ।

4. 18. 5. Sāma/Nirāma concept in Grahaṇī Disease

दोषं सामं निरामं च विद्यादत्रातिसारवत् ॥ १८ ॥

The state of *sāma* or *nirāma doṣa* should be established here also as in cases of *atisāra* (diarrhoea).

४. १८. ५. ग्रहणी रोग में साम एवं निराम लक्षण

दोषों की सामता एवं निरामता का लक्षण अतिसार के समान ही समझना चाहिए ।

1. Partial intestinal obstruction (e. g. due to a tubercular stricture).

4. 19,20. Prognosis

लिङ्गैरसाध्यो ग्रहणीविकारो यैस्तैरतीसारगदो न सिध्येत् ।

वृद्धस्य नूनं ग्रहणीविकारो हत्वा तनुं नैव निवर्तते च ॥ १९ ॥

बालके ग्रहणी साध्या यूनि कृच्छ्रा समीरिता ।

वृद्धे त्वसाध्या विज्ञेया मतं धन्वन्तरेरिदम् ॥ २० ॥

The very clinical features which foretell incurability in cases of diarrhoea should also be regarded as the features of incurability in the *grahaṇī* disease.

If the *grahaṇī* disease happens to afflict an old person, it would certainly never leave him without taking his life away.

The *grahaṇī* disease is curable in the children, curable with difficulty in the adults, whereas it is considered incurable in the elderly according to the Dhanvantari school of thought.

४. १९, २०. साध्यासाध्यता

जिन लक्षणों से युक्त अतिसार रोग असाध्य होता है उन्हीं लक्षणों से युक्त ग्रहणी-रोग को भी असाध्य समझना चाहिए । वृद्धावस्था में उत्पन्न ग्रहणी रोग असाध्य होता है तथा उस व्यक्ति का नाश भी कर देता है । बालकों में ग्रहणी साध्य, युवावस्था में कृच्छ्रसाध्य तथा वृद्ध पुरुष की ग्रहणी असाध्य होती है । यह धन्वन्तरि का सिद्धान्त है ।

इति श्रीमाधवकरविरचिते माधवनिदाने ग्रहणीनिदानं समाप्तम् ॥४॥

Thus ends (the fourth chapter entitled) 'The Diagnosis of the *Grahaṇī* Disease' of Mādhava Nidāna, as compiled by Śrī Mādhavakara.

इस प्रकार श्रीमाधवकर द्वारा सङ्कलित माधव-निदान का ग्रहणीरोगनिदान (नामक चौथा अध्याय) समाप्त हुआ ।

M. N. 4

SUGGESTED RESEARCH PROBLEMS

1. A historical and comparative study on the following conceptual aspects of the *grahaṇī* disease would be worthwhile :

- (i) Aetiopathogenesis (1-3).
- (ii) Premonitory features (4).
- (iii) Clinical features (5-17) of the *doṣika* types.
- (iv) Special types, i.e. *saṁgrahagrahaṇī* (18.1-4/1) and *ghaṭīyantra grahaṇī* (18.4/2,3).
- (v) *Sāma/nirāma* concept (18.5).
- (vi) Prognostic considerations (19,20).

2. A clinical study to correlate the types of *grahaṇī* (5-18) disease with the conditions seen today would bring many new facts to light, e.g.

- (i) Some of the *doṣika grahaṇīs* (5-17) may be similar to the various forms of colitis, small bowel syndrome and gastro-enteritis.
- (ii) *Samgrahagrahaṇī* (18.1-4/1) could be compared with sprue syndrome.
- (iii) *Ghaṭīyantra grahaṇī* (18. 4/2,3) could be identified with some variety of tubercular abdomen, especially intestinal strictures with partial obstruction.



माधवनिदानम्

पञ्चमोऽध्यायः

अर्शोनिदानम्

THE DIAGNOSIS OF PILES

CHAPTER FIVE

MĀDHAVA-NIDĀNA

100

M. N. 5

SUMMARY

This chapter describes the diagnosis of the anal piles and pile like lesions in certain other areas of the body.

I. The Anal Piles (1-41)

Six types (1) of the anal piles occurring in the region of the three anal folds have been mentioned. Their origin (2) and aetiological factors (3-9) have been described which include various unsalutary diets, changes in dietary habits, excessive intake of wines, seasonal factors, strenuous physical work, emotional upsets and sedentary habits, etc. Hereditary (1, 24/1) piles is specifically mentioned to be a separate type.

Their clinical features (10-30) have been given; these discuss i) the local features of the anal piles along with ii) the associated general and systemic manifestations, and iii) the gross appearance of stool in each type.

(i) The local features describe the colour, number, appearance, softness/induration, etc. of the lesion and have been compared with familiar fruits, cereals or flowers or parts of animals; some of these could have been associated with complications, e.g. thrombosis in the pile masses, perianal suppuration, etc. (ii) The general and systemic manifestations describe pain in different parts of the body, gastro-intestinal, respiratory and cardio-vascular symptoms, neurological manifestations, hepatomegaly, etc.

(iii) Physical characteristics of stool (like presence of mucus, frothy stool, liquidy matter with shreds, etc.) are given for each type.

The prodromal features (31, 32) of piles include various gastrointestinal symptoms and anaemia, etc.

The piles have been considered to be a very serious disease (33, 34).

The prognosis (35-38) has been discussed, it is good in external piles of recent origin, not so good if it is deeper and of over one year duration and bad if it is hereditary or very deep.

The piles have been considered to be fatal (39-41) if the patient has associated complications of oedema, precordial pain, perianal suppuration, etc.

II. Pile like lesions in other parts of the body (42-44)

Certain lesions which give the external appearance of piles have been described in other parts of the body (42-44); they may occur in the penis, nose and umbilicus (polyps), etc. and as skin warts.

पञ्चमोऽध्यायः

CHAPTER FIVE

अर्शोनिदानम्

THE DIAGNOSIS OF PILES

5.1. Types

पृथग्दोषैः समस्तैश्च शोणितात्सहजानि च ।

अर्शासि षट्प्रकाराणि विद्याद् गुदवल्लिन्त्रये ॥ १ ॥

Piles are of six types, viz., due to the (three) *doṣas* separately, all of them combined together, *raktaja* and hereditary; their sites of lesion are in the three folds of the anus.

५.१. भेद

वातिक, पैत्तिक, श्लैष्मिक, सान्निपातिक, शोणितजन्य और सहज भेद से छ प्रकार के अर्श होते हैं जो गुदा के तीनों वलियों में पाये जाते हैं ।

5.2. Origin

दोषास्त्वङ्मांसमेदांसि संदृष्य विविधाकृतीन् ।

मांसाङ्कुरानपानादौ कुर्वन्त्यर्शांसि ताञ्जगुः ॥ २ ॥

(अ० हृ० नि० ७.२)

The *doṣas* having vitiated the skin (and mucosa), muscles and fatty tissue produce fleshy sprouts of various shapes in the ano-rectal region, etc.; these are called piles.

(A.H. III. 7. 2)

५. २. उत्पत्ति

वातादि दोष जब त्वक मांस एवं मेद को दूषित कर के विविध आकार के मांसांकुरों को, गुदा आदि स्थानों में उत्पन्न करते हैं तो इन्हें अर्श कहते हैं ।

5. 3, 4. Aetiology of vātika piles

कषायकटुतिक्तानि रुक्षशीतलघूनि च ।

प्रमिताल्पाशनं तीक्ष्णं मद्यं मैथुनसेवनम् ॥ ३ ॥

लङ्घनं देशकालौ च शीतौ व्यायामकर्म च ।

शोको वातातपस्पर्शो हेतुवार्ताशसां मतः ॥ ४ ॥

(च० चि० १४. १२, १३)

(Excessive intake of) astringent, bitter, dry, cold and light food and drinks, decrease in the quantity and/or frequency of meals, strong wines, as well as (excessive) sexual intercourse, fasting, (residing in) cold countries, cold season, strenuous physical exercise, grief, and prolonged exposure to winds and the sun are the aetiological factors of the *vātika* piles.

(G. S. VI. 14. 12, 13)

५. ३, ४. वातिक अर्श के हेतु

कषाय, कटु, तिक्त रुक्ष, शीत एवं लघु पदार्थों का सेवन, समय बीत जानें पर अथवा/और अल्प भोजन, तीक्ष्ण मद्य, अधिक मैथुन, लंघन, शीतल देश तथा काल में निवास, अति व्यायाम, शोक, वायु एवं धूप का अधिक सेवन वातिक अर्श के हेतु होते हैं ।

5. 5, 6. Aetiology of paittika piles

कट्वस्त्रलवणोष्णानि व्यायामान्यातपप्रभाः ।

देशकालावशिशिरौ क्रोधो मद्यमसूयनम् ॥ ५ ॥

विदाहि तीक्ष्णमुष्णं च सर्वं पानान्नभेषजम् ।

पित्तोल्बणानां विज्ञेयः प्रकोपे हेतुरर्शसाम् ॥ ६॥

(च० चि० १४.१५, १६)

(Excessive intake of) pungent, sour, saltish and hot food and drinks, strenuous physical exercise, prolonged exposure to the heat of the fire and the sun, (residing in) hot countries, warm climate, anger, jealousy, wines, and the use of all types of heart-burn producing sharp and hot drinks, food and drugs are the aetiological factors of piles with *pitta* predominance.

(C. S. VI. 14-15, 16)

५.५,६. पैत्तिक अर्श के हेतु

कटु, अम्ल, लवण एवं उष्ण पदार्थों का सेवन, व्यायाम, अग्नि एवं धूप की उष्णता, उष्ण देश और काल में रहना, क्रोध, ईर्ष्या, मद्य तथा विदाही, तीक्ष्ण, उष्ण गुण युक्त अन्न पान और औषधि का सेवन पित्त प्रधान अर्श के प्रकोप के कारण होते हैं ।

5. 7, 8. Aetiology of kaphaja piles

मधुरस्निग्धशीतानि लवणाम्लगुरुणि च ।

अव्यायामो दिवास्वप्नः शय्यासनसुखे रतिः ॥ ७ ॥

प्राग्वातसेवा शीतौ च देशकालावचिन्तनम् ।

श्लैष्मिकाणां समुद्दिष्टमेतत्कारणमर्शसाम् ॥ ८ ॥

(च० चि० १४.१८, १९)

(Excessive intake of) sweet, fatty and cold, as well as saltish, sour and heavy substances, lack of physical exercise, day sleeping, sedentary habits like lying down or sitting, exposure to the easterly winds,

residing in cold countries and cold season, and remaining care free are the aetiological factors of *ślaiṣmika* piles.

(C. S. VI. 14. 18, 19)

५. ७, ८. श्लैष्मिक अर्श के हेतु

मधुर, स्निग्ध और शीतल एवं लवण, अम्ल और गुरु पदार्थों का सेवन, व्यायाम न करना, दिन में सोना, अधिक लेटने या बैठने की आदत, पूर्वी हवा का सेवन, शीतल देश तथा काल में रहना एवं कभी भी चिन्ता न करना श्लैष्मिक अर्श के कारण कहे गये हैं ।

5. 9/1. Piles due to the dual combination of *doṣas*

हेतुलक्षणसंसर्गाद् विद्याद् द्वन्द्वोल्वणानि च ।

(च० चि० १४. २०/१)

When aetiological factors and the clinical features of two *doṣas* are present they (the piles) should be understood to be due to the dual combination of the *doṣas*.

(C. S. VI. 14. 20/1)

५. ९/१. द्वन्द्वज अर्श

दो दोषों के हेतु एवं लक्षण के संसर्ग से द्वन्द्वज अर्श जानना चाहिये ।

5. 9/2. *Tridoṣaja* and hereditary piles

सर्वो हेतुस्त्रिदोषाणां सहजैर्लक्षणं समम् ॥ ९ ॥

(च० चि० १४. २०/२)

All types of aetiological factors may be discernible in the *tridoṣaja* type; the characteristics of the hereditary piles are also similar.

(C. S. VI. 14. 20/2)

५. ६/२. त्रिदोषज एवं सहज अर्श

सभी तीनों दोषों के पृथक्-पृथक् हेतु के संसर्ग के फलस्वरूप त्रिदोषज अर्श की उत्पत्ति होती है। सहज अर्श के लक्षण उसी के समान होते हैं।

5. 10-15. Clinical features of vātika piles

गुदाङ्कुरा वह्निलाः शुष्काश्चिमचिमान्विताः ।
 म्लानाः श्यावारुणाः रतव्धा विशदाः परुषाः खराः ॥१०॥
 मिथो विसदृशा वक्रास्तीक्ष्णा विस्फुटिताननाः ।
 विम्बीखर्जूरकर्कन्धूकार्पासीफलसन्निभाः ॥११॥
 केचित्कदम्बपुष्पाभाः केचित्सिद्धार्थकोपमाः ।
 शिरःपार्श्वासकटचूखवङ्क्षणाद्यधिकव्यथाः ॥१२॥
 क्षवथूद्गारविष्टम्भहृद्ग्रहारोचकप्रदाः ।
 कासश्वासार्ग्नवैषम्यकर्णनादभ्रमावहाः ॥१३॥
 तैरातो ग्रथितं स्तोकं सशब्दं सप्रवाहिकम् ।
 रुक्फेनपिच्छानुगतं विवद्धमुपवेश्यते ॥१४॥
 कृष्णत्वङ्नखविण्मूत्रनेत्रवक्त्रश्च जायते ।
 गुल्मप्लीहोदराष्टीला संभवस्तत एव च ॥१५॥
 (अ० ह० नि० ७.२८/२-३४/१)

The anal piles with *vāta* predominance are dry, associated with a tingling sensation, dirty looking, blackish, reddish, indurated, clear, rough and full of sprouts; they have dissimilar appearances in different pile masses and appear twisted and sharp with cracked tips; they may resemble the fruits of *bimbi*¹, *kharjūra*², *karkandhu*³ and *kārpāsi*⁴; some may appear

1. *Coccinia indica* W. and A.

2. Date palm.

3. *Zizyphus mummularia* W. & H.

4. A species resembling cotton plant.

(big) like the flowers of *kadamba*¹ while others may be (small) like *siddhārīhaka*.²

There is severe pain in the head, the sides, the scapular regions, the waist, the thighs and the groins, etc., as well as sneezing, eructation, constipation, constricting pain in the cardiac region, anorexia, cough, dyspnoea, inconstant digestive power, tinnitus and giddiness. The patient afflicted with these passes scybalous faeces in small amounts repeatedly with tenesmus and producing a sound, followed by pain and passage of pent-up, frothy and mucilaginous matter. There is a blackish discolouration of the skin, nails, faeces, urine, eyes and the face. Abdominal swellings, splenomegaly and (other) abdominal disorders as well as prostatic enlargement may occur as a sequelae.

(A. H. III. 7. 28/2-34/1)

५. १०-१५. वातिक अर्श के लक्षण

वायुप्रधान गुदांकुर, शुष्क एवं चुनचुनाहट युक्त होते हैं तथा ये मुरझाये हुए, मटमैले, कृष्णाभ या लाल रंग के कठिन और विशद, खुर्दरा, कण्टकयुक्त, एक दूसरे से विभिन्न आकृति वाले, वक्र एवं तीक्ष्ण, स्फुटित मुख वाले, बिम्बी, खजूर, बेर या कपास के फल के सदृश आकृति वाले, कोई कदम्ब के पुष्प के समान (बड़े) तथा कोई सर्प के समान (छोटे) होते हैं। शिर, पार्श्व कटि, उरु और वंक्षण आदि प्रदेशों में अत्यधिक पीड़ा होती है, श्वथु एवं उद्गार के साथ मलावरोध होता है। रोगी हृदय पीड़ा, अरोचकता, कास, श्वास, अग्नि वैषम्य, कर्णनाद और भ्रम से पीड़ित होता है। इनसे पीड़ित रोगी गाँठदार और थोड़ा-थोड़ा पुरीष शब्द एवं प्रवाहण के साथ त्यागता है जिसके अन्त में रुका हुआ फेनयुक्त तथा पिच्छिल मल पीड़ा के साथ आता है।

1. *Anthocephalus indicus* A. Rich.

2. Mustard.

रोगी के त्वक, नख, मल, मूत्र, नेत्र और मुख कृष्ण वर्ण के हो जाते हैं तथा रोगी को गुल्म, स्त्रीहा, उदर रोग एवं अष्टीला होने की संभावना रहती है ।

5. 16-18. Clinical features of paittika piles

पित्तोत्तरा नीलमुखा रक्तपीतासितप्रभाः ।

तन्वस्त्रस्त्राविणो विस्त्रास्तनवो मृदवः श्लथ्वाः ॥ १६ ॥

शुकजिह्वायकृत्खण्डजलौकोवक्त्रसंनिभाः ।

दाहपाकज्वरस्वेदतृणमूर्च्छाश्चिमोहदाः ॥ १७ ॥

सोष्माणो द्रवनीलोष्णपीतरक्तामवर्चसः ।

यवमध्या हरित्पीतहारिद्रत्वङ्मखादयः ॥ १८ ॥

(अ० ह० नि० ७. ३४/२-३७/१)

Further, the piles caused by vitiated *pitta* have bluish tips, have reddish, yellowish or blackish colouration, give rise to a thin sanguinous discharge, emit a foul odour, are a few only (in number), and are soft and elongated. Their appearance is like that of the tongue of a parrot, a piece of liver or the mouth of a leech. They are associated with a burning sensation, suppuration, fever, sweating, thirst, fainting, anorexia and confusion. They are (felt to be) hot; in addition *ama* type of liquidy, blue, yellow or red faeces are passed. (The pile mass is) swollen in the middle as a grain of barley and the skin as well the nails, etc. assume green, yellow or turmeric colour.

(A.H. III. 7. 34/2-37/1)

५. १६-१८. पैत्तिक अर्श के लक्षण

पित्त से उत्पन्न अर्श का मुख नीले रंग का होता है तथा शेष भाग रक्त, पीत या असित प्रभा युक्त होता है । इनमें पतला, रक्तमिश्रित स्त्राव भी जाता

है जो दुर्गन्धित होता है । ये संख्या में कम होते हैं तथा कोमल और लटके हुये से होते हैं । इनकी आकृति शुक जिह्वा, यकृत खण्ड या जलौका के मुख के समान होती है । रोगी दाह, पाक, ज्वर, स्वेद, तृष्णा, मूर्छा, अरुचि एवं मोह आदि लक्षणों से पीड़ित होता है । ये स्पर्श में उष्ण होते हैं तथा रोगी नीला, उष्ण, पीत या रक्त वर्ण का आम युक्त द्रव सल त्याग करता है । कुछ मस्से यव के समान बीच में मोटे होते हैं तथा रोगी के त्वक्, नख, आदि हरे, पीले या हरिद्रा के वर्ण के होते हैं ।

5. 19-23. Clinical features of śleśmika piles

श्लेष्मोत्वणा महामूला घना मन्दरुजः सिताः ।

उत्सन्नोपचितस्निग्धस्तब्ध वृत्तगुरुस्थिराः ॥ १९ ॥

पिच्छिलाः स्तिमिताः श्लक्षणाः कण्ड्वाद्याः स्पर्शनप्रियाः ।

करोरपनसास्थ्याभास्तथा गोस्तनसन्निभाः ॥ २० ॥

वङ्क्षणानाहिनः पायुवस्तिनाभिविकर्षिणः ।

सश्वासकासहृल्लासप्रसेकाऽहचिपीनसाः ॥ २१ ॥

मेहकृच्छ्रशिरोजाड्यशिशिरज्वरकारिणः ।

क्लैव्याग्निमार्दवच्छदिरामप्रायविकारदाः ॥ २२ ॥

वसाभसकफप्रायपुरीषाः सप्रवाहिकाः ।

न स्रवन्ति न भिद्यन्ते पाण्डुस्निग्धत्वगादयः ॥ २३ ॥

(अ० ह० नि० ७.३७/२-४२/१)

The piles originating due to vitiated śleṣmā have a broad pedicle, appear tightly packed, are mildly painful and white in colour. They appear raised, thick, unctuous, non-compressible, round, heavy and fixed. The pile masses are slimy, appear as if dabbed with a wet cloth, are smooth, are associated with an excessive amount of itching and are soothing to touch. They have the appearance of the

kernel of a *karira*¹ or a *panasa*² fruit or else are shaped like a cow's udder.

Swellings appear in the inguinal regions accompanied with a stretching sensation in the anal, vesical and umbilical regions.

The condition may be associated with dyspnoea, cough, nausea, waterbrash, anorexia, chronic rhinitis, dysuria, heaviness in the head, fever with rigor, impotency, impaired digestive power, vomiting and the disorders associated with *āma doṣa*.

The faeces have a fat like appearance, are mixed with mucus and are passed with tenesmus. There is neither a discharge nor do they ever burst and the skin, (nails), etc. (of the patient) become pale and unctuous.

(A. H. III. 7. 37/2-42/1)

५. १६-२३. श्लेष्मिक अर्श के लक्षण

कफ दोष से उत्पन्न अर्श का मूल स्थूल होता है तथा मससे सघन, मंद वेदना वाले एवं श्वेत वर्ण के होते हैं। ये उभरे हुए, मोटे, स्निग्ध, स्तब्ध, गोलाकार, गुरु एवं दृढ़ होते हैं। ये पिच्छिल, आर्द्र, चिकने तथा अधिक कण्ठ युक्त होते हैं। इन्हें (बार-बार) स्पर्श करने में रोगी सुख का अनुभव करता है। इनकी आकृति करीर अथवा कटहल के गुठली या गोस्तन के समान होती है। इसके साथ वक्षग प्रदेश में सूजन तथा गुदा, वस्ति, नाभि प्रदेश में भी खिंचाव होता है। रोगी श्वास, कास, हृत्तास, प्रसेक, अरुचि, पीनस, मूत्र-कृच्छ्रता, शिर में जड़ता, शीत ज्वर, नपुंसकता, अग्निमांद्य, छर्दि एवं आम-जन्य अनेक विकारों से ग्रसित रहता है। रोगी वसा के समान कफयुक्त मल प्रवाहण के साथ त्याग करता है। इन (मसों) से न तो स्त्राव होता है और न

1. *Capparis decidua* Edgew.

2. *Artocarpus heterophyllus* Lam.

ये फटते ही हैं। इसके कारण रोगी के त्वक, (नख) आदि पाण्डु वर्ण के एवं स्निग्ध होते हैं।

5. 24/1. Tridoṣaja and hereditary piles

सर्वैः सर्वात्मकान्याहुर्लक्षणैः सहजानि च ।

Tridoṣaja piles present the clinical features of all (the three *doṣika* types of piles); the hereditary ones also show similar manifestations.

५. २४/१. सान्निपातिक एवं सहज अर्श के लक्षण

सान्निपातिक अर्श सभी दोषों के लक्षणों से युक्त होता है। तथा सहज अर्श भी इन्हीं के समान लक्षणों वाला होता है।

5. 24/2-27/1. Clinical features of raktaja piles

रक्तोत्बणा गुदे कीलाः पित्ताकृतिसमन्विताः ॥ २४ ॥

वटप्ररोहसदृशा गुञ्जाविद्रुमसन्निभाः ।

तेऽत्यर्थं दुष्टमुष्णं च गाढवित्कप्रपीडिताः ॥ २५ ॥

स्खन्ति सहसा रक्तं तस्य चातिप्रवृत्तिः ।

भेकाभः पीड्यते दुःखैः शोणितक्षयसंभवैः ॥ २६ ॥

हीनवर्णबलोत्साहो हतौजाः क्लुषेन्द्रियः ।

(अ० ह० नि० ७. ४३-४५)

The anal pile masses due to *rakta* predominance present features similar to those of the *paittika* (in general. In addition) they are like the sprouts of a banyan tree and shine (bright red) like a *guñjā*¹ (seed) or coral. As a result of being pressed by hard faeces they (the pile masses) suddenly discharge excessively vitiated and hot blood. On account of

1. *Abrus precatorius* Linn.

excessive bleeding, the patient assumes a (pale) appearance like that of a frog and suffers from various diseases due to the loss of blood. His complexion becomes dull; there is a loss of energy as well as of drive and vitality and depression in the activities of the sensory (and motor) organs.

(A. H. III. 7. 43-45)

५. २४/२-२७/१. रक्तज अर्श के लक्षण

रक्तज अर्श के मस्से सामान्यतः पैत्तिक अर्श के समान होते हैं। विशेषकर ये वट प्ररोह के समान या गुंजा अथवा मूंगा के वर्ण के समान (लाल) होते हैं। कठिन मल के प्रपीडन से इनसे अचानक दूषित एवं उष्ण रक्त का अत्यधिक स्राव होने लगता है। तथा रक्त के अधिक निकल जाने से रोगी मेढक के समान पीला हो जाता है तथा रक्त क्षय से उत्पन्न लक्षणों से पीड़ित रहता है। रोगी का बल, वर्ण, उत्साह तथा ओज कम हो जाता है तथा इन्द्रियाँ भी ठीक से काम नहीं करती हैं।

5. 27/2-30. Secondary doshika involvement in raktaja piles

तत्रानुबन्धो द्विविधः श्लेष्मणो मारुतस्य च ।
 विट् श्यावं कठिनं रुक्षमधोवायुर्न वर्तते ॥ २७ ॥
 तनु चारुणवर्णं च फेनिलं चासृगर्शसाम् ।
 कट्यूरुदशूलं च दौर्बल्यं यदि चाधिकम् ॥ २८ ॥
 तत्रानुबन्धो वातस्य हेतुर्यदि च रुक्षणम् ।
 शिथिलं श्वेतपीतं च विट् स्निग्धं गुरु शीतलम् ॥ २९ ॥
 यद्यर्शसां घनं चासृक् तन्तुमत्पाण्डुपिच्छलम् ।
 गुदं सपिच्छं स्तिमितं गुरु स्निग्धं च कारणम् ।
 श्लेष्मानुबन्धो विज्ञेयस्तत्र रक्तार्शसां बुधैः ॥ ३० ॥

(च० चि० ६.१७०/२-१७४)

Further, there may be two secondary (*doṣika*) involvements, viz. that of *kapha* or of *vāyu*.

If the faeces are blackish, hard and dry, the flatus is passed (easily) and thin, red coloured frothy blood is passed associated with colicky pain in the waist, thighs and perianal regions along with extreme weakness and all these are due to the substances which produce dryness in the body the secondary involvement should be considered to be that of *vāyu*.

If the faeces are not well formed, are white, yellow, slimy, heavy and cold, as also if thick, pale and mucoid blood containing shreds are passed from the pile masses and if the anus remains moist and is felt as if covered by a wet cloth and the cause of all these is intake of heavy and fatty substances, the experts should diagnose this type of (*raktaja*) piles to have the secondary involvement of *kapha*.

(C. S. VI. 9. 170/2-174)

५. २७/२-३०. रक्तज अर्श में वातादि दोषों का अनुबन्ध

रक्तज अर्श में दो प्रकार का अनुबन्ध हो सकता है, वात या श्लेष्मा से। यदि मल, कठिन रूक्ष एवं श्याव वर्ण का हो तथा अपान वायु सुगमता से न निकले और मस्से से पतला, अरुण वर्ण का, फेन युक्त, रक्त का साव हो तथा कटि, उरु और गुदा में शूल हो, शरीर अत्यधिक दुर्बल हो जाय और यदि इन लक्षणों का हेतु रूक्ष पदार्थों का सेवन हो तो रक्तार्श में वात दोष का अनुबन्ध समझना चाहिए।

यदि रांगी शिथिल, श्वेत, पीत, स्निग्ध, गुरु एवं शीत गुण से युक्त मल त्याग करता हो, तथा उसके अर्श के मस्से से घने, तन्तुल, पाण्डु वर्ण और पिच्छिल रक्त का साव होता हो, गुदा पिच्छायुक्त, स्तिमित हो, और गुरु एवं स्निग्ध कारणों से अर्श की उत्पत्ति हो तो ज्ञानी चिकित्सक को उस रक्तार्श में कफ का अनुबन्ध समझना चाहिए।

5. 31, 32. Prodromal features of piles

विष्टम्भोऽन्नस्य दौर्बल्यं कुक्षेराटोप एव च ।

कार्श्यमुद्गारबाहुल्यं सक्थिसादोऽल्पविट्कता ॥ ३१ ॥

ग्रहणीदोषपाण्ड्वर्तेराशङ्का चोदरस्य च ।

पूर्वरूपाणि निर्दिष्टान्यर्शसामभिवृद्धये ॥ ३२ ॥

(च० चि० १४. २१, २२)

A feeling as if the food has remained (undigested in the gastro-intestinal tract) for a long time, weakness, fullness in the flanks, (progressive) thinning of the body, copious eructations, weakness of the lower limbs, passage of small amounts of faeces, *grahani*¹ disease, anaemia and a suspicion of developing abdominal enlargements are the prodromal features which forecast the development of piles.

(C. S. VI. 14. 21, 22)

५. ३१, ३२. अर्श के पूर्व रूप

खाये हुए अन्न का (उचित पाक न होकर) विष्टम्भाजीर्ण हो जाना, शरीर में दुर्बलता, कुक्षि में आटोप का होना, शरीर में कृशता, उद्गार का अधिक आना, पैरों में अवसाद (पीड़ा), अल्प मात्रा में मल का होना तथा ग्रहणी दोष और पाण्डु का होना एवं उदर रोग की आशंका : इन लक्षणों को अर्श का पूर्वरूप समझना चाहिये ।

5. 33, 34. Seriousness of piles

पञ्चात्मा मारुतः पित्तं कफो गुदवलित्रयम् ।

सर्व एव प्रकुप्यन्ति गुदजानां समुद्भवे ॥ ३३ ॥

तस्मादर्शांसि दुःखानि बहुव्याधिकराणि च ।

सर्वदेहोपतापीनि प्रायः कृच्छ्रतमानि च ॥ ३४ ॥

(च० चि० १४. २४, २५)

In the aetiopathogenesis of the anal piles, all the five varieties of *vāta*, *pitta* and *kapha* get vitiated involving all the three anal folds; therefore, piles are troublesome, give rise to numerous diseases, produce suffering in the whole body and are usually difficult to treat.

(C. S. VI. 14. 24, 25)

५. ३३, ३४. अर्श की दारुणता

अर्श की उत्पत्ति में पाँचों प्रकार के वायु, पित्त एवं कफ तथा गुदा की तीनो वलियाँ प्रकुपित हो जाती हैं। इसलिए अर्श महान दुःखकारक, अनेक प्रकार के रोगों का कारण, सम्पूर्ण शरीर में सन्ताप उत्पन्न करनेवाला और प्रायः कृच्छ्रसाध्य होता है।

5. 35-38. Prognosis

वाह्यायां तु बलौ जातान्येकदोषोल्बणानि च ।

अर्शासि सुखसाध्यानि न चिरोत्पतितानि च ॥ ३५ ॥

(च० चि० १४. ३१)

द्वन्द्वजानि द्वितीयायां बलौ यान्याश्रितानि च ।

कृच्छ्रसाध्यानि तान्याहुः परिसंवत्सराणि च ॥ ३६ ॥

(च० चि० १४. ३०)

सहजानि त्रिदोषाणि यानि चाभ्यन्तरां बलिम् ।

जायन्तेऽर्शासि संश्रित्य तान्यसाध्यानि निर्दिशेत् ॥ ३७ ॥

(च० चि० १४. २८)

शेषत्वादायुषस्तानि चतुष्पादसमन्विते ।

याप्यन्ते दीप्तकायाग्नेः प्रत्याख्येयान्यतोऽन्यथा ॥ ३८ ॥

(च० चि० १४. २६)

Piles occurring in the external anal fold with preponderance of a single *doṣa* and of recent origin are easy to treat.

(C. S. VI. 14. 31)

Those with involvement of two *doṣas*, occurring in the (region of the) second fold and which are of more than a year's duration are difficult to treat.

(C. S. VI. 14. 30)

Hereditary piles, those due to all the three *doṣas* together and the ones appearing in the internal anal fold are considered incurable.

(C. S. VI. 14. 28)

Patients (even with incurable piles) who have a life span in front of them, who possess the four basic requirements for a successful treatment and who still have a good digestive power become relievable (by treatment); otherwise they should only be treated after explaining the bad prognosis.

(C. S. VI. 14. 29)

५. ३५-३८. अर्श की साध्यासाध्यता

जो अर्श बाह्य वलि मे उत्पन्न हों, किसी एक दोष का प्रकोप अधिक हो तथा अधिक पुराने न हों तो वह सुख साध्य होते हैं। जो अर्श दो दोषों के कारण दूसरी वलि को दूषित कर उत्पन्न होते हैं या जो एक वर्ष के पुराने हो गये हों वे कृच्छ्रसाध्य होते हैं। और जो अर्श सहज (जन्मजात) हों, त्रिदोषज हों तथा वे अन्दर की वलि मे आश्रित हों तो उन्हें असाध्य समझना चाहिए।

यदि रोगी की आयु शेष हो तथा चिकित्सा चतुष्पाद की सम्पत्ति विद्यमान हो और उसकी कायाग्नि भी दीप्त हो तो असाध्य अर्श भी याप्य हो जाता है। इसके विपरीत होनेपर अर्श को प्रत्याख्येय समझना चाहिए।

5. 39-41. The Fatal Piles

हस्ते पादे मुखे नाभ्यां गुदे वृषणयोस्तथा ।

शोथो हृत्पार्श्वशूलं च यस्यासाध्योऽर्शसो हि सः ॥ ३९ ॥

(च० चि० १४. २६)

हृत्पार्श्वशूलं संमोहश्छर्दिरङ्गस्य रुग् ज्वरः ।

तृष्णा गुदस्य पाकश्च निहन्युर्गुदजातुरम् ॥ ४० ॥

(च० चि० १४. २७)

तृष्णाऽरोचकशूलाऽर्जमतिप्रस्रुतशोणितम् ।

शोथाऽतिसारसंयुक्तमर्शासि क्षपयन्ति हि ॥ ४१ ॥

(सु० सू० ३३. १०)

The patients suffering from piles who have oedema in the hands, feet, face and the umbilical, anal, and scrotal regions, as well as who have colicky pain in the precordium¹ and sides are incurable.

(C. S. VI. 14. 26)

Colicky pain in the precordium¹ and the sides, mental confusion, vomiting, bodyache, fever, thirst and perianal suppuration would kill the patient suffering from piles.

(C. S. VI. 14. 27)

Piles associated with thirst, anorexia, colicky pain, excessive bleeding, oedema and diarrhoea would certainly kill the patients.

(S. S. I. 33. 10)

५. ३६-४१. घातक अर्श

अर्श से पीड़ित रोगी के हाथ, पैर, मुख, नाभि, गुदा और वृषण में यदि शोथ हो जाय तथा हृदय एवं पार्श्व में शूल हो तो उसे असाध्य समझना चाहिए । अर्श से पीड़ित रोगी के हृदय और पार्श्व में शूल हो, तथा उसे मूर्छा हो, छर्दि हो, सभी अंगों में वेदना एवं ज्वर हो, तृष्णा अधिक हो और गुदा में पाक हो जाय तो वह रोगी अर्श से मृत्यु को प्राप्त होता है । तृष्णा, अरुचि, शूल से ग्रस्त रोगी

1. ? Ischaemic heart disease.

की गुदा से अत्यधिक रक्तस्राव हुआ हो एवं शोथ, अतिसार से संयुक्त अर्श रोगी का नाश कर देता है ।

5. 42. Pile like lesions at other parts of the body

मेढ्रादिष्वपि वक्ष्यन्ते यथास्वं, नाभिजानि च ।

गण्डूपदास्यरूपाणि पिच्छिलानि मृदूनि च ॥ ४२ ॥

(अ० हृ० नि० ७.५६)

The (pile like lesions) occurring in the penis, (nose), etc. would be described at their appropriate places; whereas, those occurring in the umbilicus¹ have the shape of earthworms and are slimy and soft.

(A. H. III. 7. 56)

५. ४२. लिगादि मे उत्पन्न अर्श के लक्षण

लिंग, (नासादि) मे होनेवाले अर्श का वर्णन इन अंगों मे होनेवाली अन्य व्याधियों के साथ किया जायेगा । नाभि मे होनेवाला अर्श गण्डू पद के सदृश्य स्वरूप का पिच्छिल एवं मृदु होता है ।

5. 43, 44. Carmakila (Warts)

व्यानो गृहीत्वा श्लेष्माणं करोत्यर्शस्त्वचो बहिः ।

कीलोपमं स्थिरखरं चर्मकीलं तु तद्विदुः ॥ ४३ ॥

(अ० हृ० नि० ७.५७)

वातेन तोदपारुष्यं पित्तादसितवक्त्रता ।

श्लेष्मणा स्निग्धता चास्य ग्रथितत्वं सवर्णता ॥ ४४ ॥

(अ० हृ० नि० ७.५८)

Vyāna vāyu combined with *śleṣmā* produces pile (like lesions) in the skin externally; they are hard and fixed as nails and are called *carmakila*.

(A. H. III. 7. 57)

1. ? Umbilical polyp.

Due to *vāta* there is pricking pain and roughness; due to *pitta* the tips (of *carmakīla*) are black and due to *kapha* they are smooth, knotty and have the same colour as of skin.

(A. H. III. 7. 58).

५. ४३, ४४. चर्मकील

व्यान वायु श्लेष्मा को लेकर त्वचा के ऊपर कील के समान स्थिर एवं खुरदुरा मसा उत्पन्न करता है जिसे विद्वान् चर्मकील कहते हैं ।

इसमे वात से सूचीभेदवत् पीड़ा एवं परुषता होती है; पित्त के कारण उसका मुख काला हो जाता है तथा श्लेष्मा के कारण यह स्निग्ध, ग्रथित एवं त्वक के समान वर्ण का रहता है ।

इति श्रीमाधवकरविरचिते माधवनिदानेऽर्शोनिदानं समाप्तम् ॥५॥

Thus ends (the fifth chapter entitled) 'The Diagnosis of Piles' of Mādhava Nidāna, as compiled by Śrī Mādhavakara.

इस प्रकार श्रीमाधवकर द्वारा सङ्कलित माधव-निदान का अर्शनिदान (नामक पाँचवाँ अध्याय) समाप्त हुआ ।

M. N. 5

SUGGESTED RESEARCH PROBLEMS

1. A historical, comparative and conceptual study on the following is indicated :

I. Anal Piles

- (i) Types and origin (1, 2).
- (ii) Aetiological factors (3-9).
- (iii) Clinical features (10-32).
- (iv) Prognostic factors (33-41).

II. Pile like lesions e.g. polyps, warts, etc. in other parts of the body (42-44).

2. A clinical study to establish the identity of the six types of anal 'piles' (1-41) and 'pile' like lesions in other parts of the body (42-44) would bring many new facts to light; some of the former would certainly be called haemorrhoides but others could perhaps be anal polyps, granuloma, condyloma or even new growths, e.g. carcinoma, etc.

THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO
DEPARTMENT OF CHEMISTRY
RESEARCH REPORT NO. 100
1. A. L. ...
2. ...
3. ...
4. ...
5. ...
6. ...
7. ...
8. ...
9. ...
10. ...
11. ...
12. ...
13. ...
14. ...
15. ...
16. ...
17. ...
18. ...
19. ...
20. ...
21. ...
22. ...
23. ...
24. ...
25. ...
26. ...
27. ...
28. ...
29. ...
30. ...
31. ...
32. ...
33. ...
34. ...
35. ...
36. ...
37. ...
38. ...
39. ...
40. ...
41. ...
42. ...
43. ...
44. ...
45. ...
46. ...
47. ...
48. ...
49. ...
50. ...
51. ...
52. ...
53. ...
54. ...
55. ...
56. ...
57. ...
58. ...
59. ...
60. ...
61. ...
62. ...
63. ...
64. ...
65. ...
66. ...
67. ...
68. ...
69. ...
70. ...
71. ...
72. ...
73. ...
74. ...
75. ...
76. ...
77. ...
78. ...
79. ...
80. ...
81. ...
82. ...
83. ...
84. ...
85. ...
86. ...
87. ...
88. ...
89. ...
90. ...
91. ...
92. ...
93. ...
94. ...
95. ...
96. ...
97. ...
98. ...
99. ...
100. ...

माधवनिदानम्

षष्ठोऽध्यायः

अग्निमान्द्याजीर्णविसृचिकालसकविलम्बिकानिदानम्

THE DIAGNOSIS OF DYSPEPSIA, INDIGESTION,
GASTRO-ENTERITIS, *ALASAKA* (? MECHANICAL
INTESTINAL OBSTRUCTION) AND
VILAMBIKĀ (? PARALYTIC ILEUS)

CHAPTER SIX

MĀDHAVA - NIDĀNA

PROPERTY

1900

THE NEW YORK PUBLIC LIBRARY
ASTOR LENOX TILDEN FOUNDATION
155 E. 42ND STREET
NEW YORK 17, N.Y.

MADE IN U.S.A.

M. N. 6

SUMMARY

This chapter deals with the diagnosis of dyspepsia, indigestion, gastro-enteritis, *alasaka* (? mechanical intestinal obstruction) and *vilambikā* (? paralytic ileus).

I. Dyspepsia (*Agnimāndya*) (1-4)

Proper digestion of food depends upon the normal state of the digestive fire (the term includes all digestive juices, enzymes, hormones, etc. concerned with the digestion and absorption of the ingested food and drinks, and to some extent with the factors concerned with the metabolism of the end products of digestion also).

Four states of the digestive fire (1) have been mentioned as the hypofunctioning, hyperfunctioning, inconstant and normal. Their aetiological factors (1), effects (2) and features (3,4) have been described. It has been emphasized that the normal state of the digestive fire is the best and the most desirable.

II. Indigestion (*Ajīrṇa*) (5-14)

Three main types of indigestion due to vitiation of humours have been mentioned; the fourth type has been considered to be due to delayed absorption; sluggish digestion, the fifth type and the normal variations as the sixth type of indigestion have also been given. The first four could be considered pathological and the last two physiological (5,6).

The aetiological factors of indigestion (7-9) include irregular food habits, e.g. quality, quantity and the timing of food intake, disturbed psychological states, fear, anger and anxiety, etc. Clinical features (10-13/1) of the three main types of indigestion, and that of the fourth one due to delayed absorption, have been given and their complications mentioned (13/2, 3). Indiscriminate eating has been considered as the main cause of indigestion which could lead to various other diseases (26).

Features of normal, i.e. proper and complete digestion (24), as also of indigestion in general (27) have been given.

The three main types of indigestion may lead to serious diseases as gastro-enteritis, mechanical intestinal obstruction and paralytic ileus (15).

III. **Gastro-enteritis** (*Visucikā*) (16-18, 25)

Its aetiology and clinical features, including diarrhoea and vomiting, have been given (16-18); five serious complications, including anuria and coma, have also been enumerated (25).

IV. **Mechanical Intestinal Obstruction** (*Alasaka*) (19, 20)

Its features include abdominal distension, absolute obstruction to the passage of faeces and flatus, borborygmi, reversed peristalsis and signs of dehydration and shock.

V. **Paralytic ileus** (*Alasaka*) (21)

In this condition the intestinal contents neither move upwards nor downwards.

Āma doṣa

Further, the clinical features of diseases due to *āma*, (a product of faulty digestion and the root cause of several of the conditions mentioned above) have been indicated (22).

The PROGNOSIS of patients with cyanosis, coma, sunken, eyes, etc. has been considered hopeless (23).

षष्ठोऽध्यायः

CHAPTER SIX

अग्निमान्द्याजीर्णविस्रचिकालसकविलम्बिकानिदानम्

THE DIAGNOSIS OF DYSPEPSIA,
INDIGESTION, GASTRO-ENTERITIS,
ALASAKA (? MECHANICAL INTESTINAL
OBSTRUCTION) AND VILAMBIKĀ
(? PARALYTIC ILEUS)

THE DIGESTIVE FIRE (6. 1-4)

6. 1. The Four States of the Digestive Fire

मन्दस्तीक्ष्णोऽथ विषमः समश्चेति चतुर्विधः ।

कफपित्तानिलाधिक्यात्तत्साम्याज्जाठरोऽनलः ॥ १ ॥

Hypofunctioning, hyperfunctioning, inconstant and normal; these are the four states of the digestive fire due to the aggravation of *kapha*, *pitta* or *vāta* or due to their equilibrium (respectively).

६. १. अग्नियों के चार भेद

मन्द, तीक्ष्ण, विषम और सम भेद से चार प्रकार की जठराग्नि क्रमशः कफ, पित्त या वायु की अधिकता अथवा उनकी समता के कारण होती है ।

6. 2. Effects of the Abnormal Digestive Fire

विषमो वातजान् रोगान् तीक्ष्णः पित्तनिमित्तजान् ।

करोत्यग्निस्तथा मन्दो विकारान् कफसंभवान् ॥ २ ॥

(सु० सू० ३५. २५)

The inconstant digestive fire gives rise to *vātika* diseases, the hyperfunctioning one to *pañtika* disorders and the hypofunctioning state produces *kaphaja* ailments.

(S. S. I. 35. 25).

६. २. विकृत अग्नि के प्रभाव

विषमाग्नि से वात व्याधियाँ, तीक्ष्णाग्नि से पैक्षिक व्याधियाँ तथा मन्दाग्नि से श्लैष्मिक व्याधियाँ उत्पन्न होती हैं ।

6. 3,4. Features of the Digestive Fire

समा समाग्नेरशिता मात्रा सम्यग्विपच्यते ।

स्वल्पाऽपि नैव मन्दाग्नेर्विषमाग्नेस्तु देहिनः ॥ ३ ॥

कदाचित्पच्यते सम्यक्कदाचिन्न विपच्यते ।

मात्राऽतिमात्राऽप्यशिता सुखं यस्य विपच्यते ।

तीक्ष्णाग्निरिति तं विद्यात्, समाग्निः श्रेष्ठ उच्यते ॥ ४ ॥

(i) If the appropriate amount of tingested food gets properly digested, that would be called the NORMAL digestive fire.

(ii) However, if the person is not able to digest even a small amount of food, the state of his digestive fire would be called HYPOFUNCTIONING.

(iii) Whereas the patient with an INCONSTANT digestive fire is able to digest the food properly sometimes and not at all at other times.

(iv) On the other hand, when the digestive fire is in the HYPERFUNCTIONING state one is able to easily digest the food taken in the usual or even in excessive amounts (as by a voracious eater).

The normal digestive fire, however, is considered as the most desirable (out of all the four states mentioned above).

६. ३, ४. अग्नियों के लक्षण

समाग्नि वाले पुरुष द्वारा सम मात्रा में खाये हुए आहार का पाचन भली-भाँति हो जाता है। मन्दाग्नि वाले पुरुष द्वारा अल्प मात्रा में भी किया हुआ भोजन का पाक नहीं हो पाता तथा विषमाग्नि वाले पुरुष का पाचन कदाचित् हो जाता है तथा कदाचित् पाक नहीं होता। मात्रावत् या अधिक मात्रा में भी किए हुए भोजन का पाक यदि सुखपूर्वक हो जाये तो उसे तीक्ष्णाग्नि कहते हैं। इन सभी अग्नियों में समाग्नि ही श्रेष्ठ होती है।

INDIGESTION (6. 5-14)

6. 5, 6. Types of Indigestion

आमं विदग्धं विष्टब्धं कफपित्तानिलैस्त्रिभिः ।

अजीर्णं केचिदिच्छन्ति चतुर्थं रसशेषतः ॥ ५ ॥

(सु० सू० ४६. ४६६)

अजीर्णं पञ्चमं केचिन्निर्दोषं दिनपाकि च ।

वदन्ति षष्ठं चाजीर्णं प्राकृतं प्रतिवासरम् ॥ ६ ॥

There are (mainly) three types of indigestion, viz. *āma*, *vidagdha* and *viṣṭabdhā* due to vitiated *kapha*, *pitta* and *vāta* (respectively); some consider a fourth type also (called *rasaśeṣa*) which is due to delayed absorption. (S. S. I. 46. 499)

Further, a fifth¹ type is recognised by some as the *dinapāki* indigestion which is only due to a sluggish digestion and is not due to the involvement of any *dōṣa*. The sixth² variety of indigestion is called *prākṛta* which is a natural and a daily event.

1, 2. Both these are considered physiological and need no active treatment.

६. ५, ६. अजीर्ण के लक्षण

आम, विदग्ध तथा विष्टब्ध तीन प्रकार के अजीर्ण होते हैं, जो क्रमशः कफ, पित्त एवं वायु के प्रकोप से उत्पन्न होते हैं। कुछ विद्वान 'रसशेषाजीर्ण' को चौथे प्रकार का अजीर्ण मानते हैं, तथा कुछ बिना दोषों के होने वाले 'दिनपाकि' अजीर्ण को पाँचवें प्रकार का और प्रतिदिन होनेवाले 'प्राकृत' अजीर्ण को छठवें प्रकार का अजीर्ण कहते हैं।

6. 7-9. Aetiological Factors of Indigestion

अत्यम्बुपानाद्विषमाशनाच्च संधारणात्स्वप्नविपर्ययाच्च ।

कालेऽपि सात्म्यं लघु चापि भुक्तमन्नं न पाकं भजते नरस्य ॥ ७ ॥

ईर्ष्याभयक्रोधपरिप्लुतेन लुब्धेन रुदैन्यनिपीडितेन ।

प्रद्वेषयुक्तेन च सेव्यमानमन्नं न सम्यक्परिपाकमेति ॥ ८ ॥

(सु० सु० ४६. ५००, ५०१)

मात्रयाऽप्यभ्यवहृतं पथ्यं चान्नं न जीर्यति ।

चिन्ताशोकभयक्रोधदुःखशय्याप्रजागरैः ॥ ९ ॥

(च० वि० २.६)

Due to excessive drinking of water, taking of incompatible diets, suppression of the natural evacuatory urges and reversal of sleeping habits, the food does not get properly digested in the human beings even if it has been taken at a proper time and is wholesome as well as light (to digest). Further, the food is also not properly digested if taken by a person who is emotionally upset due to jealousy, fear, anger or greed, or who is distressed due to suffering from other diseases or who has taken food not to his liking.

(S. S. I. 46. 500, 501)

Even salutary food taken in an appropriate quantity does not get digested (if the person is) in (a state of) anxiety, grief, fear or anger, or else if he sleeps on an uncomfortable bed or remains awake for a long time.

(C. S. III. 2.9)

६. ७-९. अजीर्ण के हेतु

अधिक जल पीने से, विषमाशन से, वेगों के संधारण से तथा स्वप्न-विपर्यय (अर्थात् दिवास्वाप एवं रात्रि जागरण) से समय से खाया हुआ सात्म्य एवं लघु आहार का भी पाक नहीं हो पाता है। ईर्ष्या, भय, क्रोध एवं लोभ से युक्त; रोग तथा वेदना से पीड़ित एवं द्वेष से युक्त पुरुष द्वारा किए गए अन्न का भी सम्यक् पाक नहीं होता। चिन्ता, शोक, भय, क्रोध एवं कष्टदायक शय्या पर सोने से रात्रि जागरण करनेवाले पुरुष द्वारा मात्रावत् किया हुआ पथ्याहार का भी पाचन नहीं हो पाता है।

6. 10-13/1. Clinical Features of Indigestion

तत्रामे गुस्तोत्क्लेदः शोथो गण्डाक्षिकूटगः ।
 उद्गारश्च यथाभुक्तमविदग्धः प्रवर्तते ॥ १० ॥
 विदग्धे भ्रमतृणमूर्च्छाः पित्ताच्च विविधा रुजः ।
 उद्गारश्च सधूमाम्लः स्वेदो दाहश्च जायते ॥ ११ ॥
 विष्टब्धे शूलमाध्मानं विविधा वातवेदनाः ।
 मलवाताप्रवृत्तिश्च स्तम्भो मोहोऽङ्गपीडनम् ॥ १२ ॥
 रसशेषेऽन्नविद्वेषो हृदयाशुद्धिगौरवे ।

(अ० सं० सू० ११. ५५, ५७, ५६, ६०/१)

In the *āma* type (of indigestion), there is (a feeling of) heaviness (of the body), nausea and swelling in the cheek and around the eyes; as the food is not digested, eructations appear of the same nature as that of the material ingested.

In the *vidagdha* type (of indigestion) there is

vertigo, thirst, fainting and the various other disorders due to vitiated *pitta*; smoky and acidic eructations, perspiration and a burning sensation are also produced.

In the *viṣṭabdha* type (of indigestion) there are the symptoms of colic, flatulence and various types of *vātika* disorders; faeces and flatus are not passed and stiffness, confusion and bodyache also occur.

In case of delayed absorption (the *rasaśeṣa* type of indigestion) there is an aversion to food, precordial discomfort and heaviness (all over the body).

(A. S. I. 11. 55, 57, 56, 60/1)

६. १०-१३/१. आमाजीर्णादि के लक्षण

शरीर में गुरुता, उत्कलेष, गण्ड (कपोल) एवं अक्षिकूट में शोथ, तथा अविदग्ध डकारों का आना आमाजीर्ण के लक्षण हैं। भ्रम, तृष्णा, मूर्छा एवं विविध प्रकार के पैत्तिक कष्ट तथा सधूम अम्लीय उद्गार, स्वेद एवं दाह का होना विदग्धाजीर्ण के लक्षण हैं। पेट में दर्द एवं आध्मान, विविध प्रकार की वातजन्य पीड़ा, मल और वायु की अप्रवृत्ति, स्तम्भ, मोह (मूर्छा) एवं अंगों में पीड़ा विष्टब्धाजीर्ण के लक्षण हैं। अन्नद्वेष, हृदय में अशुद्धि एवं (शरीर में) गौरव रसशेषाजीर्ण के लक्षण बताये गये हैं।

6. 13/2,3. Complications of Indigestion

मूर्च्छा प्रलापो वमथुः प्रसेकः सदनं भ्रमः ।

उपद्रवा भवन्त्येते मरणं चाप्यजीर्णतः ॥ १३ ॥

(सु० सू० ४६.५०४)

Complications as fainting, delirium, vomiting, (excessive) salivation, depression, giddiness and even death may occur due to (acute) indigestion.

(S. S. I. 46. 504)

६. १३/२, ३. अजीर्ण के उपद्रव

मूर्छा, प्रलाप, वमन, मुख से लालास्राव, अंगावसाद एवं भ्रम अजीर्ण के उपद्रव हैं तथा इससे मृत्यु भी हो सकती है।

6. 14. Indiscriminate eating as a cause of indigestion

अनात्मवन्तः पशुवद्भुञ्जते येऽप्रमाणतः।

रोगानीकस्य ते मूलमजीर्णं प्राप्नुवन्ति हि ॥ १४ ॥

Those who are not self-controlled and eat indiscriminately like animals without any consideration of quantity develop the disease *ajirṇa* (indigestion), the root cause of various diseases.

६. १४. अजीर्ण उत्पत्ति का विशिष्ट हेतु

संयम रहित मनुष्य जो पशुओं के समान मात्रा की चिन्ता किए बिना भोजन करते हैं वे अनेक रोगों के मूल कारण 'अजीर्ण' से पीड़ित हो जाते हैं।

6. 15. Undesirable Sequelae of Indigestion

अजीर्णमामं विष्टब्धं विदग्धं च यदीरितम्।

विसूच्यलसकौ तस्माद्भवेच्चापि विलम्बिका ॥ १५ ॥

(सु० उ० ५६. ३)

The three types of acute indigestion, *āma*¹, *viṣṭabdhā*² and *vidagdhā*³, as already discussed⁴,

1. Digestive processes take place very slowly due to vitiation of *kapha*.
2. Indigestion associated with distension of the abdomen, due to vitiation of *vāyu*.
3. Hyperacidity syndromes due to vitiation of *pitta*.
4. M.N. 6.5, loc. cit.

may also lead to *visūcikā* (? gastroenteritis), *alasaka* (? mechanical intestinal obstruction) and *vilambikā* (? paralytic ileus).

(S. S. VI. 56. 3)

६. १५. अजीर्ण के अवाञ्छित परिणाम

उपरोक्त आम, विष्टब्ध एवं विदग्धाजीर्ण से विसूची, अलसक और विलम्बिका की भी उत्पत्ति होती है ।

6. 16-18. *Visūcikā* (? Gastro-enteritis)

सूचीभिरिव गात्राणि तुदन् सन्तिष्टतेऽनिलः ।

यत्राजीर्णेन सा वैद्यैर्विसूचीति निगद्यते ॥ १६ ॥

न तां परिमिताहारा लभन्ते विदितागमाः ।

मूढास्तामजितात्मानो लभन्तेऽशनलोलुपाः ॥ १७ ॥

मूर्च्छाऽतिसारो वमथुः पिपासा शुलो भ्रमोद्वेष्टनजृम्भदाहाः ।

वैवर्ण्यकम्पौ हृदये रुजश्च भवन्ति तस्यां शिरसश्च भेदः ॥ १८ ॥

(सु० उ० ५६. ४-६)

If the patient suffering from indigestion develops pricking pain¹ all over the body due to vitiation of *vāta*, the condition is called *visūcikā* by the physicians.

The educated² people who take regulated quantity of food may not develop this disease (*visūcikā*); only the illiterate gluttonous people exercising no restraint on themselves get afflicted with it.

Fainting, diarrhoea, vomiting, excessive thirst, colicky pain in the abdomen, giddiness, cramps,

1. *Sūci*=needle. Pricking pain as if by needles.

2. Doctors and others who observe proper hygiene.

yawning, a burning sensation and also discolouration of the body, tremors, precordial pain and headache are the features of this disease.

(S. S. VI. 56. 4-5)

६. १६-१८. विसूचिका

जब अजीर्ण के रोगी में वायु शरीर में सूई चुभने के समान वेदना उत्पन्न करती है उस अवस्था विशेष को वैद्य विसूचिका कहते हैं । आयुर्वेद शास्त्र के ज्ञाता एवं परिमित आहार करनेवाले पुरुष इस रोग से पीड़ित नहीं होते । अशिक्षित एवं असंयमी व्यक्ति जो आहार लोलुप होते हैं वे ही इस रोग से पीड़ित होते हैं ।

मूर्छा, अतिसार, वमन, प्यास, शूल, भ्रम, ऍठन, जम्हाई, जलन, विवर्णता, कँपकँपी, हृदय (प्रदेश) में वेदना तथा शिरःशूल विसूचिका रोग के लक्षण हैं ।

6. 19,20. Alasaka (? Mechanical Intestinal Obstruction)

कुक्षिरानह्यतेऽत्यर्थं प्रताम्येत् परिकूजति ।

निरुद्धो मारुतश्चैव कुक्षानुपरि धावति ॥ १९ ॥

वातवर्चोनिरोधश्च यस्यात्यर्थं भवेदपि ।

तस्यालसकमाचष्टे तृष्णोद्गारौ च यस्य तु ॥ २० ॥

(सु० उ० ५६. ७, ८)

In a case of *alasaka*, there is a marked distension of the abdomen, a sinking feeling¹, borborygmi, obstructed flatus leading to reversed peristalsis, absolute obstruction to the passage of flatus and faeces, along with thirst and eructations.

(S. S. VI. 56. 7,8)

६. १९,२०. अलसक

जिस व्याधि में उदर में अतिशय आध्मान हो एवं रोगी मूर्छित सा अनुभव करता हो तथा पेट में गुड़गुड़ाहट होती हो, कुक्षि में अवरुद्ध वायु उपरिगमन

1. *Pratāmyati* implies as if one is entering in the dark (*Dalhana*).

करती हो और अपान वायु एवं मल का पूर्णतया अवरोध हो गया हो तथा रोगी वृष्णा एवं उद्गार से पीड़ित हो तो उसे अलसक रोग कहते हैं ।

6. 21. Vilambikā (? Paralytic ileus)

दुष्टं तु भुक्तं कफमास्ताभ्यां प्रवर्तते नोर्ध्वमधश्च यस्य ।

विलम्बिकां तां भृशदुश्चिकित्सामाचक्षते शास्त्रविदः पुराणाः ॥ २१ ॥

(सु० उ० ५६.६)

The condition in which the ingested food gets contaminated due to *kapha* and *vāyu* and the (intestinal) contents neither move upwards nor downwards is known as *vilambikā* : experienced and learned clinicians consider it very difficult to treat.

(S. S. VI. 56.9)

६.२१. विलम्बिका

खाया हुआ आहार जब कफ एवं वायु से दूषित होकर न तो ऊर्ध्व और न/ही अधोभाग में जाता है तो इसे विलम्बिका कहते हैं और इस अवस्था विशेष को प्राचीन अनुभवी शास्त्रविद् दुश्चिकित्स्य बताते हैं ।

6. 22. Clinical features of diseases due to āma doṣa

यत्रस्थमामं विरुजेत्तमेव देशं विशेषेण विकारजातैः ।

दोषेण येनावततं शरीरं तल्लक्षणैरामसमुद्भवैश्च ॥ २२ ॥

(सु० उ० ५६.१०)

When the *āma* gets localised alongwith the vitiated *doṣas* in a particular part of the body leading to the development of disease, it is characterised by the symptoms of *āma* as well as of the involved *doṣa*.

(S. S. VI. 56.10)

६. २२. आमज रोग के लक्षण

आम जहाँ दोषों के सहित अवस्थित होकर रोग उत्पन्न करता है, उसमें आमजन्य तथा दोषजन्य लक्षण दोनों ही रहते हैं ।

6. 23. Prognosis

यः श्यावदन्तौष्ठनखोज्ज्वलसंज्ञो वम्यदितोऽभ्यन्तरयातनेत्रः ।

क्षामस्वरः सर्वविमुक्त सन्धिर्यायान्नरः सोऽपुनरागमाय ॥ २३ ॥

(सु० उ० ५६. ११)

The patient having cyanosed teeth, lips and nails, in a semicomatose state, having excessive vomiting, sunken eyes, weak voice and flaccidity of all the joints should be understood to have no hope of recovery.

(S. S. VI. 56. 11)

६. २३. साध्यासाध्यता

जिस रोगी के दांत, ओष्ठ, नख श्याव (काले रंग) वर्ण के हो गये हों तथा जो अर्धमूर्छित हो, निरंतर वमन कर रहा हो जिसके नेत्र अन्दर धँस गये हों, स्वर कृश हो और संधियाँ शिथिल हो गई हों, उसे मरणासन्न समझना चाहिये ।

6. 24. Features after complete digestion of food

उद्गारशुद्धिस्तसाहो वेगोत्सर्गो यथोचितः ।

लघुता क्षुत्पिपासा च जीर्णहारस्य लक्षणम् ॥ २४ ॥

(अ० सं० सू० ११. ६६/२, ७०/१)

Normal eructations, a sense of activeness, proper evacuation of the calls of nature, a feeling of lightness and (normal) appetite and thirst are the manifestations after proper (and complete) digestion of food.

(A. S. I. 11. 69/2, 70/1)

६. २४. जीर्ण आहार के लक्षण

शुद्ध उद्गार का होना, उत्साह, मल मूत्रादि वेगों का यथोचित विसर्जन होना, शरीर में लघुता का अनुभव होना तथा क्षुधा और पिपासा का भली प्रकार लगना जीर्णाहार के लक्षण हैं ।

6. 25. Complications of gastro-enteritis

निद्रानाशोऽरतिः कम्पो मूत्राघातो विसंज्ञता ।

अमी हृत्पद्रवा घोरा विसूच्यां पञ्च दारुणाः ॥ २५ ॥

Insomnia, distress, tremors, anuria and coma are the five serious and dangerous complications of gastro-enteritis.

६. २५. विसूचिका के उपद्रव

निद्रानाश, अरति, कम्पन, मूत्राघात तथा संज्ञानाश : ये विसूचिका के पाँच घोर तथा दारुण उपद्रव हैं ।

6. 26. Indigestion as a cause of other diseases

प्रायेणाहारवैषम्यादजीर्णं जायते नृणाम् ।

तन्मूलो रोगसंघातस्तद्विनाशाद्विनश्यति ॥ २६ ॥

Indigestion is usually produced in the human beings due to indiscreete dietary habits and is the root cause of various diseases; hence by controlling it the other diseases would (automatically) be prevented.

६. २६. अजीर्णजन्य अन्य विकार

मनुष्य में आहार वैषम्य से ही प्रायः अजीर्ण उत्पन्न होता है जो अनेक रोगों का मूल कारण है । इसके ठीक होने पर वे सब रोग भी नहीं होते ।

6. 27. General clinical features of acute indigestion

ग्लानिगौरवविष्टम्भभ्रममास्तमूढताः ।

विवन्धो वा प्रवृत्तिर्वा सामान्याजीर्णलक्षणम् ॥ २७ ॥

A general feeling of depression and heaviness of the body, fullness in the abdomen, giddiness, stoppage of intra-abdominal gaseous movements¹ and either constipation or diarrhoea are the usual clinical features of acute indigestion.

६. २७. अजीर्ण के सामान्य लक्षण

ग्लानि, गौरव, विष्टम्भ, भ्रम तथा पेट में वायु का रुक जाना और विवन्ध या अतिसार का होना अजीर्ण के सामान्य लक्षण हैं ।

इति श्रीमाधवकरविरचिते माधवनिदानेऽग्निमान्द्याजीर्णविसूचिकालसक-
विलम्बिकानिदानं समाप्तम् ॥ ६ ॥

Thus ends (the sixth chapter entitled) 'The Diagnosis of Dyspepsia, Indigestion, Gastroenteritis, *Alasaka* (? Mechanical Intestinal Obstruction) and *Vilambikā* (? Paralytic Ileus)' of Mādhava Nidāna, as compiled by Śrī Mādhavakara.

इस प्रकार श्रीमाधवकर द्वारा सङ्कलित माधव-निदान का अग्निमान्द्य, अजीर्ण, विसूचिका, अलसक और विलम्बिका (नामक छठवाँ अध्याय) समाप्त हुआ ।

1. Stoppage of eructations and passage of flatus.

M. N. 6

SUGGESTED RESEARCH PROBLEMS

- I. A historical, comparative and conceptual study on the following should be done :
- (i) Dyspepsia and the four states of the digestive fire (1-4).
 - (ii) Indigestion (5-15, 22, 24, 26, 27).
 - (iii) Gastro-enteritis (16-18, 25).
 - (iv) Mechanical intestinal obstruction (19,20).
 - (v) Paralytic ileus (21).
- II. Clinical identification of the conditions discussed in this chapter is indicated.
-

माधवनिदानम्

सप्तमोऽध्यायः

कृमिनिदानम्

THE DIAGNOSIS OF WORM INFESTATIONS

CHAPTER SEVEN

MĀDHAVA-NIDĀNA

M. N. 7

SUMMARY

Diagnosis of worm infestations has been discussed in this chapter.

The parasitic worms have been classified (1,2/1a) in three ways—by their habitat, origin and nomenclature.

A total of 20 pathogenic worms infesting the human beings have been considered to be of two kinds, 2 external and 18 internal; the internal ones could arise from *kapha*, blood or faeces (1,2/1a).

The external worms (2/1b,3) could be lice and nits, their habitat being the hairs of the body and clothes; their features and the diseases produced by them have been mentioned.

General (4) and specific (5,6/1) aetiological factors producing internal worms from faeces, *kapha* and blood have been considered. General clinical features (6/2,7/1) of the internal worm infestations have been stated. The origin, growth, features, types and the signs and symptoms produced by the 7 *kaphaja* (7/2–11/1), 6 *raktaja* or vascular (11/2, 12) and 5 *purīṣaja* or faecal (13–16) worms have been given.

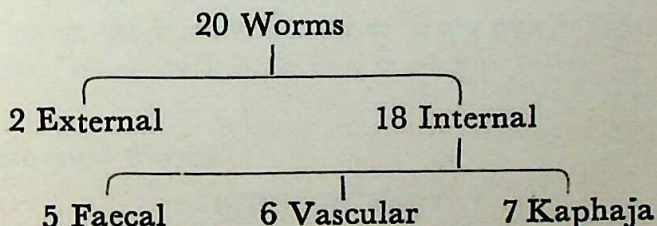


Table showing varieties of worms

सप्तमोऽध्यायः
CHAPTER SEVEN

कृमिनिदानम्

THE DIAGNOSIS OF WORM INFESTATIONS

7.1, 2/1a. Classifications

क्रियमयश्च द्विधा प्रोक्ता बाह्याभ्यन्तरभेदतः ।

बहिर्मलकफासृग्विड्जन्मभेदान्वतुर्विधाः ॥ १ ॥

नामतो विंशतिविधाः—

(अ०हृ०नि० १४. ४२/२, ४३/१, ४३/२अ)

(i) Worms have been considered to be of two kinds according to their habitat-external or internal (to the body).

(ii) They may also be classified into four types according to their origin from the external bodily impurities, *kapha*, blood or faeces.

(iii) According to their (morphological) nomenclature they are of twenty varieties.

(A. H. III. 14. 42/2, 43/1, 43/2a)

७.१, २/१अ. वर्गीकरण

कृमि दो प्रकार के बताये गये हैं—बाह्य एवं आभ्यन्तर । पुनः, शारीरिक बाह्यमल, कफ, रक्त एवं विड् से उत्पत्ति के आधार पर ये चार प्रकार के होते हैं । और नामांकन (स्वरूप) भेद से ये बीस प्रकार के होते हैं ।

7.2/1 b-3. External Worms

—बाह्यास्तत्र मलौद्भवाः ।

तिलप्रमाणसंस्थानवर्णाः केशाम्बराश्रयाः ॥ २ ॥

बहुपादाश्च सूक्ष्माश्च यूका लिक्षाश्च नामतः ।

द्विधा ते कोठपिडकाकण्डूगण्डान् प्रकुर्वते ॥ ३ ॥

(अ० हृ० नि० १४. ४३/२व-४५/१)

Out of these, the external ones originating from (the external bodily) impurities are like a sesame seed in size, shape and colour and reside in the hairs (of the head and other hairy parts of the body) and in the clothes. Their two varieties are named lice and nits having multiple feet and being minute in size (respectively). They produce urticaria, furunculosis, itching and lymphadenitis.

(A. H. III. 14. 43/2b-45/1)

७. २/१व-३. बाह्य कृमि

इनमें से बाह्य कृमि (बाह्य) मल से उत्पन्न होते हैं । ये तिल के प्रमाण, आकार एवं वर्ण के होते हैं । ये (शिर एवं अन्य स्थानों के) बाल तथा वस्त्रों में रहते हैं । इनके दो नाम बताये जाते हैं—यूका (जूँ) और लिक्ष (लीख) जो क्रमशः बहुपाद वाले और अति सूक्ष्म होते हैं । ये चकत्ते, पिडका, कण्डू, तथा गण्ड (ग्रन्थि शोथ) उत्पन्न करते हैं ।

7. 4. Aetiology of the Internal Worms

अजीर्णभोजी मधुराम्लनित्यो द्रवप्रियः पिष्टगुडोपभोक्ता ।

व्यायामवर्जी च दिवाशयानो विरुद्धभुक् संलभते क्रिमींस्तु ॥ ४ ॥

One who takes food before the previous meal has been digested, consumes sweet and sour diet daily, likes liquid substances, consumes flour and treacle confectionary, abstains from physical exercise, indulges in day sleep and eats incompatible preparations gets infested with worms.

७.४. आभ्यन्तर कृमियों के हेतु

पूर्व आहार की अपक्व अवस्था में भोजन करने से, नित्य मधुर एवं अम्ल रस के ही सेवन से, अत्यधिक द्रव पदार्थों के ग्रहण करने से, पिष्टान्न एवं गुड़ के सेवन से, व्यायाम न करने से, दिवा शयन से तथा विरुद्ध भोजन करने से कृमि रोग उत्पन्न होते हैं ।

7.5, 6/1. Factors producing the specific internal worms

माषपिष्टाऽम्ललवणगुडशाकैः पुरीषजाः ।

मांसमत्स्यगुडक्षीरदधिशुक्तैः कफोद्भवाः ॥ ५ ॥

विरुद्धाजीर्णशाकाद्यैः शोणितोत्था भवन्ति हि ।

(सु० उ० ५४. १७, १८/१)

(i) The worms originating from faeces are produced due to consumption of *māṣa*¹, flour, sour and saltish substances, treacle and vegetables, (ii) those arising from *kapha* due to partaking of meat, fish, treacle, milk, yoghurt and vinegar, while (iii) those produced from blood due to taking of incompatible preparations, eating before the previous meal has been digested and consuming vegetables, etc.

(S. S. VI. 54. 17, 18/1)

७.५, ६/१. आभ्यन्तर कृमियों के विशिष्ट हेतु

उड़द, पिष्टान्न, अम्ल एवं लवण रस युक्त पदार्थ, गुड़ और शाक के सेवन करने से पुरीषज कृमि; मांस, मछली, गुड़, क्षीर, दही एवं सिरके के सेवन से कफज कृमि; तथा विरुद्ध भोजन एवं अजीर्ण काल में भोजन करने से एवं शाक आदि के सेवन से रक्तज कृमि उत्पन्न होते हैं ।

1. *Phaseolus mungo* Linn.

7. 6/2, 7/1. General clinical features of the internal worm infestations

ज्वरो विवर्णता शूलं हृद्रोगः सदनं भ्रमः ॥ ६ ॥

भक्तद्वेषोऽतिसारश्च संजातक्रिमिलक्षणम् ।

(सु० उ० ५४. १८/२, १९/१)

Fever, discoloured complexion, colic, (symptoms of) cardiac diseases, malaise, giddiness, aversion to food and diarrhoea are the clinical features produced by worm infestations.

(S. S. VI. 54. 18/2, 19/1)

७. ६/२, ७/१. आभ्यन्तर कृमियों के सामान्य लक्षण

ज्वर, विवर्णता, शूल, हृद्रोग, आलस्य, भ्रम, भोजन से द्वेष और अतिसार कृमियों के कारण उत्पन्न सामान्य लक्षण होते हैं ।

7. 7/2-11/1. Kaphaja Worms

कफादामाशये जाता वृद्धाः सर्पन्ति सर्वतः ॥ ७ ॥

पृथुब्रध्ननिभाः केचित्केचिद्गण्डूपदोपमाः ।

रूढधान्याङ्कुराकारास्तनुदीर्घास्तथाऽणवः ॥ ८ ॥

श्वेतास्ताम्रावभासाश्च नामतः सप्तधा तु ते ।

अन्त्रादा उदरावेष्टा हृदयादा महागुदाः ॥ ९ ॥

चुरवो दर्भकुसुमाः सुगन्धास्ते च कुर्वते ।

हृल्लासमास्यस्रवणमविपाकमरोचकम् ॥ १० ॥

मूर्च्छाच्छर्दिज्वरारानाहकार्यक्ष्वथुपीनसान् ।

(अ० हृ० नि० १४. ४७-५०)

Those (worms) originating from *kapha* develop in the stomach and having grown up move about all over. Some resemble an intertwined rope, others

are like an earthworm and some shaped like a mature grain sprout; and they may be small, big or very minute in size; They are white or copper coloured and by name are of seven types, viz. *anirāda*, *udarāveṣṭa*, *hṛdayāda*, *mahāguda*, *curu*, *darbhakusuma* and *sugandha*. They give rise to nausea, (excessive) salivation, indigestion, anorexia, fainting, vomiting, fever, constipation, emaciation, sneezing and nasal catarrh.

(A.H. III. 14. 47-50)

७.७/२-११/१. कफज कृमि

ये कफज कृमि आमाशय में उत्पन्न होते हैं तथा बड़े होनेपर सर्वत्र घूमते रहते हैं। इनमें कुछ का आकार ताँत के समान चिपटा, कुछ का केंचुए के समान तथा कुछ रुढ़ धान्यांकुर के समान होते हैं; इनका प्रमाण छोटा, बड़ा या अत्यन्त सूक्ष्म होता है; इनका वर्ण श्वेत या ताम्र आभा युक्त होता है। ये सात प्रकार के होते हैं जो अन्त्राद, उदरावेष्ट, हृदयाद, महागुद, चुरु, दर्भकुसुम तथा सुगन्ध नाम से कहे जाते हैं। ये हृत्लास (मिचली), लालास्राव, अविपाक, अरुचि, मूर्छा, वमन, ज्वर, आनाह, दुर्बलता, क्षवथु (छींक आना) एवं पीनस रोग को उत्पन्न करते हैं।

7. 11/2, 12. Raktaja (Vascular) worms

रक्तवाहिसिरास्थानरक्तजा जन्तवोऽणवः ॥ ११ ॥

अपादा वृत्तताम्राश्च सौक्ष्म्यात्केचिददर्शनाः ।

केशादा रोमविध्वंसा रोमद्वीपा उदुम्बराः ।

षट् ते कुष्ठैककर्माणः सहस्रैरसमातरः ॥ १२ ॥

(अ० ह० नि० १४. ५१, ५२)

The minute worms, originating from blood and with their habitat within the blood-carrying vessels, are footless, round and copper coloured; because of their minuteness, some of them cannot be seen.

Keśāda, *romavidhvamsa*, *romadvīpa*, *udumbara* along with *śūrasa* and *māṭṛ* are their six types and they all cause skin diseases (including leprosy).

(A. H. III. 14. 51, 52)

७. ११/२, १२. रक्तज कृमि

रक्त से उत्पन्न होने वाले कृमि रक्तवाही सिराओं में उत्पन्न होते हैं। जो अति आणविक पादरहित, वृत्ताकार, ताम्र वर्ण के और कुछ सूक्ष्मता के कारण अदृश्य होते हैं। केशाद, रोमविध्वंस, रोमद्वीप, उदुम्बर, सौरस और मातृ नामक छः रक्तज कृमि होते हैं जो त्वचा के रोगों को उत्पन्न करते हैं।

7. 13-16. Purīṣaja (Faecal) worms

पववाशये पुरीषोत्था जायन्तेऽधोविसर्पिणः ।

प्रवृद्धाः स्युर्भवेयुश्च ते यदाऽऽमाशयोन्मुखाः ॥ १३ ॥

तदाऽऽस्योद्गारनिःश्वासा विङ्गन्धानुविधायिनः ।

पृथुवृत्ततनुस्थूलाः श्यावपीतसितासिताः ॥ १४ ॥

ते पञ्च नाम्ना क्रिमयः ककरुकमकरुकाः ।

सौसुरादाः सशूलाख्या लेलिहा जनयन्ति हि ॥ १५ ॥

विङ्भेदशूलविष्टम्भकाश्चपारुष्यपाण्डुताः ।

रोमहर्षाग्निसदनं गुदकण्डूर्विमार्गगाः ॥ १६ ॥

(अ० ह० नि० १४. ५३-५६)

The faecal worms originate in the intestines and when mature have a tendency to travel downwards. When they become too many, they begin to go towards the stomach (also) and then the patient's eructations and breath emit faecal smell.

They may be thick, round, thin or big (in size) and blue, yellow, white or black (in colour). These worms are of five types, namely *kakeruka*, *makeruka*,

sausurāda, *saśūla* and *leliha*. When they travel in an abnormal direction, they give rise to loose motions, colic, constipation, emaciation, roughness, pallor, horripilation, poor appetite and pruritus ani.

(A. H. III. 14. 53-56)

७. १३-१६. पुरीषज कृमि

पुरीषज कृमि पक्काशय में उत्पन्न होते हैं तथा अधोभाग में गति करते हैं। इनकी जब अधिक वृद्धि हो जाती है तो ये आमाशय की ओर भी बढ़ते हैं तथा मुख से डकार एवं श्वास में विड् की गन्ध आने लगती है। ये लम्बे, गोल, पतले या स्थूल होते हैं तथा श्याव (नीला), पीत, श्वेत एवं कृष्ण वर्ण के होते हैं। ये कृमि ककेरुक, मकेरुक, सौसुराद, सशूल तथा लेलिह नामक पाँच प्रकार के होते हैं। जब ये विमार्गगामी होते हैं तो विड्भेद, शूल, विष्टम्भ (विवन्ध या मलावरोध), दुर्बलता (कार्श्य), रूक्षता, पाण्डुता, रोमहर्ष, मन्दाग्नि एवं गुद प्रदेश में कण्डू उत्पन्न करते हैं।

इति श्रीमाधवकरविरचिते माधवनिदाने कृमिनिदानम् समाप्तम् ॥७॥

Thus ends (the seventh chapter entitled) 'The Diagnosis of Worm Infestations' of Mādhava Nidāna, as compiled by Śrī Mādhavakara.

इस प्रकार श्रीमाधवकर द्वारा सङ्कलित माधव-निदान का कृमिनिदान (नामक सातवाँ अध्याय) समाप्त हुआ।

M. N. 7

SUGGESTED RESEARCH PROBLEMS**1. Historical & Comparative**

A historical and comparative investigation into this Ayurvedic concept of 20 worms, divided into 2 external and 18 internal and originating from *kapha*, blood and faeces should be done.

2. Parasitological

An attempt should be made to identify the 20 worms mentioned.

3. Clinical

The signs and symptoms produced by the worms mentioned in this chapter should be correlated with those seen in the modern clinical practice.

माधवनिदानम्

अष्टमोऽध्यायः

पाण्डुरोगकामलाकुम्भकामलाहलीमकनिदानम्

THE DIAGNOSIS OF ANAEMIA, JAUNDICE,
KUMBHA-KĀMALĀ AND *HALĪMAKA*

CHAPTER EIGHT

MĀDHAVA-NIDĀNA

M. N. 8

SUMMARY

This chapter describes the diagnosis of those conditions in which the body becomes pale, viz. anaemia, jaundice and some related disorders.

I. Anaemia (1-15)

Five types (1) of anaemia have been discussed : (A) four due to vitiated humors (*doṣas*); and (B) the fifth due to ingestion of earth (clay).

A. The aetiopathogenesis (2) of the humoral types points that the blood is affected by the vitiated *doṣas* leading to the pallor of the skin.

Their prodromal (3) and clinical features (4-7) have been given.

B. The aetiopathogenesis of the anaemia caused by eating clay (earth) has been explained (8-10). Its clinical features (11) include oedema, intestinal worms and the passage of loose stools with blood and mucus.

Chronicity, anasarca and oedema in the limbs have been included among the features of bad prognosis (12-15) of all types of anaemia.

II. Jaundice (16-24) : It has been discussed under 4 heads.

A. *Kāmalā* (16-18) : Uncomplicated jaundice occurs due to *pitta* (bile) getting vitiated in a case of anaemia. The patient has turmeric yellow discolouration of the eyes, skin, etc.; the other clinical features include yellow urine and anorexia. It is

possible to make out some manifestations of all the three groups of jaundice, viz. pre-hepatic (or haemolytic), hepatic and post-hepatic (or obstructive).

B. *Kumbha-Kāmalā* (19-22/1) describes jaundice with ascites (and could be the presentation of cirrhosis liver with portal hypertension). It could lead to hepatic failure (21/2, 22/1).

C. *Halimaka* (? Chlorosis) : Among other clinical features (22/2, 23) mentioned is the greenish discolouration of jaundice.

D. *Pānakī* (24) seems to be a specific complication of jaundice (possibly with infection), leading to fever, diarrhoea and anaemia.

अष्टमोऽध्यायः
CHAPTER EIGHT

पाण्डुरोगकामलाकुम्भकामलाहलीमकनिदानम्
THE DIAGNOSIS OF ANAEMIA, JAUNDICE,
KUMBHA-KĀMALĀ AND HALĪMAKA

I. ANAEMIA (PĀNDUROGA) (8.1-15)

8.1. Types

पाण्डुरोगाः स्मृताः पञ्च वातपित्तकफैस्त्रयः ।

चतुर्थः सन्निपातेन पञ्चमो भक्षणान्मृदः ॥ १ ॥

(च० चि० १६.३)

Anaemic disorders have been described to be of five types, viz. three due to *vāta*, *pitta* and *kapha*, a fourth one due to the combined vitiation (of all the three humors) and the fifth one due to eating earth.

(C. S. VI. 16. 3)

पाण्डु रोग (८. १-१५)

८. १. भेद

पाण्डु रोग पाँच प्रकार के होते हैं । वात, पित्त और कफ से तीन प्रकार के, चौथा तीनों दोषों (सन्निपात) से और पाँचवाँ मिट्टी खाने से होता है ।

I A. The Four Humoral Types (8. 2-7)

दोषिक पाण्डु रोग (८. २-७)

8.2. Aetiopathogenesis

व्यायाममम्लं लवणानि मद्यं मृदं दिवास्वप्नमतीव तीक्ष्णम् ।

निषेवमाणस्य प्रदूष्य रक्तं दोषास्त्वचं पाण्डुरतां नयन्ति ॥ २ ॥

(सु० उ० ४४.३)

The humors in a person due to excessive physical exercise, constant intake of sour substances, salts, wines, earth cakes and the pungent (dietary) articles and (due to regular) day sleeping vitiate the blood and lead to pallor of the skin.

(S. S. VI. 44. 3)

८. २. हेतु एवं सम्प्राप्ति

अधिक व्यायाम, अत्यधिक अम्ल और लवण रस, मद्य, मिट्टी एवं तीक्ष्ण पदार्थों के निरन्तर सेवन से तथा दिवास्वाप के कारण दूषित वातादि दोष रक्त को प्रदूषित करके त्वचा में पाण्डु वर्ण उत्पन्न कर देते हैं ।

8. 3. Prodromal features

त्वक्स्फोटनं घ्रीवनगात्रसादमृद्भक्षणप्रेक्षणकूटशोथाः ।

विण्मूत्रपीतत्वमथाविपाको भविष्यतस्तस्य पुरःसराणि ॥ ३ ॥

(सु० उ० ४४. ५)

Cracks in the skin, (excessive) spitting, malaise, (persistent inclination for) eating earth cakes, oedema of the orbital region, yellow discolouration of faeces and of urine and improper digestion are the prodromal features of anaemia.

(S. S. VI. 44. 5)

८. ३. पूर्व रूप

त्वक् का खुर्दरा होना, घ्रीवन (थूकना), शरीर में भारीपन, मिट्टी खाने की इच्छा होना, आँखों में सूजन, मल एवं मूत्र का पीलापन, तथा भोजन का अविपाक पाण्डु रोग के पूर्व रूप हैं ।

8. 4-7. CLINICAL FEATURES

८. ४-७. लक्षण

8. 4. Vātaja Anaemia

त्वङ्मूत्रनयनादीनां रूक्षकृष्णारुणाभताः ।

वातपाण्ड्वामये तोदकम्पानाहभ्रमादयः ॥ ४ ॥

Dryness and blackish or reddish discolouration of the skin, urine and the eyes, etc. occur in the *vātaja* anaemia along with pricking sensation, tremors, constipation with flatulence, giddiness, and so forth.

८.४. वातिक पाण्डु रोग

वातिक पाण्डु रोग में त्वचा, मूत्र और नेत्रादि का रूक्ष, कृष्ण अथवा अरुणाम होना, तथा शरीर में तोड़, कम्पन, आनाह, भ्रम आदि लक्षण होते हैं।

8. 5. Pittaja Anaemia

पीतमूत्रशकृन्नेत्रो दाहतृष्णाज्वरान्वितः ।

भिन्नविट्कोऽतिपीताभः पित्तपाण्ड्वामयी नरः ॥ ५ ॥

A patient suffering from the *pittaja* anaemia has yellow discolouration of urine, faeces and eyes together with a burning sensation, thirst, fever and diarrhoea. He also develops deep yellow tinge (of the skin).

८.५. पित्तिक पाण्डु रोग

मल, मूत्र और नेत्रों का पीला होना तथा दाह, तृष्णा और ज्वर का होना पित्तिक पाण्डु के लक्षण होते हैं। इनके अतिरिक्त रोगी को अतिसार हो जाता है तथा उसका वर्ण गहरा पीला हो जाता है।

8. 6. Kaphaja Anaemia

कफप्रसेकश्चयथुतन्द्रालस्यातिगौरवैः ।

पाण्डुरोगी कफाच्छुक्लैस्त्वङ्मूत्रनयनाननैः ॥ ६ ॥

A person suffering from the *kaphaja* anaemia develops (excessive) mucoid salivation, oedema, sleepiness, laziness, heaviness (of the body) and

whitish discolouration of the skin, urine, eyes and the face.

८. ६. श्लैष्मिक पाण्डु रोग

मुख से कफ का प्रसेक होना, शोथ, तन्द्रा, आलस्य, गौरव तथा त्वक, मल, मूत्र एवं मुख का श्वेताभ होना श्लैष्मिक पाण्डु रोग के लक्षण होते हैं ।

8. 7. Tridoṣaja Anaemia

ज्वरारोचकहृल्लासच्छर्दिदृष्टाक्लमान्वितः ।

पाण्डुरोगी त्रिभिर्दोषैस्त्याज्यः क्षीणो हतेन्द्रियः ॥ ७ ॥

A patient suffering from anaemia due to (vitiation of) all the three humors has fever, anorexia, nausea, vomiting, thirst and fatigue. He is emaciated, has weakness of the sensory and motor organs and should be discarded (from treatment as incurable).

८. ७. त्रिदोषज पाण्डु रोग

ज्वर, अरुचि, हृल्लास, छर्दि, दृष्टा तथा क्लम त्रिदोषज पाण्डु के लक्षण हैं । इसमें रोगी क्षीण हो जाता है तथा उसकी इन्द्रियाँ दुर्बल हो जाती हैं । यह त्याज्य (असाध्य) होता है ।

I B. Mrjja (Pāṇḍu Roga) Anaemia (8. 8-11)

मृज्ज पाण्डु (८. ८-११)

8. 8-10. Aetiopathogenesis

मृत्तिकादनशीलस्य कुप्यत्यन्यतमो मलः ।

कषाया मास्रं पित्तमूषरा मधुरा कफम् ॥ ८ ॥

कोपयेन्मृद्रसादींश्च रौक्ष्याद् भुक्तं च रूक्षयेत् ।

पूरयत्यविपक्वैव स्रोतांसि निरुणद्धचपि ॥ ९ ॥

इन्द्रियाणां बलं हत्वा तेजो वीर्यौजसी तथा ।

पाण्डुरोगं करोत्याशु बलवर्णाग्निनाशनम् ॥ १० ॥

(च० चि० १६. २७-२६)

A person used to eating earth cakes, gets one of his humors (*doṣas*) vitiated (according to the type of the earth), such as *vata* is vitiated by the astringent tasting earth, *pitta* by the alkaline (salty) earth and *kapha* by the sweet tasting earth. This earth, due to its dryness, dries up the *rasa* and other *dhātus* and also the ingested meal which, in turn, remaining undigested, occupies and blocks the passages (*srotas*). This retards the power of the sensory and motor organs and also the (bodily) lustre, potency and *ojas*, thereby producing anaemia (*pāṇḍu roga*) readily which destroys strength, colour and digestion of the patient.

(C. S. VI. 16. 27-29)

८. ८-१०. मृज्ज (मृत्तिकाजन्य) पाण्डु रोग की सम्प्राप्ति

जिन व्यक्तियों को मिट्टी खाने की प्रवृत्ति हो जाती है उनमें वातादि दोषों में कोई एक दोष प्रकुपित हो जाते हैं, जैसे—कषाय रस युक्त मिट्टी से वात, ऊपर मिट्टी से पित्त तथा मधुर रस युक्त मिट्टी से कफ । यह मिट्टी अपने रूक्ष गुण के कारण रसादि धातुओं तथा खाये हुए भोजन को रूक्ष कर देती है जिसके फलस्वरूप उसका पाचन नहीं हो पाता तथा यह रसवाही आदि स्रोतों को पूर्ण करके उनके मार्ग को अवरुद्ध कर देती है । यह इन्द्रियों के बल को नष्ट कर देती है तथा तेज, वीर्य और ओज को कम कर के शीघ्र ही पाण्डु रोग उत्पन्न कर देती है । इसमें बल, वर्ण एवं अग्नि का नाश हो जाता है ।

8. 11. Clinical Features

शूनाक्षिकूटगण्डभ्रूः शूनपान्नाभिमेहनः ।

क्रिमिकोष्ठोत्तिसार्येत मलं सासृक्कफान्वितम् ॥ ११ ॥

(च० चि० १६. ३०)

(In a case of anaemia due to eating of earth cakes) there is oedema around the orbits, the cheeks

and the eyebrows and also in the feet, the umbilical region and the penis. The patient develops intestinal worms and passes loose stools with blood and mucus.

(C. S. VI. 16. 30)

द. ११. मृज्ज पाण्डु रोग के लक्षण

मृत्तिका जन्य पाण्डु रोग में अक्षिकूट, गण्ड प्रदेश एवं भ्रू प्रदेश में शोथ हो जाता है तथा पैर, नाभि एवं मूत्रेन्द्रिय में भी शोथ हो जाता है। कोष्ठ (उदर) में कृमि होने से रोगी रक्त एवं कफ युक्त मल बार-बार त्याग करता है।

PROGNOSIS OF ANAEMIA (8. 12-15)

पाण्डु रोग की साध्यासाध्यता (द. १२-१५)

8. 12-14/1. The chronic types of incurable anaemia

पाण्डुरोगश्चिरोत्पन्नः खरीभूतो न सिध्यति ।

कालप्रकर्षाच्छूनानां यो वा पीतानि पश्यति ॥ १२ ॥

वद्धाल्पविट् सहरितं सकफं योजतिसार्यते ।

दीनः श्वेतातिदिग्धाङ्गश्छर्द्दिमूर्च्छातृडदितः ॥ १३ ॥

स नास्त्यसृक्क्षयाद्यश्च पाण्डुः श्वेतत्वमाप्नुयात् ।

(च० चि० १६. ३१-३३/१)

A *pāṇḍu roga* (anaemia) of long duration can not be cured due to its chronicity. It is also incurable in persons who have developed anasarca due to the chronic anaemia, who have yellow vision, who pass faecoliths along with mucus and green diarrhoea, who are weak, whose body looks whitish, and who are suffering from vomiting, giddiness and thirst.

A (severely) anaemic person who looks white due to (chronic) loss of blood also cannot survive.

(C. S. VI. 16. 31-33/1)

द. १२-१४/१. चिरकालिक असाध्य पाण्डु रोग

चिरकालिक पाण्डु रोग खरीभूत हो जाने के कारण असाध्य होता है। अधिक समय बीत जाने पर शोथ युक्त पाण्डु रोगी जो पीला ही देखे, वह भी असाध्य होता है; अथवा जो पाण्डु रोगी बार-बार गाँठदार कफ युक्त, हरे रंग के मल का अतिसरण करे वह भी असाध्य होता है। जो पाण्डु रोगी अति दीन (दुर्बल) हो तथा वमन, मूर्छा एवं प्यास से पीड़ित हो और उसका शरीर श्वेत वर्ण से लित प्रतीत हो तो उसे भी असाध्य समझना चाहिए। अत्यधिक रक्त क्षय के कारण जिस पाण्डु रोगी का पाण्डुपन न रह कर उसका शरीर श्वेत वर्ण का हो गया हो तो वह जीवित नहीं रह पाता है।

8. 14/2, 14/3. The Untreatable Complications

पाण्डुदन्तनखो यस्तु पाण्डुनेत्रश्च यो भवेत् ।

पाण्डुसंघातदर्शी च पाण्डुरोगी विनश्यति ॥ १४ ॥

(सु० सू० ३३.२३)

An anaemic patient whose teeth, nails and eyes become severely anaemic and who sees everything as pale does not survive.

(S. S. I. 33. 23)

द. १४/२, १४/३. पाण्डु रोग के असाध्य उपद्रव

जिस पाण्डु रोगी के दन्त, नख एवं नेत्र पाण्डु वर्ण के हो गये हों तथा जो सम्पूर्ण वस्तुओं को पाण्डु वर्ण का देखे उसकी मृत्यु हो जाती है।

8. 15. Features of the Incurable Anaemia

अन्तेषु शूनं परिहीणमध्यम्, म्लानं तथाऽन्तेषु च मध्यशूनम् ।

गुदे च शेफस्यथ मुष्कयोश्च शूनं प्रताम्यन्तमसंज्ञकल्पम् ।

विवर्जयेत्पाण्डुकिनं यशोऽर्थी तथाऽतिसारज्वरपीडितं च ॥ १५ ॥

(सु० उ० ४४. ३६, ४०)

A patient of *pāṇḍu roga* who has oedema of the extremities¹ and is thinned out towards the trunk, or who has oedema of the trunk² and is thinned out towards the extremities and also one who has a swelling of the anal region, penis and scrotum as well as giddiness and loss of consciousness superimposed by diarrhoea and fever, should be discarded (from treatment) by one (a physician) desirous to earn his fame.

(S. S. VI. 44. 39, 40)

८. १५. असाध्य पाण्डु रोग

जिस रोगी के हस्त एवं पाद में शोथ हो तथा मध्य भाग क्षीण हो अथवा मध्य भाग में शोथ हो तथा हस्त एवं पाद क्षीण हों तो उसे असाध्य समझना चाहिए । इसके अतिरिक्त जिसकी गुदा, लिंग एवं वृषण में सूजन हो तथा जो अत्यन्त दुःखी एवं मूर्छित हो और अतिसार एवं ज्वर से पीड़ित हो तो यशार्थी चिकित्सक को ऐसे पाण्डु रोगी की चिकित्सा नहीं करनी चाहिए ।

II. JAUNDICE (8. 16-24)

II A. 8. 16-18. Kāmalā (Jaundice)

पाण्डुरोगी तु योज्यर्थं पित्तलानि निषेवते ।

तस्य पित्तमसृङ्मांसं दग्ध्वा रोगाय कल्पते ॥ १६ ॥

हारिद्रनेत्रः स भृशं हारिद्रत्वङ्नखाननः ।

रक्तपीतशकृन्मूत्रो भेकवर्णो हृतेन्द्रियः ॥ १७ ॥

दाहाविपाकदौर्बल्यसदनारुचिकर्षितः ।

कामला बहुपित्तैषा कोष्ठशाखाश्रया मता ॥ १८ ॥

(च० चि० १६. ३४-३६)

1. Oedema in the peripheral or dependent parts, as in congestive heart failure.
2. Central (ascites), as in cirrhosis of liver/portal hypertension.

If a patient of anaemia¹ (*pāṇḍu*) continues to use *pitta*-aggravating substances, the *pitta*² further vitiates *rakta* and *māṃsa* and produces the disease (jaundice, *kāmalā*). A patient of jaundice (due to excessive *pitta* or bile) develops turmeric yellow discolouration of the eyes, the skin, the nails and the face. He passes reddish yellow faeces and urine, looks (yellow) like a toad in colour, has an extreme weakness of the sensory and motor organs and suffers from a burning sensation, indigestion, emaciation, depression and anorexia. This disease, known as jaundice (*kāmalā*), is due to an excessive (vitiation of) *pitta* (bile) and is of (two types, viz.) abdominal (*koṣṭhāsrita*³ or central) and peripheral (*śākhāsrita*)⁴ types.

(C. S. VI. 16. 34-36)

८. १६-१८. कामला रोग

पाण्डु रोग से पीड़ित व्यक्ति जब पित्त प्रकोपक द्रव्यों का अधिक मात्रा में सेवन करता है तो उसका पित्त रक्त और मांस को दूषित करके कामला रोग उत्पन्न करता है।

बहुत पित्त वाले कामला रोगी के नेत्र हल्दी के समान पीत वर्ण के हो जाते हैं तथा उसके त्वक्, मुख एवं नखों का वर्ण भी पीला हो जाता है। वह रक्तमिश्रित पीत वर्ण का मल एवं मूत्र त्याग करता है तथा रोगी का शरीर भेक वर्ण (पीले मेढक के रंग) का हो जाता है। उसकी इन्द्रियाँ दुर्बल हो जाती हैं। वह व्यक्ति दाह, अविपाक, दौर्बल्य, शरीर में शिथिलता तथा अरुचि से

1. Anaemia being a predisposing factor, some include haemolytic or pre-hepatic jaundice also in this.
2. *Pitta* literally implies bile.
3. ? Hepatic jaundice.
4. ? Obstructive or post-hepatic jaundice.

पीड़ित रहता है। यह कामला रोग पित्त की अधिकता से होता है तथा कोष्ठाश्रित एवं शाखाश्रित (मेघ से दो प्रकार का) होता है।

II B. 8. 19-22/1. Jaundice with ascites (*Kumbha Kāmalā*)

न. १९-२२/१. कुम्भ कामला

8. 19/1. Pathogenesis

कालान्तरात् खरीभूता कृच्छ्रा स्यात्कुम्भकामला ।

(च० चि० १६. ३७/१)

In due course of time, when jaundice (*kāmalā*) becomes chronic, it is known as *kumbha kāmalā* (jaundice with ascites)^{1, 2} and is curable with difficulty.

(C. S. VI. 16. 37/1)

न. १९/१. सम्प्राप्ति

अधिक समय बीत जाने पर (कामला रोग के) खरीभूत (रूक्ष) होने के फलस्वरूप कुम्भ कामला रोग उत्पन्न हो जाता है।

3. 19/2-21/1. Prognosis of *Kumbha Kāmalā*

कृष्णपीतशकृन्मूत्रो भृशं शूनश्च मानवः ॥ १९ ॥

सरक्ताक्षिमुखच्छर्दिविष्मूत्रो यश्च ताम्यति ।

दाहारचितृडानाहतन्द्रामोहसमन्वितः ॥ २० ॥

नष्टाग्निसंज्ञः क्षिप्रं हि कामलावान्विपद्यते ।

(च० चि० १६. ३७/२-३६/१)

A patient of jaundice is incurable if he develops

1. *Kumbha*=pitcher+*Kāmalā*=jaundice. (*Kumbha-Kāmalā* thus implies jaundice with the abdomen full of fluid, i.e. ascites or as a pitcher full of fluid).
2. ? Cirrhosis liver with jaundice, portal hypertension and ascites.

blackish yellow discolouration of faeces¹ and urine², severe anasarca, reddish discolouration of eyes³, oral cavity⁴, vomitus⁵, faeces⁶ and of urine⁷, giddiness, burning sensation, anorexia, thirst, tympanitis, drowsiness, confusion, subnormal temperature and coma⁸.

(C. S. VI. 16. 37/2-39/1)

८. १६/२-२१/१. कुम्भ कामला की साध्यासाध्यता

जिस रोगी के मल एवं मूत्र काले या पीत वर्ण के हों तथा जिसके शरीर में शोथ हो गया हो अथवा जिसके नेत्र मुख, वमन-पदार्थ, मल एवं मूत्र में रक्त आ जाये तथा जो बार-बार मूर्छित हो जाता हो; जो दाह, अरुचि, प्यास, आनाह, तन्द्रा एवं मोह से ग्रसित हो; तथा जिसकी अग्नि और चेतना नष्ट हो गयी हों वह कामला से पीड़ित रोगी शीघ्र ही मर जाता है ।

8. 21/2, 22/1. Features of the Incurable Kumbha Kāmalā (Hepatic Failure)

छर्द्यरोचकहृल्लासज्वरक्लमतिपीडितः ॥ २१ ॥

नश्यति श्वासकासार्तो विड्भेदी कुम्भकामली ।

A case of *kumbha kāmalā* dies when it is associated with vomiting, anorexia, nausea, fever, fatigue, dyspnoea, cough and diarrhoea.

1. ? Malena.
2. ? Haematuria.
3. ? Subconjunctival haemorrhage.
4. ? Bleeding from gums.
5. ? Haematemesis.
6. ? Frank blood in the stools.
7. ? Fresh blood in the urine.
8. Hepatic failure.

८. २१/२, २२/१. कुम्भ कामला की असाध्यता (युक्त कार्य विनाश)

छूर्दि, अरुचि, हृत्तास (मिचली), ज्वर, बलम, श्वास, कास एवं विड्मेद (अतिसार) से पीड़ित कुम्भ कामला का रोगी (शीघ्र ही) मर जाता है ।

II C. 8. 22/2, 23. Halimaka¹

यदा तु पाण्डोर्वर्णः स्याद्धरितः श्यावपीतकः ॥ २२ ॥

बलोत्साहक्षयस्तन्द्रा मन्दाग्नित्वं मृदुज्वरः ।

स्त्रीष्वहर्षोऽङ्गमर्दश्च दाहस्तृष्णाऽरुचिर्भ्रमः ।

हलीमकं तदा तस्य विद्यादनिलपित्ततः ॥ २३ ॥

(च० चि० १६. १३२/२-१३४/१)

When a patient of jaundice develops green, blackish or yellow discolouration (of skin), loss of strength and vigour, sleepiness, sluggish digestion, mild fever, loss of libido, bodyache, burning sensation, thirst, anorexia and giddiness, he should be known to be suffering from *halimaka* disease which is due to (the vitiation) of *vāta* and *pitta*.

(C. S. VI. 16. 132/2-134/1)

८. २२/२, २३. हलीमक

जब कामला के रोगी का वर्ण हरा, नीला या पीला हो जाये तथा उसके बल एवं उत्साह का ह्रास हो जाये; रोगी तन्द्रा, मंदाग्नि तथा मृदु ज्वर से पीड़ित हो; स्त्री-प्रसङ्ग की अनिच्छा एवं अंगमर्द हों और दाह, तृष्णा, अरुचि एवं भ्रम से युक्त हो तो इसे हलीमक रोग समझना चाहिए । यह वात एवं पित्त की विकृति से होता है ।

II D. 8. 24. Pānaki²

सन्तापो भिन्नवर्चस्त्वं बहिरन्तश्च पीतता ।

पाण्डुता नेत्रयोर्यस्य पानकीलक्षणं भवेत् ॥ २४ ॥

1. ? Chlorosis.

2. A syndrome consisting of severe jaundice (with ? infection) leading to fever, diarrhoea and anaemia.

Fever, diarrhoea, yellowness of the internal and the external organs and whitish discolouration of the eyes are the clinical features of the *pānakī* disease.

८. २४. पानकी

जब ज्वर, अतिसार, बाह्य एवं आन्तर अंगों में पीलापन तथा नेत्रों में पाण्डुता के लक्षण हों तो उसे पानकी रोग कहते हैं ।

इति श्रीमाधवकरविरचिते माधवनिदाने पाण्डुरोगकामला-
कुम्भकामलाहलीमकनिदानं समाप्तम् ॥ ८ ॥

Thus ends (the eighth chapter entitled) 'The Diagnosis of Anaemia, Jaundice, *Kumbha-Kāmalā* and *Halimaka*' of Mādhava Nidāna, as compiled by Śrī Mādhavakara.

इस प्रकार श्रीमाधवकर द्वारा सङ्कलित माधव-निदान का पाण्डुरोगकामला-
कुम्भकामलाहलीमकनिदान (नामक आठवाँ अध्याय) समाप्त हुआ ।

M. N. 8

SUGGESTED RESEARCH PROBLEMS

1. A historical and comparative study on the conceptual aspects of anaemia (1-15) and jaundice (16-24) as outlined in this chapter would be interesting.
2. An attempt should be made to identify the various clinical conditions described in this chapter as the five types of anaemia (1-15) and various types of jaundice (16-24) with or without complications.



माधवनिदानम्
नवमोऽध्यायः

रक्तपित्तनिदानम्
THE DIAGNOSIS OF THE HAEMORRHAGIC
DISORDERS

CHAPTER NINE
MĀDHAVA - NIDĀNA

M. N. 9

SUMMARY

The various types of haemorrhagic disorders, their diagnosis, complications and pathogenesis, etc. have been discussed in this chapter.

Vitiation of *pitta* has been considered to be the aetio-pathological factor (1-3) for all haemorrhagic disorders; various factors cause vitiation of *pitta* which in turn afflicts the blood and brings it out either through the upper routes (nose, mouth, ears, etc.), the lower (urethra, vagina, anus etc.), both, or generalised from hair pores of the skin (1-3).

The prodromal features (4), the general and the specific clinical features (5-7), prognosis (8-10), complications (11) and the signs of incurability (12-14) of the haemorrhagic disorders have been described.

नवमोऽध्यायः

CHAPTER NINE

रक्तपित्तनिदानम्

THE DIAGNOSIS OF THE HAEMORRHAGIC
DISORDERS (RAKTA-PITTA)

9. 1-3. Aetio-pathogenesis

घर्मव्यायामशोकाध्वव्यवायैरतिसेवितैः ।

तीक्ष्णोष्णक्षारलवणैरम्लैः कटुभिरेव च ॥ १ ॥

पित्तं विदग्धं स्वगुणैर्विदहत्याशु शोणितम् ।

ततः प्रवर्तते रक्तमूर्ध्वं चाधो द्विधाऽपि वा ॥ २ ॥

(सु० उ० ४५. ४/२, ५/१)

ऊर्ध्वं नासाक्षिकर्णस्यैर्मंद्रयोनिगुदैरधः ।

कुपितं रोमकूपैश्च समस्तैस्तत्प्रवर्तते ॥ ३ ॥

(अ० हृ० नि० ३. ७/२, ८/१)

Overexposure to the sun, excessive physical exercise, grief, travelling long distances on foot and sexual intercourse, as also excessive use of sharp, hot, alkaline, saltish, acidic and pungent substances (vitiate the *pitta*).

Vitiated *pitta*, due to its inherent qualities quickly affects the blood; thereafter, the blood is (sometimes) passed through the upper passages, (sometimes) by the lower routes and (sometimes) by both.

(S. S. VI. 45. 4/2, 5/1)

The upper passages are the nose, the eyes, the ears and the mouth; and the penis, the vagina and the anus are the lower routes. When there is a generalised vitiation (of blood) it may also come out through all the pores of the hairs (of the skin).

(A. H. III. 3. 7/2, 8/1).

६. १-३. हेतु एवं सम्प्राप्ति

आतप सेवन, व्यायाम, शोक, अत्यधिक पदयात्रा, एवं मैथुन करने से, और तीक्ष्ण, उष्ण, क्षार, लवण, अम्ल एवं कटु रस प्रधान द्रव्यों के अति सेवन से पित्त विदग्ध होकर, अपने गुणों से शीघ्र ही रक्त को भी दूषित कर देता है। इससे रक्त ऊर्ध्व या अधोमार्ग अथवा दोनों मार्गों से निकलने लगता है। नाक, आँख, कान तथा मुख ऊर्ध्वमार्ग हैं। मेदू (लिंग), योनि तथा गुद अधोमार्ग हैं। अत्यन्त प्रकुपित होनेपर रक्त सम्पूर्ण रोमकूपों से भी निकलने लग सकता है।

9. 4. Prodromal Features

सदनं शीतकामित्वं कण्ठधूमायनं वमिः ।

लोहगन्धिश्च निःश्वासो भवन्त्यस्मिन् भविष्यति ॥ ४ ॥

(सु० उ० ४५. ७/२, ८/१)

Malaise, a desire for cold, a feeling as if fumes are present in the throat, vomiting and a metallic odour in the breath are the prodromal features (of the haemorrhagic disorders).

(S. S. VI. 45. 7/2, 8/1)

६. ४. पूर्वरूप

अंगों में शिथिलता, ठंडी वस्तुओं के सेवन की प्रबल इच्छा, कण्ठ से धूम का आना या प्रतीत होना, वमन होना तथा निःश्वास में लौह की गंध का प्रतीत होना रक्तपित्त के पूर्वरूप हैं।

9. 5-7/1. General Clinical Features

9. 5/1. Kaphaja Haemorrhagic Disorders

सान्द्रं सपाण्डु सस्नेहं पिच्छिलं च कफान्वितम् ।

(च० चि० ४. ११/१)

A viscid, somewhat pale, oleaginous and mucoid blood material indicates the *kaphaja* type (of haemorrhagic disorder).

(C. S. VI. 4. 11/1)

६. ५/१. श्लेष्मिक रक्तपित्त

सान्द्र, पाण्डुवर्ण, स्नेहयुक्त तथा पिच्छिल रक्तस्राव हो तो इसे कफान्वित रक्तपित्त समझना चाहिए ।

9.5/2. Vātaja Haemorrhagic Disorder

श्यावारुणं सफेनं च तनु रुक्षं च वातिकम् ॥ ५ ॥

(च० चि० ४.११/२)

Grey, reddish, frothy, thin and arid sanguinous material is due to *vāta*.

(C. S. VI. 4. 11/2)

६. ५/२. वातिक रक्तपित्त

श्याव या अरुण वर्ण का, फेनयुक्त, पतला एवं रुक्ष रक्तस्राव का होना वातिक रक्तपित्त का लक्षण है ।

9.6. Paittika Haemorrhagic Disorder

रक्तपित्तं कषायाभं कृष्णं गोमूत्रसन्निभम् ।

मेचकागारधूमाभमञ्जनाभं च पैत्तिकम् ॥ ६ ॥

(च० चि० ४.१२)

The haemorrhagic fluid due to *pitta* may resemble the decoctions of (astringent) drugs¹, may be black or simulate the urine of a cow, or may appear (variegated) like the eyes of a peacock's tail, or else may be (black) like house soot or collyrium.

(C. S. VI. 4. 12)

1. Saffron coloured.

६. ६. पैत्तिक रक्तपित्त

पैत्तिक रक्तपित्त में रक्त कषाय की आभा का या कृष्ण वर्ण का, गोमूत्र के समान वर्ण का, मेचक (अनेक रंग मिला हुआ), घर के धुएँ के समान या अंजन के समान (काला) वर्ण का होता है ।

9. 7/1. Raktapitta due to combined vitiation of *doṣas*

संसृष्टलिङ्गं संसर्गात्त्रिलिङ्गं सान्निपातिकम् ।

(च० चि० ४. १३/१)

With the simultaneous dual or triple vitiation of *doṣas* appropriate combined features of the respective two or three involved *doṣas* appear clinically.

(C. S. VI. 4. 13/1)

६. ७/१. द्वंद्व एवं सान्निपातिक रक्तपित्त

दो दोषों के मिश्रण से उनके संसृष्ट लक्षण वाला तथा तीनों दोषों की विकृति से सान्निपातिक रक्तपित्त होता है ।

9. 7/2, 7/3. Secondary involvement of humors in the haemorrhagic disorders

ऊर्ध्वगं कफसंसृष्टमधोगं पवनानुगम् ।

द्विमागं कफवाताभ्यामुभाभ्यामनुवर्तते ॥ ७ ॥

(च० चि० ४. २४)

Bleeding occurring from the upper passages is mixed with *kapha* (? mucus), that from the lower ones is associated with *vāta* (? air), and (similarly) that coming out from both the routes is combined with both *kapha* and *vāta*.

(C. S. VI. 4. 24)

६.७/२, ७/३. रक्तपित्त में मार्गभेद से दोषों का अनुबन्ध

ऊर्ध्व मार्ग से निकलने वाले रक्तपित्त में कफ का तथा अधो मार्ग से निकलने वाले रक्तपित्त में वात दोष का अनुबन्ध होता है । इसी प्रकार दोनों मार्ग से निकलने वाले रक्तपित्त में कफ एवं पित्त दोनों का अनुबन्ध रहता है ।

9.8/1. Prognosis according to the routes of bleeding

ऊर्ध्वं साध्यमधो याप्यमसाध्यं युगपदगतम् ।

(सु० उ० ४५. ७/१)

Bleeding from the upper passages is curable, that from the lower channels is difficult to cure, while (simultaneous) bleeding from both the routes is incurable.

(S. S. VI. 45. 7/1)

६.८/१. मार्ग भेद से साध्यासाध्यता

ऊर्ध्व रक्तपित्त साध्य, अधोग रक्तपित्त याप्य एवं दोनों मार्गों से उत्पन्न रक्तपित्त असाध्य होता है ।

9.8/2, 9/1. Favourable prognostic features

एकमार्गं बलवतो नातिवेगं नवोत्थितम् ॥ ८ ॥

रक्तपित्तं सुखे काले साध्यं स्यान्निरुपद्रवम् ।

(च० चि० ४. २२)

The haemorrhagic disorders manifesting through one channel only are considered as curable in the (otherwise) healthy person, (specially) if it is not of great severity, is of recent onset, has occurred in a favourable season and is uncomplicated.

(C. S. VI. 4. 22)

६. ८/२, ६/१. सुखसाध्यता के लक्षण

जब रक्तपित्त एक मार्ग से प्रवृत्त हो रहा हो, रोगी बलवान हो, रक्तसाव अत्यधिक वेग से न हो, रोग नूतन हो (अर्थात् चिरकालिक न हो), अनुकूल समय में उत्पन्न हो एवं उपद्रवरहित हो तो वह साध्य होता है ।

9. 9/2, 10. Humors and Prognosis

एकदोषानुगं साध्यं द्विदोषं याप्यमुच्यते ॥ ९ ॥

यत्त्रिदोषमसाध्यं स्यान्मन्दाग्नेरतिवेगवत् ।

व्याधिभिः क्षीणदेहस्य वृद्धस्यानश्नतश्च यत् ॥ १० ॥

(च० चि० ४. १३/२, १४)

The haemorrhagic disorders caused by a single vitiated *doṣa* are considered curable, whereas those due to two (vitiating) *doṣas* are relievable only. On the other hand, the excessively severe (haemorrhagic) disorders caused by all the three (vitiating) *doṣas* are incurable, as also those in a patient with sluggish digestive power, who has become weak on account of illnesses or who is old and has not been taking food.

(C. S. VI. 4. 13/2, 14)

६. ६/२, १०. सम्प्राप्ति दोष भेद से साध्यसाध्यता

जो रक्तपित्त एक दोष से उत्पन्न हो वह साध्य होता है; जो दो दोषों से उत्पन्न हो वह याप्य होता है और जो तीनों दोषों से उत्पन्न हो वह असाध्य होता है । मन्दाग्नि युक्त पुरुष में उत्पन्न, अति वेग वाला तथा रोग से क्षीण शरीर, वृद्ध एवं जो भोजन न करता हो, ऐसे व्यक्तियों का भी रक्तपित्त असाध्य होता है ।

9. 11. Complications

दौर्बल्यश्वासकासज्वरवमथुमदाः पाण्डुतादाहमूर्च्छा,

भुक्ते घोरो विदाहस्त्वधृतिरपि सदा हृद्यतुल्या च पीडा ।

तृष्णा कोष्ठस्य भेदः शिरसि तपनं पूतिनिष्ठीवनत्वम् ,
भक्तेद्वेषाविपाकौ विकृतिरपि भवेद्रक्तपित्तोपसर्गाः ॥ ११ ॥
(सु० उ० ४५.६)

Weakness, dyspnoea, cough, fever, vomiting, (mental disturbances as in) intoxication, anaemia, a burning sensation, fainting, severe heartburn on taking food, lack of self confidence, persistent intolerable precordial pain¹, thirst, loose bowels, a sensation of glowing heat in the head, purulent expectoration, an aversion to food, indigestion and even some unusual (fatal signs and symptoms given below as) complications of the haemorrhagic disorders may appear.

(S. S. VI. 45. 9)

६.११. रक्तपित्त के उपद्रव

दौर्बल्य, श्वास, कास, ज्वर, वमन, मद, पाण्डु, दाह, मूर्छा, खाये हुए अन्न का अत्यन्त विदाह, धैर्यरहित होना, हृदय प्रदेश में सदा पीड़ा, तृष्णा, अतिसार, शिर में सन्ताप होना, दुर्गन्धित छीवन, भोजन में अरुचि, अविपाक होना तथा अरिष्ट लक्षण भी रक्तपित्त के उपद्रव स्वरूप हो सकते हैं ।

9. 12. Bad prognostic features

मांसप्रक्षालनाभं कुथितमिव च यत्कर्दमाम्भोनिभं वा
मेदःपूयास्रकल्पं यत्कृदिव यदि वा पक्वजम्बूफलाभम् ।
यत्कृष्णं यच्च नीलं भृशमतिकुणपं यत्र चोक्ता विकारा-
स्तद्वर्ज्यं रक्तपित्तं सुरपतिघनुषा यच्च तुल्यं विभाति ॥ १२ ॥
(सु० उ० ४५.१०)

The cases of haemorrhagic disorders should be discarded (from treatment as incurable) if they bring out blood appearing like meat washings or like

1. ? Angina.

decaying matter or muddy water, if the brought out blood is mixed with fat or purulent matter or else resembles liver tissue or a ripe *jambū*¹ fruit, if it (the blood passed) is either black or blue and is excessively foul smelling like putrefying tissues or is of variegated colours like a rainbow, and also if it is associated with the (above) mentioned complications.

(S. S. VI. 45. 10)

६. १२. असाध्य लक्षण

जो रक्तपित्त मांस धोवन जल के समान वर्ण वाला, सड़ा हुआ (दुर्गन्धित), कीचड़युक्त जल सदृश, मेद एवं पूय मिश्रित, यकृत या पके हुए जम्बू फल के सदृश वर्ण का, (कुछ) काला तथा नीला, शव जैसी दुर्गन्ध वाला, ऊपर कहे गये उपद्रवों से युक्त तथा इन्द्रधनुष तुल्य अनेक वर्ण वाला हो वह असाध्य होता है ।

9. 13,14. Other (fatal) signs of incurability

9. 13. येन चोपहतो रक्तं रक्तपित्तेन मानवः ।

पश्येद् दृश्यं वियच्चापि तच्चासाध्यमसंशयम् ॥ १३ ॥

(च० नि० २. २६)

That patient suffering from the haemorrhagic disorders who visualises everything (nearby as well as distant) including the skies as red should undoubtedly be considered as incurable.

(C. S. II. 2. 26)

६. १३, १४. अन्य असाध्य (अरिष्ट) लक्षण

६. १३. रक्तपित्त से पीड़ित मनुष्य जब सम्पूर्ण वस्तुओं तथा (वर्णहीन) आकाश को भी रक्त सदृश लाल वर्ण का देखे तो उसे निश्चित ही असाध्य समझना चाहिए ।

1. *Syzygium cumini* (Linn.) Skeels.

9. 14.

लोहितं छदयेद्यस्तु बहुशो लोहितेक्षणः ।

लोहितोद्गारदर्शी च म्रियते रक्तपैत्तिकः ॥ १४ ॥

(सु० सू० ३३. २४)

A case of haemorrhagic disorder proves fatal who vomits blood many times, who has bloodshot eyes and who has blood appearing (even) in the water brash.

(S. S. I. 33. 24)

६. १४.

जो मनुष्य अधिक मात्रा में बार-बार रक्त वमन करे और जिसके नेत्र लाल वर्ण के हो गये हों तथा जिसके उद्गार में भी रक्त दिखाई दे वह निश्चय ही रक्तपित्त से मर जाता है ।

इति श्रीमाधवकरविरचिते माधवनिदाने रक्तपित्तनिदानं समाप्तम् ॥ ६ ॥

Thus ends (the ninth chapter entitled) 'The Diagnosis of the Haemorrhagic Disorders' of Mādhava Nidāna, as compiled by Śrī Mādhavakara.

इस प्रकार श्रीमाधवकर द्वारा सङ्कलित माधव-निदान का रक्तपित्तनिदान (नामक नवाँ अध्याय) समाप्त हुआ ।

M. N. 9

SUGGESTED RESEARCH PROBLEMS

1. A historical and comparative study on the various concepts of aetiology, pathogenesis, clinical features, diagnosis, prognosis, complications and the signs of incurability of the haemorrhagic disorders as outlined in the chapter would be of great value.
2. A clinical study to correlate the various haemorrhagic states as described in this chapter with those seen in the clinical practice today would be interesting.



माधवनिदानम्

दशमोऽध्यायः

राजयक्ष्माक्षतक्षीणनिदानम्

THE DIAGNOSIS OF *RĀJAYAKṢMĀ*, *KṢATA* & *KṢĪṆA*
(TUBERCULOSIS AND OTHER EMACIATING DISEASES)

CHAPTER TEN

MĀDHAVA-NIDĀNA

M. N. 10

SUMMARY

This chapter describes the diagnosis and prognosis of tuberculosis and other emaciating diseases.

I. Tuberculosis (1-13)

Its aetiological factors (1) and pathogenesis (2) include overexertion and a lack of proper nourishment. Dyspnoea, cough and many signs of upper respiratory tract involvement are listed amongst the prodromal features (3,4). Fever, anorexia, wasting, cough, haemoptysis and hoarseness of voice are the main clinical features (5-7); features of early and late tuberculosis are given separately.

Presence of all these clinical features, diarrhoea and oedema over the scrotum and the abdomen indicate poor prognosis (8-12), as also persistent and progressive emaciation inspite of a good diet (? diabetes with tuberculosis). Features of a good prognosis (13) include a good appetite and general condition with a favourable response to treatment.

II. Non-tubercular consumption or emaciation (14-29)

Seven other types (14) of consumption (non-tubercular) with emaciation as the main feature have been discussed : they could be due to excessive sexual indulgence (15), psychic trauma (16/1), senility (16/2-18/1), over-exertion, etc. (18/2-20).

Various violent acts of overexertion as trying to stop a running bull, etc. have been mentioned as the aetiological factors (21-25) and pain in the chest,

fever, haemoptysis and a purulent expectoration as the main clinical features (26-29) of the *uraḥkṣata* type of consumption; features of the suppurative lung diseases are discernible in this condition.

Cases with pain in the chest, haemoptysis and cough (? pulmonary tuberculosis) have been differentiated (30) from those with haematuria, pain in the lumbar region, back and the waist (? renal tuberculosis).

All these cases could be curable, relievable or incurable according to the stage of presentation (31).

दशमोऽध्यायः
CHAPTER TEN

राजयक्ष्माक्षतक्षीणनिदानम्
THE DIAGNOSIS OF RĀJAYAKṢMĀ,
KṢĀTA AND KṢĪṆA (TUBERCULOSIS AND
OTHER EMACIATING DISEASES)

I. Rājayakṣmā (Tuberculosis) (10. 1-13)

10. 1. The Four Aetiological Factors

वेगरोधात् क्षयाच्चैव साहसाद्विषमाशनात् ।
त्रिदोषो जायते यक्ष्मा गदो हेतुचतुष्टयात् ॥ १ ॥

(Habitual) suppression of the natural evacuatory urges, excessive loss of vitality¹, working beyond one's capacity and improper² meals are the four aetiological factors of the disease (*rāja*)*yakṣmā* which originates due to vitiation of (all) the three *doṣas*.

१०.१. राजयक्ष्मा के हेतुचतुष्टय

वेग धारण, क्षय, दुस्साहस एवं विषमाशन ये राजयक्ष्मा के चार हेतु बताये गये हैं । यह त्रिदोषजन्य व्याधि होती है ।

10. 2. Pathogenesis

कफप्रधानैर्दोषैस्तु रुद्धेषु रसवर्त्मसु ।
अतिव्यवायिनो वाऽपि क्षीणे रेतस्यनन्तराः ।
क्षीयन्ते घातवः सर्वे ततः शुष्यति मानवः ॥ २ ॥

(सु० उ० ४१.६/२, १०)

1. Emaciation.

2. Those who do not follow the prescribed rules of dietatics.

Obstruction of the nutrition-carrying channels predominantly by the *kapha doṣa* leads to the depletion of all the tissues of the body^{1,2}; indulgence by a person in excessive sexual intercourse^{3,4} and excessive loss of semen^{3,5} (also lead to depletion of all the tissues of the body); thus the patient develops (the disease) consumption.

(S. S. VI. 41. 9/2, 10)

१०.२. सम्प्राप्ति

कफप्रधान दोषों से रसवाही स्रोतों में अवरोध होने के कारण उत्तरोत्तर धातुओं का^६ अथवा अत्यधिक मैथुन में आसक्त होने से भी शुक्रादि पूर्ववर्ती सभी धातुओं का^७ निरन्तर क्षय होने लगता है जिसके फलस्वरूप व्यक्ति को शोष हो जाता है ।

10. 3,4. Prodromal Features

श्वासाङ्गमर्दकफसंस्रवतालुशोष-

वम्यग्निसादमदपीनसकासनिद्राः ।

शोषे भविष्यति भवन्ति स चापि जन्तुः

शुक्लेक्षणो भवति मांसपरो रिरंसुः ॥ ३ ॥

1. *Anuloma kṣaya.*
2. Faulty nutritional intake, digestion and assimilation lead to the wasting of tissues.
3. *Pratiloma kṣaya.*
4. Excessive unnecessary use of energy may also lead to the wasting of tissues.
5. Frustration due to repeated, excessive or unfulfilled sexual desire may have a psychic repercussion leading to the wasting of tissues.
6. अनुलोमक्षय ।
7. प्रतिलोमक्षय ।

स्वप्नेषु काकशुकशल्लकिनीलकण्ठा गृध्रास्तथैव कपयः कृकलासकाश्च ।
तं बाहयन्ति स नदीर्विजलाश्च पश्येच्छुष्कांस्तरूपवनधूमदवादितांश्च ॥४॥
(सु० उ० ४१. २६, ३०)

Dyspnoea, bodyache, spitting of mucus, dryness of the palate, vomiting, dyspepsia, dizziness, corrhyza, cough and sleepiness are seen in the patient likely to develop consumption. His eyes (conjunctiva and sclera) become white and he develops a craving for meat and for sex.

In his dreams such a person is carried away by crows, parrots, porcupines, peacocks, vultures, monkeys and lizards; he also visualises (in his dreams) rivers devoid of water and trees dried up and ravaged by winds, smoke and forest fire.

(S. S. VI. 41. 29, 30)

१०. ३, ४. पूर्वरूप

श्वास, अङ्गमर्द, कफ का निकलना, तालुशोष, वमन, अग्नि का दुर्बल होना, मद, प्रतिश्याय, कास एवं निद्रालु रहना भविष्य में राजयक्ष्मा होनेवाले व्यक्ति में पाये जाते हैं (अर्थात् ये लक्षण राजयक्ष्मा के पूर्वरूप हैं)। उस व्यक्ति की आँखें शुक्लाभ हो जाती हैं और उसमें मांस भक्षण एवं स्त्री-प्रसंग की इच्छा प्रबल हो जाती है।

उस व्यक्ति को कौवा, तोते, सेह, मोर, गृध्र, बन्दर एवं गिरगिट पर सवारी करने का स्वप्न दिखाई देता है तथा वह स्वप्न में ही बिना जल की नदियों एवं वायु, धूम और दावाग्नि से प्रभावित शुष्क वृक्षों को देखता है।

10. 5. Three General Clinical Features of Early Tuberculosis

असंपार्श्वभितापश्च सन्तापः करपादयोः ।

ज्वरः सर्वाङ्गगश्चेति लक्षणं राजयक्ष्मणः ॥ ५ ॥

(च० चि० १८. ५२)

A sensation of heat in the scapular regions and the lateral sides (of the chest), a burning sensation in the hands and the feet and a generalised rise of temperature all over the body are the general clinical features of *rājayakṣmā*.

(C. S. VI. 18. 52)

१०. ५. राजयक्ष्मा के तीन सामान्य लक्षण (प्रारम्भिक अवस्था)

अंस प्रदेश (कन्धा) एवं पार्श्व में उष्णता, हाथ एवं पैर में सन्ताप तथा सम्पूर्ण शरीर में ज्वर होना राजयक्ष्मा के सामान्य लक्षण हैं ।

10. 6/1, 6/2. Six Cardinal Features of Tuberculosis

भक्तद्वेषो ज्वरः श्वासः कासः शोणितदर्शनम् ।

स्वरभेदश्च जायेत षड्रूपं राजयक्ष्मणि ॥

(सु० उ० ४१. ११)

Aversion to food, fever, dyspnoea, cough, haemoptysis and hoarseness of voice are the six (cardinal) symptoms of consumption.

(S. S. VI. 41. 11)

१०. ६/१, ६/२. राजयक्ष्मा के षड्रूप (साधारण अवस्था)

भोजन में रुचि न होना, ज्वर, श्वास, कास, शोणित छीवन का निकलना एवं स्वरभेद ये राजयक्ष्मा के छह प्रमुख लक्षण हैं ।

10. 6/3, 6/4 & 7. Eleven Doṣika Clinical Features of Advanced Tuberculosis

स्वरभेदोऽनिलाच्छूलं संकोचश्चांसपार्श्वयोः ।

ज्वरो दाहोऽतिसारश्च पित्ताद्रक्तस्य चागमः ॥ ६ ॥

शिरसः परिपूर्णत्वमभक्तच्छन्द एव च ।

कासः कण्ठस्य चोद्ध्वंसो विज्ञेयः कफकोपतः ॥ ७ ॥

(सु० उ० ४१. १२, १३)

Hoarseness of voice, pain and wasting of shoulders and sides of the chest due to *vāyu*; fever, burning sensation, diarrhoea and haemoptysis due to *pitta*; and a feeling of fullness in the head, aversion to food, cough and loss of voice due to vitiation of *kapha* are the (eleven) symptoms found in consumption.

(S. S. VI. 41. 12, 13)

१०. ६/३, ६/४, ७. राजयक्ष्मा के दोषभेद से एकादश लक्षण (बढ़ा हुआ रोग)

वात के प्रकोप से स्वरभेद, अंस प्रदेश और पार्श्व में शूल एवं संकोच; पित्त के प्रकोप से ज्वर, दाह, अतिसार तथा रक्त घ्रीवन और कफ के प्रकोप से शिर में भारीपन, भोजन से द्वेष, कास तथा स्वरनाश उत्पन्न होते हैं ।

10. 8-10. Bad Prognostic Features

एकादशभिरेभिर्वा षड्भिर्वाऽपि समन्वितम् ।

कासातीसारपार्श्वार्तिस्वरभेदारुचिज्वरैः ॥ ८ ॥

त्रिभिर्वा पीडितं लिङ्गैः कासश्वासासृगामयैः ।

जह्याच्छोषादितं जन्तुमिच्छन् सुविमलं यशः ॥ ९ ॥

(सु० उ० ४१. १४, १५)

सर्वैरर्धैस्त्रिभिर्वाऽपि लिङ्गैर्मसिबलक्षये ।

युक्तो वर्ज्यश्चिकित्स्यस्तु सर्वरूपोऽप्यतोऽन्यथा ॥ १० ॥

(च० चि० ८. ४७)

The physician desirous of unsullied fame should give up the patient suffering from consumption¹ having either the (above) eleven² or the (following) six features, viz., cough, diarrhoea, pain in the sides, hoarseness of voice, anorexia and fever, as also

1. Who has developed marked cachexia or emaciation.

2. M. N. 10. 6/3, 6/4 and 7.

those manifesting the triad of cough, dyspnoea and haemoptysis.

(S. S. VI. 41. 14, 15)

Patients suffering from all the (eleven) signs and symptoms (mentioned above), half of them or three only, if associated with emaciation and loss of vitality should not be treated (as they would be incurable); however, (if they are neither emaciated nor have lost their vitality) they must be treated even if all the (eleven) clinical features are present.

(C. S. VI. 8. 47)

१०. ८-१०. असाध्य लक्षण

एकादश लक्षणों या छः लक्षणों वाला यथा कास, अतिसार, पार्श्वशूल, स्वरमेद, अरुचि एवं ज्वर, अथवा कास, श्वास एवं रक्त का आना इन तीन लक्षणों से युक्त रोगी का जब मांस एवं बल क्षीण हो गया हो तो यश चाहने वाले चिकित्सक को इनकी चिकित्सा नहीं करनी चाहिए। एकादश सभी लक्षणों के रहने पर भी यदि बल एवं मांस क्षीण न हो तो चिकित्सा करनी चाहिए।

10. 11. Selection of Cases for Treatment

महाशनं क्षीयमाणमतीसारनिपीडितम् ।

शूनमुष्कोदरं चैव यक्ष्मणं परिवर्जयेत् ॥ ११ ॥

(सु० उ० ४१. ३१)

Those consumptives should be discarded (from treatment) who go on getting emaciated in spite of taking large amounts of food¹, who are suffering from diarrhoea and who have developed oedema on the scrotum and the abdomen.

(S. S. VI. 41. 31)

1. ? Diabetes with tuberculosis.

१०.११. चिकित्सा हेतु रोगी का चयन

अधिक भोजन करने पर भी यदि रोगी क्षीण होता जा रहा हो अथवा अतिसार से पीड़ित हो या उसके पेट एवं अंडकोश में सूजन हो गयी हो तो ऐसे राजयक्ष्मा के रोगियों की भी चिकित्सा नहीं करनी चाहिए ।

10. 12. The Untreatable Complications

शुक्लाक्षमन्नद्वेष्टारमूर्ध्वश्वासनिपीडितम् ।

कृच्छ्रेण बहु मेहन्तं यक्ष्मा हन्तीह मानवम् ॥ १२ ॥

(सु० सू० ३३.२०)

Tuberculosis kills a man who has whitened eyes, a dislike for food, laboured breathing and who passes urine frequently and with difficulty.

(S.S. I. 33. 20)

१०.१२. असाध्य उपद्रव

जिसके नेत्र शुक्ल वर्ण के हो गये हों, जो अन्न से द्वेष रखता हो तथा ऊर्ध्व श्वास से पीड़ित हो और बहुत कष्ट से मूत्र त्याग करता हो तो ऐसे यक्ष्मा के रोगी की निश्चित ही मृत्यु हो जाती है ।

10. 13. Good Prognostic Features

ज्वरानुबन्धरहितं बलवन्तं क्रियासहम् ।

उपक्रमेदात्मवन्तं दीप्ताग्निमकृशं नरम् ॥ १३ ॥

One should treat a patient (of consumption) if the fever is not persistent, if his general condition is good and he can withstand the therapeutic measures, as well as if his appetite is good and he is not emaciated.

१०.१३. यक्ष्मा के साध्य लक्षण

जो रोगी ज्वरानुबन्ध रहित हो, बलवान हो, क्रियाओं (अर्थात् संशोधन

कर्म इत्यादि) को सहन करने में समर्थ हो, संयमी हो तथा जिसकी अग्नि प्रबल हो और जो दुर्बल न हो तो ऐसे रोगी की चिकित्सा करनी चाहिए ।

II. Śoṣa (Non-tubercular consumption or emaciation) (10. 14-29)

10. 14. Types of śoṣa

व्यवायशोकवार्धक्यव्यायामाध्वप्रशोषितान् ।

व्रणोरःक्षतसंज्ञौ च शोषिणौ लक्षणैः शृणु ॥ १४ ॥

Now hereafter please listen (to me discourse on) the clinical features of the (seven types of) śoṣa classified according to their aetiological factors, viz. (excessive) sexual indulgence, grief, old age, hard work and travelling long distances on foot, as well as (chronic) ulcerative and chest lesions.

१०. १४-२९. विभिन्न हेतु जन्य राजयक्ष्मा के लक्षण

१०. १४. शोष के प्रकार

अब व्यवाय, शोक, जरावस्था, अति व्यायाम एवं मार्गगमन तथा व्रण एवं उरःक्षत जन्य (सात प्रकार के) शोष के लक्षणों को सुनो ।

10. 15. Emaciation due to Excessive Sexual Indulgence

व्यवायशोषी शुक्रस्य क्षयलिङ्गैरुपद्रुतः ।

पाण्डुदेहो यथापूर्वं क्षीयन्ते चास्य घातवः ॥ १५ ॥

(सु० उ० ४१. १७)

The patient suffering from emaciation arising due to excessive sexual indulgence has the symptomatology of loss of semen. His body looks anaemic and the preceeding *dhātus* get depleted in a reverse manner.

(S. S. VI. 41. 17)

१०. १५. व्यवायजन्य शोष के लक्षण

व्यवाय शोषी शुक्र के क्षय जन्य लक्षणों के साथ पाण्डु शरीरवाला होता है तथा इसमें पूर्वोत्तर धातुओं का क्रमशः क्षय हो जाता है ।

10. 16/1. Emaciation due to the Psychic Trauma

प्रध्यानशीलः स्रस्ताङ्गः शोकशोष्यपि तादृशः ।

(सु० उ० ४१. १८/१)

The patient suffering from emaciation as a result of grief is always in a thoughtful mood¹ and his body parts (limbs, etc.) remain lax, in addition to the features described above (due to sexual over-indulgence).

(S. S. VI. 41. 18/1)

१०. १६/१. शोकजन्य शोष के लक्षण

अत्यधिक चिन्तन करना तथा अंगों की शिथिलता शोकजन्य शोष के लक्षण होते हैं । इसके अतिरिक्त उपरोक्त (शुक्रशोषी के) अन्य सभी लक्षण भी इनमें पाये जाते हैं ।

10. 16/2-18/1. Senile Emaciation

जराशोषी कृशो मन्दवीर्यबुद्धिबलेन्द्रियः ॥ १६ ॥

कम्पनोऽहचिमान् भिन्नकांस्यपात्रहतस्वरः ।

छीवति श्लेष्मणा हीनं गौरवारतिपीडितः ॥ १७ ॥

संप्रसृतास्यनासाक्षः शुष्करूक्षमलच्छविः ।

(सु० उ० ४१. १६, २०)

The patient suffering from emaciation due to old age presents with the body becoming thin, sexual

1. In anxiety.

weakness, mental dullness, reduced strength, weakness of the sensory and motor organs, tremors and anorexia. His voice resembles the sound produced by a cracked bell-metal pot. He spits (expectorates) without the production of mucus. He feels heaviness in the body and suffers from bodyache. Watery discharge keeps on flowing out from his mouth, nose and the eyes. He passes dry faeces and has a dull appearance.

(S. S. VI. 41. 19, 20)

१०. १६/२-१८/१. वृद्धावस्थाजग्य शोष के लक्षण

जराशोषी कृश गात्र, मन्द वीर्य, मन्द बुद्धि, क्षीण बल, दुर्बलेन्द्रिय, कम्पन एवं अरुचि युक्त तथा फूटे हुए कांस्य-पात्र के समान हत स्वर वाला होता है। वह बिना श्लेष्मा के ही थूकता है; गौरव एवं अरति से पीड़ित रहता है एवं उसके मुख, नासिका तथा आँखों से निरन्तर स्राव निकलता रहता है। उसका मल शुष्क एवं (मुख की) छवि रुक्ष हो जाती है।

10. 18/2, 19/1. Emaciation due to the Exertion of Journey

अध्वशोषी च स्रस्ताङ्गः संभृष्टपदश्छविः ॥ १८ ॥

प्रसुप्तगात्रावयवः शुष्कक्लोमगलाननः ।

(सु० उ० ४१. २१)

The patient suffering from emaciation resulting from the exertion of a long journey (by foot) presents with flaccidity of the limbs and his appearance seems to be parched and coarse. His body parts get benumbed and his *kloma*¹, throat and the mouth remain dry.

(S. S. VI. 41. 21)

1. Probably implies pharynx.

१०.१८/२, १९/१. अध्व शोष के लक्षण

(अत्यधिक पदयात्रा जन्य) अध्वशोषी के अंग ढीले हो जाते हैं, उसकी छवि संभृष्ट (भुलसी हुयी) दृष्टिगोचर होती है तथा गात्रावयव में स्पर्श ज्ञान की कमी तथा क्लोम, गला एवं मुख में शुष्कता रहती है ।

10. 19/2, 19/3. Emaciation due to Excessive Exercise

व्यायामशोषी भूयिष्ठमेभिरेव समन्वितः ।

लिङ्गैरुरःक्षतकृतैः संयुक्तश्च क्षतं विना ॥ १९ ॥

(सु० उ० ४१. २२)

The patient suffering from emaciation occurring due to (excessive) physical exercise has all the above symptoms caused by excessive journey coupled with those of the ulcerative chest (pulmonary) lesion except a wound.

(S. S. VI. 41. 22)

१०.१९/२, १९/३. व्यायामजन्य शोष के लक्षण

व्यायामजन्य शोष से पीड़ित मनुष्य में अध्वशोषी के समान लक्षण पाये जाते हैं और बिना क्षत के ही उरःक्षत के समान लक्षण भी होते हैं ।

10. 20. Emaciation due to Ulcerative lesions in the body

रक्तक्षयाद्वेदनाभिस्तथैवाहारयन्त्रणात् ।

व्रणितस्य भवेच्छोषः स चासाध्यतमो मतः ॥ २० ॥

(सु० उ० ४१. २३)

When the patient suffering from ulcerative lesions (in the body) gets emaciated due to (persistent) blood loss, pain of different types and excessively restricted diet, he should be considered incurable.

(S. S. VI. 41. 23)

१०. २०. व्रण शोष के लक्षण

रक्तक्षय, वेदना एवं आहार-नियंत्रण के कारण व्रण रोगी में जो शोष उत्पन्न होता है वह असाध्य होता है ।

10. 21-31. URAHĪKṢATA¹

10. 21-25. Aetiology

धनुषाऽऽस्यस्यतोऽत्यर्थं भारमुद्धृतो गुरुम् ।
 युध्यमानस्य बलिभिः पततो विषमोच्चतः ॥ २१ ॥
 वृषं हयं वा धावन्तं दम्प्यं वाऽज्यं निगृह्यतः ।
 शिलाकाष्ठाश्मनिघातान् क्षिपतो निघ्नतः परान् ॥ २२ ॥
 अधीयानस्य वाऽत्युच्चैर्दूरं वा व्रजतो द्रुतम् ।
 महानदीर्वा तरतो हयैर्वा सह धावतः ॥ २३ ॥
 सहस्रोत्पततो दूरं तूर्णं वाऽपि प्रनृत्यतः ।
 तथाऽज्यैः कर्मभिः क्रूरैर्भृशमभ्याहतस्य वा ॥ २४ ॥
 विक्षते वक्षसि व्याधिर्बलवान् समुदीर्यते ।
 स्त्रीषु चातिप्रसक्तस्य रूक्षाल्पप्रमिताशिनः ॥ २५ ॥

(च० चि० ११.४-८)

The chest lesion of the serious *urahkṣata* disease is produced by excessive drawing of the bow, heavy weight lifting, wrestling with stronger opponents, falling from a height on an uneven surface, trying to stop a running bull, horse or similar animals, attempting to kill others by throwing rocks, stones or wood pieces, reading extremely loudly, running fast long distances, swimming across big rivers, running with the horses, taking sudden long jumps, dancing with quick movements or else by being

1. ? Traumatic/ulcerative chest (pulmonary) lesions.

severely injured while performing similar violent actions, as also (especially) in those who excessively cohabit with women and take dry (non-fatty) and deficient diet.

(C. S. VI. 11. 4-8)

१०. २१-३१. उरःक्षत

१०. २१-२५. निदान

अपनी शक्ति से अधिक बल लगाकर बार-बार धनुष की डोर को खींचने से, भारी बोझ को उठाने से, अधिक बलवान मनुष्य के साथ युद्ध करने से, विषम एवं उच्च स्थान से गिरने से, दौड़ते हुए बैल, घोड़े आदि को रोकने से अथवा दमन योग्य का दमन करने से तथा शिला, काष्ठ या पत्थर के टुकड़ों को फेंकने से, अत्यन्त उच्च स्थान से कूदने से या दूर तक तेज चलनेवाली सवारी के साथ दौड़ने से, चौड़ी नदी को तैर कर पार करने से, जल्दी-जल्दी देर तक नाचने से तथा अन्य क्रूर कर्म करने से तथा दारुण आघात लगने से, वक्षःस्थल में क्षत हो जानेपर यह बलवान (उरःक्षत नाम की) व्याधि उत्पन्न हो जाती है। इसके अतिरिक्त जो व्यक्ति अत्यन्त रुक्ष अन्न तथा प्रमित आहार का सेवन करता हुआ मैथुन में अधिक आसक्त रहता है वह भी उरःक्षत से पीड़ित होता है।

10. 26-29/1. Clinical Features

उरो विभज्यतेऽत्यर्थं भिद्यतेऽथ विरुज्यते ।

प्रपीड्यते ततः पार्श्वे शुष्यत्यङ्गं प्रवेपते ॥ २६ ॥

क्रमाद्वीर्यं बलं वर्णो रुचिरग्निश्च हीयते ।

ज्वरो व्यथा मनोदैर्न्यं विड्भेदोऽग्निवधावपि ॥ २७ ॥

दुष्टः श्यावः सुदुर्गन्धः पीतो विग्रथितो बहुः ।

कासमानस्य चाभीक्ष्णं कफः सासृक् प्रवर्तते ॥ २८ ॥

स क्षती क्षीयतेऽत्यर्थं तथा शुक्रोजसोः क्षयात् ।

(च० चि० ११.६-१२/१)

There is an extreme splitting or stabbing type of pain in the chest, catching pain in the sides (of the

chest), cachexia, tremors and gradual loss of vitality, strength, complexion, appetite and digestive capacity; further, there is fever, distress, mental depression, loose stools and (almost) a total failure of the digestive mechanism.

He repeatedly brings out large quantities of putrified, blackish, foul smelling, yellow and (partly) clotted expectoration along with blood while coughing.¹

The patient with this chest lesion also suffers from severe consumption due to the depletion of the semen and the loss of vitality.

(C. S. VI. 11. 9-12/1)

१०. २६-२९/१. लक्षण

उर के फट जाने से छाती में अत्यन्त भेदनवत् पीड़ा होती है और पार्श्व में भी पीड़ा रहती है। शरीर के अंग सूख जाते हैं। क्रमशः बल, वर्ण, रुचि एवं अग्नि क्षीण होने लगती है। वह रोगी ज्वर एवं व्यथा युक्त, दीन मन वाला, अग्निमांद्य एवं अतिसार से पीड़ित रहता है। वह खाँसता है तो दूषित, श्याव वर्ण का, दुर्गन्धयुक्त, पीला, गाँठदार, अधिक मात्रा में रक्तमिश्रित कफ निकलता है। इस प्रकार उरःक्षत का रोगी शुक्र और ओज क्षय हो जाने से अत्यन्त क्षीण हो जाता है।

10. 29/2. Prodromal features

अव्यक्तं लक्षणं तस्य पूर्वरूपमिति स्मृतम् ॥ २९ ॥

(च० चि० ११. १२/२)

The prodromal features of this disease are the same (clinical features as above) in a less manifest form.

(C. S. VI. 11. 12/2)

1. ? Suppurative lung diseases.

१०.२६/२. पूर्वं रूप

उरःक्षत के लक्षणों का जो ऊपर वर्णन किया गया है उनका अव्यक्त अवस्था में होना ही उसका पूर्व रूप है ।

10. 30. Differential Diagnosis between *kṣata* and *kṣīṇa*

उरोरुक्शोणितच्छदिः कासो वैशेषिकः क्षते ।

क्षीणे सरक्तमूत्रत्वं पार्श्वपृष्ठकटीग्रहः ॥ ३० ॥

(च० चि० ११. १३)

Pain in the chest, haemoptysis and cough are specially present in cases of the (*urahrkṣata*) chest lesions¹; while there is haematuria along with pain in the lumbar region, back and the waist in those of *kṣīṇa*².

(C. S. VI. 11. 13)

१०. ३०. क्षत एवं क्षीण के विभेदक लक्षण

उर में पीड़ा, रक्त वमन एवं विशेष प्रकार की खाँसी का होना उरःक्षत^३ के लक्षण हैं; रक्त सहित मूत्र त्याग तथा पार्श्व, पृष्ठ एवं कटि प्रदेश में जकड़ाहट होना क्षीण^४ के विशिष्ट लक्षण होते हैं ।

10. 31. Prognosis

अल्पलिङ्गस्य दीप्ताग्नेः साध्यो बलवत्तो नवः ।

परिसंवत्सरो याप्यः सर्वलिङ्गं तु वजयेत् ॥ ३१ ॥

(च० चि० ११. १४)

The condition is curable when the clinical manifestations are mild, appetite is good, general

1. ? Pulmonary tuberculosis.

2. ? Renal tuberculosis.

3. फुफ्फुस शोष ।

4. वृक्क शोष ।

condition of the patient is satisfactory and the disease is of recent origin. If it is of one year's duration, it is relievable only; and the patient should be discarded (from treatment as incurable) if all the clinical features (described above) are present.

(C. S. VI. 11. 14)

१०. ३१. साध्यासाध्य लक्षण

यदि रोगी अल्प लक्षण युक्त एवं बलवान् हो और अग्नि प्रदीप्त हो तथा रोग नूतन हो तो साध्य होता है । यही एक वर्ष पुराना हो तो याप्य होता है और जब सर्व लक्षणों से युक्त हो तो असाध्य होता है ।

इति श्रीमाधवकरविरचिते माधवनिदाने राजयक्ष्म-
क्षतक्षीणनिदानं समाप्तम् ॥१०॥

Thus ends (the tenth chapter entitled) 'The Diagnosis of Rājayakṣma, Kṣata and Kṣīṇa (Tuberculosis And Other Emaciating Diseases)' of Mādhava Nidāna, as compiled by Śrī Mādhavakara.

इस प्रकार श्रीमाधवकर द्वारा सङ्कलित माधव-निदान का राजयक्ष्म, क्षत एवं क्षीण (नामक दसवाँ अध्याय) समाप्त हुआ ।

M. N. 10

SUGGESTED RESEARCH PROBLEMS

1. A historical and comparative study on the conceptual aspects of tuberculosis and other emaciating diseases as given in this chapter is indicated.
2. A clinical study would be worthwhile to correlate the conditions described here with those seen in the modern times.



CONTENTS
The Journal of the Royal Anthropological Institute, Vol. 40, Part 1, 1910, contains the following papers:
1. The Journal of the Royal Anthropological Institute, Vol. 40, Part 1, 1910, contains the following papers:
2. The Journal of the Royal Anthropological Institute, Vol. 40, Part 1, 1910, contains the following papers:
3. The Journal of the Royal Anthropological Institute, Vol. 40, Part 1, 1910, contains the following papers:

4. The Journal of the Royal Anthropological Institute, Vol. 40, Part 1, 1910, contains the following papers:
5. The Journal of the Royal Anthropological Institute, Vol. 40, Part 1, 1910, contains the following papers:
6. The Journal of the Royal Anthropological Institute, Vol. 40, Part 1, 1910, contains the following papers:
7. The Journal of the Royal Anthropological Institute, Vol. 40, Part 1, 1910, contains the following papers:

8. The Journal of the Royal Anthropological Institute, Vol. 40, Part 1, 1910, contains the following papers:
9. The Journal of the Royal Anthropological Institute, Vol. 40, Part 1, 1910, contains the following papers:

माधवनिदानम्

एकादशोऽध्यायः

कासनिदानम्

THE DIAGNOSIS OF COUGH

CHAPTER ELEVEN

MĀDHAVA - NIDĀNA

M. N. 11

SUMMARY

This chapter deals with the diagnosis of cough.

The aetiopathogenesis and mechanism of cough have been given (1,2). Cough has been classified (3) into five types. Their premonitory symptoms (4) have been mentioned. Clinical features of the *vātika* (5), *phaittika* (6) and *kaphaja* (7) types of cough have been described; the aetiological factors and clinical features of the remaining two varieties, viz. *kṣataja* (8-11) and the *kṣayaaja* (the consumptive) (12, 13) cough have then been discussed. Prognosis (14,15) of cough has been elucidated.



The first of these is the fact that the
the second is the fact that the
the third is the fact that the
the fourth is the fact that the
the fifth is the fact that the
the sixth is the fact that the
the seventh is the fact that the
the eighth is the fact that the
the ninth is the fact that the
the tenth is the fact that the

एकादशोऽध्यायः

CHAPTER ELEVEN

कासनिदानम्

THE DIAGNOSIS OF COUGH

11. 1,2. Aetiopathogenesis and mechanism

धूमोपघाताद्रजतस्तथैव व्यायामरूक्षान्न निषेवणाच्च ।
विमार्गगत्वाच्च हि भोजनस्य वेगावरोधात्क्षवथोस्तथैव ॥ १ ॥
प्राणो ह्युदानानुगतः प्रदुष्टः स भिन्नकांस्यस्वनतुल्यघोषः ।
निरेति वक्त्रात् सहसा सदोषो मनीषिभिः कास इति प्रदिष्टः ॥ २ ॥
(सु० उ० ५२.४,५)

Exposure to smoke as also to dust particles, (excessive) bodily exercise, intake of dry (non-fatty) food, entry of food into the wrong passage¹, and the suppression of the urge to sneeze, etc. vitiate the *prāṇa vāyu* along with the *udāna vāyu*; that (*prāṇa vāyu*), producing a loud noise as from a cracked bell-metal (vessel), comes out of the mouth suddenly with expectoration. The condition is called cough by the learned.

(S. S. VI. 52. 4, 5)

११. १, २. हेतु एवं सम्प्रपत्ति

धूम एवं धूल के सम्पर्क से, व्यायाम से, रूक्ष अन्न के सेवन से, विमार्ग^२ में भोजन के चले जाने से तथा छींक आदि के वेग को रोकने से प्राण वायु,

1. Respiratory passage.

2. प्राणवह स्रोतस (श्वास नली) ।

उदान वायु के साथ प्रकुपित होकर फूटे हुए कांसे के बर्तन से उत्पन्न ध्वनि के समान शब्द को उत्पन्न करता हुआ दोषों के साथ सहसा मुख से बाहर निकलता है। बुद्धिमान चिकित्सक इस अवस्था को 'कास' कहते हैं।

11. 3. Classification

पञ्च कासाः स्मृता वातपित्तश्लेष्मक्षतक्षयैः।

क्षयायोपेक्षिताः सर्वे बलिनश्चोत्तरोत्तरम् ॥ ३ ॥

(अ० ह० नि० ३. १७/२, १८/१)

Cough is known to be of five varieties, viz. due to (vitiated) *vāta*, *pitta* and *kapha*, trauma and consumption. If ignored, all of them would (eventually) lead to consumption; the succeeding ones are more serious than the previous ones.

(A. H. III. 3. 17/2, 18/1)

११. ३. भेद

कास पाँच प्रकार का होता है—वातिक, पित्तिक, श्लैष्मिक, क्षतज एवं क्षयज। सभी कास उपेक्षा करने से क्षय में परिणत हो जाते हैं; यह सब उत्तरोत्तर एक दूसरे से दारुण होते हैं।

11. 4. Premonitory symptoms

पूर्वरूपं भवेत्तेषां शूकपूर्णगलास्थता।

कण्ठे कण्डूश्च भोज्यानामवरोधश्च जायते ॥ ४ ॥

(च० चि० १८. ५)

During their prodromal stage, one feels as if his oropharyngeal region is full of bristles; there is an itching sensation in the throat as well as difficulty in swallowing food.

(C. S. VI. 18. 5)

११.४. पूर्वरूप

कास की पूर्वरूपावस्था में रोगी गले में शूक भर जाने के समान अनुभव करता है; उसे कण्ठ में खुजली तथा भोज्य पदार्थ को निगलने में कठिनाई का अनुभव होता है ।

11.5. Vātika cough¹

हृच्छङ्खमूर्धोदरपार्श्वशूली क्षामाननः क्षीणबलस्वरौजाः ।

प्रसक्तवेगस्तु समीरणेन भिन्नस्वरः कासति शुष्कमेव ॥ ५ ॥

(सु० उ० ५२.८)

There is pain in the precordial and temporal regions, head, abdomen and the flanks. The face shows anxious appearance and there is a loss of strength, voice and vitality. Bouts of cough are continuous, the voice is hoarse and the cough is dry in the *vātika* type.

(S. S. VI.52. 8)

११.५. वातिक कास

इसमें हृदय, शंख प्रदेश, सिर, उदर तथा पार्श्व में पीड़ा होती है । मुख पर दुःख भाव परिलक्षित होता है तथा रोगी का बल, स्वर एवं ओज भी क्षीण हो जाता है । शुष्क कास के निरन्तर वेग आते रहते हैं तथा रोगी का स्वर फटा फटा सा हो जाता है ।

11.6. Paittika cough²

उरोविदाहज्वरवक्त्रशोषैरभ्यर्दितस्तित्तुमुखस्तृषार्तः ।

पित्तेन पीतानि वमेत्कटूनि कासेत्स पाण्डुः परिदह्यमानः ॥ ६ ॥

(सु० उ० ५२.९)

1. ? Upper respiratory tract infection.

2. ? Acute bronchitis.

The patient suffering from the *paittika* cough has a burning sensation in the chest, fever, dryness of the mouth and a bitter taste. He feels thirsty and brings out yellow and acrid (bilious) vomitus. There is a pallor and burning sensation all over the body.
(S. S. VI. 52. 9)

११. ६. पैत्तिक कास

पैत्तिक कास से पीड़ित रोगी के उर (छाती) में दाह, ज्वर एवं वक्त्र शोष होता है। मुख का स्वाद तिक्त हो जाता है तथा तृष्णा की अनुभूति अधिक होती है। पित्त के साथ पीत वर्ण का वमन एवं सम्पूर्ण शरीर में दाह एवं पाण्डु लक्षण पाये जाते हैं।

11. 7. Kaphaja cough¹

प्रलिप्यमानेन मुखेन सीदन् शिरोरुजार्तः कफपूर्णदेहः ।

अभक्तरुगौरवकण्डुयुक्तः कासेद् भृशं सान्द्रकफः कफेन ॥ ७ ॥

(सु० उ० ५२. १०)

The patient having the *kaphaja* type of cough suffers from stickiness in the oral cavity, headache, excess of *kapha* in the body, loss of appetite, a feeling of heaviness as well as an itching sensation and gets severe bouts of cough producing a thick expectoration.

(S. S. VI. 52. 10)

११. ७. श्लैष्मिक कास

श्लैष्मिक कास से पीड़ित रोगी का मुख कफ से लित होता है, सिर में वेदना तथा शरीर में कफ अधिक हो जाता है। क्षुधानाश, शरीर में भारीपन तथा खुजली होती है। रोगी को अधिक खांसी आती है तथा गाढ़ा कफ निकलता है।

1. ? Chronic bronchitis.

11. 8-11. *Kṣataja* cough¹

अतिव्यवायभाराध्वयुद्धाश्वगजविग्रहैः ।

रूक्षस्योरःक्षतं वायुर्गृहीत्वा कासमाचरेत् ॥ ८ ॥

स पूर्वं कासते शुष्कं ततः धीवेत्सशोणितम् ।

कण्ठेन रुजताऽत्यर्थं विरुग्णेनेव चोरसा ॥ ९ ॥

सूचीभिरिव तीक्ष्णाभिस्तुद्यमानेन शूलिना ।

द्रुःखस्पर्शेन शूलेन भेदपीडाभितापिना ॥ १० ॥

पर्वभेदज्वरश्वासतृष्णावैस्वर्यपीडितः ।

पारावात इवाकूजन् कासवेगात् क्षतोद्भवात् ॥ ११ ॥

(च० चि० १८. २०-२३)

When a person, due to sexual excesses, carrying heavy loads, walking long distances and fighting with horses, elephants and stronger opponents becomes dehydrated, he develops pulmonary lesions; *vāyu* subsequently becomes predominant and produces cough. During the initial stage, he has an unproductive cough, followed by haemoptysis associated with a severe pain in the throat and the chest.

He suffers from pricking pain as if being pierced by sharp needles, hyperaesthesia due to pain, a feeling of dismemberment, a burning sensation, pain in the joints, fever, dyspnoea, thirst and hoarseness of voice and produces a sound like cooing of pigeons during attacks of cough of *kṣataja* origin.

(C. S. VI. 18. 20-23)

११. ८-११. क्षतज कास

अधिक मैथुन करने से, अधिक भार की वस्तुओं को उठाने से, अधिक दूर तक चलने से, तथा अश्व, गज या शक्तिशाली पुरुष के साथ युद्ध करने से रूक्ष

1. ? Pleurisy.

मनुष्य की छाती में क्षत हो जाता है जिसके फलस्वरूप वायु वेगवान् होकर कास को उत्पन्न करती है। पूर्व अवस्था में शुष्क कास होता है परन्तु बाद में रक्तश्लेष्मिक के साथ कण्ठ एवं छाती में अत्यन्त पीड़ा होती है।

रोगी छाती में सूई चुभने के समान पीड़ा से पीड़ित रहता है, शूल के कारण स्पर्शासह्यता तथा अंग भेद की पीड़ा होती है। संधियों में पीड़ा, ज्वर, श्वास, तृष्णा एवं स्वर भेद तथा क्षतज कास की वेगावस्था में कबूतर के सदृश कूजन-युक्त कराहने की सी ध्वनि उत्पन्न होती है।

11. 12. Aetio-pathogenesis of the Consumptive Cough

विषमासात्म्यभोज्यातिव्यवायाद् वेगनिग्रहात् ।

वृणिनां शोचतां नृणां व्यापन्नेऽनौ त्रयोमलाः ।

कुपिताः क्षयजं कासं कुर्युर्देहक्षयप्रदम् ॥ १२ ॥

(च० चि० १८. २४, २५/१)

Irregular dietary habits, unsalutary food, excessive coitus and suppression of the natural urges vitiate the digestive power, aggravate the three *doṣas* in persons of malicious nature as well as those in grief and produce the *kṣayaaja* variety of cough which leads to emaciation of the body.

(C. S. VI. 18. 24, 25/1)

११. १२. क्षयज कास का निदान एवं सम्प्राप्ति

विषम एवं असात्म्य आहार करने से, अति व्यवाय से तथा मल मूत्रादि के वेगों के धारण से वृणा एवं चिन्ता करने वाले मनुष्य की अग्नियाँ एवं तीनों मल (अर्थात् वात, पित्त एवं श्लेष्मा) कुपित होकर शरीर का क्षय करने वाले क्षयज कास को उत्पन्न करते हैं।

11. 13. Clinical Features of the Consumptive Cough

स गात्रशूलज्वरदाहमोहान् प्राणक्षयं चोपलभेत कासी ।

शुष्यन्विनिष्ठीवति दुर्बलस्तु प्रक्षीणमांसो रुधिरं सपूयम् ।

तं सर्वलिङ्गं भृशदुश्चिकित्स्यं चिकित्सितज्ञाः क्षयजं वदन्ति ॥ १३ ॥

(सु० उ० ५२. १२, १३/१)

The clinicians describe the *kṣayaaja* cough to be that in which the patient has bodyache, fever, burning sensation, attacks of fainting and loss of vitality; gradually he gets emaciated, becomes weaker and weaker along with wasting of muscles, expectorates blood with pus¹, has features of vitiation of all the three humours and is certainly very difficult to be managed by any treatment.

(S. S. VI. 52. 12, 13/1)

११.१३. क्षयज कास के लक्षण

रोगी के सम्पूर्ण शरीर में वेदना, ज्वर, दाह एवं मोह होता है तथा क्षयज कास से प्राण क्षय भी हो सकता है । इससे शरीर में शोष होने से बल एवं मांस क्षीण हो जाता है तथा कास के पश्चात् रक्त के साथ पूय का घीवन होता है । इस प्रकार सर्व लक्षणों से युक्त कास को चिकित्सा में पारङ्गत विद्वान् दुःसाध्य क्षयज कास कहते हैं ।

11. 14, 15. Prognosis of Cough

इत्येष क्षयजः कासः क्षीणानां देहनाशनः ।

साध्यो बलवतां वा स्याद्याप्यस्त्वेवं क्षतोत्थितः ॥ १४ ॥

नवौ कदाचित्सिद्ध्येतामपि पादगुणान्वितौ ।

स्थविराणां जराकासः सर्वो याप्यः प्रकीर्तितः ।

त्रीन्पूर्वान्साधयेत्साध्यान्पथ्यैर्याप्यास्तु यापयेत् ॥ १५ ॥

(च० चि० १८. २६-३१/१)

The consumptive cough, occurring in the emaciated people, destroys their body; it may be curable or else relievable only in the strong persons. (The prognosis of) *kṣataja* cough is similar (to the *kṣayaaja* or consumptive cough as above). A recent case (of

1. Chronic suppurative lung diseases, e.g. bronchiectasis, lung abscess, empyema, etc.

the above two varieties), if endowed with the four ideal conditions¹ may sometimes be curable.

All types of chronic cough in old people are relievable only. The first three varieties (of cough) are curable and should be given treatment (as such); salutary regimen should be employed to give relief to the (remaining two) relievable ones.

(C. S. VI. 18. 29-31/1)

११. १४, १५. कास की साध्यासाध्यता

क्षयज कास यदि शोष युक्त रोगी में पाया जाय तो यह प्राणघातक होता है। बलवान रोगी में कभी साध्य तथा कभी याप्य होता है। क्षतज कास की भी साध्यासाध्यता क्षयज कास के समान ही होती है। नवीन क्षयज एवं क्षतज कास सम्यक् चिकित्सा चतुष्पाद^२ की व्यवस्था से कदाचित् साध्य भी हो सकता है। वृद्ध रोगियों में सभी प्रकार का जीर्ण कास याप्य होता है। प्रथम तीन प्रकार के कास साध्य होते हैं; उनकी चिकित्सा की पूर्ण व्यवस्था करनी चाहिए। शेष (दो) याप्य कास की उचित पथ्यादि द्वारा यापन चिकित्सा करनी चाहिए।

इति श्रीमाधवकरविरचिते माधवनिदाने कासनिदानं समाप्तम् ॥ ११ ॥

Thus ends (the eleventh chapter entitled) 'The Diagnosis of Cough' of Mādhava Nidāna, as compiled by Śrī Mādhavakara.

इस प्रकार श्रीमाधवकर द्वारा सङ्कलित माधव-निदान का कासनिदान (नामक ग्यारहवाँ अध्याय) समाप्त हुआ।

1. Four basic factors of ideal treatment—the faithful patient, the experienced doctor, the appropriate medicine and the good nursing care.
2. अनुभवो वैद्य, उचित औषधियाँ, आज्ञाकारो (निष्ठावान्) रोगी एवं उत्तम उपस्थाता की सम्यक् व्यवस्था।

M. N. 11

SUGGESTED RESEARCH PROBLEMS**1. Historical & Comparative**

A historical and comparative study of the concepts of cough as outlined in this chapter would be interesting.

2. Clinical

The five types of cough (3-13) should be correlated with the modern clinical terminology.



SUGGESTED READING PROBLEMS

1. *Human Development* - The study of the changes which take place in the body and mind of the individual from birth to old age. It is a branch of biology, and is concerned with the growth and development of the human organism. It is a science which is of great importance to the study of the human mind and body, and is of great interest to the general public.

2. *Physical Anthropology* - The study of the physical characteristics of the human race, and of the changes which take place in these characteristics from time to time. It is a branch of biology, and is concerned with the study of the human body and its parts. It is a science which is of great importance to the study of the human mind and body, and is of great interest to the general public.

3. *Cultural Anthropology* - The study of the customs, beliefs, and institutions of the human race, and of the changes which take place in these from time to time. It is a branch of sociology, and is concerned with the study of the human mind and body. It is a science which is of great importance to the study of the human mind and body, and is of great interest to the general public.

4. *Biological Anthropology* - The study of the biological characteristics of the human race, and of the changes which take place in these from time to time. It is a branch of biology, and is concerned with the study of the human body and its parts. It is a science which is of great importance to the study of the human mind and body, and is of great interest to the general public.

5. *Medical Anthropology* - The study of the medical characteristics of the human race, and of the changes which take place in these from time to time. It is a branch of medicine, and is concerned with the study of the human body and its parts. It is a science which is of great importance to the study of the human mind and body, and is of great interest to the general public.

माधवनिदानम्

द्वादशोऽध्यायः

हिकाश्वासनिदानम्

THE DIAGNOSIS OF HICCOUGH AND DYSPNOEA.

CHAPTER TWELVE

MĀDHAVA-NIDĀNA

THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO

PHYSICS DEPARTMENT

THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO

PHYSICS DEPARTMENT

THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO
PHYSICS DEPARTMENT

M. N. 12

SUMMARY

This chapter discusses two problems related to respiration, viz. hiccough and dyspnoea.

The common aetiological factors (1,2) of hiccough, dyspnoea and cough include gastric irritants, exposure to cold, dust, smoke, etc. and overexertion.

I. Hiccough (3-14) has been graphically described (3) as a sound-producing disease in which air is repeatedly and forcefully expelled out (due to sudden diaphragmatic spasms) through the mouth.

It could be of five types (4). Their premonitory manifestations (5) include symptoms in the mouth, throat, chest and the abdomen. The first variety is a physiological reflex due to gastric irritants (6); in the second (7) there are two successive bouts of hiccough; the third one is the mild hiccough (8); the fourth type is severe (9) and is associated with complications; and the fifth (10) is the very serious one, probably that seen as a terminal event in coma.

The prognosis (11-14) of the last two varieties has been considered to be grave, as also of some cases of the preceding two types if associated with complications like convulsions, coma or emaciation and poor general condition, specially in an elderly.

II. Dyspnoea (15-40) including asthma, as a disease has been considered to be of five types (15). Their humoral aetiology (16/1-16/3), prodromal features (16/4, 16/5) and pathogenesis (17) have been given.

Clinical features (18-39/1) of each type have been described. The first (18-20) one is the most

serious with stridor breathing and coma; it may soon be fatal. The second (21-23) leads to rapid and shallow respirations due to obstruction in the upper respiratory passages because of the accumulated secretions; there may be attacks of fainting and the condition could be fatal. The third type (24-26) gives a description somewhat resembling Cheyne-Stokes respirations; in addition, there are complications, the patient is delirious and death may occur.

The fourth one, *tamaka śvāsa*, is a classical description of bronchial asthma (27-34) with accessory muscles of respiration working during the attacks and momentary relief in between; orthopnoea, aggravation of the condition in presence of clouds, rains, cold waves and easterly humid winds and other features are discernible, the condition being curable in the early stages and relievable only later. Its two subvarieties have been described, *pratamaka śvāsa* (35) found with acute bronchitis and bronchopneumonia and *saṁtamaka śvāsa* (36) which gets relieved by cold (and which some consider to be a variant of cor pulmonale).

The fifth is the mild type of dyspnoea on effort (37-39/1).

Prognostically (39/2, 40) dyspnoea on effort is a curable condition, bronchial asthma curable in early and relievable only in late stages, and the other three incurable.

Finally, hiccough and dyspnoea have been advised to be taken seriously (41) as they may kill in no time.

द्वादशोऽध्यायः

CHAPTER TWELVE

हिक्काश्वासनिदानम्

THE DIAGNOSIS OF
HICCOUGH AND DYSPNOEA

12. 1,2. Aetiology of Hiccough & Dyspnoea

विदाहिगुरुविष्टम्भिर्हृक्षामिष्यन्दिभोजनैः ।

शीतपानाशनस्थानरजोद्धूमातपानिलैः ॥ १ ॥

व्यायामकर्मभाराध्ववेगाघातापतर्पणैः ।

हिक्काश्वासश्च कासश्च नृणां समुपजायते ॥ २ ॥

(सु० उ० ५०. ३, ४/१, ५/२)

Heart-burn producing¹, heavy, constipating, dry and *abhisyandi*² articles of food, cold food and drinks, cool environment, exposure to dust, smoke, sun and winds, over-exertion due to physical exercise, hard work, weight lifting, and travelling long distances on foot, suppression of the natural urges and nutritional deficiencies may produce hiccough, dyspnoea and cough in the human beings.

(S. S. VI. 50. 3, 4/1, 5/2)

1. Gastric irritants.

2. Substances like yoghurt which produce an excessive amount of mucus and are said to have the property of blocking the 'channels'. Yoghurt in the spoiled state could cause gastric irritation and perhaps even gastritis leading to hiccough.

१२. १, २. हेतु

विदाही (दाहकारक), गुरु, विष्टम्भि (विबन्ध करने वाले), रूक्ष तथा अभिष्यन्दि पदार्थों के सेवन करने से, शीतल पेय तथा भोजन के सेवन से, शीतल स्थानों में रहने से, धूल, धूम, तीव्र वायु एवं गर्मी से, अधिक व्यायाम करने से, अधिक श्रम जैसे व्यायाम, पदयात्रा या भारवहन इत्यादि के करने से, मल-मूत्रादि वेगों के रोकने से एवं अपतर्पण से मनुष्य में हिक्का, श्वास एवं कास रोग उत्पन्न होते हैं ।

I. HICCOUGH (12. 3-14)

12. 3. Definition

मुहुर्मुहुर्वायुरुदेति सस्वनो यक्कत्प्लहान्त्राणि मुखादिवाक्षिपन् ।

स घोषवानाशु हिनस्त्यसून्यतस्ततस्तु हिक्केत्यभिधीयते बुधैः ॥ ३ ॥

(सु० उ० ५०.६)

When *vāyu* is repeatedly and forcefully expelled¹ out producing a specific sound (*hik*) the (abdominal viscera as the) liver, the spleen and the intestines are felt to be thrown out through the oral cavity. As this sound-producing disease is capable of killing the patient quickly, it is named as hiccough by the wise.

(S. S. VI. 50.6)

हिक्का (१२. ३-१४)

१२. ३. परिभाषा

जब प्रकुपित (प्राण एवं उदान) वायु बार-बार विशिष्ट (हिक्) शब्द उत्पन्न करते हुये एवं यकृत, स्लीहा तथा आन्त्र को मुख द्वारा बाहर निकालते हुये सा प्रतीत होता है तो इसे बुद्धिमान व्यक्ति हिक्का के नाम से जानते हैं क्योंकि यह घोष उत्पन्न करनेवाली व्याधि प्राणों को भी नष्ट कर सकती है ।

1. Due to sudden spasms of diaphragm.

12. 4. Types

अन्नजां यमलां क्षुद्रां गम्भीरां महतीं तथा ।

वायुः कफेनानुगतः पञ्च हिक्काः करोति हि ॥ ४ ॥

(सु० उ० ५०.७)

(Vitiated) *vāyu*, in association with *kapha*, produces five types of hiccough, namely *annajā*, *yamalā*, *kṣudrā*, *gambhīrā* and *mahatī*.

(S. S. VI. 50. 7)

१२.४. भेद

कफानुगत वायु अन्नजा, यमला, क्षुद्रा, गम्भीरा और महती नामक पाँच प्रकार की हिक्का को उत्पन्न करती है ।

12. 5. Premonitory symptoms

कण्ठोरसोर्गुह्यत्वं च वदनस्य कषायता ।

हिक्कानां पूर्वरूपाणि कुक्षेराटोप एव च ॥ ५ ॥

(च० चि० १७.१८)

A feeling of heaviness in the throat and the chest, astringent taste in the mouth, as well as borborygmi in the abdomen are the premonitory symptoms of all types of hiccough.

(C. S. VI. 17. 18)

१२.५. सामान्य पूर्वरूप

कण्ठ एवं छाती में भारीपन, वदन (मुख) में कषाय रस का होना और कुक्षि (उदर) में आटोप हिक्का के पूर्व रूप हैं ।

12. 6. Annajā (Dietatic) Hiccough due to Gastric

Irritation by food and drinks

पानान्नैरतिसंयुक्तैः सहसा पीडितोऽनिलः ।

हिक्कयत्यूर्ध्वगो भूत्वा तां विद्यादन्नजां शिषक् ॥ ६ ॥

(सु० उ० ५०.६/२, १०/१)

Excessive intake of food and drinks together suddenly irritates¹ *vāyu* which then traversing upwards produces hiccough; the physicians consider this variety (of hiccough) to be dietatic (*annajā*) in origin.

(S. S. VI. 50. 9/2, 10/1)

१२.६. अन्नजा हिक्का

अत्यधिक द्रव पदार्थ एवं अन्न के सेवन से अचानक क्षुभित वायु ऊर्ध्व भाग में जाकर हिक्का को उत्पन्न करती है। इसको चिकित्सक अन्नजा हिक्का कहते हैं।

12. 7. Yamalā (Twin) Hiccough

चिरेण यमलैर्वेगैर्या हिक्का संप्रवर्तते ।

कम्पयन्ती शिरोग्रीवं यमलां तां विनिर्दिशेत् ॥ ७ ॥

(सु० उ० ५०.१०/२, ११/१)

That hiccough which comes up in two (successive) bouts at some interval and which shakes the head and the neck is called *yamalā*² hiccough³.

(S. S. VI. 50. 10/2, 11/1)

१२.७. यमला हिक्का

जो हिक्का देर में यमल (अर्थात् एक साथ दो बार) वेगों से तथा शिर एवं ग्रीवा में कम्पन के साथ उत्पन्न होती है उसे यमला हिक्का कहते हैं।

1. A physiological reflex irritation and not necessarily a disease.
2. *Yamalā* literally means twins.
3. Caraka has also described five types of hiccough but instead of *yamalā* he has described *vyāpetā* (C. S. VI. 17. 31-33) variety which includes the symptoms of gastric irritation (due to hyperacidity as in gastritis, peptic ulcer, etc.)

12. 8. Kṣudrā (Mild) Hiccough

प्रकृष्टकालैर्या वेगैर्मन्दैः समभिवर्तते ।

धुद्रिका नाम सा हिक्का जत्रुमूलात्प्रवाविता ॥ ८ ॥

(सु० उ० ५०. ११/२, १२/१)

That hiccough which occurs in feeble bouts at long intervals and shakes (the head) upto the root of the neck only is known as *kṣudrā* (mild) hiccough.

(S. S. VI. 50. 11/2, 12/1)

१२. ८. धुद्रा हिक्का

जो हिक्का मन्द वेगों के साथ अधिक कालान्तर पर जत्रु मूल से उत्पन्न हो उसे धुद्रा हिक्का कहते हैं ।

12. 9. Gambhīrā (Severe) Hiccough

नाभिप्रवृत्ता या हिक्का घोरा गम्भीरनादिनी ।

अनेकोपद्रववती गम्भीरा नाम सा स्मृता ॥ ९ ॥

(सु० उ० ५०. १२/२, १३/२)

When violent bouts of hiccough originate from the umbilical region¹ accompanied with loud sounds and are associated with many complications, that variety (of hiccough) is known as *gambhīrā*.

(S. S. VI. 50. 12/2, 13/2)

१२. ९. गम्भीरा हिक्का

जो हिक्का नाभि से उत्पन्न होकर गम्भीर शब्द को उत्पन्न करे एवं अनेक उपद्रवों से युक्त हो उसे गम्भीरा हिक्का कहते हैं ।

1. ? Due to intraabdominal irritation.

12. 10. Mahāhikkā (The Serious hiccough)

मर्मण्युत्पीडयन्तीव सततं या प्रवर्तते ।

महाहिकेति सा ज्ञेया सर्वगात्रविकम्पिनी ॥ १० ॥

(सु० उ० ५०. १४/१, १४/३)

That variety of hiccough which keeps on coming continuously as if afflicting the vital organs and shakes the entire body is known as *mahāhikkā*¹.

(S. S. VI. 50. 14/1, 14/3)

१२. १०. महा हिकका

जो मर्मणों (हृदय, वस्ति एवं शिर) को पीड़ित करती हुई सी सम्पूर्ण शरीर में कम्प उत्पन्न करती है तथा निरन्तर वेग से आती है उसे महाहिकका कहते हैं ।

12. 11-14. Prognosis

आयम्यतो हिवक्तो यस्य देहो दृष्टिश्चोर्ध्वं नाम्यते यस्य नित्यम् ।

क्षीणोऽन्नद्विट् क्षौति यश्चातिमात्रं तौ द्वौ चान्त्यौ वर्जयेद्विवकमानौ ॥ ११ ॥

(सु० उ० ५०. १५)

अतिसंचितदोषस्य भक्तच्छेदकृशस्य च ।

व्याधिभिः क्षीणदेहस्य वृद्धस्यातिव्यवायिनः ॥ १२ ॥

आसां या सा समुत्पन्ना हिवका हन्त्याशु जीवितम् ।

यमिका च प्रलापार्तिमोहतृष्णासमन्विता ॥ १३ ॥

अक्षीणश्चाप्यदीनश्च स्थिरधात्विन्द्रियश्च यः ।

तस्य साचयितुं शक्या यमिका हन्त्यतोऽन्यथा ॥ १४ ॥

(च० चि० १७. ४१-४३)

When during a bout of hiccough, the body becomes stretched (extended) and the eyes roll

1. Caraka regards this to be associated with coma (C. S. VI. 17. 21-26).

upwards, whereas usually a position of flexion is adopted, the person becomes thin, has an aversion to food and sneezes excessively—these patients and the last two (namely *gambhirā* and *mahāhikkā*) varieties of hiccough should be discarded from treatment by the experts (as incurable).

(S. S. VI. 50. 15)

Hiccough, occurring in persons with excessive accumulation of *doṣas*, with emaciation due to starvation or debilitated due to diseases and in the elderly patients or in those who indulge excessively in sexual intercourse proves fatal within a short period. *Yamikā* (*yamalā*) type of hiccough also (becomes fatal) if associated with the complications of delirium, pain, confusion and thirst.

On the other hand *yamikā* (*yamalā*) hiccough in the unemaciated and undistressed patients with normally functioning body tissues and (sensory and motor) organs is curable; otherwise it would be fatal.

(C. S. VI. 17. 41-43)

१२. ११-१४. हिक्का की साध्यासाध्यता

हिचकी आने के समय जिस मनुष्य का शरीर फैल जाता हो तथा आँखें निरन्तर ऊपर की ओर चढ़ जाती हों तथा प्रायः शरीर संकुचित रहता हो, रोगी क्षीण हो, अन्न से द्वेष करता हो और छींक से पीड़ित हो तो वह हिक्का असाध्य होती है; इनके अतिरिक्त अन्त की दो प्रकार की हिक्का (गम्भीरा एवं महाहिक्का) को भी असाध्य समझ कर चिकित्सा नहीं करनी चाहिए।

जब अत्यधिक दोषों के संचय से एवं भोजन न करने से शरीर दुर्बल हो गया हो अथवा चिरकालिक व्याधि के कारण क्षीण हो, वृद्धावस्था हो तथा रोगी अति-व्यवायि (मैथुनशील) हो तो इन लोगों में कोई भी हिक्का उत्पन्न होने पर रोगी को मार डालती है।

प्रलाप, पीड़ा, मोह अथवा तृष्णा से युक्त यमला हिक्का भी असाध्य होती है । अक्षीण (हृष्टपुष्ट) और सबल मन वाले जिस रोगी की धातुएँ एवं इन्द्रिय स्थिर हों, उनमें यमला हिक्का साध्य होती है तथा इसके विपरीत अवस्था में होने पर ये मारक सिद्ध होती हैं ।

II. DYSPNOEA (12. 15-40)

12. 15. Types of dyspnoea

महोर्ध्वच्छिन्नतमकक्षुद्रभेदैस्तु पञ्चधा ।

भिद्यते स महाव्याधिः श्वास एको विशेषतः ॥ १५ ॥

(सु० उ० ५१. ५)

Though dyspnoea (including asthma), a serious disease, is essentially one, it is classified into five types, namely *mahāśvāsa*, *ūrdhvaśvāsa*, *chinnaśvāsa*, *tamakaśvāsa* and *kṣudraśvāsa*.

(S. S. VI. 51. 5)

श्वास रोग (१२. १५-४०)

१२. १५. भेद

श्वास एक ही महान व्याधि होते हुए भी पाँच प्रकार की होती है—महा-श्वास, ऊर्ध्व श्वास, छिन्न श्वास, तमक श्वास तथा क्षुद्र श्वास ।

12. 16/1-16/3. Doṣika predominance in dyspnoea

वाताधिको भवेत् क्षुद्रस्तमकस्तु कफोद्भवः ।

कफवाताधिकश्चैव संसृष्टश्छिन्नसंज्ञकः ।

श्वासो मास्तसंसृष्टो महानूर्ध्वरततो मतः ॥

Vāta is predominant in *kṣudraśvāsa*; *tamakaśvāsa* is caused by (an excess of) *kapha*; an excess of *kapha* and *vāta* together occurs in *chinnaśvāsa*; and it is

opined that in *mahāsṛvāsa* as well as in *ūrdhvaśvāsa* there is a predominance of *vāta*.

१२. १६/१-१६/३. दोषों का अनुबन्ध

वात की अधिकता से क्षुद्र श्वास, कफ से तमक श्वास तथा कफ एवं वात दोनों की अधिकता से छिन्न श्वास होते हैं। महा श्वास एवं ऊर्ध्व श्वास भी वायु के ही आधिक्य से उत्पन्न होते हैं।

12. 16/4, 16/5. Prodromal features

प्राग्रूपं तस्य हृत्पीडा शूलमाध्मानमेव च ।

आनाहो वक्त्रवैरस्यं शंखनिस्तोद एव च ॥ १६ ॥

Its prodromal features are precordial pain, colic, flatulence, constipation, bad taste in the mouth and a temporal headache.

१२. १६/४, १६/५. सामान्य पूर्वरूप

हृदय में पीड़ा, पार्श्वशूल, आध्मान, आनाह, मुख की विरसता तथा शंख प्रदेश में पीड़ा होना श्वास रोग के पूर्व रूप होते हैं।

12. 17. Pathogenesis

यदा स्रोतांसि संरुध्य मारुतः कफपूर्वकः ।

विष्वग्ब्रजति संरुद्धस्तदा श्वासान् करोति सः ॥ १७ ॥

(च० चि० १७. ४४)

When there is an obstruction of the air passages (bronchial tree) due to *vāyu* in association with *kapha* there is an abnormal movement of *vāyu* producing dyspnoea.

(C. S. VI. 17. 44)

१२. १७. सम्प्राप्ति

प्रकुपित कफ के कारण अवरुद्ध वायु जब (प्राणवह) स्रोतस के अवरोध से विमार्गगामी होकर चारों ओर (कुपकुप में) घूमती है तो श्वास रोग को उत्पन्न करती है ।

12. 18-20. Mahāśvāsa (Stridor Breathing)

उद्ध्वयमानवातो यः शब्दवद्दुःखितो नरः ।

उच्चैः श्वसिति संवृद्धो मत्तर्षभ इवानिशम् ॥ १८ ॥

प्रनष्टज्ञानविज्ञानस्तथा विभ्रान्तलोचनः ।

विवृताक्ष्याननो बद्धमूत्रवर्चा विशीर्णवाक् ॥ १९ ॥

दीनः प्रश्वसितं चास्य दूराद्विज्ञायते भृशम् ।

महाश्वासोपसृष्टस्तु क्षिप्रमेव विपद्यते ॥ २० ॥

(च० चि० १७. ४५-४७)

When a person, on account of *vāyu* being forced up (laboured breathing), becomes distressed and takes deep respirations incessantly, producing a (stridor) sound just like an excited and restrained bull, he becomes unaware of his surroundings and loses the mental faculties¹, his eyeballs become unsteady, his eyes and mouth remain wide open, he stops passing urine and faeces, his speech becomes blurred, he appears anxious and his respirations are very obvious even from a distance, that patient should be known to be suffering from *mahāśvāsa*, and dies within a short period.

(C. S. VI. 17. 45-47)

1. Coma.

१२. १८-२०. महाश्वास के लक्षण

जब रोगी दिन-रात वायु की ऊर्ध्व गति होने के कारण अवरुद्ध मतवाले साँड़ के समान, शब्दयुक्त, दुःख के साथ ऊँचे श्वास को लेता है तो उस व्यक्ति का ज्ञान विज्ञान नष्ट हो जाता है अर्थात् वह निश्चेष्ट हो जाता है तथा नेत्र भ्रान्त हो जाते हैं और नेत्र एवं मुख खुले ही रहते हैं। मल-मूत्र में रुकावट हो जाती है, वाणी धीमी पड़ जाती है तथा रोगी दीन हो जाता है। उसके उच्च श्वास की ध्वनि दूर से ही सुनायी पड़ती है। इस महाश्वास से ग्रसित रोगी शीघ्र ही मृत्यु को प्राप्त होता है।

12. 21-23. Ūrdhvaśvāsa (Rapid and shallow respiration)

12. 21. Pathogenesis

ऊर्ध्वं श्वसिति यो दीर्घं न च प्रत्याहरत्यधः ।

श्लेष्मावृतमुखस्रोताः क्रुद्धगन्धवहार्दितः ॥ २१ ॥

(च० चि० १७.४८)

Due to the obstruction right upto the upper end of the respiratory channels because of an accumulation of mucus the movement of air is hampered and it is not able to enter the lower tracts inspite of laboured (rapid and shallow) breathing.

(C. S. VI. 17. 48)

१२. २१. ऊर्ध्वश्वास (सम्प्राप्ति)

प्राणवह स्रोतस का मुख श्लेष्मा से आवृत्त होने के कारण वायु प्रकुपित हो जाता है जिससे रोगी ऊर्ध्व श्वास देर तक छोड़ता है परन्तु नीचे (भीतर) की तरफ नहीं खींचता।

12. 22,23. Clinical Features

ऊर्ध्वदृष्टिर्विपश्यंस्तु विभ्रान्ताक्ष इतस्ततः ।

प्रमुह्यन्वेदनार्तश्च शुक्लास्योऽरतिपीडितः ॥ २२ ॥

ऊर्ध्वश्वासे प्रकुपिते ह्यधः श्वासो निरुध्यते ।

मुह्यतस्ताम्यतश्चोर्ध्वं श्वासस्तस्यैव हन्त्यसून् ॥ २३ ॥

(च० चि० १७.४६,५०)

His eyes turn upwards, he visualises unnatural sights, his eyeballs roll hither and thither, he appears confused and is distressed with pain, his face becomes white and he is restless. The deep expirations and obstructed inspirations cause repeated attacks of fainting¹. This (condition of) *ūrdhvaśvāsa* would kill the patient soon.

(C. S. VI. 17. 49,50)

१२.२२,२३. ऊर्ध्वश्वास (लक्षण)

उस मनुष्य की दृष्टि खुली रहती है और वह विभ्रांत होकर इधर-उधर देखता है तथा बार-बार प्रमोहित (मूर्छित) हो जाता है एवं अति वेदना से पीड़ित रहता है । उसका मुख श्वेत हो जाता है तथा वेचैनी बढ़ जाती है । इस प्रकार ऊर्ध्व श्वास के प्रकुपित एवं अधो श्वास के निरोध से रोगी मूर्छित हो जाता है । इस ऊर्ध्व श्वास से रोगी शीघ्र ही मर जाता है ।

12. 24-26. *Chinnaśvāsa* (Interrupted breathing)²

यस्तु श्वसिति विच्छिन्नं सर्वप्राणेन पीडितः ।

न वा श्वसिति दुःखार्तो मर्मच्छेददृग्दितः ॥ २४ ॥

आनाह्रस्वेदमूर्च्छार्तो दह्यमानेन वस्तिना ।

विप्लुताक्षः परिक्षीणः श्वसन् रक्तैकलोचनः ॥ २५ ॥

विचेताः परिशुष्कास्यो विवर्णः प्रलपन्नरः ।

छिन्नश्वासेन विच्छिन्नः स शीघ्रं विजहात्यसून् ॥ २६ ॥

(च० चि० १७.५१-५३)

1. ? Due to anoxaemia.

2. ? Cheyne Stokes respiration.

The patient who has interrupted breathing or does not breath at all for a while due to involvement of all the vital organs or due to the severe pain as produced by an injury to the vulncrable areas, has abdominal distension with perspiration and fainting (attacks), feels a burning sensation in the bladder region, has eyes full of tears, has excessively weak respirations, has congestion in one of the eyes¹, has an anxious look, a dry mouth and discolouration (of the face) and is delirious, should be considered suffering from *chinnaśvāsa* and he dies soon.

(C. S. VI. 17. 51-53)

१२. २४-२६. छिन्न श्वास

शरीर के मर्मांगों (प्राण) के पीड़ित होने से रोगी रुक-रुक कर श्वास लेता है अथवा रोगी दुःख के साथ श्वास नहीं ले पाता और मर्मांगों में भेदनवत् पीड़ा होती है। आनाह, स्वेद, मूर्च्छा, वस्ति प्रदेश में दाह, आँखों में पानी, श्वसन का अत्यन्त क्षीण होना तथा एक नेत्र का रक्त वर्ण हो जाना, अचेत सा रहना, मुख शुष्क रहना, शरीर का वर्ण विकृत हो जाना तथा प्रलाप करना छिन्न श्वास के लक्षण हैं। यह रोगी शीघ्र ही प्राणों का त्याग करता है।

12. 27-34. Tamakaśvāsa

प्रतिलोमं यदा वायुः स्रोतांसि प्रतिपद्यते ।

ग्रीवां शिरश्च संगृह्य श्लेष्माणं समुदीर्य च ॥ २७ ॥

करोति पीनसं तेन रुद्धो बुर्बुरकं तथा ।

अतीव तीव्रवेगं च श्वासं प्राणप्रपीडकम् ॥ २८ ॥

प्रताम्यति स वेगेन तृप्यते सन्निध्यते ।

प्रमोहं कासमानश्च स गच्छति मुहुर्मुहुः ॥ २९ ॥

1. ? Subconjunctival haemorrhage.

श्लेष्मण्यमुच्यमाने तु भृशं भवति दुःखितः ।
 तस्यैव च विमोक्षान्ते मुहूर्तं लभते सुखम् ॥ ३० ॥
 तथाऽस्योदध्वंसते कण्ठः कृच्छ्राच्छक्नोति भाषितुम् ।
 न चापि लभते निद्रां शयानः श्वासपीडितः ॥ ३१ ॥
 पार्श्वे तस्मावगृह्णाति शयानस्य समोरणः ।
 आसीनो लभते सौख्यमुष्णं चैवाभिनन्दति ॥ ३२ ॥
 उच्छ्रिताक्षो ललाटेन स्विद्यता भृशमार्तिमान् ।
 विशुष्कास्यो मुहुः श्वासो मुहुश्चैवावधम्यते ॥ ३३ ॥
 मेघाम्बुशीतप्राग्वातैः श्लेष्मलैश्च विवर्धते ।
 स याग्यस्तमकः श्वासः साध्यो वा स्यान्नवोत्थितः ॥ ३४ ॥

(च० चि० १७. ५४-६१)

When the movement of the air in the respiratory passages takes a reverse¹ course, the head and the neck become tight² and there is an excessive secretion of mucus alongwith rhinitis producing an obstruction to the breathing and wheezing sounds, and at times the patient has attacks of very severe dyspnoea endangering the life. During attacks he feels as if entering into darkness, feels thirsty and becomes inactive. While coughing he gets frequent attacks of fainting and feels highly uncomfortable as he is not able to expectorate the sputum at all; however, if he is able to bring it (the expectoration) out, he feels at ease for a very short while.

1. Normally inspiration is longer than expiration. The reverse condition occurs here when expiration is prolonged.
2. Accessory muscles of respiration (sterno-cleido-mastoid, etc.) are working.

As his larynx gets inflamed he can speak only with difficulty; he does not also get proper sleep and develops breathlessness on lying down¹ as in that posture the sides of the chest get compressed further reducing the movements of the air. He feels comfortable in the sitting posture and likes warm things (food, drinks, clothings, etc.).

His eyes are wide open, sweat keeps on appearing on the forehead and he remains in severe agony. His mouth becomes dry frequently and he has repeated attacks of laboured breathing.

The condition gets aggravated when there are clouds, rains, cold waves and easterly² winds and also by other mucus-provoking agents. This *tamakaśvāsa* (asthma) is a relivable condition only; however, it may be curable in its early stages.

(C. S. VI. 17. 54-61)

१२.२७-३४. तमकश्वास (सम्प्राप्ति एवं लक्षण)

स्रोतस (प्राणवह) के अवरोध के फलस्वरूप जब वायु प्रतिलोम (विपरीत गति से) चलने लगती है तो ग्रीवा एवं शिर में जकड़ाहट उत्पन्न करती हुई अति मात्रा में कफ को बढ़ा देती है तथा पीनस रोग उत्पन्न करती है; यह कफ से अवरुद्ध होकर घुर घुर शब्द करती हुई अत्यन्त तीव्र वेग से प्राणों को कष्ट देनेवाले श्वास रोग को उत्पन्न करती है।

श्वास के अति वेग के काल में अंधकार में प्रवेश करने की प्रतीति होती है, प्यास अधिक लगती है और रोगी निश्चेष्ट हो जाता है। प्रयत्न करने पर भी वह कफ का निस्सरण नहीं कर पाता है, अतः अत्यन्त दुःखी रहता है और जब थोड़ा भी कफ निकल जाता है तो थोड़ी देर के लिए सुख का अनुभव करता है। रोगी का कंठ विकृत हो जाता है अतः उसे बोलने में कठिनाई होती है।

1. Orthopnoea.

2. Humid.

शयन की स्थिति में श्वास से अधिक पीड़ित होने के कारण वह निद्रा लाभ नहीं कर पाता क्योंकि सोने की अवस्था में पार्श्व में स्थित वायु अवरुद्ध हो जाती है। बैठने की स्थिति में उसे सुख मिलता है और वह उष्ण वस्तुओं का सेवन पसन्द करता है। आँखें चढ़ी सी रहती हैं तथा मस्तक पसीने से सदा गीला रहता है। इस प्रकार वह अत्यन्त कष्ट का अनुभव करता रहता है। उसका मुख लगातार सूखता रहता है तथा उसे बार बार श्वास के वेग आते रहते हैं। आकाश में बादल, अनवरत वर्षा होने से तथा शीत लहरी या पूर्वी हवा, शीत वातावरण एवं पदार्थ और वायु के झोंके आने पर सभी प्रकार के श्लेष्मा-वर्धक पदार्थों के सेवन से इस रोग की वृद्धि होती है। यह तमक श्वास याप्य होता है किन्तु नूतन अवस्था में साध्य भी हो सकता है।

12. 35. *Pratamaka śvāsa*¹

ज्वरमूर्च्छापरीतस्य विद्यात्प्रतमकं तु तम् ।

उदावर्तरजोऽजीर्णक्लिन्नकायनिरोधजः ॥ ३५ ॥

(च० चि० १७. ६२)

If the above signs and symptoms (of *tamaka śvāsa*) are associated with fever and fainting, it is known as *pratamaka śvāsa*, which is caused by *udāvarta*², dust *particles*³, indigestion, drenching of the body/old age, and respiratory obstruction.

(C. S. VI. 17. 62)

१२. ३५. प्रतमक श्वास के लक्षण

यदि तमक श्वास में ज्वर मूर्च्छा के साथ उत्पन्न हो तो उसे प्रतमक श्वास कहते हैं। यह उदावर्त, रज, अजीर्ण, क्लिन्नकाय (वृद्ध) तथा श्वासावरोध से उत्पन्न होता है।

1. ? Acute bronchitis and bronchopneumonia.
2. Suppression of the normal physiological evacuatory urges as of passing faeces and urine, lacrymation, etc.
3. Inhalation pneumoconiosis.

12. 36. *Samtamaka śvāsa*¹

तमसा वर्धतेऽत्यर्थं शीतैश्चाशु प्रशाम्यति ।
मज्जतस्तमसोवास्य विद्यात्संतमकं तु तम् ॥ ३६ ॥

(च० चि० १७.६३)

That (dyspnoea) which greatly increases by darkness/mental tension and gets relieved quickly by cold² and in which the patient feels as if he is submerged in darkness is known as *samtamaka śvāsa*.
(C. S. VI. 17. 63)

१२. ३६. संतमक श्वास के लक्षण

जब श्वास अन्धकार या मानसिक दोषों से बढ़े तथा शीत उपचारों से शान्त हो एवं रोगी अपने को अन्धकार में डूबता हुआ सा समझे तो उसे संतमक श्वास से ग्रसित समझना चाहिए ।

12. 37-39/1. *Kṣudra śvāsa* (Dyspnoea on effort)

रूक्षायामसोद्भवः कोष्ठे क्षुद्रो वात उदीरयन् ।
क्षुद्रश्वासो न सोऽत्यर्थं दुःखेनाङ्गप्रवाधकः ॥ ३७ ॥
हिनस्ति न स गात्राणि न च दुःखो यथेतरे ।
न च भोजनपानानां निरुणद्ध्युचितां गतिम् ॥ ३८ ॥
नेन्द्रियाणां व्यथां नापि कांचिदापादयेद्भुजम् ।

(च० चि० १७.६४-६६/१)

Owing to the use of dry³ substances and (excessive) physical exertion a mild disturbance of *vāyu* occurs in the abdomen which causes *kṣudra śvāsa* which is.

1. ? Cor pulmonale.

2. *Tamaka śvāsa* gets aggravated by cold, whereas this one gets relieved.

3. Food and drinks without fats.

not very troublesome. It neither harms the body in any way nor does it produce any of the complications.

It does not produce any difficulty in eating or drinking. It neither produces any disturbance in the functioning of the special sensory (and motor) organs, nor does it give rise to any emergency.

(C. S. VI. 17. 64-66/1)

१२. ३७-३९/१. क्षुद्र श्वास के लक्षण

रूक्ष आहार एवं श्रम करने से कोष्ठ में किञ्चित वायु प्रकुपित होकर क्षुद्र श्वास को उत्पन्न करती है। इस (क्षुद्र श्वास) से पीड़ित रोगी में कष्ट के कारण उसके अंग-प्रत्यंग में कोई बाधा नहीं होती। यह शरीर को विशेष हानि नहीं पहुँचाता और न तो दूसरे उपद्रवों को ही उत्पन्न करता है। इसमें भोजन, जल आदि ग्रहण करने में कोई रुकावट नहीं होती। इन्द्रियों की क्रिया में भी कोई बाधा नहीं उत्पन्न होती तथा कोई भी आत्ययिक अवस्था नहीं उत्पन्न होती है।

12. 39/2, 40. Prognosis

स साध्य उक्तो वलिनः सर्वे चाव्यक्तलक्षणाः ॥ ३९ ॥

(च० चि० १७. ६६/२)

क्षुद्रः साध्यो मतस्तेषां तमकः कृच्छ्र उच्यते ।

त्रयः श्वासा न सिध्यन्ति तमको दुर्वलस्य च ॥ ४० ॥

(सु० उ० ५१. १४)

The condition (*kṣudra śvāsa*) is regarded as curable; whereas all other types of dyspnoea may also be curable as long as the strength of the patient is maintained and the clinical features are not severe.

(C. S. VI. 17. 66/2)

Out of the above (five) types of dyspnoea *kṣudra śvāsa* is curable; however, *tamaka śvāsa* is curable only

with difficulty and that too till the patient has not become weak. On the other hand the remaining three¹ varieties of dyspnoea are incurable.

(S. S. VI. 51. 14)

१२. ३६/२, ४०. साध्यासाध्यता

इसमें क्षुद्र श्वास तो साध्य होता है और श्लेष्म श्वास भी बलवान रोगी में जब तक रोग अल्प लक्षणों वाला हो तो साध्य हो सकता है ।

क्षुद्र श्वास साध्य, तमक श्वास कृच्छ्र साध्य तथा अन्य तीनों श्वास असाध्य होते हैं । दुर्बल रोगी में तमक श्वास भी असाध्य होता है ।

12. 41. Dreadfulness of Hiccough and Dyspnoea

कामं प्राणहरा रोगा बहवो न तु ते तथा ।

यथा श्वासश्च हिक्का च हरतः प्राणमाशु वै ॥ ४१ ॥

Although there are many diseases which can take away the life, none is so serious as dyspnoea and hiccough which may prove fatal in no time.

१२. ४१. हिक्का एवं श्वास की भयंकरता

यद्यपि प्राणनाशक रोग अनेक होते हैं परन्तु वे हिक्का एवं श्वास की समानता नहीं कर सकते क्योंकि हिक्का एवं श्वास में रोगी की मृत्यु तत्काल हो सकती है ।

इति श्रीमाधवकरविरचिते माधवनिदाने हिक्काश्वासनिदानम् समाप्तम् ॥१२॥

Thus ends (the twelfth chapter entitled) 'The Diagnosis of Hiccough and Dyspnoea' of Mādhava Nidāna, as compiled by Śrī Mādhavakara.

इस प्रकार श्रीमाधवकर द्वारा सङ्कलित माधव-निदान का हिक्काश्वासनिदान (नामक बारहवाँ अध्याय) समाप्त हुआ ।

1. *Mahā, ūrdhva and chinna.*

M. N. 12

SUGGESTED RESEARCH PROBLEMS

1. It would be worthwhile carrying out a historical and comparative study on the conceptual aspects of the two conditions, hiccough and dyspnoea, related to respiration, as mentioned in this chapter with other systems of medicine, specially the ancient ones.
 2. It would be a good clinical trial to establish the various types of hiccough and dyspnoea as mentioned in this chapter in terms of the current medical terminology.
 3. An experimental study could be planned on the basis and the modern relevance of the aetiological factors (1,2) of hiccough, dyspnoea and cough.
-

माधवनिदानम्
त्रयोदशोऽध्यायः

स्वरभेदनिदानम्
THE DIAGNOSIS OF THE HOARSENESS OF VOICE

CHAPTER THIRTEEN
MĀDHAVA - NIDĀNA

M. N. 13

SUMMARY

This chapter deals with the diagnostic considerations of six types of afflictions manifesting with hoarseness or alteration of voice.

The aetio-pathogenesis (1) of hoarseness of voice includes such factors as obesity, trauma and tuberculosis.

Clinical features (2-4) of the six types of altered voice have been described in which various types of speech disorders such as hoarseness, aphonia, dysphasia, dysarthria, etc. can be discerned along with other symptoms and signs.

Prognostically (5) factors as chronicity, emaciation and old age along with marked obesity have been considered to be of bad significance.

त्रयोदशोऽध्यायः

CHAPTER THIRTEEN

स्वरभेदनिदानम्

HOARSENESS OF VOICE

13. 1. Aetio-pathogenesis

अत्युच्चभाषणविषाध्ययनाभिघात-

संदूषणैः प्रकुपिताः पवनादयस्तु ।

स्रोतःसु ते स्वरवहेषु गताः प्रतिष्ठां

हन्युः स्वरं भवति चापि हि षड्विधः सः ॥ १ ॥

(सु० उ० ५३. ३)

Vāyu and other *doṣas* aggravated by excessively loud speech, poisoning, reading aloud, trauma and other *doṣa*-vitiating factors get localized in the channels of voice (laryngeal apparatus) and afflict the voice¹. This disorder is of six types.

(S. S. VI. 53. 3)

१३. १. हेतु एवं सम्प्राप्ति

अति उच्च स्वर से बोलने से, विष से, उच्च स्वर से अध्ययन करने से, अभिघात एवं अन्य कारणों से वात आदि दोष प्रकुपित होकर स्वरवाही स्रोतस् में स्थित होकर स्वर को विकृत कर देते हैं; इसे स्वरभेद कहते हैं। यह छः प्रकार का होता है।

13. 2/1. Types

वातादिभिः पृथक् सर्वैर्भेदसा च क्षयेण च ।

1. As hoarseness of voice, aphonia, dysphasia, etc.

These (six types) are due to *vāta*, *pitta* and *kapha* separately, due to all of them together, due to *medas* and due to depletion¹ of tissues.

१३. २/१. भेद

यह रोग वातिक, पैत्तिक, श्लैष्मिक पृथक् दोषों से, त्रिदोषज, मेदज एवं क्षयजन्य भेद से (छः प्रकार का) होता है ।

13. 2/2. Vātika type

वातेन कृष्णनयनाननमूत्रवर्चा भिन्नं शनैर्वदति गर्दभवत् खरं च ।

(सु० उ० ५३. ४/१)

In the *vātika* type (of hoarseness of voice) the patient's eyes, face, urine and faeces become blackish; his speech becomes hoarse, slow and rough like (the braying of) an ass.

(S. S. VI. 53. 4/1)

१३. २/२. वातिक स्वरभेद

वात से उत्पन्न स्वरभेद में आँख, मुख, मूत्र एवं मल कृष्ण वर्ण के हो जाते हैं तथा रोगी का स्वर फटा हुआ, धीमा तथा गदहे के समान खर हो जाता है ।

13. 2/3. Pittaja type

पित्तेन पीतनयनाननमूत्रवर्चा ब्रूयाद्गलेन स च दाहसमन्वितेन ॥ २ ॥

(सु० उ० ५३. ४/२)

If the hoarseness is due to *pitta*, the patient's eyes, face, urine and stool become yellowish; while speaking he gets a burning sensation in the throat.

(S. S. VI. 53. 4/2)

1. Wasting, emaciating diseases, consumption and tuberculosis (M. N. 10).

१३. २/३. पित्तिक स्वरभेद

पित्तजन्य स्वरभेद में रोगी के नेत्र, मुख, मूत्र एवं मल पीत वर्ण के हो जाते हैं तथा बोलते समय उसके गले में जलन होती है ।

13. 3/1. Kaphaja type

ब्रूयात्कफेन सततं कफरुद्धकण्ठः
स्वल्पं शनैर्वदति चापि दिवा विशेषात् ।

(सु० उ० ५३. ५/१)

One with a hoarseness of voice due to *kapha* always speaks as if his throat is choked with secretions. He speaks very little and that too rather slowly; however, the speech is somewhat more distinct during the daytime.

(S. S. VI. 53. 5/1)

१३. ३/१. श्लेष्मिक स्वरभेद

कफ से कण्ठ अवरुद्ध होने के कारण, कफ जन्य स्वरभेद में रोगी सदा ही कम और धीरे-धीरे बोलता है, परन्तु अपेक्षाकृत दिन में कुछ स्पष्ट बोल सकता है ।

13. 3/2. Tridoṣaja type

सर्वात्मके भवति सर्वविकारसम्पत्

तं चाप्यसाध्यमृषयः स्वरभेदमाहुः ॥ ३ ॥

(सु० उ० ५३. ५/२)

In a case due to the simultaneous derangement of all the three *doṣas*, features of all the types (as mentioned above) are present; the medical sages have opined this type of hoarseness of voice as incurable.

(S. S. VI. 53. 5/2)

१३. ३/२. सन्निपातिक स्वरभेद

त्रिदोषज स्वरभेद उपरोक्त सब प्रकार के स्वर विकारों के लक्षणों से युक्त होता है तथा महर्षियों ने इस प्रकार के स्वरभेद को असाध्य कहा है ।

13. 4/1. Kṣayaja type

धूप्येत वाक् क्षयकृते क्षयमानुयाच्च वागेष चापि हतवाक् परिवर्जनीयः ।

(सु० उ० ५३. ६/१)

With the affliction (of the laryngeal apparatus) due to *kṣaya* (tuberculosis) there is a difficulty in speaking as if he is getting choked with smokes.

It may ultimately lead to a complete loss of voice; such a patient suffering from aphonia should be discarded (from treatment as incurable).

(S. S. VI. 53. 6/1)

१३. ४/१. क्षयज स्वरभेद

इसमें वाणी के साथ धुवाँ निकलता सा प्रतीत होता है तथा (अन्ततोगत्वा) बोलने की शक्ति नष्ट हो जाती है । इस प्रकार के हतस्वर रोगी की चिकित्सा नहीं करनी चाहिए ।

13. 4/2. Medaja type

अन्तर्गतस्वरमलक्ष्यपदं चिरेण मेदोऽन्वयाद्वदति दिग्धगलस्तृषार्तः ॥४॥

(सु० उ० ५३. ६/२)

If the hoarseness of voice is due to *medas* (obesity) the patient speaks inaudibly within his throat, the syllables are indistinct and delayed; his throat feels coated with mucus and he feels thirsty.

(S. S. VI. 53. 6/2)

१३.४/२. मेदज स्वरभेद

मेदज स्वरभेद में रोगी गले के अन्दर ही धीमा-धीमा बोलता है। उसके पद अस्पष्ट तथा देर-देर से निकलते हैं। उसका गला कफ से लित प्रतीत होता है तथा उसे प्यास बहुत लगती है।

13. 5. Prognosis

क्षीणस्य वृद्धस्य कुशस्य वार्जपि चिरोत्थितो यश्च सहोपजातः ।

मेदस्विनः सर्वसमुद्भवश्च स्वरामयो यो न स सिद्धिमेति ॥५॥

(सु० उ० ५३.७)

Hoarseness of voice in the cachectic, the old and the emaciated, and/or if it is of long standing, congenital or in an obese, as well as that due to vitiation of all (the three) *doṣas* is not curable.

(S. S. VI. 53. 7)

१३.५. साध्यासाध्यता

क्षीण, वृद्ध तथा कुश रोगियों में होने वाला स्वरभेद एवं चिरकालीन, जन्मजात तथा मेदस्वी पुरुष में होने वाला और त्रिदोषज स्वरभेद असाध्य होता है।

इति श्रीमाधवकरविरचिते माधवनिदाने स्वरभेदनिदानं समाप्तम् ॥१३॥

Thus ends (the thirteenth chapter entitled) 'The Diagnosis of the Hoarseness of Voice' of Mādhava Nidāna, as compiled by Śrī Mādhavakara.

इस प्रकार श्रीमाधवकर द्वारा सङ्कलित माधव-निदान का स्वरभेद निदान (नामक तेरहवाँ अध्याय) समाप्त हुआ।

M. N. 13

SUGGESTED RESEARCH PROBLEMS

1. A historical and comparative study on the conceptual aspects of the speech disorders given in this chapter as hoarseness of voice is indicated.
2. A clinical correlation between these six types (2-4) of speech disorders and the conditions seen in the modern times would bring many new facts to light.



माधवनिदानम्

चतुर्दशोऽध्यायः

अरोचकनिदानम्

THE DIAGNOSIS OF ANOREXIA

CHAPTER FOURTEEN

MĀDHAVA-NIDĀNA

INTRODUCTION

THE

THE

THE

THE

THE

THE

THE

THE

THE

THE

THE

THE

THE

THE

THE

THE

THE

THE

THE

THE

THE

THE

THE

THE

THE

THE

THE

THE

THE

THE

THE

THE

THE

THE

THE

THE

THE

M. N. 14

SUMMARY

Diagnosis of anorexia has been discussed in this chapter. Anorexia has been considered as a disease. It could be due to the somatic (endogenous) or the psychic causes : the psychic factors could be grief, etc. or unpleasant preparation, presentation or odour of food ; whereas *doṣas*, singly or jointly, were recognised as the somatic causes (1 a-c).

Local features in the mouth resulting from anorexia due to the endogenous causes, i.e. *vāta* (1d), *pitta* (2a), *kapha* (2b-d) and combined involvement of *doṣas* (3d) and that due to the psychic causes (3a-c) have been given, followed by the general clinical features of each of these five varieties (4).

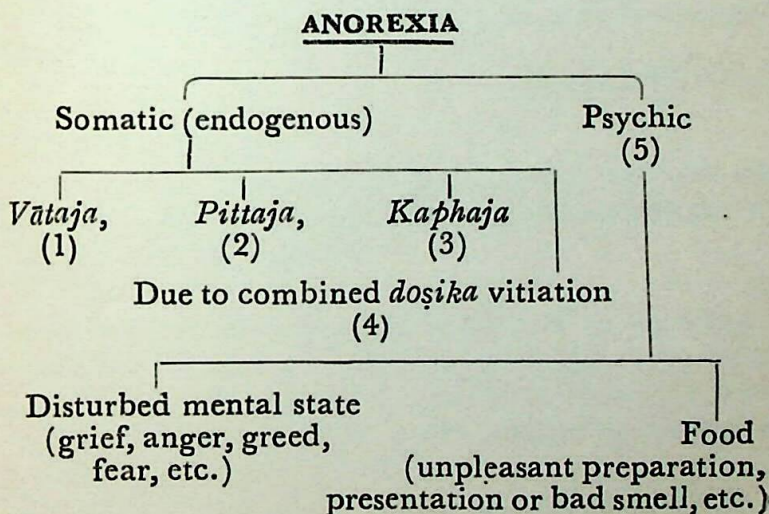


Table showing the five types of anorexia.

चतुर्दशोऽध्यायः
CHAPTER FOURTEEN

अरोचकनिदानम्
THE DIAGNOSIS OF ANOREXIA

14. 1a-c. Aetiological factors

वातादिभिः शोकभयातिलोभक्रोधैर्मनोव्याशनरूपगन्धैः ।

अरोचकाः स्युः—

(च० चि० २६. १२४/१-३)

Anorexia^{1,2} is due to *vāta*, *pitta* and *kapha* (singly or all combined), grief, fear, excessive greed and anger, as well as due to repulsive food, sight and odour.

(C. S. VI. 26. 124a-c)

१४. १/१-३. हेतु

वातादि दोषों (यथा वात, पित्त, कफ एवं सन्निपात), शोक, भय, अति लोभ एवं क्रोध तथा मन के प्रतिकूल भोजन, रूप और गन्ध से (पाँच प्रकार के) अरोचक रोग की उत्पत्ति होती है ।

1. Anorexia has been considered broadly to be of two origins—
(i) Somatic when it is caused by physical illness involving the derangement of *doṣas*; and (ii) psychic which is due to mental factors such as grief, etc. or due to unpleasant presentation, appearance or smell of food.
2. Sum narising, anorexia is of five types, *vātaja*, *pittaja*, *kaphaja*, *sannipātaja* and *mānas*, the first four being somatic and the last psychic in origin.

14. 1d. Vātika Anorexia

—परिहृष्टदन्तः कषायवक्त्रश्च मतोऽनिलेन ॥ १ ॥

(च० चि० २६. १२४/४)

Vātika (anorexia) is characterised by dental hyperaesthesia and an astringent taste in the oral cavity.

(C. S. VI. 26. 124d)

१४. १/४. वातिक अरोचक

वातिक अरोचक में दन्तहर्ष तथा मुख का स्वाद कसैला होता है ।

14. 2a. Paittika Anorexia

कट्वम्लमुष्णं विरसं च पूति पित्तेन विद्यात्—

(च० चि० २६. १२५/१)

Bitterness, sourness, warmth, tastelessness and foul odour (in the mouth) are the features of *paittika* (anorexia).

(C. S. VI. 26. 125a)

१४. २/१. पैत्तिक अरोचक

पैत्तिक अरोचक में मुख का स्वाद कटु, अम्ल, उष्ण, विरस तथा दुर्गन्धियुक्त होता है ।

14. 2b-d. Kaphaja Anorexia

—लवणं च वक्त्रम् ।

माधुर्यपैच्छिल्यगुरुत्वशैत्यविवद्धसम्बद्धयुतं कफेन ॥ २ ॥

(च० चि० २६. १२५/२-४)

Saltish or sweetish taste, stickiness, heaviness,

coldness and a sense of stiffness¹ and tightness² in the mouth indicate *kaphaja* anorexia.

(C. S. VI. 26. 125b-d)

१४. २/२-४. कफज अरोचक

कफज अरोचक में मुख का स्वाद लवणयुक्त एवं मधुर होता है । मुख में पिच्छिलता, गुरुता, शीतलता एवं जकड़ाहट होती है ।

14. 3a-c. Psychic Anorexia

अरोचके शोकभयातिलोभक्रोधाद्यहृद्याशुचिगन्धजे स्यात् ।

स्वाभाविकं चास्यमथारुचिश्च—

(च० चि० २६. १२६/१-३)

In a case of psychic anorexia resulting from grief, fear, excessive greed or anger, etc. as well as in that due to unpleasant food, unholy sights or repulsive smells, even though the taste in the mouth is normal, there still is an aversion to food.

(C. S. VI. 26. 126a-c)

१४. ३/१-३. मानसिक अरोचक

शोक, भय, अति लोभ, अत्यधिक क्रोध तथा मन के विपरीत वस्तुओं, अपवित्रता एवं दुर्गन्ध आदि से उत्पन्न अरोचक में मुख का स्वाद स्वाभाविक रहते हुये भी अरुचि उत्पन्न होती है ।

14. 3d. Anorexia due to the simultaneous vitiation of all the three humours

—त्रिदोषजे नैकरसं भवेत्तु ॥ ३ ॥

(च० चि० २६. १२६/४)

1, 2. Both these symptoms are due to an excessive amount of mucus producing stickiness and a sense of fullness in the mouth.

In a case (of anorexia) due to the simultaneous vitiation of all the three humours just one type of taste is not present in the mouth.¹

(C. S. VI. 26, 126d)

१४. ३/४. त्रिदोषज अरोचक

त्रिदोषज अरोचक में मुख का स्वाद एक ही रस युक्त नहीं होता (अर्थात् तीनों दोषों के कारण मिश्रित रस वाला होता है) ।

14. 4. General Clinical Features

हृच्छूलपीडनयुतं पवनेन, पित्तात्तृड्दाहचोषबहुलं, सकफप्रसेकम् ।
श्लेष्मात्मकं, बहुरुजं बहुभिश्च विद्याद्वैगुण्यमोहजडताभिरथापरं च ॥४॥

Pain and a sense of compression in the precordial region characterise a case of *vātika* (anorexia); excessive thirst, burning sensation and sucking type of pain in *phaittika*, mucoid salivation in *kaphaja*, and various types of pain are present in that (anorexia) caused by the simultaneous vitiation of multiple humours; whereas the remaining variety (of anorexia due to the psychic factors) manifests with uneasiness of the mind, confusion and dullness, etc.

१४.४. अरोचक के सामान्य लक्षण

वातजन्य अरोचक में हृदय प्रदेश में पीड़ा एवं जकड़ाहट का अनुभव होता है । पित्तज अरोचक में तृष्णा, दाह एवं चोष अधिक होता है । कफजन्य अरोचक में कफ प्रसेक होता है । बहुदोषजन्य अरोचक में अनेक प्रकार की

-
1. It implies that various types of tastes due to the vitiation of the individual humours as mentioned earlier in this chapter may simultaneously be present.

पीड़ा होती है । शोकादिजन्य आगन्तुज अरोचक में मानसिक उद्धिगता, मोह एवं जड़ता आदि लक्षण होते हैं ।

इति श्रीमाधवकरविरचिते माधवनिदाने अरोचकनिदानं समाप्तम् ॥ १४ ॥

Thus ends (the fourteenth chapter entitled)
'The Diagnosis of Anorexia' of Mādhava Nidāna,
as compiled by Śrī Mādhavakara.

इस प्रकार श्रीमाधवकर द्वारा सङ्कलित माधव-निदान का
अरोचकनिदान (नामक चौदहवाँ अध्याय) समाप्त हुआ ।

M. N. 14

SUGGESTED RESEARCH PROBLEMS**1. Historical & Comparative**

A historical and comparative study should be carried out on the concepts of anorexia as outlined in this chapter (1-4).

2. Clinical

An attempt should be made to correlate the five types of anorexia (1-4) in terms of modern clinical terminology.



माधवनिदानम्

पञ्चदशोऽध्यायः

छर्दिनिदानम्

THE DIAGNOSIS OF EMESIS

CHAPTER FIFTEEN

MĀDHAVA-NIDĀNA

M. N. 15


SUMMARY

Five types (1) of vomiting – four due to the vitiation of humours and a fifth one due to the exogenous causes such as the repulsive sights, etc. have been given.

Dietary irregularity, worm infestations, pregnancy and psychic trauma have been considered among the aetiological factors (2-4) and nausea and salivation as the premonitory symptoms (5).

Clinical features of all the four humoral types of emesis have been mentioned along with the characteristics on the physical examination of the vomitus (6-9). Features of vomiting due to pregnancy, worm infestations and psychic trauma have been dealt with separately (12,13).

Features of emesis with a fatal prognosis (10,11) include faecal vomiting. Persistent vomiting in an emaciated person and containing blood and pus has also been considered incurable (14). Complications of vomiting have been mentioned (15).



पञ्चदशोऽध्यायः

CHAPTER FIFTEEN

छर्दिनिदानम्

THE DIAGNOSIS OF EMESIS

15. 1. Types

दुष्टैर्दोषैः पृथक् सर्वैर्वीभत्साऽऽलोचनादिभिः ।

छर्दयः पञ्च विज्ञेयास्तासां लक्षणमुच्यते ॥ १ ॥

Vomiting is of five types, viz. due to the (three) vitiated humours separately as well as all of them together, and that due to seeing loathsome sights¹, etc. Their features would now be described.

१५. १. भेद

तीनों दोषों के पृथक् पृथक् दूषित होने से (वातज, पित्तज एवं कफज) तथा संयुक्त रूप से दूषित होने से (सन्निपातिक) एवं वीभत्स वस्तुओं के दर्शन आदि (आगन्तुज कारणों) से पाँच प्रकार की छर्दि उत्पन्न होती है। अब इनके लक्षणों का वर्णन किया जायगा।

1. Psychosensory. (Psychic vomiting induced through sensory pathways). It is due to reflex stimulation of the vomiting centre through sense organs, particularly the eyes, the ears, the nose and the tongue by loathsome sights, vestibular stimulation as in travel or sea sickness, bad smell and unpleasant taste respectively.

15. 2-4. Aetio-pathogenesis

अतिद्रवैरतिस्निग्धैरहृद्यैर्लवणैरति ।
 अकाले चातिमात्रैश्च तथाऽसात्म्यैश्च भोजनैः ॥ २ ॥
 श्रमाद्भ्रूयात्तथोद्वेगादजीर्णात् क्रिमिदोषतः ।
 नार्याश्चापन्नसत्त्वायास्तथाऽतिद्रुतमशनतः ॥ ३ ॥
 बीभत्सहेतुभिश्चान्यैर्द्रुतमुत्त्वलेशितो बलात् ।
 छादयन्नाननं वेगैरर्दयन्नङ्गभञ्जनैः ।
 निरुच्यते छर्दिरिति दोषो वक्त्रं प्रघावितः ॥ ४ ॥

(सु० उ० ४६. ३-६)

Excessive use of liquids, excessive use of oily substances as also of disagreeable articles, too much of salts, taking meals at undesirable times or over-eating, an intake of unsuitable diet, fatigue, fear, stress, indigestion, worm infestations, pregnancy in women and taking meals very rapidly may result in vomiting; loathsome sights are the other causes (of vomiting).

All these lead to a sudden and forceful nausea and when the vitiated *doṣas* well up in the oral cavity they are expelled through the mouth distressing the body along with a sensation as if the body parts (limbs) were being broken; (etymologically) it is therefore called *chardi*¹ (vomiting).

(S. S. VI. 49. 3-6)

१५. २-४. हेतु एवं सम्प्राप्ति

अति द्रव, अति स्निग्ध, मन के प्रतिकूल एवं अति लवण रस युक्त पदार्थों के सेवन से, अकाल में तथा अधिक मात्रा में भोजन करने से, असात्म्य भोजन से,

1. Etymologically *chardi* consists of two components viz. *chada*+*arda*. *Chada* implies welling up (in the oral cavity) and *arda* means pain.

श्रम, भय, उद्वेग, अजीर्ण तथा कृमि दोष से छर्दि उत्पन्न होती है। इनके अतिरिक्त गर्भवती स्त्री को, अधिक शीघ्रता में भोजन करने से एवं वीभत्स वस्तुओं से वमन उत्पन्न होता है।

अचानक उत्क्लेदित होकर मुख को आच्छादित करके तथा अंग प्रत्यंग को पीड़ित करता हुआ वेग के साथ मुख द्वारा निकलने वाला प्रकुपित दोष छर्दि कहलाता है।¹

15. 5. Premonitory Symptoms

हृल्लासोद्गाररौघौ च प्रसेको लवणस्तनुः ।

द्वेषोऽन्नपाने च भृशं वमीनां पूर्वलक्षणम् ॥ ५ ॥

Excessive nausea, cessation of eructations, saltish thin salivation and aversion to food and drinks are the premonitory symptoms of vomiting.

१५. ५. पूर्वरूप

हृल्लास (मिचली), उद्गार का ठीक न आना, मुख से तनु (पतला) एवं लवण युक्त साव का होना तथा अन्न पान से द्वेष होना वमन के पूर्व रूप हैं।

15. 6. Vāta ja emesis

हृत्पार्श्वपीडा मुखशोषशीर्षनाभ्यर्तिकासस्वरभेदतोदैः ।

उद्गारशब्दप्रबलं सफेनं विच्छिन्नकृष्णं तनुकं कषायम् ।

कृच्छ्रेण चाल्पं महता च वेगेनार्तोऽनिलाच्छर्दयतीह दुःखम् ॥ ६ ॥

(च० चि० २०. ८/२, ६)

In a case of *vāta ja* emesis pain in the precordium and the sides, dryness of the mouth, headache, dis-

-
1. छर्दि दो शब्दों से मिल कर बना है। छद + अर्द। छद का अर्थ है मुख में वेग-पूर्वक छा जाना या भर जाना तथा अर्द का अर्थ पीड़ा से होता है।

comfort in the umbilical region, cough, hoarseness of voice and pricking sensation are present. He brings out eructations with loud sounds and frothy, shredded, blackish, thin and astringent vomitus with difficulty in small quantity and with great force. This patient of *vātika* emesis vomits painfully.

(C. S. VI. 20. 8/2, 9)

१५.६. वातज छर्दि

वातज छर्दि में हृदय एवं पार्श्व में वेदना, मुख का सूखना, शिर तथा नाभि में पीड़ा, कास, स्वरभेद तथा अंगों में सुई चुभने की भाँति पीड़ा होती है। उद्गार बड़े वेग से, फेनयुक्त विच्छिन्न (टुकड़े टुकड़े के रूप में), कृष्ण वर्ण का तथा कसैले रस से युक्त निकलता है। वमन अत्यन्त वेग से बड़ी कठिनाई के साथ तथा अल्प मात्रा में निकलता है। रोगी विशेष कष्ट का अनुभव करता है।

15. 7. Pittaja emesis

मूर्च्छापिपासामुखशोषमूर्धताल्वक्षिसन्तापतमोभ्रमार्तः ।

पीतं भृशोष्णं हरितं सतिक्तं धूम्रं च पित्तेन वमत्सदाहम् ॥ ७ ॥

(च० चि० २०. ११)

A case of *pittaja* emesis suffers from fainting, thirst, dryness of the mouth, a sensation of warmth in the head, the palate and the eyes, a feeling of sinking into darkness and vertigo. He brings out yellow, very hot, green, bitter and smoky vomitus with a burning sensation.

(C. S. VI. 20. 11)

१५.७. पित्तज छर्दि

पित्तज छर्दि में मूर्च्छा, प्यास की अधिकता, मुख का शुष्क होना, शिर, तालु एवं नेत्रों में जलन, आँखों के सामने अन्धकार तथा भ्रम से रोगी पीड़ित रहता है। इसमें वमन पदार्थ का वर्ण पीत या हरा होता है तथा अधिक उष्ण

एवं तिक्त रस युक्त होता है । वमन होते समय रोगी ऐसा अनुभव करता है जैसे कि मुख से धूम्र निकल रहा हो तथा वह गले में दाह अनुभव करता है ।

15.8. Kaphaja emesis

तन्द्राऽऽस्यमाधुर्यकफप्रसेकसन्तोषनिद्राऽरुचिगौरवार्तः ।

स्निग्धं घनं स्वादु कफाद्विशुद्धं सरोमहर्षोऽल्परुजं वमेत् ॥ ८ ॥

(च० चि० २०.१३)

A case of *kaphaja* type of emesis presents with drowsiness, sweet taste in the mouth, mucoid salivation, a sense of satiety, somnolence, anorexia and heaviness (of the body). He brings out sticky, thick, sweet and whitish vomitus with horripilation and mild pain.

(C. S. VI. 20. 13)

१५.८. कफज छर्दि

इसमें तन्द्रा, मुख में मीठापन, कफ का (मुख से) प्रसेक होना, भोजन में संतोष (अर्थात् हमेशा पेट का भरा-सा अनुभव होना), निद्रा, अरुचि तथा गौरव आदि लक्षण होते हैं । वमन पदार्थ स्निग्ध, गाढ़ा, मधुर और श्वेत वर्ण का होता है । रोगी के शरीर में रोमांच एवं वमन अल्प वेदना के साथ आता है ।

15.9. Sannipāṭaja emesis

शूलाविपाकारुचिदाहृत्तृष्णाश्वासप्रमोहप्रबला प्रसक्तम् ।

छर्दिस्त्रिदोषाल्लवणास्लनीलसान्द्रोष्णरक्तं वमतां नृणां स्यात् ॥ ९ ॥

(च० चि० २०.१५)

A person with *tridoṣaja* vomiting has persistently severe colicky pain, indigestion, anorexia, a burning sensation, thirst, dyspnoea and fainting. He brings out saltish, sour, bluish, thick, hot and sanguinous vomitus.

(C. S. VI. 20. 15)

१५. ६. सन्निपातिक छर्दि

इसमें रोगी के उदर में तीव्र एवं निरन्तर शूल, अन्न का अविपाक, अरुचि, दाह, तृष्णा, श्वास तथा मोह आदि लक्षण पाये जाते हैं। वमन पदार्थ नमकीन, अम्ल, नील वर्ण का, गाढ़ा, उष्ण एवं रक्त मिश्रित होता है।

15. 10, 11. Characteristics of Fatal Vomiting

विट्स्वेदमूत्राम्बुवहानि वायुः स्रोतांसि संरुध्य यदोर्ध्वमेति ।

उत्सन्नदोषस्य समाचितं तं दोषं समुद्धूय नरस्य कोष्ठात् ॥ १० ॥

विष्णूमूत्रयोस्तत्समगन्धवर्णं तृट्श्वासहिवकातियुतं प्रसक्तम् ।

प्रच्छर्दयेद् दुष्टमिहातिवेगात्तयाऽर्दितश्चाशु विनाशमेति ॥ ११ ॥

(च० चि० २०. १६, १७)

When *vāyu*, obstructing the channels of faeces, sweat, urine and fluid (system of the body) traverses upwards in a person whose humours have increased, it brings out the accumulated *doṣas* from his alimentary tract (as vomitus).

The patient vomits incessantly with great force bringing vitiated substances of the odour and colouration of faeces and urine with the associated complications of thirst, dyspnoea and hiccough; a person suffering from such a condition would succumb soon.

(C. S. VI. 20. 16, 17)

१५. १०, ११. छर्दि के अरिष्ट लक्षण

ज्व वायु प्रकुपित होकर मल, स्वेद, मूत्र तथा अम्बुवह स्रोतों को अवरुद्ध कर ऊपरी भाग में आता है तब प्रवृद्ध दोषों वाले व्यक्तियों के दोषों को कोष्ठ से बाहर निकाल देता है। ऐसी अवस्था में वमन से निकले हुए पदार्थ में मल-मूत्र के समान वर्ण और गन्ध होते हैं। वह रोगी प्यास, श्वास तथा हिक्का से लगातार कष्ट पाता रहता है। वमन अति वेग से होता है तथा वमित पदार्थ

अत्यन्त दूषित होता है । इस प्रकार का वमन रोग शीघ्र ही रोगी का नाश कर देता है ।

15. 12. Āgantuja emesis (Psychosensory emesis)

वीभत्सजा दौर्हृदजाऽऽमजा च ह्यसात्म्यजा च क्रिमिजा च या हि ।
सा पञ्चमी तां च विभावयेच्च दोषाच्छ्रूयेणैव यथोक्तमादौ ॥१२॥
(सु० उ० ४६. १२/२, १२/३)

The fifth type, which arises due to repulsive sights, pregnancy, *āma doṣa*, unsalutary diet and worm infestations, is the *āgantuja* emesis. This should also be recognised according to the *doṣas*, as mentioned above.

(S. S. VI. 49. 12/2, 12/3)

१५. १२. आगन्तुज छर्दि

वीभत्स वस्तुओं के सम्पर्क से, गर्भवती स्त्रियों में, आमदोष से, असात्म्य भोजन से तथा क्रिमियों से उत्पन्न होने वाली पाँचवें प्रकार की छर्दि को आगन्तुज छर्दि कहते हैं । इसका भी उपरोक्त प्रकार से दोषों के आधार पर ही विचार करना चाहिए ।

15. 13. Kṛmija emesis

शूलहृल्लासबहुला क्रिमिजा च विशेषतः ।
क्रिमिहृद्रोगतुल्येन लक्षणैर्न च लक्षिता ॥ १३ ॥
(सु० उ० ४६. १३)

Colicky pain (in the abdomen) and excessive nausea specially characterise the emesis due to worm infestations; the other features are the same as in cardiac diseases due to worm infestations¹.

(S. S. VI. 49. 13)

1. M. N. 29.6.

१५. १३. कृमिज छर्दि

इसमें उदर शूल तथा हृत्तास विशेष रूप से होते हैं । इसके अतिरिक्त अन्य लक्षण क्रिमिज हृद्रोग के समान पाये जाते हैं ।

15. 14. Incurable vomiting

क्षीणस्य या छर्दिरतिप्रसक्ता सोपद्रवा शोणितपूययुक्ता ।

सचन्द्रिकां तां प्रवदेदसाध्यां साध्यां चिकित्सेन्निरुपद्रवां च ॥ १४ ॥

(च० चि० २०. १६)

Vomiting in an emaciated person, if persistent, associated with complications, contains blood and pus, and is glistening (like the variegated colours of the peacock feathers) is said to be incurable. However, if it is uncomplicated and appears curable, it should be treated.

(C. S. VI. 20. 19)

१५. १४. असाध्य छर्दि के लक्षण

वमन रोग से पीड़ित रोगी यदि क्षीण हो, निरन्तर वमन होता हो, उपद्रवों से युक्त हो, वमन पदार्थ रक्त एवं पूय मिश्रित हो तथा मयूर पंख के समान नाना वर्ण वाला हो तो उसे असाध्य समझना चाहिए । जो वमन रोग उपद्रव रहित हो उसे साध्य समझ कर चिकित्सा करनी चाहिए ।

15. 15. Complications

कासः श्वासो ज्वरो हिक्का तृष्णा वैचित्त्यमेव च ।

हृद्रोगस्तमकश्चैव ज्ञेयाश्छर्देरुपद्रवाः ॥ १५ ॥

Cough, dyspnoea, fever, hiccough, thirst, a state of confusion, cardiac diseases and asthma are known to be the complications of emesis.

१५. १५. छर्दि के उपद्रव

कास, श्वास, ज्वर, हिकका, तृष्णा, वैचित्य, हृद्रोग तथा तमक श्वास छर्दि के उपद्रव होते हैं।

इति श्रीमाधवकरविरचिते माधवनिदाने छर्दिनिदानम् समाप्तम् ॥१५॥

Thus ends (the fifteenth chapter entitled)
'The Diagnosis of Emesis' of Mādhava Nidāna, as
compiled by Śrī Mādhavakara.

इस प्रकार श्रीमाधवकर द्वारा सङ्कलित माधव-निदान का
'छर्दि निदान' (नामक पन्द्रहवाँ अध्याय) समाप्त हुआ।

M. N. 15

SUGGESTED RESEARCH PROBLEMS

1. A historical and comparative study on the conceptual aspects of emesis as given in this chapter could be planned.
2. A clinical correlation between the conditions described in this chapter along with those seen in the modern times may bring out many new interesting facts to light.



माधवनिदानम्

षोडशोऽध्यायः

तृष्णानिदानम्

THE DIAGNOSIS OF THIRST

CHAPTER SIXTEEN

MĀDHAVA-NIDĀNA

भारत-भारत

भारत-भारत

भारत-भारत

भारत-भारत

भारत-भारत

भारत-भारत

भारत-भारत

भारत-भारत

भारत-भारत

भारत-भारत

भारत-भारत

भारत-भारत

भारत-भारत

M. N. 16

SUMMARY

Seven clinical types of thirst (as a disease) have been described (1,2) : three due to vitiated humours (3-5), injury causing pain, bleeding and shock (6/1), dehydration and electrolyte imbalance (6/2, 7), imperfect digestion of food (8/1), and the seventh, as a physiological one after taking meals (8/2). It could also arise as a complication of other diseases (9).

Fever, confusion, emaciation, cough and dyspnoea could manifest as complications of thirst (10/1). Persistent vomiting associated with complications in an emaciated person could be fatal (10/2, 10/3).

षोडशोऽध्यायः

CHAPTER SIXTEEN

तृष्णानिदानम्

THE DIAGNOSIS OF THIRST

16. 1. Aetio-pathogenesis

भयश्रमाभ्यां बलसंक्षयाद्वा ह्यूर्ध्वं चितं पित्तविवर्धनैश्च ।
पित्तं सवातं कुपितं नराणां तालुप्रपन्नं जनयेत्पिपासाम् ।
स्रोतस्स्वपांवाहिषु दूषितेषु दोषैश्च तृट् संभवतीह जन्तोः ॥ १ ॥

Due to fear¹, physical exertion² or loss of strength³, or else due to other *pitta*-aggravating causes in the human beings the accumulated *pitta* along with *vāyu* gets vitiated, traverses upwards and reaching the palatal region produces thirst. When the water-carrying channels thus get vitiated by the humours thirst is felt by the living beings.

१६. १. निदान एवं सम्प्राप्ति

भय, श्रम, बल क्षय एवं पित्त-वर्धक कारणों से प्रकुपित पित्त मनुष्यों में वात के साथ ऊर्ध्वगामी होकर तालु में पहुँच कर तृष्णा उत्पन्न करता है । इस प्रकार जब अम्बुवाही स्रोतस दोषों से दूषित हो जाते हैं तो प्राणियों में तृष्णा की अनुभूति होती है ।

1. And other psychic factors.
2. Leading to water and electrolyte imbalance.
3. Leading to hypoprotinaemia.

16. 2. Types

तिस्रः स्मृतास्ताः क्षतजा चतुर्थी क्षयात्तथा ह्यामसमुद्भवा च ।

भक्तोद्भवा सप्तमिकेति तासां निबोध लिङ्गान्यनुपूर्वशस्तु ॥ २ ॥

(सु० उ० ४८. ६)

There are three types of *tr̥ṣṇā* (according to the three *doṣas*); a fourth one is *kṣataja*. Others are *kṣayaaja* and *āmaja* and the seventh is one which arises after taking food. Their symptomatology would now be described in the same order.

(S. S. VI. 48. 6)

१६. २. भेद

तृष्णा सात प्रकार की होती है यथा—वात, पित्त एवं कफजन्य तीन प्रकार की, चौथी क्षतजन्य, पाँचवीं क्षयजन्य, छठीं आमजन्य एवं सातवीं भोजन करने के पश्चात् उत्पन्न होती है । अब इसी क्रम से इनके लक्षणों का वर्णन किया जायगा ।

16. 3. Vātaja Thirst

क्षामास्यता मास्तसंभवायां तोदस्तथा शङ्खशिरःसु चापि ।

स्रोतोनिरोधो विरसं च वक्त्रं शीताभिरद्भिश्च विवृद्धिमेति ॥ ३ ॥

(सु० उ० ४८. ८)

In a case of *vātaja tr̥ṣṇā* there is dryness of the mouth, pricking pain in the temporal regions and the head, obstruction of the passages, no taste in the mouth, and exacerbation (of the disease) on drinking of cold water.

(S. S. VI. 48. 8)

१६. ३. वातजन्य तृष्णा

वातजन्य तृष्णा में मुख में शुष्कता, शिर एवं शंख प्रदेशों में सुई चुभने जैसी वेदना, स्रोतों का अवरोध तथा मुख में विरसता (फीकापन) होती है । शीतल जल के पीने से तृष्णा और बढ़ती है ।

16. 4. Pittaja Thirst

मूर्च्छास्त्रविद्वेषविलापदाहा रक्तेक्षणत्वं प्रततश्च शोषः ।

शीताभिनन्दा मुखतिक्तता च पित्तात्मिकायां परिदूयनं च ॥ ४ ॥

(सु० उ० ४८. ६)

In a case of *pittaja* thirst, there is fainting, aversion to food, delirium, burning sensation, blood-shot eyes, parched mouth, a longing for cold, a bitter taste in the mouth and a sensation as if the whole body is burning.

(S. S. VI. 48. 9)

१६. ४. पित्तजन्य तृष्णा

पित्तजन्य तृष्णा में मूर्च्छा, अन्न द्वेष, विलाप, दाह, नेत्रों में लालिमा तथा निरन्तर मुख-शोष होता है । शीतल पदार्थों के प्रति प्रेम, मुख का स्वाद तिक्त तथा शरीर में आग लगी सी अनुभूति होती है ।

16. 5. Kaphaja Thirst

वाष्पावरोधात्कफसंवृतेऽग्नौ तृष्णा बलासेन भवेत्तथा तु ।

निद्रा गुरुत्वं मधुरास्यता च तयादितः शुष्यति चातिमात्रम् ॥ ५ ॥

(सु० उ० ४८. १० पा०)

When the (digestive) fire is enveloped by *kapha* and the water channels get obstructed, thirst of the *kaphaja* origin develops.

There is sleepiness, heaviness (in the body) and sweet taste in the mouth. The patient suffering from this condition becomes extremely dehydrated.

(Var. S. S. VI. 48. 10)

१६. ५. कफजन्य तृष्णा

प्रकुपित कफ द्वारा अग्नि के आवृत्त होने से तथा वाष्प के अवरोध से कफजन्य तृष्णा उत्पन्न होती है । इसमें नींद अधिक आती है, शरीर में भारीपन रहता है, मुख का स्वाद मधुर होता है तथा रोगी बहुत सूख जाता है ।

16. 6/1. Kṣataja Thirst

क्षतस्य रक्क्षोणितनिर्गमाभ्यां तृष्णा चतुर्थी क्षतजा मता तु ।

(सु० उ० ४८. १२/१)

In a wounded person thirst is produced due to severe pain and loss of blood (leading to shock); this fourth variety is known as the *kṣataja tṛṣṇā*.

(S. S. VI. 48. 12/1)

१६. ६/१. क्षतजन्य तृष्णा

क्षत के कारण अत्यधिक रक्त स्त्राव एवं पीड़ा से चौथे प्रकार की क्षतज तृष्णा उत्पन्न होती है ।

16. 6/2, 7. Kṣayaaja Thirst¹

रसक्षयाद्या क्षयसंभवा सा तयाऽभिभूतश्च निशादिनेषु ॥ ६ ॥

पेपीयतेऽभः स सुखं न याति तां सन्निपातादिति केचिदाहुः ।

रसक्षयोक्तानि च लक्षणानि तस्यामशेषेण भिषग्व्यवस्येत् ॥ ७ ॥

(सु० उ० ४८. १२/२-१४/१ पा०)

The *kṣayaaja* thirst is produced due to depletion of *rasa* (plasma). The patient suffering from this goes on drinking water repeatedly day and night without satiation. Some ascribe it to the simultaneous vitiation of the three humours. The physicians should note that all other features of *rasakṣaya* (plasma loss) described elsewhere² are also associated in this type (of thirst).

(Var. S. S. VI. 48. 12/2-14/1)

1. Dehydration and electrolyte imbalance.

2. S.S. I. 15.9. (FPC P. 257).

१६. ६/२, ७. क्षयजन्य तृष्णा

क्षयज तृष्णा, रस घातु के क्षय के कारण उत्पन्न होती है। इससे पीड़ित रोगी दिन रात बार बार पानी पीता रहता है। जल पीने के पश्चात् भी सुख की अनुभूति नहीं होती तथा कुछ लोग इसे त्रिदोषजन्य (सन्निपातिक) भी कहते हैं। भिषगों को रसक्षय के अन्योक्त सभी लक्षणों को भी इसके लक्षण समझना चाहिए।

16. 8/1. Āmaja Thirst

त्रिदोषलिङ्गाऽऽमसमुद्भवा च हृन्तूलनिष्ठीवनसादकर्त्री ।

(सु० उ० ४८. १४/२)

Tṛṣṇā arising from the *āma doṣa*¹ is characterised by the features of all the three humours, as well as precordial pain, salivation and malaise.

(S. S. VI. 48. 14/2)

१६. ८/१. आमजन्य तृष्णा

तीनों दोषों के लक्षणों से युक्त आमज तृष्णा में, हृदय प्रदेश में शूल, थूक का अधिक आना तथा शरीर में शिथिलता, ये विशेष लक्षण पाये जाते हैं।

16. 8/2. Bhaktaja Thirst²

स्निग्धं तथाऽम्लं लवणं च भुक्तं गुर्वन्मेवाशु तृषां करोति ॥ ८ ॥

(सु० उ० ४८. १५/१)

An excessive use of oily, sour, saltish and heavy articles of diet quickly produces thirst (of the *bhaktaja* origin).

(S. S. VI. 48. 15/1)

-
1. Resulting from indigestion.
 2. Thirst after eating food.

१६. ८/२. भक्तोद्भव तृष्णा

स्निग्ध, अम्ल, लवण और गुरु अन्न के अधिक खाने से भक्तोद्भव तृष्णा उत्पन्न होती है ।

16. 9. Upasargaja Thirst¹

दीनस्वरः प्रताम्यन् दीनः संशुष्कवक्त्रगलतालुः ।

भवति खलु योपसर्गात्तृष्णा सा शोषिणी कष्टा ॥ ९ ॥

(च० चि० २२. १६/२, १७/१)

When thirst occurs as a complication of other diseases, the voice of the person becomes very weak, he becomes confused, looks apathetic and his mouth, throat and palate become parched up; this type of thirst produces (excessive) dehydration and is very distressing.

(C. S. VI. 22. 16/2, 17/1)

१६. ९. उपसर्गज तृष्णा

जब किसी अन्य रोग के उपद्रव स्वरूप तृष्णा उत्पन्न होती है तो उसे उपसर्गजा कहते हैं । इसमें रोगी का स्वर क्षीण हो जाता है, वह कभी-कभी मूर्छित हो जाता है तथा अपने को अत्यन्त दीन समझता है । उसके मुख, गला एवं तालु शुष्क रहते हैं । यह तृष्णा रोगी को शुष्क कर देती है तथा कष्टदायी होती है ।

16. 10/1. Complications

ज्वरमोहक्षयकासश्वासाद्युपसृष्टदेहानाम् ।

(च० चि० २२. १७/२)

Fever, confusion, emaciation, cough and dyspnoea, etc. are the complications (of thirst) in the human beings.

(C. S. VI. 22. 17/2)

1. Thirst as a complication of other diseases.

१६. १०/१. उपद्रव

ज्वर, मोह, क्षय, कास और श्वास आदि शरीर में (तृष्णा के) उपद्रव स्वरूप उत्पन्न होते हैं।

16. 10/2, 10/3. Incurable Thirst

सर्वास्त्वितिप्रसक्ता रोगकृशानां वमिप्रयुक्तानाम् ।

घोरपद्रवयुक्तास्तृष्णा मरणाय विज्ञेयाः ॥ १० ॥

(च० चि० २२. १८)

All the above types of thirst, if excessive and incessant, occurring in patients who have become emaciated due to (the chronicity of) the disease, or if preceded by persistent vomiting or if associated with severe complications should be known to be (invariably) fatal.

(C. S. VI. 22. 18)

१६. १०/२, १०/३. असाध्य तृष्णा

रोग से कृश व्यक्तियों में जब तृष्णा अधिक प्रमाण में हो, रोगी को वमन होता हो तथा वह घोर उपद्रवों से युक्त हो तो उससे (रोगी की निश्चित) मृत्यु समझनी चाहिए।

इति श्रीमाधवकरविरचिते माधवनिदाने तृष्णानिदानं समाप्तम् ॥१६॥

Thus ends (the sixteenth chapter entitled) 'The Diagnosis of Thirst' of Mādhava Nidāna, as compiled by Śrī Mādhavakara.

इस प्रकार श्रीमाधवकर द्वारा सङ्कलित माधव-निदान का तृष्णा निदान (नामक सोलहवाँ अध्याय) समाप्त हुआ।

M. N. 16

SUGGESTED RESEARCH PROBLEMS

1. Historical and comparative studies on the conceptual aspects of thirst as given in this chapter are indicated, specially under the following heads :
 - (i) the aetiopathogenesis (1)
 - (ii) types (2)
 - (iii) diagnostic features of the seven clinical types (3-8)
 - (iv) thirst as a complication of other diseases (9)
 - (v) complications of thirst (10/1) and
 - (vi) fatal signs (10/2, 10/3).
 2. An attempt should be made to correlate the syndromes mentioned in this chapter with the clinical conditions seen today.
-

माधवनिदानम्
सप्तदशोऽध्यायः

मूर्च्छाभ्रमनिद्रातन्द्रासंन्यासनिदानम्

THE DIAGNOSIS OF FAINTING, VERTIGO, SLEEP,
DROWSINESS AND COMA

CHAPTER SEVENTEEN
MĀDHAVA-NIDĀNA

THE

LIBRARY

OF THE

AMERICAN

LIBRARY

OF THE

LIBRARY

THE

LIBRARY

LIBRARY

M. N. 17

SUMMARY

This chapter discusses the diagnosis of various conditions in which consciousness is totally or partially lost; five such states viz. fainting, vertigo, sleep, drowsiness and coma have been mentioned.

Fainting (1-18)

Six types of fainting attacks caused by the three humours, blood, alcoholism and poisoning have been described (1-5); clinical features of each have been given (6-18).

Other Conditions (19-23)

Vertigo (20/1, 20/2), drowsiness (20/3, 20/4) and coma (22, 23) have been separately described.

Differentiation between the various conditions (19, 21) has been given and the seriousness of coma mentioned (23).



SUMMARY

SUMMARY

This chapter discusses the diagnosis of various conditions in which various organs in the body are affected. It is divided into two main parts: the first part deals with the diagnosis of various conditions in which the organs of the body are affected, and the second part deals with the diagnosis of various conditions in which the organs of the body are affected.

SUMMARY

The types of fainting attacks caused by the three main causes, blood, alcoholism and poisoning have been described (1-3). Clinical signs of each have been given (4-10).

Other Conditions (11-13)

Verigo (11), 20(1), 20(2), drowsiness (20(3), 20(4) and coma (22, 23) have been separately described.

The distinction between the various conditions (19, 21) has been given and the symptoms of coma described (22).

सप्तदशोऽध्यायः

CHAPTER SEVENTEEN

मूर्च्छाभ्रमनिद्रातन्द्रासंन्यासनिदानम्

DIAGNOSIS OF FAINTING, VERTIGO,
SLEEP, DROWSINESS AND COMA

FAINTING (1-18)

17. 1-4. Aetiopathogenesis

क्षीणस्य बहुदोषस्य विरुद्धाहारसेविनः ।
वेगाघातादभिघाताद्धीनसत्त्वस्य वा पुनः ॥ १ ॥
करणायतनेषूग्रा बाह्येष्वाभ्यन्तरेषु च ।
निविशन्ते यदा दोषास्तदा मूर्च्छन्ति मानवाः ॥ २ ॥
संज्ञावहासु नाडीषु पिहितास्वनिलादिभिः ।
तमोऽभ्युपैति सहसा सुखदुःखव्यपोहकृत् ॥ ३ ॥
सुखदुःखव्यपोहाच्च नरः पतति काष्ठवत् ।
मोहो मूर्च्छेति तामाहुः षड्विधा सा प्रकीर्तिता ॥ ४ ॥

(सु० उ० ४६. ३, ४, ६, ७)

In persons who are emaciated, who have an excess of *doṣas* and who take incompatible diet, particularly in those who are mentally weak, humours aggravated by the suppression of the natural evacuatory urges and trauma (both physical

and mental) involve the sensory apparatus, both external¹ and internal² and lead to fainting.³

When the sensory pathways get blocked by *vāyū* and other humours there is a sudden increase in *tamogūṇa*⁴ which leads to a loss of (the mental) perception for pleasure or pain. As a result of the absence of the perception of weal or woe the patient falls (unconscious) like a log of wood. This condition is called *moha* or *mūrcchā* (fainting) and is of six types.

(S. S. VI. 46. 3, 4, 6 and 7)

मूर्च्छा (१-१८)

१७. १-४. हेतु एवं सम्प्राप्ति

अति क्षीण मनुष्य, जिनमें दोषों का अधिक मात्रा में प्रकोप हो, जो विरुद्ध आहार सेवन करने वाले हों तथा हीन सत्त्व वाले हों तो वेग धारण एवं आघात के कारण मन के बाह्य⁵ तथा आभ्यन्तर⁶ आयतनों (स्रोतों) में जब प्रकुपित दोषों का प्रवेश हो जाता है तो वे मूर्छित हो जाते हैं ।

1. *Bahyakaraṇa* (बाह्यकरण) : The five special sense organs (पञ्च ज्ञानेन्द्रियाँ) i.e. skin (touch), tongue (taste), eye (sight), ear (hearing) and nose (smell).
2. *Antahkaraṇa* (अन्तःकरण) includes (i) Centres for sensory perception in the brain (बुद्धेन्द्रिय), (ii) Mind (मन) and (iii) Ego (अहंकार).
- 1, 2. Some scholars interpret internal as the sensory and external as the motor system.
3. These aetiological factors would thus include organic as well as functional (e.g. hysterical fits) causes of fainting.
4. Decreased activity of the mind.
5. पञ्च ज्ञानेन्द्रियाँ—त्वचा (स्पर्श), जिह्वा (स्वाद), नेत्र (दृष्टि), कर्ण (श्रवण) एवं नासा (गन्ध) ।
6. बुद्धेन्द्रिय, मन और अहंकार ।

वातादि दोषों से संज्ञावह नाड़ियों में अवरोध होने पर सहसा सुख एवं दुःख का ज्ञान नष्ट कर देने वाला तमोगुण व्याप्त हो जाता है। सुख एवं दुःख के ज्ञान से शून्य मनुष्य काष्ठ के समान गिर पड़ता है। इस अवस्था को मोह या मूर्च्छा कहते हैं जो छः प्रकार की होती है।

17. 5. Types

वातादिभिः शोणितेन मद्येन च विषेण च ।

षट्स्वप्नेतासु पित्तं तु प्रभुत्वेनावतिष्ठते ॥ ५ ॥

(सु० उ० ४६. ८)

Although they are of six types, viz. (three) due to *vāta*, etc. (*vāta*, *pitta* and *kapha*), (and three due to) blood, alcoholism and poisoning, *pitta* predominates in all of them.

(S. S. VI. 46. 8)

१७. ५. भेद

यद्यपि मूर्च्छा वातादि दोषों से (तीन प्रकार की), रक्त से, मद्य से और विष से ऐसे छः प्रकार की होती है, फिर भी इन सब में पित्त की ही प्रधानता होती है।

17. 6. Prodromal Features

हृत्पीडा जृम्भणं ग्लानिः संज्ञादौर्बल्यमेव च ।

सर्वासां पूर्वरूपाणि, यथास्वं ता विभावयेत् ॥ ६ ॥

(सु० उ० ४६. ५)

Precordial pain, yawning, fatigue and diminished sensory perception are the prodromal features in all types (of fainting). However, the diagnosis of individual types has to be done on the basis of their specific clinical features (described below).

(S. S. VI. 46. 5)

१७.६. पूर्व रूप

हृदय में पीड़ा, जम्भाई, ग्लानि और संज्ञा-दौर्बल्य सभी प्रकार के मूर्च्छाओं के पूर्व रूप हैं। इनके भेदों को उनके विशिष्ट लक्षणों के आधार पर ही समझें।

17. 7,8. Vātaja fainting

नीलं वा यदि वा कृष्णमाकाशमथवाऽरुणम् ।

पश्यंस्तमः प्रविशति शीघ्रं च प्रतिबुध्यते ॥ ७ ॥

वेपथुश्चाङ्गमर्दश्च प्रपीडा हृदयस्य च ।

कार्श्यं श्यावाऽरुणाच्छाया मूर्च्छयि वातसंभवे ॥ ८ ॥

(सु० उ० ४६.६/१-६/४)

If a person sees the sky (coloured) as blue, black or red and then loses consciousness, but regains it soon, gets tremors, bodyache, precordial pain, emaciation and a blackish or reddish appearance, he should be known to have *vātika mūrccā* or fainting.

(S. S. VI. 46. 9/1-9/4)

१७.७,८. वातिक मूर्च्छा के लक्षण

रोगी आकाश को नीला, काला या लाल रंग का देखता हुआ मूर्च्छित हो जाय और फिर शीघ्र ही संज्ञावान हो जाय तथा शरीर में कम्पन, अंगमर्द, हृदपीड़ा, कार्श्य और शरीर की छवि कृष्ण अथवा लाल हो जाय तो इसे वात-जन्य मूर्च्छा समझना चाहिए।

17. 9,10. Pittaja fainting

रक्तं हरितवर्णं वा वियत्पीतमथापि वा ।

पश्यंस्तमः प्रविशति सस्वेदश्च प्रबुध्यते ॥ ९ ॥

सपिपासः ससन्तापो रक्तपीताकुलेक्षणः ।

(सु० उ० ४६.६/५-६/९)

(जातमात्रे पतति च शीघ्रं च प्रतिबुध्यते ।)

सभिन्नवर्चाः पीताभो मूर्च्छयि पित्तसंभवे ॥ १० ॥

(सु० उ० ४६.६/८)

In a case of *pittaja* fainting, the patient sees the sky (coloured) as red, green or yellow as he passes into a state of darkness. He wakes up with perspiration, thirst, fever and with reddish or yellowish eyes having an anxious look.

(S. S. VI. 46. 9/5-9/7)

(As soon as the fit starts he falls down but comes back to the senses soon).

He (later) gets loose motions and appears pale.

(S. S. VI. 46. 9/8)

१७.६, १०. पित्तिक मूर्च्छा के लक्षण

जब रोगी आकाश को लाल, हरा या पीले वर्ण का देखता हुआ मूर्छित हो जाय और स्वेद, पिपासा एवं ज्वर के साथ संज्ञा को प्राप्त करे तथा उसके नेत्र लाल, पीले अथवा आकुल दिखायी पड़ें (तथा वह इन लक्षणों के उत्पन्न होते ही गिर पड़े और फिर शीघ्र ही होश में आ जाये), तत्पश्चात् अनियन्त्रित मल त्याग करे तथा उसके शरीर की छवि पीताभ हो जाय तो इसे पित्त-जन्य मूर्च्छा समझना चाहिए ।

17. 11, 12. *Kaphaja fainting*

मेघसंकाशमाकाशमावृतं वा तमोघनैः ।

पश्यंस्तमः प्रविशति चिराच्च प्रतिबुध्यते ॥ ११ ॥

गुरुभिः प्रावृत्तैरङ्गैर्यथैवाद्र्हेण चर्मणा ।

सप्रसेकः सहृल्लासो मूर्च्छयि कफसंभवे ॥ १२ ॥

(सु० उ० ४६.६/९-६/१२)

In *kaphaja mūrccā* or fainting the person sees the sky like the clouds themselves or else as if it is

covered with dense dark clouds and then he faints; he regains consciousness very late and feels his body parts heavy and as if covered with moist leather; he also gets salivation and nausea.

(S. S. VI. 46. 9/9-9/12)

१७. ११, १२. कफज मूर्च्छा के लक्षण

जब रोगी आकाश को मेघों के समान अथवा काले और घने बादलों से आवृत्त देखता हुआ मूर्छित हो जाय तथा वह बहुत देर से होश में आवे, शरीर में गुरुता एवं गीले चमड़े से अङ्गों को आच्छादित अनुभव करे और प्रसेक तथा हृल्लास के साथ मूर्छित हो जाय तो उसे श्लेष्माजन्य मूर्च्छा समझना चाहिए ।

17. 13. Sannipātaja fainting

सर्वाकृतिः सन्निपातादपस्मार इवागतः ।

स जन्तुं पातयत्याशु बिना बीभत्सचेष्टितैः ॥ १३ ॥

(अ० ह० नि० ६. ३५)

Features of vitiation of all the (three) *doṣas* are found in a case of *sannipātaja* fainting and it is like an epileptic fit in onest. It also makes the patient fall down suddenly but without the hideous manifestations (as froth from the angles of the mouth, cutting of the tongue, rolling of the eyes, etc.).

(A. H. III. 6. 35)

१७. १३. सन्निपातिक मूर्च्छा के लक्षण

सन्निपातजन्य मूर्च्छा में सब दोषों के लक्षण होते हैं तथा यह अपस्मार के समान प्रारम्भ होती है । इसमें रोगी (झाग का आना, दाँतों का पीसना या रगड़ना, आँखें चढ़ना, आदि) बीभत्स लक्षणों के बिना ही शीघ्र मूर्छित हो जाता है ।

17.14,15/1. Fainting due to blood

(Neurogenic shock on seeing blood)¹

पृथिव्यापस्तमोरूपं रक्तगन्धस्तदन्वयः ।

तस्माद्रक्तस्य गन्धेन मूर्च्छन्ति भुवि मानवाः ॥ १४ ॥

द्रव्यस्वभाव इत्येके दृष्ट्वा यदभिमुह्यति ।

(सु० उ० ४६.६/१४, १०)

Earth and water have a predominance of *tamoguna*; the odour of the blood partakes of the same (and so it also has *tamoguna*). Therefore, in this world some persons faint just by perceiving the smell of the blood while others do so on seeing² it. However, other scholars ascribe this fainting to the innate nature³ (of the blood) itself.

(S. S. VI. 46. 9/14, 10)

१७. १४, १५/१. रक्तजा मूर्च्छा

पृथ्वी एवं जल तमोगुण बहुल होते हैं । रक्त की गन्ध भी पृथ्वी एवं जल से बने होने से तमोगुण से युक्त होती है । इसलिए कुछ मनुष्य इस पृथ्वी पर रक्त की गन्ध के कारण तथा कुछ रक्त को देख कर ही मूर्छित हो जाते हैं । पर कुछ विद्वानों का मत है कि यह मूर्च्छा रक्त के स्वाभाविक गुण के कारण ही होती है ।

1. For clinical features Ref. M.N. 17. 16/2.

2. Cf. the fainting of the medical students sometimes produced in operation theatre upon seeing their first operation and blood, or of other people just on seeing blood.

3. According to the second view people faint just because of the sight of blood and it has nothing to do with the predominance of *tamoguna* (i. e. odour of blood in this context).

17. 15/2, 16/1. Fainting due to Wines and Poisons¹

गुणास्तीव्रतरत्वेन स्थितास्तु विषमद्ययोः ॥ १५ ॥

त एव तस्मात्ताभ्यां तु मोहौ स्यातां यथेरितौ ।

(सु० उ० ४६. ११)

Poisons and wine possess strong and sharp properties, hence these produce fainting due to their specific properties (and the clinical features due to each would be) accordingly, as described elsewhere².

(S. S. VI. 46. 11)

१७. १५/२, १६/१. विषज तथा मद्यज मूर्च्छा

विष और मद्य में (रूक्षादि) गुण तीव्रतर होते हैं; अतः इन्हीं गुणों के कारण विषज एवं मद्यज मूर्च्छा उत्पन्न होती है ।

17. 16/2. Clinical Features of Fainting due to Blood³

स्तब्धाङ्गदृष्टिस्त्वसृजा गूढोच्छ्वासश्च मूर्च्छितः ॥ १६ ॥

(सु० उ० ४६. १२/१)

In a case of *raktaja mūrccā* the limbs become stiff, the eyes are fixed and the respiration becomes deep.

(S. S. VI. 46. 12/1)

१७. १६/२. रक्तज मूर्च्छा के लक्षण

इसमें रोगी के अंग एवं नेत्र (दृष्टि) स्तब्ध हो जाते हैं तथा वह गहरा श्वास लेता है ।

1. Stupor and coma.

2. Ref. M.N. 17. 17, 18.

3. For Aetiology Ref. M. N. 17. 14, 15/1.

17.17. Clinical Features of Fainting due to Wines¹ (Stupor)

मद्येन विलपञ्चेते नष्टविभ्रान्तमानसः ।

गात्राणि विक्षिपन् भूमौ जरां यावन्न याति तत् ॥ १७ ॥

(सु० उ० ४६. १२/२, १२/३)

In a case of fainting due to intoxication by wines the patient becomes delirious, remains lying unconscious or bewildered and flings his limbs hither and thither till the wine gets metabolised.

(S. S. VI. 46. 12/2, 12/3)

१७. १७. मद्यज मूर्च्छा के लक्षण

मद्य से रोगी विलाप करता हुआ, विक्षिप्त मन होकर संज्ञाहीन हो जाता है तथा जब तक मद्य का परिपाक नहीं हो जाता तब तक अंगों को पृथ्वी पर फेंकता पीटता रहता है ।

17.18. Clinical Features of Fainting due to Poisons¹ (Coma)

वेपथुस्वप्नतृष्णाः स्युस्तमश्च विषमूर्च्छिते ।

वेदितव्यं तीव्रतरं यथास्वं विषलक्षणैः ॥ १८ ॥

(सु० उ० ४६. १३)

In a case of fainting due to poisons there is trembling, sleepiness, excessive thirst and unconsciousness.

However, more severe symptoms may appear specific to the respective poisons concerned.

(S. S. VI. 46. 13)

१७. १८. विषजन्य मूर्च्छा के लक्षण

विष के कारण मूर्च्छित रोगी में कम्पन, निद्रा, प्यास तथा तम लक्षण पाये जाते हैं । इनके अतिरिक्त विषों के अनुसार उनके अपने-अपने विशिष्ट तीव्रतर लक्षण उत्पन्न हो सकते हैं ।

1. For Aetiology Ref. M. N. 17. 15/2, 16/1.

17. 19. Aetiology of Fainting, Vertigo, Drowsiness and Sleep

मूर्च्छा पित्ततमःप्राया रजःपित्तानिलाद् भ्रमः ।

तमोवातकफातन्द्रा निद्रा श्लेष्मतमोभवा ॥ १९ ॥

Generally, fainting is due to *pitta* and *tama*, vertigo due to *raja*, *pitta* and *vāta*, drowsiness due to *tama*, *vāta* and *kapha* and sleep due to *kapha* and *tama*.¹

१७. १९. मूर्च्छा, भ्रम, तन्द्रा तथा निद्रा की उत्पत्ति में भेद

प्रायः मूर्च्छा पित्त एवं तम से; भ्रम पित्त, वायु एवं रज से; तन्द्रा कफ, वात एवं तम से; और निद्रा श्लेष्मा और तम से उत्पन्न होते हैं ।²

17. 20/1, 20/2. Vertigo

चक्रवद् भ्रमतो गात्रं भूमौ पतति सर्वदा ।

भ्रमरोग इति ज्ञेयो रजःपित्तानिलात्मकः ॥

When the patient feels his head going round in circles like a wheel and subsequently he invariably falls on the ground, the condition is called vertigo; it is due to *raja*, *pitta* and *vāyu*.

१७. २०/१, २०/२. भ्रम

रोगी को सिर चक्रवत् घूमता सा लगता है, तत्पश्चात् वह सदा भूमि पर गिर पड़ता है; इसे भ्रम रोग समझना चाहिए । यह पित्त, वायु एवं रज दोष प्रधान होता है ।

1. Generally somatic derangements are due to *vāta*, *pitta* and *kapha*, whereas psychic disturbances are due to *raja* and *tama*; however a combination of both groups is found in these conditions.
2. शारीरिक विकृति वात, पित्त एवं कफ से तथा मानसिक विकृति रज एवं तम से होती है ।

17. 20/3, 20/4. Drowsiness

इन्द्रियार्थेष्वसंवित्तिगौरवं जृम्भणं क्लमः ।

निद्रार्तस्येव यस्येहा तस्य तन्द्रां विनिर्दिशेत् ॥ २० ॥

When a person loses the power of perception of objects by the sensory organs, feels heaviness of the body, yawning, as well as fatigue and whose actions appear as if overpowered by sleep, the condition should be recognised as drowsiness.

१७. २०/३, २०/४. तन्द्रा

इन्द्रियार्थों का यथार्थ ज्ञान न होना, गौरव, जृम्भा तथा क्लम का होना और निद्रा के सदृश चेष्टा करना तन्द्रा के लक्षण होते हैं ।

17. 21. Differentiation between alcoholism, fainting and coma

दोषेषु मदमूर्च्छायाः कृतवेगेषु देहिनाम् ।

स्वयमेवोपशाम्यन्ति संन्यासो नौषर्धेर्विना ॥ २१ ॥

(अ० हृ० नि० ६. ३६)

The human beings recover from the afflictions of alcoholism and fainting automatically on the subsidence of the attack, but never without medication from coma.

(A. H. III. 6.36)

१७. २१. संन्यास, मद एवं मूर्च्छा में भेद

मद एवं मूर्च्छा दोषों के वेग शान्त होने पर स्वयं ही शान्त हो जाते हैं; किन्तु संन्यास रोग बिना औषधि के कभी नहीं शान्त होता ।

17. 22, 23. Coma

वाग्देहमनसां चेष्टामाक्षिप्यातिबला मलाः ।

संन्यस्यन्त्यबलं जन्तुं प्राणायतनमाश्रिताः ॥ २२ ॥

स ना संन्याससंन्यस्तः काष्ठीभूतो मृतोपमः ।

प्राणैर्विमुच्यते शीघ्रं मुत्तवा सद्यःफलां क्रियाम् ॥ २३ ॥

(अ० दृ० नि० ६. ३७, ३८)

When the extremely aggravated *doṣas* get localised at the vital centres, paralyse the functions of speech, body and the mind¹ and render the powerless person comatose, the patient lies unconscious in a state of coma like a log of wood as if dead. Unless quick fruitful measures are taken immediately the patient loses his life soon.

(A. H. III. 6. 37, 38)

१७. २२, २३. संन्यास

क्षीण मनुष्य में बहुत बड़े हुए दोष जब प्राणायतन में पहुँच कर वाणी, शरीर एवं मन की क्रियाओं को अवरुद्ध कर देते हैं तो रोगी चेष्टाहीन हो जाता है। इसे संन्यास कहते हैं। इस अवस्था में रोगी काष्ठीभूत होकर मृत के समान हो जाता है। यदि सद्यः लाभप्रद औषधियों से चिकित्सा न की जाय तो शीघ्र ही रोगी की मृत्यु हो जाती है।

इति श्रीमाधवकरविरचिते माधवनिदाने मूर्च्छाभ्रमनिद्रातन्द्रासंन्यास-
निदानं समाप्तम् ॥ १७ ॥

Thus ends (the seventeenth chapter entitled)
‘The Diagnosis of Fainting, Vertigo, Sleep, Drowsiness and Coma’ of Mādhava Nidāna, as compiled by Śrī Mādhavakara.

इस प्रकार श्रीमाधवकर द्वारा सङ्कलित माधव-निदान का
मूर्च्छाभ्रमनिद्रातन्द्रासंन्यासनिदान (नामक सत्रहवाँ अध्याय) समाप्त हुआ ।

-
1. Including the loss of all reflexes also, whereas they are present in a case of fainting.

M. N. 17

SUGGESTED RESEARCH PROBLEMS

A historical and comparative study with the modern and other ancient systems of medicine on the conceptual aspects of the various physiological and pathological conditions manifesting with the common symptom of partial or total loss of consciousness as given in this chapter could be done.

MAY 17, 1934

SUGGESTING RESEARCH PROBLEMS

A historical and comparative study with the student and other student groups of medicine on the conceptual aspects of the various physiological and mental conditions, in connection with the common symptoms of pain or local blood circulation, and the chapter could be done.

The student and other student groups of medicine on the conceptual aspects of the various physiological and mental conditions, in connection with the common symptoms of pain or local blood circulation, and the chapter could be done.

The student and other student groups of medicine on the conceptual aspects of the various physiological and mental conditions, in connection with the common symptoms of pain or local blood circulation, and the chapter could be done.

The student and other student groups of medicine on the conceptual aspects of the various physiological and mental conditions, in connection with the common symptoms of pain or local blood circulation, and the chapter could be done.

The student and other student groups of medicine on the conceptual aspects of the various physiological and mental conditions, in connection with the common symptoms of pain or local blood circulation, and the chapter could be done.

The student and other student groups of medicine on the conceptual aspects of the various physiological and mental conditions, in connection with the common symptoms of pain or local blood circulation, and the chapter could be done.

The student and other student groups of medicine on the conceptual aspects of the various physiological and mental conditions, in connection with the common symptoms of pain or local blood circulation, and the chapter could be done.

The student and other student groups of medicine on the conceptual aspects of the various physiological and mental conditions, in connection with the common symptoms of pain or local blood circulation, and the chapter could be done.

The student and other student groups of medicine on the conceptual aspects of the various physiological and mental conditions, in connection with the common symptoms of pain or local blood circulation, and the chapter could be done.

The student and other student groups of medicine on the conceptual aspects of the various physiological and mental conditions, in connection with the common symptoms of pain or local blood circulation, and the chapter could be done.

माधवनिदानम्

अष्टादशोऽध्यायः

पानात्ययपरमदपानाजीर्णपानविभ्रमनिदानम्

THE DIAGNOSIS OF EXCESSIVE DRINKING,
HANGOVER, ALCOHOLIC GASTRITIS AND
CHRONIC ALCOHOLISM

CHAPTER EIGHTEEN

MĀDHAVA-NIDĀNA

THE JOURNAL OF THE

ROYAL SOCIETY OF MEDICINE

THE JOURNAL OF THE
ROYAL SOCIETY OF MEDICINE
PUBLISHED BY THE SOCIETY
AT THE ACADEMIC PRESS

THE JOURNAL OF THE
ROYAL SOCIETY OF MEDICINE

M. N. 18

SUMMARY

This chapter describes the harmful effects of drinking, viz. acute alcoholism after excessive drinking, hangover, alcoholic gastritis and chronic alcoholism.

Wine has the properties of poisons to a mild degree (1); hence its injudicious consumption produces diseases, whereas its methodical use in proper dosage at appropriate times with beneficial food within the person's capacity in a cheerful mood may act like ambrosia (2-6).

Clinical features of alcoholic intoxication in four stages have been lucidly described (7-11).

Drinking wine on an empty stomach, alone and daily (12) by persons in rage, grief, exhaustion, etc. (13-15) may lead to the following four complications:

- (i) Acute intoxication—clinical features of the four types have been given (16-18).
- (ii) Hangover (19).
- (iii) Alcoholic gastritis (20/1).
- (iv) Chronic alcoholism (20/2, 21/1).

Complications of drinking (22/2) and features of the incurable cases of excessive drinking (21/2, 22/1) have been described.

SUMMARY

This chapter describes the harmful effects of drinking, viz. acute alcoholism after excessive drinking, however, alcoholic gastritis and chronic alcoholism.

Wine and beer properties at 1.0 are in a mild degree (4-7) and its injurious consequences moderate. However, when its method of use is proper, it may be a prophylactic drink with beneficial food with the person's capacity in a useful mood and the stomach (3-5).

Clinical features of alcoholic intoxication in four stages have been briefly described (7-11).

Drinking wine on an empty stomach, alone and with (12) by itself as a rule, is injurious to the body and may lead to the following four complications:

- (i) Acute intoxication—clinical features of the four types have been given (16-18).
- (ii) Hangover (19).
- (iii) Alcoholic gastritis (20-21).
- (iv) Chronic alcoholism (20-21).

Complications of drink are (22) and (23) and the harmful effects of excessive drinking are (24) have been described.

अष्टादशोऽध्यायः
CHAPTER EIGHTEEN

पानात्ययपरमदपानाजीर्णपानविभ्रमनिदानम्
DIAGNOSIS OF EXCESSIVE DRINKING
(PĀNĀTYAYA), HANGOVER (PARAMADA),
ALCOHOLIC GASTRITIS (PĀNĀJĪRṆA)
AND CHRONIC ALCOHOLISM
(PĀNAVIBHŔAMA)

18. 1. ^२Madātyaya (Excessive Drinking/Alcoholism)

ये विषस्य गुणाः प्रोक्तास्तेऽपि मद्ये प्रतिष्ठिताः ।
तेन मिथ्योपयुक्तेन भवत्युग्रो मदात्ययः ॥ १ ॥

All the properties of poisons mentioned earlier are present (to a mild degree) in the wine also; hence its injudicious use leads to severe alcoholism.

१८. १. मदात्यय

जो विष के गुण कहे गये हैं वही गुण मद्य में भी पाये जाते हैं । अतः मद्य के मिथ्या प्रयोग से उग्र रूप वाला मदात्यय रोग उत्पन्न होता है ।

18. 2,3. Judicious Use of Wines, Food and Poisons

किन्तु मद्यं स्वभावेन यथैवान्नं तथा स्मृतम् ।
अयुक्तियुक्तं रोगाय युक्तियुक्तं यथाऽस्मृतम् ॥ २ ॥
प्राणाः प्राणभृतामन्नं तद्युक्त्या हिनस्त्यसूत्रं ।
विषं प्राणहरं तच्च युक्तियुक्तं रसायनम् ॥ ३ ॥

(च० चि० २४. ५६, ६०)

Wine by nature is as good as food itself. However, if taken injudiciously it may produce diseases, while its judicious use may be as beneficial as ambrosia.

(Similarly) although food is the life of the living beings its inappropriate use could even cause death. (On the other hand) though the poisons are (usually) fatal but even their judicious use may prove to be (life) restorative.

(C. S. VI. 24. 59, 60)

१८. २, ३. विष एवं मद्य के समुचित प्रयोग

मद्य स्वभाव से अन्न के समान गुण वाला होता है अतः युक्तिपूर्वक सेवन से यह अमृत के समान गुणकारी है; परन्तु यही अयुक्तिपूर्वक प्रयोग से रोगों को उत्पन्न करनेवाला हो जाता है। इसी प्रकार अन्न मनुष्यों का प्राण होता है परन्तु उसका भी यदि विधिवत् प्रयोग न किया जाय तो प्राणों को नष्ट कर देता है। इसके विपरीत विष (स्वभावतः) प्राणनाशक होते हुए भी युक्तिपूर्वक प्रयोग करने पर रसायन तुल्य होता है।

18. 4-6. Beneficial Effects of Wine

विधिना मात्रया काले हितैरन्नेर्यथावलम् ।

प्रहृष्टो यः पिवेन्मद्यं तस्य स्यादमृतोपमम् ॥ ४ ॥

(च० चि० २४. २७)

स्निग्धैस्तदन्नेर्मासैश्च भक्ष्यैश्च सह सेवितम् ।

भवेदायुःप्रकर्षाय बलायोपचयाय च ॥ ५ ॥

(सु० उ० ४७. ७)

काम्यता मनसस्तुष्टिस्तेजो विक्रम एव च ।

विधिवत् सेव्यमाने तु मद्ये सन्निहिता गुणाः ॥ ६ ॥

(सु० उ० ४७. ८)

Wine is like ambrosia to the person who drinks it methodically in proper dosage at appropriate times with beneficial food within his capacity in a cheerful mood.

(C. S. VI. 24. 27)

Wine taken with fatty food, meat and other similar eatables increases longevity, strength and a gain in weight.

(S. S. VI. 47. 7)

Wine, if used properly helps develop graceful features, mental satisfaction, lustre and valour due to its inherent properties.

(S. S. VI. 47. 8)

१८. ४-६. विधिपूर्वक मद्य सेवन से लाभ

जो व्यक्ति विधिपूर्वक, मात्रावत्, उचित काल में बल के अनुसार हितकर अन्न को खा कर, प्रसन्न मन से मद्यपान करता है तो उसके लिए यह अमृत के समान होता है। स्निग्ध भोज्य पदार्थ एवं मांस के साथ मद्यपान करने से आयु, बल तथा शरीर की वृद्धि होती है। विधिपूर्वक मद्य के सेवन करने से उसमें निहित गुणों के कारण शरीर में काम्यता, मन में प्रसन्नता, तेज तथा पराक्रम की वृद्धि होती है।

18. 7. First Stage of Drinking

बुद्धिस्मृतिप्रीतिकरः सुखञ्च पानान्ननिद्रारतिवर्धनञ्च ।

संपाठगीतस्वरवर्धनञ्च प्रोक्तोऽतिरम्यः प्रथमो मदो हि ॥ ७ ॥

The first stage of drinking is said to be very pleasant; it increases intelligence, memory, affection and happiness, induces further interest in drinking, eating, sleeping and sex, as well as intensifies the power to recite, sing and speak loudly.

१८.७. मद्यपान की प्रथमावस्था

मद्य प्रथम अवस्था में बुद्धि, स्मृति, प्रीति एवं सुख को उत्पन्न करता है। इससे पान, अन्न, निद्रा एवं रति की इच्छा बढ़ती है। यह पाठ करने, संगीत तथा व्याख्यान आदि में अधिक ध्वनि से बोलने की शक्ति प्रदान करता है। अतः यह (प्रथम) अवस्था अत्यन्त रम्य होती है।

18.8. Second Stage of Drinking

अव्यक्त बुद्धिस्मृतिवाग्विचेष्टः सोन्मत्तलीलाकृतिरप्रशान्तः ।

आलस्यनिद्राभिहतो मुहुश्च मध्येन मत्तः पुरुषो मदेन ॥ ८ ॥

During the middle (second) stage of intoxication by drinking the intelligence, memory, speech and actions become incoherent, the behaviour and appearance become restless like that of a lunatic, and the person becomes overwhelmed with laziness and sleep again and again.

१८.८. मद्यपान की द्वितीयावस्था

मद्य की मध्यम अवस्था में मनुष्य की बुद्धि, स्मृति, वाणी एवं चेष्टाएँ अव्यक्त हो जाती हैं; उसके क्रिया-कलाप तथा आकृति उन्मत्त के समान हो जाते हैं और वह आलस्य तथा निद्रा से बार-बार ग्रसित हो जाता है।

18.9. Third Stage of Drinking

गच्छेदगम्यान् गुरुंश्च मन्येत् खादेदभक्ष्याणि च नष्टसंज्ञः ।

ब्रूयाच्च गुह्यानि हृदि स्थितानि मदे तृतीये पुरुषोऽस्वतन्त्रः ॥ ९ ॥

During the third stage of drinking release of inhibitions takes place, the person begins to go to places where he should not go, disregards his teachers, eats unedible things, consciousness is

(almost) lost and he discloses even his closely guarded secrets.

१८.६. मद्यपान की तृतीयावस्था

तीसरी अवस्था में मनुष्य मद्य के अधीन होकर विवेकहीन हो जाता है; जहाँ उसको नहीं जाना चाहिए वहाँ जाता है, गुरुजनों का मान नहीं करता, जो वस्तुएँ नहीं खाना चाहिए उसे खाने लगता है तथा हृदय में स्थित गुह्य रहस्यों को भी बताने लगता है ।

18. 10, 11. Fourth Stage of Drinking

चतुर्थे तु मदे मूढो भग्नदार्ढ्यं निष्क्रियः ।

कार्यकार्यविभागज्ञो मृतादप्यपरो मृतः ॥ १० ॥

को मदं तादृशं गच्छेदुन्मादमिव चापरम् ।

बहुदोषमिवामूढः कान्तारं स्ववशः कृती ॥ ११ ॥

During the fourth (last) stage of drinking the person behaves like an idiot, becomes useless like a broken stick, loses the sense of discrimination between the right and the wrong actions and may be considered more dead than a dead person.

Who would like to reach to this stage (of intoxication) which is like another variety of schizophrenia just as no sensible, self-controlled and clever person would like to go to a jungle full of adversities ?

१८. १०, ११. मद्यपान की चतुर्थावस्था

मद्य की चतुर्थ अवस्था में मनुष्य मूढ़ हो जाता है तथा टूटी हुई छड़ी के समान बेकार हो जाता है; उसे कार्य तथा अकार्य का ज्ञान नहीं रहता एवं वह मृत से भी बढ़कर मृतक के समान हो जाता है । पागल के सदृश्य बना देनेवाले इस मद की कौन बुद्धिमान मनुष्य (पान करने की) इच्छा करेगा जैसे

कि ऐसा कौन व्यक्ति है जो (हिंसक पशुओं से व्याप्त) घोर वन में व्यर्थ ही प्रस्थान करेगा ।

18. 12. *Sequelae of Injudicious Drinking*

निर्भक्तमेकान्तत एव मद्यं निषेव्यमाणं मनुजेन नित्यम् ।

आपादयेत्कष्टतमान्विकारानापादयेच्चापि शरीरभेदम् ॥ १२ ॥

(सु० उ० ४७. १४)

The person who drinks wine on an empty stomach, alone and daily develops many very troublesome diseases and ultimately his body gets destroyed.

(S. S. VI. 47. 14)

१८. १२. विधि विपरीत मद्यपान के दुर्गुण

भोजन के बिना, अकेले ही और नित्य प्रति मद्य के सेवन से मनुष्य में कष्टतम व्याधियाँ उत्पन्न होती हैं । अन्ततोगत्वा इससे शरीर भी नष्ट हो जाता है ।

18. 13-15. *Diseases Due to Drinking in Unsuitable States*

क्रुद्धेन भीतेन पिपासितेन शोकाभितप्तेन बुभुक्षितेन ।

व्यायामभाराध्वपरिक्षतेन वेगावरोधाभिहतेन चापि ॥ १३ ॥

अत्यम्बुभक्षावततोदरेण साजीर्णभुक्तेन तथाऽबलेन ।

उष्णाभितप्तेन च सेव्यमानं करोति मद्यं विविधान्विकारान् ॥ १४ ॥

पानात्ययं परमदं पानाजीर्णमथापि वा ।

पानविभ्रममुग्रं च तेषां वक्ष्यामि लक्षणम् ॥ १५ ॥

(सु० उ० ४७. १५-१७)

The wine produces different types of disorders, if used by persons who are in rage, frightened,

thirsty, in grief or hungry or are exhausted due to physical exercise, walking or weight lifting and also those who have suppressed the natural evacuatory urges, or have overloaded their stomach with water or food, or have eaten while the previous meal was still undigested, and those who are weak or are suffering from heat exhaustion.

These disorders are *pānātyaya*, *paramada*, *pānā-jirṇa* and *pānavibhrama*. Their signs and symptoms would now be described.

(S. S. VI. 47. 15-17)

१८. १३-१५. अवाञ्छित परिस्थितियों में मद्यपानजन्य विकार

क्रुद्ध, भयभीत, प्यासा, शोक से पीड़ित अथवा भूखा तथा व्यायाम, भार-वहन या यात्रा करने से थका हुआ, वेगावरोध से पीड़ित, अति जल या भोजन से पेट के भरे रहने पर, अजीर्ण में भोजन कर लेने पर तथा दुर्बल एवं उष्ण से सन्तप्त होने पर मद्य के सेवन करने से विविध विकार उत्पन्न होते हैं, यथा पानात्यय, परमद, पानाजीर्ण और पानविभ्रम नामक व्याधियाँ। आगे इनके लक्षणों का वर्णन किया जाता है।

18. 16-18. Pānātyaya¹

ह्रिकाश्वासशिरःकम्पपार्श्वशूलप्रजागरैः ।

विद्याद्बहुप्रलापस्य वातप्रायं मदात्ययम् ॥ १६ ॥

(च० चि० २४. ६१)

तृष्णादाहज्वरस्वेदमोहातीसारविभ्रमैः ।

विद्याद्धरितवर्णस्य पित्तप्रायं मदात्ययम् ॥ १७ ॥

(च० चि० २४. ६४)

छर्द्यरोचकहृल्लासतन्द्रास्तैमित्यगौरवैः ।

विद्याच्छीतपरीतस्य कफप्रायं मदात्ययम् ।

(च० चि० २४. ६७)

1. Acute intoxication due to excessive drinking.

ज्ञेयस्त्रिदोषजश्चापि सर्वलिङ्गमदात्ययः ॥ १८ ॥

Hiccough, dyspnoea, tremors of the head, pain in the sides, insomnia and severe delirium characterise *madātyaya* due to *vāta* predominance.

(C. S. VI. 24. 91)

Thirst, a burning sensation, fever, sweating, fainting, diarrhoea, vertigo and greenish discolouration of the body characterise *madātyaya* due to *pitta* predominance.

(C. S. VI. 24. 94)

Vomiting, anorexia, nausea, drowsiness, a sensation of being covered with wet clothes, heaviness of the body and a feeling of cold characterise *madātyaya* due to *kapha* predominance.

(C. S. VI. 24. 97)

Madātyaya should be known to be of *tridoṣaja* origin, if the symptoms and signs of vitiation of all the three humours are present.

१८.१६-१८. पानात्यय

हिक्का, श्वास, शिरःकम्प, पार्श्वशूल, निद्रानाश तथा अधिक प्रलाप युक्त मनुष्य को वातप्रधान मदात्यय से पीड़ित जानना चाहिए ।

तृष्णा, दाह, ज्वर, अति स्वेद, मोह, अतिसार, विभ्रम तथा शरीर के हरित वर्ण से युक्त मनुष्य को पित्त प्रधान मदात्यय से पीड़ित समझना चाहिए ।

वमन, अरोचक, हृल्लास, तन्द्रा, स्तैमित्य और गुस्ता से युक्त तथा शीत का अनुभव कर रहे मनुष्य को कफप्रधान मदात्यय से पीड़ित जानना चाहिए । जिसमें तीनों दोषों के लक्षण पाये जायें उसे त्रिदोषज मदात्यय समझना चाहिए ।

18. 19. Paramada¹ (Hangover)

श्लेष्मोच्छ्रयोऽङ्गगुहता विरसास्यता च
विण्मूत्रसक्तिरथ तन्द्रिररोचकश्च ।

लिङ्गं परस्य च मदस्य वदन्ति तज्ज्ञा-

स्तृष्णा रुजा शिरसि सन्धिषु चापि भेदः ॥ १९ ॥

(सु० उ० ४७. १६/२, २०/१ पा०)

Aggravation of *kapha*, heaviness of the limbs, absence of any taste in the mouth, retention of faeces and urine, drowsiness, anorexia, thirst, headache and pain in the joints are considered to be the clinical features of *paramada* by the experts.

(Var. S. S. VI. 47. 19/2, 20/1)

१८. १९. परमद

श्लेष्मा की अधिकता, अंगों में गुहता, मुख में विरसता और मल एवं मूत्र का अवरोध, तन्द्रा, अरोचक, तृष्णा तथा शिर एवं सन्धियों में वेदना परमद के लक्षण होते हैं ।

18. 20/1. Pānājīrṇa (Alcoholic gastritis)

आध्मानमुग्रमथ चोद्गिरणं विदाहः पानेऽजरां समुपगच्छति लक्षणानि ।

(सु० उ० ४७. २०/२ पा०)

Excessive flatulence, vomiting and pyrosis² are the clinical features of *pānājīrṇa*.

(Var. S. S. VI. 47. 20/2)

१८. २०/१. पानाजीर्ण

अत्यधिक आध्मान, वमन तथा विदाह पानाजीर्ण के लक्षण होते हैं ।

1. Hangover. (*Para*=after + *Mada*=intoxication).

2. Burning sensation in the stomach.

18. 20/2, 21/1. Pānavibhrama (Chronic alcoholism)

हृद्गात्रतोदकफसंस्वकण्ठधूमा मूर्च्छाविमिज्वरशिरोरुजनप्रदाहाः ॥२०॥
द्वेषः सुरान्नविकृतेष्वपि तेषु तेषु तं पानविभ्रममुशन्त्यखिलेन धीराः ।

(सु० उ० ४७. २१/२, २२/१)

The experts call it *pānavibhrama* if there is a pricking pain in the cardiac region or all over the body, mucoid expectoration, a feeling as if the throat is full of smoke, fainting, vomiting, fever, headache, a burning sensation and an aversion to the various preparations of wine and food.

(S. S. VI. 47. 21/2, 22/1)

१८. २०/२, २१/१. पानविभ्रम

हृदय अथवा गात्र में तोद, कफ का स्वाव, कण्ठ में धुवाँ भरा सा होना, मूर्च्छा, वमन, ज्वर, शिर में रुजा, दाह तथा विभिन्न प्रकार के सुरा एवं अन्न में अरुचि पानाजीर्ण के लक्षण बताये गये हैं ।

18. 21/2, 22/1. Incurable madātyaya

हीनोत्तरौष्ठमतिशीतममन्ददाहं तैलप्रभास्यमपि पानहतं त्यजेत्तु ॥२१॥
जिह्वौष्ठदन्तमसितं त्वथवाऽपि नीलं पीते च यस्य नयने रुधिरप्रभे वा ।

(सु० उ० ४७. २२/२, २३/१)

That case of excessive drinking should not be treated (as it is incurable) whose upper lip has drooped down, who has become very cold (externally) but feels moderate burning sensation (internally), who has an oily radiance on his face, whose tongue, lips and teeth have become black or blue (cyanosed) or whose eyes have become yellow (jaundiced) or bloody red.

(S. S. VI. 47. 22/2, 23/1)

१८. २१/२, २२/१. असाध्य लक्षण

जिस रोगी का ऊपरवाला होंठ नीचे लटक गया हो, जिसका शरीर ठंडा पड़ गया हो फिर भी अन्तर्दाह हो तथा मुख पर तैल की आभा हो तो ऐसे मदात्ययी को असाध्य समझना चाहिए । इसके अतिरिक्त जिसकी जिह्वा, ओष्ठ तथा दाँत काले या नीले पड़ गये हों व आँखें पीली या रक्त के समान अत्यधिक सुख हों तो उसको भी असाध्य समझना चाहिए ।

18. 22/2. Complications of drinking

हिक्काज्वरो वमथुवेपथुपार्श्वशूलाः कासभ्रमावपि च पानहतं भजन्ते ॥२२॥

(सु० उ० ४७. २३/२)

Hiccough, fever, vomiting, trembling, pain in the sides (of the chest and the abdomen), cough and giddiness arise as complications of drinking.

(S. S. VI. 47. 23/2)

१८. २२/२. मद्यपान के उपद्रव

हिक्का, ज्वर, वमन, कम्पन, पार्श्वशूल, कास तथा भ्रम मदात्यय के उपद्रव होते हैं ।

इति श्रीमाधवकरविरचिते माधवनिदाने पानात्ययपरमदपानाजीर्ण-
पानविभ्रमनिदानम् समाप्तम् ॥ १८ ॥

Thus ends (the eighteenth chapter entitled)
'The Diagnosis of Excessive Drinking (*Pānātyaya*),
Hangover (*Paramada*), Alcoholic Gastritis (*Pānā-
jirṇa*) and Chronic Alcoholism (*Pānavibhrama*)' of
Mādhava Nidāna, as compiled by Śrī Mādhavakara.

इस प्रकार श्री माधवकर द्वारा सङ्कलित माधव-निदान का पानात्ययपरमद-
पानाजीर्णपानविभ्रम् (नामक अठारहवाँ अध्याय) समाप्त हुआ ।

M. N. 18

SUGGESTED RESEARCH PROBLEMS

1. An investigation could be carried out to establish the ideal conditions for drinking wine, versus its injudicious use (1-6).
2. A comparative study of the stages of anaesthesia with the stages of drinking (7-11) could be carried out, both being somewhat similar, especially in the initial stages.
3. A historical and comparative study on the conceptual aspects of excessive drinking, hangover, alcoholic gastritis and chronic alcoholism (12-22) is indicated.
4. Clinical and experimental studies could be planned to establish the conditions and their complications as mentioned in this chapter.
5. This chapter could be of great historical use for the modern books/chapters/articles on alcoholism and for establishing the therapeutic uses of wine under carefully prescribed conditions.



माधवनिदानम्

एकोनविंशोऽध्यायः

दाहनिदानम्

THE DIAGNOSIS OF THE BURNING SENSATION

CHAPTER NINETEEN

MĀDHAVA-NIDĀNA

THE CHARACTER OF THE
MORALITY OF THE
MORALITY OF THE
MORALITY OF THE
MORALITY OF THE

APRIL 1914

M. N. 19

SUMMARY

This chapter deals with the diagnosis of burning sensation as a disease.

Burning sensation of seven types are described (1-7). The first type is due to excessive drinking (1); the second due to *rakta* (2, 3/1) has features similar to essential hypertension; the third due to *pitta* (3/2) is found in hyperpyrexia; the fourth due to the suppression of thirst (4, 5/1) is probably due to dehydration leading to water and electrolyte imbalance; the fifth due to blood in the body cavities (5/2) is perhaps due to internal haemorrhage; the sixth is due to tissue depletion (6)—chronic as in malnutrition, or acute as after trauma (7/1, 7/2); and the seventh type is due to injury to the vital organs (7/3).

The seventh type (7/3) and those developing coldness of the body have been considered incurable (7/4).

एकोनविंशोऽध्यायः
CHAPTER NINETEEN

दाहनिदानम्
THE DIAGNOSIS OF THE BURNING
SENSATION

19. 1. Burning Sensation due to Drinking

त्वचं प्राप्तः स पानोष्मा पित्तरक्ताभिर्मूर्च्छितः ।

दाहं प्रकुस्ते घोरं पित्तवत्तत्र भेषजम् ॥ १ ॥

(सु० उ० ४७. ५४/२, ५४/३)

When the warmth generated by (excessive) drinking¹ and involving the *pitta* and *rakta* reaches the skin it produces a severe burning sensation. It (is known as *madyaja dāha* and) should be treated like a case of *pittaja* variety.²

(S. S. VI. 47. 54/2, 54/3)

१९. १. मद्यज दाह

मद्यपान से उत्पन्न ऊष्मा पित्त एवं रक्त को दूषित कर जब त्वचा में पहुँचती है तो घोर दाह को उत्पन्न करती है । इसकी चिकित्सा पित्त के समान ही करनी चाहिये ।

1. Excessive drinking in the acute stage produces a burning sensation due to vasodilatation, whereas in the chronic stage it is caused by peripheral neuritis.
2. M. N. 19. 3/2, Loc. cit.

19. 2,3/1. Raktaja Burning Sensation¹

कृत्स्नदेहानुगं रक्तमुद्रितं दहति ध्रुवम् ।

स उष्यते तृष्यते च ताम्राभस्ताम्रलोचनः ॥ २ ॥

लोहगन्धाङ्गवदनो वह्निनेवावकीर्यते ।

(सु० उ० ४७. ६७, ६८/१)

The vitiated *rakta* pervading the whole body produces a severe burning sensation. The patient experiences warmth and thirst, has a coppery lustre (of the skin) with copper red eyes, emits iron (metal) like odour from the mouth and the body and he feels as if surrounded by fire.

(S. S. VI. 47. 67, 68/1)

१६. २, ३/१. रक्तज दाह

कुपित रक्त सम्पूर्ण शरीर में फैल कर दाह को उत्पन्न करता है । इससे रोगी शरीर में जलन एवं पिपासा का अनुभव करता है तथा उसका शरीर और नेत्र ताम्र के सदृश लाल वर्ण के हो जाते हैं । मुख तथा अन्य अंगों से लोह की गन्ध आती है और वह अपने को अग्नि से घिरा हुआ समझता है ।

19. 3/2. Pittaja Burning Sensation²

पित्तज्वरसमः पित्तात्स चाप्यस्य विधिः स्मृतः ॥ ३ ॥

(सु० उ० ४७. ७०/१)

The burning sensation of *pittaja* origin is similar to that observed in a case of *paittika* fever and should be managed on the same lines.

(S. S. VI. 47. 70/1)

1. ? Essential hypertension.

2. As in hyperpyrexia.

१६.३/२. पित्तज दाह

पैक्तिक दाह में पैक्तिक ज्वर के समान लक्षण पाये जाते हैं तथा इसकी चिकित्सा भी उसी के समान करनी चाहिए ।

19. 4,5/1. Burning Sensation due to Suppression of Thirst¹

तृष्णानिरोधादव्वातौ क्षीणे तेजः समुद्धतम् ।
स बाह्याभ्यन्तरं देहं प्रदहेन्मन्दचेतसः ॥ ४ ॥
संशुष्कगलताल्वोष्ठो जिह्वां निष्कृष्य वेपते ।

(सु० उ० ४७.७०/२, ७१)

Due to suppression of thirst there is a loss of the watery content of the tissues resulting in aggravation of *pitta*. This produces an internal and an external burning sensation and a dulling of all the senses. There is dryness of the throat, palate and the lips and he trembles protruding his tongue.

(S. S. VI. 47. 70/2, 71)

१६.४, ५/१. तृष्णा निरोधज दाह

तृष्णानिरोध के कारण धातुओं में जल की कमी होने पर बढ़ा हुआ तेज (पित्त) शरीर में बाह्य एवं आभ्यन्तर दाह उत्पन्न करता है जिससे मनुष्य मन्द चेतना वाला (मूर्छित) हो जाता है तथा उसका गला, तालु एवं ओष्ठ शुष्क हो जाते हैं और वह जिह्वा निकाल कर काँपने लगता है ।

19. 5/2. Burning Sensation due to Blood in the Body Cavities²

असृजः पूर्णकोष्ठस्य दाहोऽन्यः स्यात्सुदुस्तरः ॥ ५ ॥

(सु० उ० ४७.७३/२)

-
1. Dehydration leading to water and electrolyte imbalance.
 2. Internal haemorrhage.

A collection of blood in the body cavities (*koṣṭhas*) gives rise to another variety of burning sensation which is unbearable.

(S. S. VI. 47. 73/2)

१६. ५/२. रक्तपूर्ण कोष्ठज दाह

(रक्तसाव के फलस्वरूप) रक्त से पूर्ण कोष्ठ से उत्पन्न होनेवाला एक और प्रकार का दाह अत्यन्त कष्टप्रद होता है ।

19. 6. Burning Sensation due to Tissue Depletion¹

धातुक्षयोत्थो यो दाहस्तेन मूर्च्छातृडदितः ।

क्षामस्वरः क्रियाहीनः स सीदेद् भृशपीडितः ॥ ६ ॥

(सु० उ० ४७. ७४/२, ७५/१)

In a case of burning sensation due to depletion of tissues the patient suffers from fainting, thirst, a feeble voice and a diminution of activity and is excessively distressed with depression.

(S. S. VI. 47. 74/2, 75/1)

१६. ६. धातुक्षयज दाह

धातुओं के क्षय के कारण होने वाले दाह से पीड़ित रोगी मूर्छा, तृष्णा और मन्द स्वर के साथ क्रियाहीन (निश्चेष्ट) होकर घोर अवसाद से पीड़ित रहता है ।

19. 7/1, 7/2. Burning Sensation of Traumatic Origin²

क्षतजोऽनश्नतश्चान्नं शोचतो वाऽप्यनेकधा ।

तेनान्तर्दह्यतेऽत्यर्थं तृष्णा मूर्च्छा प्रलापवान् ॥

(सु० उ० ४७. ७६)

1. Malnutrition.

2. This is not to be considered a separate variety, but as a sub-variety of the previous one, i.e., 'Burning sensation due to tissue depletion', as the Ayurvedic scholars consider this type to be just a form of acute tissue depletion and damage.

In a case of burning sensation of traumatic origin, due to abstinence from food and also on account of various anxiety states the patient suffers from a severe internal burning sensation, thirst, fainting and delirium.

(S. S. VI. 47. 76)

१६. ७/१, ७/२. क्षतज दाह

क्षत के कारण अन्न को न खाने से तथा नाना प्रकार की चिन्ताओं के कारण आन्तरिक दाह उत्पन्न होता है जिससे रोगी तृष्णा, मूर्छा एवं प्रलाप से अत्यन्त पीड़ित रहता है ।

19. 7/3. Burning Sensation due to Injury to the Vital Organs

मर्माभिघातजोऽप्यस्ति सोऽसाध्यः सप्तमो मतः ।

(सु० उ० ४७. ७८/१)

The seventh variety of burning sensation due to injury to the vital organs is considered incurable.

(S. S. VI. 47. 78/1)

१६. ७/३. मर्माभिघातज दाह

मर्माभिघात से उत्पन्न सातवीं प्रकार का दाह असाध्य होता है ।

19. 7/4. Prognosis

सर्व एव च वज्याः स्युः शीतगात्रस्य देहिनः ॥ ७ ॥

(सु० उ० ४७. ७८/२)

All patients suffering from (burning sensation) developing coldness of the body should be discarded from treatment (as incurable).

(S. S. VI. 47. 78/2)

१६. ७/४. साध्यासाध्यता

(अन्तर्दाह के होते हुए भी) यदि शरीर बाहर से शीत हो तो सभी प्रकार के दाह चिकित्सा से वर्जित हैं, अर्थात् असाध्य होते हैं ।

इति श्रीमाधवकरविरचिते माधवनिदाने दाहनिदानं समाप्तम् ॥ १६ ॥

Thus ends (the nineteenth chapter entitled) 'The Diagnosis of the Burning Sensation' of Mādhava Nidāna, as compiled by Śrī Mādhavakara.

इस प्रकार श्रीमाधवकर द्वारा सङ्कलित माधव-निदान का दाह निदान (नामक उन्नीसवाँ अध्याय) समाप्त हुआ ।

M. N. 19

SUGGESTED RESEARCH PROBLEMS

1. A historical and comparative study on the conceptual aspects of burning sensation as a disease as given in this chapter is indicated.
 2. It would be interesting to correlate the seven types of burning sensation (1-7) as found in the modern clinical conditions.
-

SUGGESTED REVISIONS TO THE

1. A list of the names of the persons who have been named in the text of the report, and of the persons who have been named in the text of the report, and of the persons who have been named in the text of the report.
2. It would be to suggest to the committee, the names of the persons who have been named in the text of the report, and of the persons who have been named in the text of the report, and of the persons who have been named in the text of the report.

I am, Sir, very respectfully,
Your obedient servant,
J. H. H.

माधवनिदानम्

विंशतितमोऽध्यायः

उन्मादनिदानम्

THE DIAGNOSIS OF PSYCHOSES

CHAPTER TWENTY

MĀDHAVA - NIDĀNA

THE

LIBRARY

OF THE

UNIVERSITY

OF

CHICAGO

ILLINOIS

1892

1893

1894

1895

1896

1897

1898

1899

1900

1901

1902

1903

1904

1905

1906

1907

1908

1909

1910

1911

1912

1913

1914

1915

M. N. 20

SUMMARY

This chapter deals with the diagnosis of various types of psychoses.

Aggravated humours affecting the psyche produce psychoses, the signs and symptoms of which are similar to but more severe than those of intoxication (1, 6).

Psychoses are of six types, four due to the vitiated humours, a fifth one due to the psychic trauma and the sixth one due to poisons (2, 3/1).

Initially, mild symptoms of psychoneuroses only are produced (3/2).

Their aetiological factors (4) and clinical features (6) in general are given, followed by the specific ones for each type (7-15).

Besides these, psychoses can also be caused by *grahas* or the superhuman agencies like ghosts, evil spirits, divine visitation, etc. (17-25); the astrological time of their invasion is correlated with the phases of the moon (27, 28). Various views regarding their invisible mode of entry into the human beings are given (29-33), including one similar to the invasion by microbes (33).

Features indicating a fatal prognosis are mentioned (16, 26).

विंशतितमोऽध्यायः
CHAPTER TWENTY

उन्मादनिदानम्
THE DIAGNOSIS OF PSYCHOSES

20. 1. Definition

मदयन्त्युदगता दोषा यस्मादुन्मार्गमागताः ।
मानसोऽयमतो व्याधिरुन्माद इति कीर्तितः ॥ १ ॥
(सु० उ० ६२. ३)

As the aggravated humours, affecting the upper part of the body channels (carrying on the mental functions) produce symptoms as in intoxication, this mental disease is known as *unmāda*¹ or psychoses.
(S. S. VI. 62. 3)

२०. १. निरुक्ति

बढ़े हुए दोष उन्मार्ग में जाकर मनोविभ्रम उत्पन्न कर देते हैं, अतः इस मानसिक व्याधि को उन्माद कहते हैं ।

20. 2,3/1. Types

एकैकशः सर्वशश्च दोषैरत्यर्थमूर्च्छितैः ।
मानसेन च दुःखेन स च पञ्चविधो मतः ॥ २ ॥
विषाद्भवति षष्ठश्च यथास्वं तत्र भेषजम् ।
(सु० उ० ६२. ४, ५/१)

-
1. Etymologically *Unmāda* = Ut (Above) + *mada* (intoxication). Behaviour of the patient is more disturbed as compared to intoxication, hence it is called *unmāda* or psychoses.

Five types of this (*ummāda*, psychoses) are due to the excessive vitiation of the three humours separately, simultaneous vitiation of all of them and (the fifth one predominantly due to) grief, while the sixth one is caused by poisons; the treatment should therefore be according to the causative factors.

(S. S. VI. 62. 4, 5/1)

२०.२,३/१. मेद

अत्यधिक प्रकुपित अलग अलग दोषों, मिश्रित तीनों दोषों तथा मानसिक दुःख से उत्पन्न पाँच प्रकार का उन्माद होता है। छूठवाँ विष के कारण उत्पन्न होता है। इनकी चिकित्सा कारणानुसार की जाती है।

20. 3/2. Psychoneurosis (Mada)

स चाप्रवृद्धस्तरुणो मदसंज्ञां विभर्ति च ॥ ३ ॥

(सु० उ० ६२.५/२)

However, in the initial stage when the disease is not advanced it is called *mada*.

(S. S. VI. 62. 5/2)

२०.३/२. मद

उन्माद को प्रारम्भिक अवस्था में जब यह अप्रवृद्ध रहता है तो मद कहते हैं।

20. 4. General Aetiological Factors

विरुद्धदुष्टाशुचिभोजनानि प्रघर्षणं देवगुरुद्विजानाम् ।

उन्मादहेतुर्भयहर्षपूर्वो मनोऽभिघातो विषमाश्च चेष्टाः ॥ ४ ॥

(च० चि० ६.४)

Eating incompatible, contaminated and unhygienic food, insulting gods, teachers and brahmins

and mental trauma due to (excessive) fear or happiness or else due to unnatural activities are the (general) aetiological factors of psychoses.

(C. S. VI. 9. 4)

२०.४. कारण

विरुद्ध, दूषित तथा अपवित्र भोजन से, देवता, गुरु एवं ब्राह्मण आदि का अपमान करने से एवं अत्यधिक भय अथवा हर्ष या विषम चेष्टाओं से मनो-विघात होने के कारण उन्माद रोग की उत्पत्ति होती है ।

20.5. Pathogenesis

तैरत्पसत्त्वस्य मलाः प्रदुष्टा बुद्धेर्निवासं हृदयं प्रदूष्य ।

स्रोतांस्यधिष्ठाय मनोवहानि प्रमोहयन्त्याशु नरस्य चेतः ॥ ५ ॥

(च० चि० ६.५)

Due to the above (aetiological factors) the vitiated humours in a person with a deficiency of *sattva*¹ get localised in the channels of the mind and afflicting its core, the seat of intelligence, quickly derange the mental functions of the person.

(C. S. VI. 9. 5)

२०.५. सम्प्राप्ति

अल्प सत्त्व व्यक्ति में उपरोक्त कारणों से प्रकुपित दोष, बुद्धि के निवास-स्थान हृदय को दूषित कर एवं मनोवह स्रोतों में अधिष्ठित होकर उसके चित्त को शीघ्र ही उन्मत्त कर देते हैं ।

20.6. General Clinical Features

धोविभ्रमः सत्त्वपरिप्लवश्च पर्याकुला दृष्टिरधीरता च ।

अवद्ववाक्त्वं हृदयं च शून्यं सामान्यमुन्मादगदस्य लिङ्गम् ॥ ६ ॥

(च० चि० ६.६)

1. The mind has three qualities, viz. *sattva*, *raja* and *tama*. Among them *sattva* is considered to be the best; one possessing this predominantly exhibits the ideal behaviour.

Confused intellect, fickleness of the mind, perplexed look, restlessness, incoherent speech and mental¹ vacuum are the general clinical features of the disease known as insanity.

(C. S. VI. 9. 6)

२०. ६. सामान्य लक्षण

बुद्धि विभ्रम, मन की चञ्चलता, दृष्टि की व्याकुलता, अधीरता, असम्बद्ध बोलना तथा हृदय में शून्यता का अनुभव होना उन्माद रोग के सामान्य लक्षण हैं ।

20. 7,8. Vātika Insanity

रूक्षाल्पशीतान्नविरेकधातुक्षयोपवासैरनिलोऽतिवृद्धः ।

चिन्तादिदुष्टं हृदयं प्रदूष्य बुद्धिं स्मृतिं चाप्युपहन्ति शीघ्रम् ॥ ७ ॥

अस्थानहास्यस्मितनृत्यगीतवागङ्गविक्षेपणरोदनानि ।

पारुष्यकाश्यारुणवर्णताश्च जीर्णे बलं चानिलजस्य रूपम् ॥ ८ ॥

(च० चि० ६. ६, १०)

The severely aggravated *vāyu*, due to the intake of dry, meagre and cold diet, purgation, depletion of tissues and fasting, vitiates the *hṛdaya* (the site of psyche) already affected by anxiety, etc. and soon impairs the understanding and memory; (*vātika* insanity is thus produced).

Laughing, smiling, dancing, singing and speaking irrelevantly, (unnecessary) flinging of the limbs and weeping at inappropriate places as well as dryness, emaciation and reddish complexion of the body and provocation of the symptoms after the

1. The sanskrit word *hṛdaya* implies brain in this context.

food has been digested are the clinical features of the *vātika* insanity.

(C. S. VI. 9. 9, 10)

२०.७,८. वातिक उन्माद

रूक्ष, अल्प तथा शीत अन्न के सेवन से, विरेचन, धातुक्षय और उपवास आदि से अत्यधिक प्रवृद्ध वायु, चिन्ता आदि से दूषित हृदय (मन) को (पुनः) दूषित कर शीघ्र ही बुद्धि एवं स्मृति को नष्ट कर देता है; (इस प्रकार वातिक उन्माद उत्पन्न होता है) ।

इसमें रोगी बिना प्रयोजन हँसता, मुस्कराता, नाचता, गाता, बोलता तथा हाथ पैर चलाता है और रोता है । उसका शरीर रूक्ष, कुश और अरुण वर्ण का हो जाता है । भोजन पच जाने के बाद रोग बढ़ जाता है । ये लक्षण वातिक उन्माद के हैं ।

20. 9, 10. Paittika Insanity

अजीर्णकट्वम्लविदाह्यशीतैर्भोज्यैश्चितं पित्तमुदीर्णवेगम् ।
उन्मादमत्युग्रमनात्मकस्य हृदि स्थितं पूर्ववदाशु कुर्यात् ॥ ९ ॥
अमर्षसंरम्भविनग्नभावाः सन्तर्जनातिद्रवणौष्ण्यरोषाः ।
प्रच्छायशीतान्नजलाभिलाषः पीता च भाः पित्तकृतस्य लिङ्गम् ॥ १० ॥
(च० चि० ६. ११, १२)

The already accumulated *pitta* gets aggravated by indigestion or due to the intake of acrid, sour, heart-burn producing or hot articles of food, gets localised in the *hṛdaya* (mind) of an unrighteous person and as before, soon gives rise to a very severe type of insanity.

Intolerance, exasperation, nudity, intimidating attitude, running away, a hot (feeling of the) body, anger, as well as a craving for shade, cold food and water along with a yellowish complexion are the clinical features of the insanity due to *pitta*.

(C. S. VI. 9. 11, 12)

२०. ६, १०. पैत्तिक उन्माद

अजीर्ण, कटु, अम्ल, विदाही एवं अति उष्ण पदार्थों के खाने से पूर्व संचित हुआ पित्त और भी उदीर्ण वेगयुक्त होकर दुर्बल मन वाले व्यक्ति के हृदय (मस्तिष्क) में पहुँच कर शीघ्र ही पूर्व कथनानुसार अत्यन्त उग्र स्वरूप का उन्माद उत्पन्न करता है ।

असहिष्णुता, क्षोभ, नग्नता, सन्तर्जन तथा भागना पैत्तिक उन्माद के लक्षण हैं । रोगी उष्णता का अनुभव करता है तथा शीघ्र ही क्रोधित हो जाता है । वह छाया, शीतल अन्न और जल की इच्छा करता है । उसके शरीर में पीतवर्णता का आभास होता है ।

20. 11, 12. Kaphaja Insanity

सम्पूरणैर्मन्दविचेष्टितस्य सोष्मा कफो मर्मणि सम्प्रदुष्टः ।
 बुद्धि स्मृति चाप्युपहत्य चित्तं प्रमोहयन्सञ्जनयेद्विकारम् ॥११॥
 वाक्चेष्टितं मन्दमरोचकश्च नारीविवक्तप्रियताऽतिनिद्रा ।
 छदिश्च लाला च बलं च भुङ्क्ते नखादिशौक्ल्यं च कफात्मके स्यात् ॥१२॥
 (च० चि० ६. १३, १४)

Kapha, along with *pitta*, vitiated severely due to the excessive intake of (fatty) food in a person doing little physical activity afflicts the (brain) vital part and damaging (the seat of) the intelligence and memory produces confusion in the mind and thus gives rise to the disease (insanity).

Slow speech, dull (appearance and) actions, anorexia, a liking for women and solitude, excessive sleep, vomiting and salivation, provocation of the symptoms after meals and a whitish discolouration of the nails, etc. are the clinical features of the insanity due to *kapha*.

(C. S. VI. 9. 13, 14)

२०. ११, १२. कफज उन्माद

अधिक भोजन करनेवाले एवं कम शारीरिक परिश्रम करनेवाले व्यक्ति में पित्तयुक्त प्रकुपित कफ उसके मर्मस्थान को प्रभावित कर बुद्धि एवं स्मृति को विनष्ट कर चित्त को प्रमोहित करते हुये उन्माद रोग को उत्पन्न करता है ।

रोगी बहुत कम बोलता है और शारीरिक चेष्टायें भी कम करता है । उसे भोजन से अरुचि होती है और वह स्त्रियों का साथ, एकान्त स्थान तथा अधिक सोना पसन्द करता है । वह वमन और लालास्राव से पीड़ित रहता है । भोजन के पश्चात् रोग का वेग बढ़ जाता है । कफज उन्माद के रोगी के नख एवं अन्य शारीरिक अङ्ग श्वेताभ प्रतीत होते हैं ।

20. 13. Psychoses due to the three combined humours

यः सन्निपातप्रभवोऽतिघोरः सर्वैः समस्तैः स च हेतुभिः स्यात् ।

सर्वाणि रूपाणि विभर्ति तादृग् विरुद्धभैषज्यविधिर्विवर्ज्यः ॥१३॥

(च० चि० ६. १५)

The excessively formidable insanity due to the simultaneous vitiation of all the three humours because of all the (vitiating) aetiological factors manifests the mixed clinical features of all types of psychoses. The drugs as well as the methods of management (for each type) being mutually contradictory this disease becomes unmanageable.

(C. S. VI. 9. 15)

२०. १३. सान्निपातिक उन्माद

तीनों दोष आपस में मिलकर सान्निपातिक उन्माद उत्पन्न करते हैं जो अत्यधिक भयंकर होता है । इसकी उत्पत्ति में सभी प्रकार के उन्माद के हेतु सम्मिलित होते हैं तथा सभी के अपने अपने लक्षण उपस्थित रहते हैं । यह (परस्पर) विरुद्ध भेषज उपक्रम होने से असाध्य है ।

20. 14. Psychoses due to the Mental Trauma

चौरैर्नरेन्द्रपुरुषैररिभिस्तथान्यैर्वित्रासितस्य धनवान्धवसंक्षयाद्वा ।
गाढं क्षते मनसि च प्रियया रिरंसोजयेत चोत्कटतमो मनसो विकारः ।
चित्रं ब्रवीति च मनोज्ञगतं विसंज्ञो गायत्यथो हसति रोदिति चापि मूढः ॥१४॥
(सु० उ० ६२.१२, १३/१)

Torture by thieves, king's men¹, enemies and others, loss of wealth and/or relatives, and severe mental shock due to having been spurned by the beloved, produce a very serious disturbance of mind.

The patient talks incoherently, brings out his close secrets unconsciously and sings, laughs and weeps like a fool.

(S. S. VI. 62. 12, 13/1)

२०. १४. मानसिक आघातजन्य उन्माद

चोरों, राजकर्मचारियों तथा शत्रुओं आदि द्वारा त्रस्त और धन एवं/अथवा बन्धुओं की क्षति होनेपर अथवा प्रिया के साथ रमण करने की इच्छापूर्ति न होने से उत्पन्न मानसिक आघात के कारण भयंकर मानसिक विकार उत्पन्न हो जाता है । रोगी विचित्र बातें बोलता हुआ गोपनीय रहस्यों को भी अनजाने ही प्रकट कर देता है । वह रोगी मूर्ख के समान कभी गाता है, कभी हँसता है और कभी रोता है ।

20. 15. Psychoses due to Poisoning

रक्तक्षणो हतबलेन्द्रियभाः सुदीनः श्यावाननो विषकृतेऽथ भवेद्विसंज्ञः ॥१५॥
(सु० उ० ६२.१३/२)

Bloodshot eyes, loss of strength and of the functioning of the sensory (and motor) organs as well as of the lustre, a withered appearance and a

1. Government officers.

blackish discolouration of the face are the features of psychoses due to poisoning; the patient may even lose consciousness.

(S. S. VI. 62. 13/2)

२०. १५. विषजन्य उन्माद

विषजन्य उन्माद के रोगी के नेत्र रक्तवर्ण के हो जाते हैं। बल, इन्द्रिय तथा कान्ति क्षीण हो जाती है। वह दीन हो जाता है और उसकी मुखाकृति श्याव वर्ण की प्रतीत होती है; तथा रोगी संज्ञाहीन भी हो सकता है।

20. 16. Fatal Signs of Insanity

अवाञ्ची वाप्युदञ्ची वा क्षीणमांसबलो नरः ।

जागरूको ह्यसन्देहमुन्मादेन विनश्यति ॥ १६ ॥

(सु० सू० ३३. २५)

A patient suffering from insanity who keeps his face (mostly) upwards (hyperextended) or downwards (hyperflexed) or who has lost his strength, is cachectic and is constantly awake is sure to die.

(S. S. I. 33. 25)

२०. १६. उन्माद के असाध्य लक्षण

उन्माद से पीड़ित जो रोगी मुख को सदैव नीचे अथवा ऊपर की ओर रखे, जिसका बल एवं मांस क्षीण हो गया हो तथा जो सदैव जागता रहे उसकी निश्चित रूप से मृत्यु हो जाती है।

20. 17. Bhūtonmāda

अमर्त्यवाग्विक्रमवीर्यचेष्टो ज्ञानादिविज्ञानबलादिभिर्यः ।

उन्मादकालोऽनियतश्च यस्य भूतोत्थमुन्मादमुदाहरेत्तम् ॥ १७ ॥

(च० चि० ६. १७)

A patient of insanity having superhuman¹ powers of speech, valour, strength and activities, as well as knowledge, scientific erudition, power, etc. and in whom fits (of insanity) occur at unpredictable intervals should be regarded as suffering from *bhūtonmāda*².

(C. S. VI. 9. 17)

२०. १७. भूतोन्माद के सामान्य लक्षण

उन्माद से पीड़ित जिस रोगी के वचन, पराक्रम, शक्ति और कार्य मनुष्येतर हों, जो उसी प्रकार के ज्ञान, विज्ञान एवं बल से युक्त हो तथा जिसमें उन्माद के वेग आने का समय निश्चित न हो उसे भूतोन्माद द्वारा पीड़ित कहा जाता है।

20. 18. Psychoses due to Divine Visitation

संतुष्टः शुचिरतिदिव्यमाल्यगन्धो निस्तन्द्रिरवितथसंस्कृतप्रभाषी ।

तेजस्वी स्थिरनयनोवरप्रदाता ब्रह्मण्यो भवति नरः स देवजुष्टः ॥१८॥

(सु० उ० ६०. ८)

The (psychotic) person who looks to be (over) contented (even when he should not be), observes (unusually extra) cleanliness, smells strong fragrance of good flowers (when there are none), has insomnia, is truthful, speaks sanskrit fluently, glows radiance, has steady eyes, grants boons (even without being asked for) and respects the brahmins should be considered to be afflicted by divine visitation.

(S. S. VI. 60. 8)

२०. १८. देवजुष्टोन्माद

देवग्रह से पीड़ित (उन्माद का) रोगी सन्तुष्ट, पवित्र, दिव्य पुष्पमालाओं की सुगन्ध से युक्त, तन्द्रा रहित, सत्यवादी, संस्कृत बोलनेवाला, तेजस्वी, स्थिर नेत्रयुक्त, वरदाता तथा ब्राह्मणों का आदर करनेवाला होता है।

1. Abnormally excessive.

2. Insanity due to possession by evil spirits, etc.

20.19. Psychoses due to Visitation by Demons

संस्वेदी द्विजगुरुदेवदोषवक्ता जिह्वाक्षो विगतभयो विमार्गदृष्टिः ।

सन्तुष्टो न भवति चान्नपानजातैर्दुष्टात्मा भवति स देवशत्रुजुष्टः ॥१९॥

(सु० उ० ६०.६)

The (psychotic) person who gets profuse perspiration, finds faults with the brahmins, preceptors and gods, gazes with a frown, is afraid of none, looks towards an unrighteous path, does not get satisfied inspite of plenty of food and drinks and has an unpious soul should be considered to be afflicted with the visitation by the enemies of gods (i.e. the demons).

(S. S. VI. 60. 9)

२०.१९. देवशत्रु (दानव) जुष्टोन्माद

दानव ग्रह पीडित उन्माद का रोगी अति स्वेदयुक्त होता है और द्विज, गुरु एवं देवताओं के दोष निकालता रहता है । वह तिरछी आँखोंवाला, भय-शून्य, कुमार्ग पर चलने की प्रवृत्ति वाला, अधिक खाने पीने पर भी सन्तुष्ट न होनेवाला तथा दुष्टात्मा होता है ।

20.20. Psychoses due to the Gandharva Grahās

हृष्टात्मा पुलिनवनान्तरोपसेवीस्वाचारः प्रियपरिगीतगन्धमाल्यः ।

नृत्यन्वै प्रहसति चारु चाल्पशब्दं गन्धर्वग्रहपरिपीडितो मनुष्यः ॥२०॥

(सु० उ० ६०.१०)

The (psychotic) person afflicted by the *gandharva*¹ *grahas* remains in a happy mood, likes to visit the river side and the gardens frequently, has good

1, Celestial musicians.

manners, is over-fond of music and fragrant flowers, dances with a nice smile and speaks a few sweet words only.

(S. S. VI. 60. 10)

२०. २०. गन्धर्व ग्रहजुष्ट उन्माद

गन्धर्व ग्रह से पीड़ित रोगी सदा प्रसन्न रहनेवाला, नदी के किनारे तथा उद्यान में विचरण करने वाला, शुद्ध आचरणयुक्त एवं संगीत तथा सुगन्धित मालाओं में अभिरुचि रखने वाला होता है। वह सुन्दर नृत्य करता हुआ मुस्कुराता है किन्तु बोलता कम है।

20. 21. Psychoses due to the Yakṣa¹ Grahas

ताम्राक्षः प्रियतनुरक्तवस्त्रधारी गम्भीरो द्रुतगतिरल्पवाक् सहिष्णुः ।

तेजस्वी वदति च किं ददामि कस्मै यो यक्षग्रहपरिपीडितो मनुष्यः ॥२१॥

(सु० उ० ६०. ११)

The (psychotic) person afflicted by the *yakṣa* group of *grahas* has coppery (bloodshot) eyes, wears attractive, fine and red garments, has a reserve personality and a swift gait, speaks less, is tolerant, looks majestic, and keeps on enquiring what could he grant for whom.

(S. S. VI. 60. 11)

२०. २१. यक्षग्रहाविष्ट उन्माद

जिसकी आँखें ताम्र वर्ण की हों, जो सुन्दर, पतले एवं लाल रंग के वस्त्रों को धारण करता हो, गम्भीर, शीघ्रगामी, अल्पभाषी, सहिष्णु एवं तेजस्वी हो तथा “किसको क्या दूँ” पूछता रहता हो वह व्यक्ति यक्ष ग्रह से पीड़ित होता है।

1. Demi-gods, as attendants of Kubera, the god of riches. (Apte).

20. 22. Psychoses due to the Pitr¹ Grahas²

प्रेतानां स दिशति संस्तरेषु पिण्डान् शान्तात्मा जलमपि चापसव्यवस्त्रः ।

मांसेप्सुस्तिलगुडपायसाभिकामस्तद्भुक्तो भवति पितृग्रहाभिजुष्टः ॥२२॥

(सु० उ० ६०. १२)

The (psychotic) person afflicted by the *pitr grahas* is of a calm temperament, (constantly) offers oblations and water to the ancestral souls on leaves and (*kuśa*)³ grass keeping a cloth on the right (shoulder); he is (excessively) fond of meat, sesamum, jaggery and milk pudding, and has a reverence (much beyond expectations) for his parents.

(S. S. VI. 60. 12)

२०. २२. पितृग्रहजुष्ट उन्माद

पितृ ग्रहों से पीड़ित व्यक्ति शान्त होता है एवं दाहिने कन्धे पर वस्त्रादि रख कर कुशासन पर पितरों को पिण्डदान एवं जलदान करता है । वह मांस, तिल, गुड़ और खीर जैसे पदार्थों को अधिक चाहता है तथा पितरों का भक्त होता है ।

20. 23. Psychoses due to the Bhujāṅga⁴ Grahas

यस्तूर्व्या प्रसरति सर्पवत्कदाचित् सृक्कण्ठ्यौ विलिहति जिह्वया तथैव ।

क्रोधातुर्गुडमधुदुग्धपायसेप्सुर्जातिव्यो भवति भुजङ्गमेन जुष्टः ॥२३॥

(सु० उ० ६०. १३)

1. Forefathers, ancestors.
2. Grahas are considered to be good or bad super-human agencies getting inside the body and the mind of persons and producing various disease conditions.
3. *Desmostachya bipinnata* Stapf.
4. Serpent dieties.

The (psychotic) person who sometimes creeps on the ground like a snake, licks both the lips with his tongue, is short tempered and longs for jaggery, honey, milk and milk puddings should be considered to be afflicted with the *bhujaṅga grahas*.

(S. S. VI. 60. 13)

२०. २३. सर्पग्रहजुष्ट उन्माद

जो व्यक्ति कभी-कभी भूमि पर लेट कर साँप के समान सरकता हो, जीभ से ओंठों को चाटता हो, अत्यन्त क्रोधी हो एवं गुड़, शहद, दूध और खीर खाने का अधिक इच्छुक हो उसे सर्प ग्रह से आविष्ट समझना चाहिये ।

20. 24. Psychoses due to the Rākṣas¹ Grahas

मांसासृग्विविधसुराविकारलिप्सुर्निर्लज्जो भृशमतिनिष्ठुरोऽतिशूरः ।

क्रोधालुर्विपुलबलो निशाविहारी शौचद्विड् भवति स राक्षसैर्गृहीतः ॥२४॥

(सु० उ० ६०. १४)

The (psychotic) person afflicted by the *rākṣas* group of *grahas* is (too) greedy for meat, blood and various types of wines, is excessively shameless, very cruel, very brave, short tempered, very strong, roams about in the night and abhors cleanliness.

(S. S. VI. 60. 14)

२०. २४. राक्षस ग्रहजुष्ट उन्माद

मांस, रक्त एवं विविध प्रकार की सुराओं की लिप्सा रखने वाला, अति निर्लज्ज, अत्यन्त कठोर एवं शूर, क्रोधालु, अत्यधिक बलवान, रात्रि में विहार करने वाला एवं शुचि द्वेषी व्यक्ति राक्षस ग्रह से पीड़ित होता है ।

20. 25. Psychoses due to the Piśāca² Grahas

उद्धस्तः कृशपर्षोऽचिरप्रलापी दुर्गन्धो भृशमशुचिस्तथाऽतिलोलः ।

बह्वाशी विजनवनान्तरापसेवी व्याचेष्टन्भ्रमति रुदन् पिशाचजुष्टः ॥२५॥

(सु० उ० ६०. १५)

1. Literally means demons.

2. Devil.

The person afflicted by the *piśāca* groups of *grahas* keeps his hands raised, has a thin and rough body, keeps on talking rapidly and incoherently, emits an offensive odour, is very dirty and excessively greedy, is a voracious eater, likes to live in lonely places and in forests, and keeps on making unpurposeful movements while wandering and crying.

(S. S. VI. 60. 15)

२०. २५. पिशाच ग्रहजुष्ट उन्माद

जो व्यक्ति अपनी भुजायें ऊपर उठाये रखे, कुश हो, बार बार प्रलाप करता हो, दुर्गन्धित, अपवित्र तथा अति लोभी हो, अधिक भोजन करने वाला हो, विजन एवं वन में रहना चाहता हो, व्यर्थ की चेष्टायें करता हुआ तथा रोता हुआ इधर-उधर घूमता हो उसे पिशाच ग्रह से आविष्ट मानना चाहिये ।

20. 26. Incurable Features

स्थूलाक्षो द्रुतमटनः स फेनलेही निद्रालुः पतति च कम्पते च यो हि ।
यश्चाद्रिद्विरदनगादिविच्युतः स्यात् सोऽसाध्यो भवति तथा त्रयोदशाब्दे ॥२६॥
(सु० उ० ६०. १६)

A patient of insanity should be considered incurable whose eyes are prominent, who walks fast, licks his own froth, who is sleepy, falls down and has convulsions, or whose onset (of insanity) is after a fall from a hill, an elephant or a tree, etc.; in addition, insanity of over thirteen years standing also becomes incurable.

(S. S. VI. 60. 16)

२०. २६. असाध्य उन्माद

जिसकी आँखें स्थूल हों, जो जल्दी जल्दी चलता हो, मुख से निकले फेन को चाटता हो, निद्रालु हो, जो अचानक गिर पड़ता हो और काँपता हो तथा

जो पहाड़, हाथी, वृक्ष आदि से गिरने के कारण उन्मत्त हुआ हो उसे असाध्य समझना चाहिये । इसके अतिरिक्त तेरह वर्ष से अधिक पुराना उन्माद भी असाध्य होता है ।

20. 27,28. Astrological Time of Invasion by the Grahas

देवग्रहाः पौर्णमास्यामसुराः सन्ध्ययोरपि ।

गन्धर्वाः प्रायशोऽष्टम्यां यक्षाश्च प्रतिपद्य ॥ २७ ॥

पित्र्याः कृष्णक्षये हिंस्युः पञ्चम्यामपि चोरगाः ।

रक्षांसि रात्रौ पैशाचाश्चतुर्दश्यां विशन्ति हि ॥ २८ ॥

(सु० उ० ६०. १७, १८)

The time of invasion by the *deva grahas* is the full-moon day, for *asuras* the two twilights, for *gandharvas* it is usually the eighth day¹ and for *yakṣas* the first day¹; for the *pitṛs* it is the last day of the dark half of the month, for *bhujāṅgas* the fifth day¹, for *rākṣas* the night and for *piśācas* the fourteenth day¹.

(S. S. VI. 60. 17, 18)

२०. २७, २८. देवादि ग्रहों के आक्रमण का काल

प्रायः, देवग्रह पूर्णिमा के दिन और असुर ग्रह उभय सन्ध्या काल में, गन्धर्व अष्टमी के दिन तथा यक्ष प्रतिपदा को आक्रमण करते हैं । इसी प्रकार पितृ ग्रह अमावस्या को, सर्प ग्रह पंचमी के दिन, राक्षस ग्रह रात्रि में तथा पिशाच ग्रह चतुर्दशी को आक्रमण करते हैं ।

20. 29-31. Entry of the Organisms (the Grahas)

२०. २९-३१. ग्रहों का प्रवेश

20. 29,30. दर्पणादीन् यथा छाया शीतोष्णं प्राणिनो यथा ।

स्वर्माणि भास्कराचिश्च यथा देहं च देहधृक् ॥ २९ ॥

1. The specified day in both the lunar fortnights of the month.

विशन्ति च न दृश्यन्ते ग्रहास्तद्वच्छरीरिणः ।

(सु० उ० ६०.१६)

प्रविश्याशु शरीरं हि पीडां कुर्वन्ति दुःसहाम् ॥ ३० ॥

As an image is formed in the looking glass, etc., as the invisible cold and heat penetrate the living beings, as the sunrays enter the sunstone and as the soul (invisibly) enters the body, similarly the *grahas* (the invisible creatures) enter the human beings while (the *grahas* themselves) remaining invisible.

(S. S. VI. 60. 19)

They quickly enter the body and cause unbearable pain.

२०. २६, ३०.

जैसे दर्पण में छाया का, प्राणियों में शैत्य और उष्णता का तथा सूर्यकान्त मणि में सूर्य की किरणों का एवं शरीर में आत्मा का प्रवेश अदृश्य रूप से हो जाता है उसी प्रकार ये ग्रह भी मनुष्यों के शरीर में (अदृश्य रूप से) प्रविष्ट हो जाते हैं ।

ये ग्रह शरीर में प्रविष्ट होकर असहनीय पीड़ा उत्पन्न करते हैं ।

20. 31.

तपांसि तीव्राणि तथैव दानं व्रतानि धर्मो नियमश्च सत्यम् ।

गुणास्तथाऽष्टावपि तेषु नित्या व्यस्ताः समस्ताश्च यथाप्रभावम् ॥ ३१ ॥

(सु० उ० ६०.२०)

Severe penance, benevolence, fasts, religious behaviour, good code of conduct, truthfulness and the other eight¹ qualities are the characteristics

1. Good qualities—*animan* (minuteness), *laghiman* (lightness), *mahiman* (greatness), *gariman* (heaviness), *prāpti* (accomplish-

found in the *grahas* and the same get manifest in part or whole in the person afflicted (according to the *graha* concerned).

(S. S. VI. 60. 20)

२०. ३१.

इन ग्रहों में तीव्र तप, दान, व्रत, धर्म, नियम, सत्य तथा अष्ट सिद्धियाँ नित्य रहती हैं, जो अपने स्वभावानुसार व्यष्टि (आंशिक) अथवा समष्टि (पूर्ण) रूप में प्रगट होती हैं ।

20. 32,33. Entry of the Organisms (the *Grahas*)

Another view

न ते मनुष्यैः सह संविशन्ति न वा मनुष्यान्वचिदाविशन्ति ।

ये त्वाविशन्तीति वदन्ति मोहात्ते भूतविद्याविषयादपोह्याः ॥ ३२ ॥

तेषां ग्रहाणां परिचारका ये कोटीसहस्रायुतपद्मसंख्याः ।

असृग्वसामांसभुजः सुभीमा निशाविहाराश्च तथाऽऽविशन्ति ॥ ३३ ॥

(सु० उ० ६०. २१, २२)

These *grahas* themselves neither come in contact with nor enter the human body and those who unknowingly state that they enter (the human beings) are ignorant of demonology (psychiatry).

(There is another view that) it is only the followers of the *grahas* that enter the human beings; these¹ are in thousands of crores or billions and thrive on blood, fat and flesh, and who are very dreadful and roam about in the nights.

(S. S. VI. 60. 21, 22)

ment), *prakāmya* (sufficiency), *īśitva* (lordliness) and *vaśitva* (power of control).

2. ? Microbes.

२०. ३२, ३३. ग्रहों के प्रवेश पर अग्य मत

वे ग्रह मनुष्यों के साथ नहीं बैठते, और मनुष्यों के शरीर में प्रविष्ट नहीं होते । जो लोग अज्ञानवश उनका प्रविष्ट होना मानते हैं उनको भूतविद्या से अनभिज्ञ समझना चाहिये ।

इन ग्रहों के करोड़ों एवं असंख्य अनुचर जो रक्त, वसा एवं मांसभक्षी हैं, वे अत्यन्त भयानक एवं रात्रि में भ्रमण करनेवाले हैं, वे ही मानव देहों में प्रविष्ट होते हैं ।

इति श्रीमाधवकरविरचिते माधवनिदाने उन्मादनिदानम् समाप्तम् ॥२०॥

Thus ends (the fifteenth chapter entitled)
'The Diagnosis of Psychosis' of Mādhava Nidāna,
as compiled by Śrī Mādhavakara.

इस प्रकार श्रीमाधवकर द्वारा सङ्कलित माधव-निदान का
'उन्माद निदान' (नामक बीसवाँ अध्याय) समाप्त हुआ ।

M. N. 20

SUGGESTED RESEARCH PROBLEMS

1. A historical and comparative study on the various conceptual aspects of psychoses as given here is indicated.
2. A clinical correlation between the numerous types of psychotics described here with those seen in the lunatic asylums and the psychiatry departments today would be worthwhile.
3. The concept of microbes (33) specially deserves a historical evaluation.



माधवनिदानम्
एकविंशतितमोऽध्यायः

अपस्मारनिदानम्
THE DIAGNOSIS OF EPILEPSY

CHAPTER TWENTY-ONE
MĀDHAVA-NIDĀNA

THE

DIAGNOSIS OF EPILEPSY

BY

DR. J. H. B. B. B. B.

OF THE

UNIVERSITY OF

EDINBURGH

AND

OF THE

ROYAL

HOSPITAL

OF

EDINBURGH

THE

DIAGNOSIS OF EPILEPSY

BY

DR. J. H. B. B. B.

OF THE

UNIVERSITY OF

EDINBURGH

AND

OF THE

ROYAL

HOSPITAL

OF

EDINBURGH

THE

DIAGNOSIS OF EPILEPSY

M. N. 21

SUMMARY

This chapter deals with the diagnosis of epilepsy.

Aetiopathogenesis (1) of the disease has been described. The disease has been mentioned to be of four types (1). Its prodromal features (2) have been given. Clinical features including aura of the four types of epilepsy, viz. *vātika* (3), *pañtīka* (4), *kaphaja* (5) and *sannipātika* (6, 7) types have been given. Periodicity of the attacks of epilepsy has been emphasized (8, 9).

SUMMARY

This report deals with the diagnosis of epilepsy. The first part (I) of the disease has been described. The second part (II) of the disease has been described. The third part (III) of the disease has been described. The fourth part (IV) of the disease has been described. The fifth part (V) of the disease has been described. The sixth part (VI) of the disease has been described. The seventh part (VII) of the disease has been described. The eighth part (VIII) of the disease has been described. The ninth part (IX) of the disease has been described. The tenth part (X) of the disease has been described. The eleventh part (XI) of the disease has been described. The twelfth part (XII) of the disease has been described. The thirteenth part (XIII) of the disease has been described. The fourteenth part (XIV) of the disease has been described. The fifteenth part (XV) of the disease has been described. The sixteenth part (XVI) of the disease has been described. The seventeenth part (XVII) of the disease has been described. The eighteenth part (XVIII) of the disease has been described. The nineteenth part (XIX) of the disease has been described. The twentieth part (XX) of the disease has been described. The twenty-first part (XXI) of the disease has been described. The twenty-second part (XXII) of the disease has been described. The twenty-third part (XXIII) of the disease has been described. The twenty-fourth part (XXIV) of the disease has been described. The twenty-fifth part (XXV) of the disease has been described. The twenty-sixth part (XXVI) of the disease has been described. The twenty-seventh part (XXVII) of the disease has been described. The twenty-eighth part (XXVIII) of the disease has been described. The twenty-ninth part (XXIX) of the disease has been described. The thirtieth part (XXX) of the disease has been described. The thirty-first part (XXXI) of the disease has been described. The thirty-second part (XXXII) of the disease has been described. The thirty-third part (XXXIII) of the disease has been described. The thirty-fourth part (XXXIV) of the disease has been described. The thirty-fifth part (XXXV) of the disease has been described. The thirty-sixth part (XXXVI) of the disease has been described. The thirty-seventh part (XXXVII) of the disease has been described. The thirty-eighth part (XXXVIII) of the disease has been described. The thirty-ninth part (XXXIX) of the disease has been described. The fortieth part (XL) of the disease has been described. The forty-first part (XLI) of the disease has been described. The forty-second part (XLII) of the disease has been described. The forty-third part (XLIII) of the disease has been described. The forty-fourth part (XLIV) of the disease has been described. The forty-fifth part (XLV) of the disease has been described. The forty-sixth part (XLVI) of the disease has been described. The forty-seventh part (XLVII) of the disease has been described. The forty-eighth part (XLVIII) of the disease has been described. The forty-ninth part (XLIX) of the disease has been described. The fiftieth part (L) of the disease has been described. The fifty-first part (LI) of the disease has been described. The fifty-second part (LII) of the disease has been described. The fifty-third part (LIII) of the disease has been described. The fifty-fourth part (LIV) of the disease has been described. The fifty-fifth part (LV) of the disease has been described. The fifty-sixth part (LVI) of the disease has been described. The fifty-seventh part (LVII) of the disease has been described. The fifty-eighth part (LVIII) of the disease has been described. The fifty-ninth part (LIX) of the disease has been described. The sixtieth part (LX) of the disease has been described. The sixty-first part (LXI) of the disease has been described. The sixty-second part (LXII) of the disease has been described. The sixty-third part (LXIII) of the disease has been described. The sixty-fourth part (LXIV) of the disease has been described. The sixty-fifth part (LXV) of the disease has been described. The sixty-sixth part (LXVI) of the disease has been described. The sixty-seventh part (LXVII) of the disease has been described. The sixty-eighth part (LXVIII) of the disease has been described. The sixty-ninth part (LXIX) of the disease has been described. The seventieth part (LXX) of the disease has been described. The seventy-first part (LXXI) of the disease has been described. The seventy-second part (LXXII) of the disease has been described. The seventy-third part (LXXIII) of the disease has been described. The seventy-fourth part (LXXIV) of the disease has been described. The seventy-fifth part (LXXV) of the disease has been described. The seventy-sixth part (LXXVI) of the disease has been described. The seventy-seventh part (LXXVII) of the disease has been described. The seventy-eighth part (LXXVIII) of the disease has been described. The seventy-ninth part (LXXIX) of the disease has been described. The eightieth part (LXXX) of the disease has been described. The eighty-first part (LXXXI) of the disease has been described. The eighty-second part (LXXXII) of the disease has been described. The eighty-third part (LXXXIII) of the disease has been described. The eighty-fourth part (LXXXIV) of the disease has been described. The eighty-fifth part (LXXXV) of the disease has been described. The eighty-sixth part (LXXXVI) of the disease has been described. The eighty-seventh part (LXXXVII) of the disease has been described. The eighty-eighth part (LXXXVIII) of the disease has been described. The eighty-ninth part (LXXXIX) of the disease has been described. The ninetieth part (LXXXX) of the disease has been described. The ninety-first part (LXXXXI) of the disease has been described. The ninety-second part (LXXXXII) of the disease has been described. The ninety-third part (LXXXXIII) of the disease has been described. The ninety-fourth part (LXXXXIV) of the disease has been described. The ninety-fifth part (LXXXXV) of the disease has been described. The ninety-sixth part (LXXXXVI) of the disease has been described. The ninety-seventh part (LXXXXVII) of the disease has been described. The ninety-eighth part (LXXXXVIII) of the disease has been described. The ninety-ninth part (LXXXXIX) of the disease has been described. The hundredth part (LXXXXX) of the disease has been described.

एकविंशतितमोऽध्यायः
CHAPTER TWENTY-ONE

अपस्मारनिदानम्
THE DIAGNOSIS OF EPILEPSY

21. 1. Aetiopathogenesis

चिन्ताशोकादिभिर्दोषाः क्रुद्धा हृत्स्रोतसि स्थिताः ।
कृत्वा स्मृतेरपध्वंसमपस्मारं प्रकुर्वन्ते ॥
तमःप्रवेशः संरम्भो दोषोद्रेकहतस्मृतेः ।
अपस्मार इति ज्ञेयो गदो घोरश्चतुर्विधः ॥ १ ॥

Humours aggravated due to anxiety, grief, etc. get lodged in the channels of *hṛt*¹ and having caused the loss of memory produce epilepsy.

It is characterised by a feeling as if entering into darkness and convulsive movements (of the eyeballs and limbs); this dreadful disease is known as *apasmāra*² because of the loss of memory due to excessive vitiation of humours and is of four types.

२१.१. हेतु एवं सम्प्राप्ति

चिन्ता, शोक आदि से प्रकुपित होकर दोष हृद् (मनोवह) स्रोतसों में स्थित होकर तथा स्मृति को नष्ट कर के अपस्मार रोग को उत्पन्न करते हैं ।

1. Implies brain here.

2. Etymologically *Apasmāra* = *Apa* + *Smāra*

Apa = Loss

Smāra = Memory.

दोषों के प्रकोप से स्मृति नष्ट हो जाने पर रोगी अन्धकार में प्रविष्ट होता हुआ जैसा अनुभव करता है तथा (नेत्रों और हाथ पैर आदि का) विक्षेपण करता रहता है । इस भयंकर व्याधि में स्मृति का हास होने से इसे अपस्मार कहते हैं और यह चार प्रकार की होती है ।

21.2. Prodromal Features

हृत्कम्पः शून्यता स्वेदो ध्यानं मूर्च्छा प्रमूढता ।

निद्रानाशश्च तस्मिन् भविष्यति भवत्यथ ॥ २ ॥

(सु० उ० ६१.७)

Palpitation of the heart, a sensation of vacuum (or emptiness), sweating, brooding, swooning, dullness of the senses and insomnia are its prodromal features.

(S. S. VI. 61. 7)

२१.२. पूर्वरूप

हृदय में कम्पन, शून्यता का अनुभव, पसीना आना, चिन्ता, मूर्च्छा, इन्द्रियों की प्रमूढता तथा निद्रानाश इसके पूर्वरूप हैं ।

21.3. Vātika Epilepsy

कम्पते प्रदशेदन्तान् फेनोद्वामी श्वसित्यपि ।

परुषारुणकृष्णानि पश्येद्रूपाणि चानिलात् ॥ ३ ॥

(च० चि० १०.६)

A patient of *vātika* epilepsy visualises (has an aura of) all things as rough, reddish or black; and (on becoming unconscious) he gets tremors, gnashes his teeth, brings out froth (from the mouth) and breaths rapidly.

(C. S. VI. 10, 9)

२१.३. वातिक अपस्मार

वातिक अपस्मार का रोगी (दौरा प्रारम्भ होने से पूर्व) वस्तुओं को रुख, लाल या कृष्ण वर्ण का देखता है तथा (संशारहित हो जानेपर) काँपता है, दाँत किटकिटाता है और मुख से फेन निकालते हुए तेजी से साँस लेता है।

21.4. Paittika Epilepsy

पीतफेनाङ्गवक्त्राक्षः पीतासृग्रूपदर्शनः ।

सत्तृष्णोष्णानलव्याप्तलोकदर्शी च पैत्तिकः ॥ ४ ॥

(च० चि० १०.१०)

A patient of *paittika* epilepsy has yellow discolouration of the froth (coming out from the mouth), the limbs, the face and the eyes; he sees all objects as yellow or red, is distressed with thirst and hot sensation and visualizes all wordly objects as enveloped by fire (as the aura).

(C.S. VI. 10. 10)

२१.४. पैत्तिक अपस्मार

पैत्तिक अपस्मार के रोगी का शरीर, मुख, नेत्र एवं फेन पीले वर्ण के हो जाते हैं। वह (दौरा के पूर्व) तृष्णा एवं पीता से पीड़ित होकर सभी वस्तुओं को पीला अथवा रक्त वर्ण का देखता है तथा उसे सम्पूर्ण लोक में अग्नि व्याप्त प्रतीत होती है।

21.5. Kaphaja Epilepsy

शुक्लफेनाङ्गवक्त्राक्षः शीतहृष्टाङ्गजो गुरुः ।

पश्येच्छुक्लानि रूपाणि श्लैष्मिको मुच्यते चिरात् ॥ ५ ॥

(च० चि० १०.११)

A patient of *kaphaja* epilepsy has whitish discolouration of the froth (coming out of his mouth),

limbs, face and eyes. (During the aura) he feels his body to be cold and heavy, has horripilation and objects are seen by him as white. He recovers from the epileptic seizure after a long time.

(C. S. VI. 10. 11)

२१.५. कफज अपस्मार

कफज अपस्मार से पीड़ित रोगी का शरीर, मुख, नेत्र एवं मुख से निकलने वाला फेन श्वेत वर्ण का होता है । (दौरे से पूर्व) उसका शरीर शीतल, गुरु एवं रोमांचयुक्त होता है और वह सभी वस्तुओं को शुक्ल वर्ण का देखता है । इसका दौरा काफी देर बाद समाप्त होता है ।

21. 6,7. Sannipātika Epilepsy and its Incurability

सर्वैरेतैः समस्तैश्च लिङ्गैर्ज्ञेयस्त्रिदोषजः ।

अपस्मारः स चासाध्यो यः क्षीणस्यानवश्च यः ॥ ६ ॥

(च० चि० १०.१२)

प्रतिस्फुरन्तं बहुशः क्षीणं प्रचलितध्रुवम् ।

नेत्राभ्यां च विकुर्वणिमपस्मारो विनाशयेत् ॥ ७ ॥

Epilepsy due to the three humours together is characterised by the features of these (above) three vitiated humours combined together. This epilepsy is incurable as also that in an emaciated person and that which is chronic.

(C. S. VI. 10. 12)

If an epileptic has violent convulsions, is excessively emaciated and his eyebrows move frequently as well as his eyes get twisted (in different ways), the epilepsy would cause his death.

२१.६,७. सान्निपातिक अपस्मार एवं उसकी असाध्यता

सान्निपातिक अपस्मार तीनों दोषों के प्रकोप के कारण उनके (उपरोक्त

दोषों के) लक्षणों से युक्त होता है। यह असाध्य होता है। इसके अतिरिक्त क्षीण रोगियों में उत्पन्न एवं चिरकालिक अपस्मार असाध्य होता है।

जिस रोगी में निरन्तर आक्षेप आते हों तथा जो अत्यन्त दुर्बल हो और जिसके भ्रू एवं नेत्र निरन्तर प्रचलायमान हों तो वह रोगी इस अपस्मार से मर जाता है।

21. 8,9. Periodicity in epileptic attacks

पक्षाद्वा द्वादशाह्वाद्वा मासाद्वा कुपिता मलाः ।

अपस्माराय कुर्वन्ति वेगं किञ्चिदथान्तरम् ॥ ८ ॥

(च० चि० १०.१३)

देवे वर्षत्यपि यथा भूमौ बीजानि कानिचित् ।

शरदि प्रतिरोहन्ति तथा व्याघिसमुच्छ्रयः ॥ ९ ॥

(सु० उ० ६१.१६/२, २०/१)

The aggravated *doṣas* produce the attacks of epilepsy at intervals of a fortnight, twelve days, a month or at some other interval (than above).

(C. S. VI. 10. 13)

As some seeds, thrown on earth during the rainy season, would germinate only during the autumn, so also the (periodicity of) attacks of diseases bide their time.

(S. S. VI. 61. 19/2, 20/1)

२१. ८, ९. अपस्मार का प्रकोप-काल

प्रकुपित दोषों के कारण अपस्मार का दौरा एक पक्ष, बारह दिन अथवा एक महीने या किसी अन्य अन्तराल पर होता है।

जिस प्रकार वर्षाकाल में भूमि पर पड़े हुए बीज शरदकाल में ही उगते हैं,

वैसे ही व्याधियों के बीजरूपी कारण भी निश्चित समय (के अन्तराल) पर ही अपना प्रभाव उत्पन्न करते हैं ।

इति श्रीमाधवकरविरचिते माधवनिदाने अपस्मारनिदानं समाप्तम् ॥२१॥

Thus ends (the twenty-first chapter entitled)
'The Diagnosis of Epilepsy' of Mādhava Nidāna,
as compiled by Śrī Mādhavakara.

इस प्रकार श्रीमाधवकर द्वारा सङ्कलित माधव-निदान का
अपस्मार निदान (नामक इक्कीसवाँ अध्याय) समाप्त हुआ ।

M. N. 21

SUGGESTED RESEARCH PROBLEMS**1. Historical & Comparative**

A historical and comparative study on the concepts of epilepsy as outlined in this chapter would be interesting.

2. Clinical

The four types of epilepsy (3-7) should be correlated with modern clinical terminology.

माधवनिदानम्

द्वाविंशतितमोऽध्यायः

वातव्याधिनिदानम्

THE DIAGNOSIS OF THE *VĀTIKA* DISEASES

CHAPTER TWENTY-TWO
MĀDHAVA-NIDĀNA

M. N. 22

SUMMARY

This chapter deals with the aetiopathogenesis and clinical features of a group of diseases primarily caused by *vāta*.

Aetiopathogenesis in general of the humour *vāta* getting vitiated and aggravated is given (1-4). Prodromal features of the *vātika* diseases are indicated (5) and their general clinical features are described (6-9/1), the specific diseases (discussed below) depending upon the involved site of lesion (9/2).

Clinical features of the vitiated *vāta* afflicting some of the organs/regions as the *koṣṭha* or the abdomino-thoracic cavities (10), *sarvāṅga* or the entire body as peripheral neuritis (11), *guda pradeśa* or the ano-rectal region (12), *āmāśaya* or the stomach (13), *pakvāśaya* or the colonic area (14) and the *indriyas* or the sense organs (15/1) are described.

The next group discussed are those of the various tissues, etc. afflicted by vitiated *vāyu*, viz., the skin (15/2, 15/3), blood (16), muscles and fatty tissue (17), bones and joints (18, 21/2), semen/ovum (19), vessels (20/1) and ligaments (20/2, 21/1).

Clinical features of the envelopment or association of the five types of *vāyu* by other humours, *pitta* and *kapha* are dealt with next viz. of *prāṇa vāyu*, *udāna vāyu*, *samāna vāyu*, *apāna vāyu* and *vyāna vāyu* (22-26).

The group of convulsive disorders and spastic conditions is described which includes tetanus after injury, abortion and haemorrhage, hysterical fits, meningitis, etc. (27-39/1).

Description of the following *vātika* diseases are also included : hemiplegia (39/2-44/2), facial paralysis (44/3-48), dislocation jaw (49, 50), torticollis (51), paralysis of the tongue (52), ? venous thrombosis of the head and the neck (53), sciatica (54-56), brachial neuralgia (57, 58/1), synovitis of the knee joint (58/2, 59/1), lame (59/2), cripple (60/1), lathyrism (60/2, 61/1), ankle sprain (61/2, 62/1), burning feet syndrome (62/2, 63/1), peripheral neuritis of the feet (63/2, 64/1), atrophy of the shoulder region (64/2), ? frozen shoulder (65/1), speech disorders (65/2, 66/1), bladder pain (66/2, 67/1), proctalgia (67/2, 68/1), tympanitis (68/2, 69/1), acute gastric dilatation (69/2, 70/1), benign (70/2, 71/1), and malignant (72) prostatic enlargements, urinary reflux (73), ? Parkinsonism (74/1), tetany (74/2) and eructations (75). A catechism regarding other unmentioned diseases due to vitiated *vāyu* is given (76).

Prognosis of *vātika* diseases in general is considered to be bad (77, 78/1); their fatal complications are mentioned (78/2, 79).

Finally, it is emphasized that if the all-pervading *vāyu* remains within its normal anatomical and physiological limits, the person would live for the full span of a hundred years without suffering from any disease (80).

द्वाविंशतितमोऽध्यायः

CHAPTER TWENTY-TWO

वातव्याधिनिदानम्

THE DIAGNOSIS OF VĀTIKA DISEASES

22. 1-4. Aetiopathogenesis in general

रूक्षशीताल्पलघ्वन्नव्यवायातिप्रजागरैः ।
विषमादुपचाराच्च दोषासृक्स्त्रवणादपि ॥ १ ॥
लङ्घनप्लवनात्यध्वव्यायामादिविचेष्टितैः ।
धातूनां संक्षयाच्चिन्ताशोकरोगातिकर्षणात् ॥ २ ॥
वेगसंधारणादामादभिघातादभोजनात् ।
मर्मावाधादगजोष्ठाश्वशीघ्रयानापतंसनात् ॥ ३ ॥
देहे स्रोतांसि रिक्तानि पूरयित्वाऽनिलो बली ।
करोति विविधान् व्याधीन् सर्वाङ्गैकाङ्गसंश्रयान् ॥ ४ ॥

(च० चि० २८. १५, १६, १७/२-१६/१)

Dry (non-fatty), cold and light¹ food in insufficient quantities, excessive sexual intercourse, keeping awake at nights for long periods, administration of inappropriate (*pañcakarma* and other) therapeutic measures, excessive loss of *doṣas* (and *malas*) and of blood², starvation, (too much) swimming, long journies on foot, excessive physical exercise and

1. Low calorie food.

2. Haemorrhage.

similar exertions, depletion of tissues (*dhātus*), worry, grief, marked emaciation due to diseases, suppression of the natural (physiological) urges, *āma*¹, trauma, fasting, injury to the vital parts, and (excessive) riding on an elephant, a camel, a horse or on a fast moving vehicle or else a fall from them, aggravate *vāyu* which, afflicting the patent channels of the body, gives rise to various generalised diseases or to those localised to a part of the body.

(C. S. VI. 28. 15, 16, 17/2-19/1)

२२. १-४. सामान्य निदान एवं सम्प्राप्ति

रूक्ष, शीत, लघु एवं अल्पाहार के सेवन से, अति मैथुन, रात्रि जागरण, (पंचकर्म आदि) उपचारों के अनुचित प्रयोग, दोषों (मलादि) एवं रक्त क्षय, लंघन, तैरने, अधिक पद यात्रा, अति व्यायाम, धातु क्षय, चिन्ता एवं शोक, व्याधिजन्य अपकर्षण, वेगों के धारण, आम, अभिघात, उपवास, मर्मागों की विकृति से तथा हाथी, ऊँट एवं घोड़े अथवा तीव्र गति वाले वाहन से गिर जाने या सवारी करने से वायु प्रकुपित होकर शरीर के रिक्त स्रोतों को परिपूर्ण करके विविध प्रकार के सर्वांगिक या एकांगिक व्याधियों को उत्पन्न करता है।

22. 5. Prodromal features, etc.

अव्यक्तं लक्षणं तेषां पूर्वरूपमिति स्मृतम् ।

आत्मरूपं तु यद्व्यक्तमपायो लघुता पुनः ॥ ५ ॥

(च० चि० २८. १६/२, २०/१)

Their prodromal stage is characterised by incomplete manifestation of the clinical features. On full manifestation, the same should be considered to be their specific clinical features. Lessening (in the

-
1. Accumulation of products of incomplete digestion and metabolism.

severity of the clinical features) is the only criteria of cure.¹

(C. S. VI. 28. 19/2, 20/1)

२२. ५. पूर्वरूप आदि

अव्यक्त लक्षण ही वात व्याधि का पूर्व रूप होता है तथा व्यक्त लक्षण (दोषादि भेद से) उनके आत्म रूप कहलाते हैं। तथा लक्षणों में लघुता (कमी) होना ही रोग के शमन का सूचक है।

22. 6-9. General Clinical Features

संकोचः पर्वणां स्तम्भो भङ्गोऽस्थनां पर्वणामपि ।

रोमहर्षः प्रलापश्च पाणिपृष्ठशिरोग्रहः ॥ ६ ॥

खाञ्ज्यपाङ्गुल्यकुब्जत्वं शोथोऽङ्गानामनिद्रता ।

गर्भशुक्ररजोनाशः स्पन्दनं गात्रसुप्तता ॥ ७ ॥

शिरोनासाक्षिजत्रूणां ग्रीवायाश्चापि हुण्डनम् ।

भेदस्तोदोर्दतिराक्षेपो मुहुश्चायास एव च ॥ ८ ॥

एवंविधानि रूपाणि करोति कुपितोऽनिलः ।

हेतुस्थानविशेषाच्च भवेद्रोगविशेषकृत् ॥ ९ ॥

(च० चि० २८. २०/२-२४/१)

(On account of the vitiation of *vāyu*, there are contractures and fixity of the small joints of the fingers and toes, fractures and dislocations of the bones and small joints, horripilation, delirium, stiffness of the hands, the back and the head (and the neck), lameness, paralysis, hunch-back, oedema in the limbs, insomnia, loss of the power of conception, oligospermia, amenorrhoea, palpitation,

-
1. In *vātika* diseases, amelioration of the disease only is possible and residual symptoms may always persist.

numbness of the limbs (and other body parts), deformities of the head, the nose, the eyes, the clavicular regions and of the neck, splitting type of pain, pricking sensation, distress, convulsions and frequent attacks of exhaustion.

The vitiated *vāyu* gives rise to the above mentioned various clinical features and depending on the site of lesion and the aetiological factors involved the different diseases are produced.

(C. S. VI. 28. 20/2-24/1)

२२. ६-९. सामान्य लक्षण

वायु के दूषित होने से हाथ एवं पैर की अंगुलियों के पर्वों में संकोच एवं स्तम्भ हो जाता है तथा अस्थि का भग्न एवं संधियाँ विच्युत हो जाती हैं। रोमहर्ष, प्रलाप, हाथ, पैर, पृष्ठ एवं शिर का जकड़ जाना, लँगड़ापन, पङ्गुता एवं कुवड़ापन का होना, अंगों में शोथ (सूजन) होना, अनिद्रा, गर्भ, शुक्र एवं रज का नाश हो जाना, स्पन्दन, शरीर अवयवों में सुप्तता (संज्ञानाश), शिर, नासिका, नेत्र, जत्रु एवं ग्रीवा में विकृति हो जाना, अंगों में मेदनवत् एवं सुई चुभने जैसी पीड़ा, आक्षेप एवं बार बार थकावट का होना वायु प्रकोप के सामान्य लक्षण होते हैं।

इस प्रकार कुपित वायु इन लक्षणों को उत्पन्न करता हुआ हेतु एवं स्थान की विशेषता से विभिन्न विशिष्ट रोगों को उत्पन्न करता है।

22. 10. Vāyu afflicting the Koṣṭha

तत्र कोष्ठाश्रिते दुष्टे निग्रहो मूत्रवर्चसोः।

ब्रध्नहृद्रोगगुल्मार्शः पार्श्वशूलं च मारुते ॥ १० ॥

(च० चि० २८. २४/२, २५/१)

When *vāyu* gets vitiated and localised in the *koṣṭha*¹ it causes retention of urine and faeces, an

1. Thoracic and abdominal cavities.

inguinal swelling, heart diseases, abdominal swellings, piles and pain in the sides (of the chest and the abdomen).

(C. S. VI. 28. 24/2, 25/1)

२२. १०. कोष्ठाश्रित वायु के लक्षण

वायु जब दूषित होकर कोष्ठ में स्थित होता है मूत्र एवं मल का अवरोध उत्पन्न करता हुआ वंक्षण प्रदेश में शोथ, हृद्रोग, गुल्म, अर्श एवं पार्श्व शूल को उत्पन्न करता है ।

22. 11. Vāyu afflicting the entire body

(? Peripheral Neuritis)

सर्वाङ्गकृपिते वाते गात्रस्फुरणभञ्जनम् ।

वेदनाभिः परीताश्च स्फुटन्तीवास्य सन्धयः ॥ ११ ॥

(च० चि० २८. २५/२, २६/१)

When the vitiated *vāyu* afflicts the whole body of the patient, twitchings in various parts of his body occur with a feeling as if they were being broken to pieces due to pain along with splitting joint pains.

(C. S. VI. 28. 25/2, 26/1)

२२. ११. सर्वाङ्गत् वायु के लक्षण

जब दूषित वायु सम्पूर्ण शरीर गत हो जाता है तो विभिन्न अंगों में स्फुरण एवं भेदनवत् पीड़ा तथा संधियों में (तोड़, भेद एवं) स्फुटन सी पीड़ा होती है ।

22. 12. Vāyu afflicting the ano-rectal region

ग्रहोविष्णुमूत्रवातानां शूलाध्मानाश्मशर्कराः ।

जङ्घोरुत्रिकपात्पृष्ठरोगशोषौ गुदे स्थिते ॥ १२ ॥

(च० चि० २८. २६/२, २७/१)

If the vitiated *vāta* gets localised in the ano-rectal region retention of urine, faeces and flatus, colicky pain, tympanitis, urinary calculi, gravel disease and wasting and other diseases¹ affecting the feet, legs, thighs, the sacral region and the back may be associated (and should, therefore, be looked for).

(C. S. VI. 28. 26/2, 27/1)

२२. १२. गुद प्रदेश में स्थित कुपित वात के लक्षण

जब कुपित वायु गुद प्रदेश में स्थित होता है तो मल, मूत्र एवं वायु निस्सरण को रोक देता है । इसके साथ शूल, आध्मान, अश्मरी एवं शर्करा रोग हो सकते हैं । जङ्घा, उरु, त्रिकू एवं पृष्ठ में अन्य रोग तथा शोष भी हो सकते हैं ।

22. 13. Vāyu afflicting the stomach region

रुक्पाश्वोदरहृत्तुनाभेस्तृष्णोद्गारविसूचिकाः ।

कासः कण्ठास्यशोषश्च श्वासश्चापामाशयस्थिते ॥ १३ ॥

(च० चि० २८. २७/२, २८/१)

If the vitiated *vāyu* afflicts the stomach region, pain in the chest, the abdomen, the cardiac region and the umbilical region, thirst, eructation, *visūcikā*², cough, dryness of the throat and the mouth and dyspnoea may occur.

(C. S. VI. 28. 27/2, 28/1)

२२. १३. आमाशयगत कुपित वायु के लक्षण

जब कुपित वायु आमाशय में स्थित होता है तो पार्श्व, उदर, हृदय तथा

1. Paresis, for all practical purposes.

2. Diarrhoea and vomiting (of ? gastroenteritis) : Ref. M. N. 6. 16-18.

नाभि प्रदेशों में पीड़ा, तृष्णा, उद्गार, विसृचिका¹, कास, श्वास तथा कंठ एवं मुख में शुष्कता उत्पन्न करता है ।

22. 14. Vāta afflicting the colonic area

पक्वाशयस्थोऽन्त्रकूजं शूलाटोपौ करोति च ।

कृच्छ्रमूत्रपुरीषत्वमानाहं त्रिकवेदनाम् ॥ १४ ॥

(च० चि० २८. २८/२, २६/१)

The vitiated *vāyu* afflicting the colonic area produces borborygmi, abdominal pain, tympanitis, dysuria, difficulty in passing stool or absolute constipation, and pain in the sacral region.

(C. S. VI. 28. 28/2, 29/1)

२२. १४. पक्वाशयगत कुपित वायु के लक्षण

जब कुपित वायु पक्वाशय में स्थित होता है तो आँतों में गुड़गुड़ाहट, शूल, आटोप, मल-मूत्र की रुकावट, आनाह एवं त्रिक प्रदेश में वेदना उत्पन्न करता है ।

22. 15/1. Vāyu afflicting the sense organs

श्रोत्रादिष्विन्द्रियवधं कुर्याद् दुष्टसमीरणः ।

(च० चि० २८. २६/२)

Vitiated *vāyu*, afflicting the organ of hearing and other sense organs, would cause their (partial or total) loss of function.

(C. S. VI. 28. 29/2)

२२. १५/१. श्रोत्रादि इन्द्रियगत वात के लक्षण

दूषित वायु जब श्रोत्रादि इन्द्रियों में स्थित होता है तो उनकी ज्ञान शक्ति का (थोड़ा या पूर्ण) नाश कर देता है ।

1. अतिसार एवं वमन (मा. नि. ६. १६-१८).

22. 15/2, 15/3. Vitiated vāyu afflicting the skin

त्वग्रूक्षा स्फुटिता सुप्ता कृशा कृष्णा च तुद्यते ।

आतन्यते सरागा च पर्वरूक् त्वग्गतेऽनिले ॥ १५ ॥

(च० चि० २८. ३०)

When vitiated *vāyu* afflicts the skin, it causes dryness, cracking, numbness, thinning, blackish discolouration and pricking pain, as well as stretching¹ and redness along with pain in the small joints of the hands and the feet.

(C. S. VI. 28. 30)

२२. १५/२, १५/३. त्वचागत वात के लक्षण

जब प्रकुपित वायु त्वचा में स्थित होता है तो त्वचा रूक्ष, स्फुटित (फटी हुयी), सुप्त, कृश एवं कृष्ण-वर्ण की हो जाती है । तथा उसमें सुई चुभने जैसी पीड़ा एवं तनाव^२ और लालिमा के साथ हाथ और पैर की छोटी सन्धियों में वेदना होती है ।

22. 16. Vitiated vāyu afflicting the blood³

रूग्स्तीव्राः ससन्तापा वैवर्ण्यं कृशताऽरुचिः ।

गात्रे चारुषि भुक्तस्य स्तम्भश्चासृग्गतेऽनिले ॥ १६ ॥

(च० चि० २८. ३१)

Vitiated *vāyu* afflicting the blood would produce severe pain, a feeling of warmth, discolouration of the body, emaciation, anorexia, skin lesions in various parts of the body and a feeling of heaviness after meals.

(C. S. VI. 28. 31)

1. Disappearance of wrinkles as in the leprotics.

2. त्वचा की सामान्य झुर्रियाँ न होकर चिकनी हो जाना जैसे कुष्ठ में पाया जाता है ।

3. Some Ayurvedic scholars regard this as ?essential hypertension

२२. १६. रक्तगत वायु के लक्षण

कुपित वायु जब रक्त को दूषित करता है तो तीव्र वेदना, सन्ताप (उष्णता) का अनुभव और शरीर का वर्ण असामान्य हो जाता है । शरीर में कृशता एवं अरुचि, त्वक् विकार तथा भोजनोपरान्त शरीर में भारीपन का अनुभव होता है ।

22. 17. Vitiated vāyu afflicting the muscles and fatty tissue

गुर्वङ्गं तुद्यतेऽत्यर्थं दण्डमुष्टिहतं यथा ।

सरुक् श्रमितमत्यर्थं मांसमेदोगतेऽनिले ॥ १७ ॥

(च० चि० २८. ३२)

When vitiated *vāyu* afflicts the muscular and fatty tissues a feeling of heaviness in the body, severe pricking type of sensation, pain as if the person has been beaten by blows of sticks or fists, and extreme exhaustion would occur.

(C. S. VI. 28. 32)

२२. १७. मांस एवं मेद गत वायु के लक्षण

कुपित वायु जब मांस एवं मेद को दूषित करता है तो शरीर में भारीपन, अत्यधिक तोद तथा ऐसी वेदना का अनुभव होता है जैसे कि ढण्डे या मुक्के द्वारा पीटा गया हो तथा अत्यन्त थकान हो जाती है ।

22. 18. Vitiated vāyu afflicting the bones and bone-marrow

भेदोऽस्थिपर्वणां सन्धिशूलं मांसबलक्षयः ।

अस्वप्नः संतप्ता रुक् च मज्जास्थिकुपितेऽनिले ॥ १८ ॥

(च० चि० २८. ३३)

When vitiated *vāyu* afflicts the bone and bone-marrow there may occur splitting pain in the bones

and the small joints of the hands and the feet, severe pain in the big joints, wasting of muscles and depletion of strength, insomnia and persistent pain (anywhere in the body).

(C. S. VI. 28. 33)

२२. १८. अस्थि एवं मज्जागत वायु के लक्षण

प्रकुपित वायु जब अस्थि एवं मज्जा को दूषित करता है तो अस्थि, छोटी संधियों तथा बड़ी संधियों में भी वेदना होती है। मांस और बल का क्षय तथा निद्रानाश होता है और वेदना सदा बनी रहती है।

22. 19. Vitiated vāyu afflicting the semen/ovum

क्षिप्रं मुञ्चति वध्नाति शुक्रं गर्भमथापि वा ।

विकृतिं जनयेच्चापि शुक्रस्थः कुपितोऽनिलः ॥ १९ ॥

(च० चि० २८. ३४)

When vitiated *vāyu* has afflicted the semen, there is either a quick discharge of semen or it is suppressed. Similarly, there is either an abortion¹ or else there is delayed² labour. Further, when the sperms (or ovum) have been afflicted (by vitiated *vāta*), it may also give rise to congenital deformities.

(C. S. VI. 28. 34)

२२. १९. शुक्र/शोणित गत वायु के लक्षण

जब कुपित वायु शुक्र को दूषित करता है तो शुक्र का पतन शीघ्र होता है या कभी कभी रुक जाता है। इसी प्रकार कभी गर्भ का शीघ्र पतन^१ या कभी प्रसव देर^२ से होता है। जब दूषित वायु शुक्राणु (या रज) को प्रभावित करता है तो गर्भ में विकृति भी उत्पन्न हो सकती है।

1. Hypermotility of the uterus.

2. Uterine inertia.

3. गर्भाशय की गतिशीलता बढ़ जाती है।

4. गर्भाशय का जड़त्व हो जाना।

22. 20/1. Vitiated vāyu afflicting the vessels (sirās)

कुर्यात्सिरागतः शुलं सिराकुञ्चनपूरणम् ।

(सु० नि० १. २७/१)

When vitiated *vāyu* afflicts the vessels, it gives rise to pain, narrowing¹ of the vessels or their dilatation².

(S. S. II. 1. 27/1)

२२. २०/१. सिरागत वायु के लक्षण

जब कुपित वायु सिराओं को दूषित करता है तो वेदना उत्पन्न करता है तथा सिराओं में कभी संकोच करता है या कभी उनका आयाम बढ़ा देता है ।

22. 20/2, 21/1. Vitiated vāyu afflicting the ligaments

स बाह्याभ्यन्तरायामं खल्लीं कौब्ज्यमथापि वा ॥ २० ॥

सर्वाङ्गैकाङ्गरोगांश्च कुर्यात्स्नायुगतोऽनिलः ।

(च० चि० २८. ३५)

When vitiated *vāyu* afflicts the ligaments, it causes opisthotonos or else emprosthotonos, tetany, kyphosis, as well as *vātika* diseases afflicting all the extremities (quadriplegia) or just one limb (monoplegia) only.

(C. S. VI. 28. 35)

२२. २०/२, २१/१. स्नायुगत वायु के लक्षण

जब वायु स्नायु को प्रभावित करता है तो बाह्यायाम, अन्तरायाम, खल्ली, कुब्जता तथा सर्वांग अथवा एकांग वातिक व्याधियों को उत्पन्न करता है ।

1. Narrowing of arterial lumen/collapse of veins.

2. Arterial dilatation/engorgement or varicosity of veins.

22. 21/2. Vitiated vāyu afflicting the joints
(? osteoarthritis)

हन्ति सन्धिगतः सन्धीन् शूलोटोषौ करोति च ॥ २१ ॥

(सु० नि० १. २८/१)

When the vitiated *vāta* afflicts the joints, it leads to a painful swelling and (ultimately) destruction of the joints.

(S. S. II. 1. 28/1)

२२. २१/२. सन्धिगत वायु के लक्षण

जब कुपित वायु सन्धियों को प्रभावित करता है तो सन्धियों को नष्ट कर देता है और इसमें वेदना युक्त शोथ भी हो जाता है ।

22. 22-26. Clinical features of vāta envelopment
by other humours

२२. २२-२६. अन्य दोषों से आवृत्त वात के लक्षण

22/1, 22/2. प्राणोदानौ समानश्च व्यानश्चापान एव च ।

स्थानस्था मास्तुः पञ्च यापयन्ति शरीरिणम् ॥

(सु० नि० १. १२)

As long as the five types of *vāyu*, *prāṇa*, *udāna*, *samāna*, *vyāna* and *apāna* are within their normal (anatomical and physiological) limits, they maintain the life of the living beings.

(S. S. II. 1. 12)

२२/१, २२/२. प्राण, उदान, समान, व्यान और अपान ये पाँचों वायु जब अपने सामान्यावस्था में रहते हैं तो शरीर का धारण पोषण करते हैं ।

22/3, 22/4. प्राणे पित्तावृते छर्दिर्दाहश्चैवोपजायते ।

दौर्बल्यं सदनं तन्द्रा वैरस्यं च कफावृते ॥ २२ ॥

(सु० नि० १. ३४/२, ३५/१ पा०)

When *prāṇa vāyu* is enveloped by *pitta*, vomiting and a burning sensation are produced. When *prāṇa vāyu* is enveloped by *kapha*, there may be weakness, bodyache, drowsiness and a bad taste in the mouth.
(Var. S. S. II. 1. 34/2, 35/1)

२२/३, २२/४. जब प्राण वायु पित्त द्वारा आवृत्त होता है तो दाह एवं वमन उत्पन्न होते हैं; तथा जब प्राण वायु कफ से आवृत्त होता है तो दौर्बल्य, गात्रसाद, तन्द्रा एवं मुख में वैरस्य होता है ।

23. उदाने पित्तयुक्ते तु दाहो मूर्च्छा भ्रमः क्लमः ।

अस्वेदहर्षो मन्दोऽग्निः शीतता च कफावृते ॥ २३ ॥

(सु० नि० १. ३५/२, ३६/१ पा०)

When *udāna vāyu* is associated with *pitta*, there is a burning sensation, fainting, giddiness and exhaustion; when the same is enveloped by *kapha*, there is anhidrosis, horripilation, loss of appetite and a feeling of coldness.

(Var. S. S. II. 1. 35/2, 36/1)

२३. उदान वायु जब पित्त द्वारा आवृत्त होता है तो दाह, मूर्च्छा, भ्रम एवं क्लम उत्पन्न होते हैं; तथा जब वह कफ द्वारा आवृत्त होता है तो स्वेद का न निकलना, रोमहर्ष, मन्दाग्नि तथा शीत का आभास होता है ।

24. स्वेददाहौष्ण्यमूर्च्छाः स्युः समाने पित्तसंवृते ।

कफेन सक्ते विण्मूत्रे गात्रहर्षश्च जायते ॥ २४ ॥

(सु० नि० १. ३६/२, ३७/१ पा०)

When *samāna vāyu* is enveloped by *pitta*, there would be (excessive) perspiration, a burning sensation, a feeling of warmth and fainting; when the same is associated with *kapha*, there would be

retention of faeces and urine along with horripilation.

(Var. S. S. II. 1. 36/2, 37/1)

२४. जब समान वायु पित्त द्वारा आवृत्त होता है तो स्वेदाधिक्य, दाह, उष्णता एवं मूर्च्छा उत्पन्न होते हैं; तथा जब वह कफ से आवृत्त होता है तो विड् एवं मूत्र का अवरोध तथा शरीर में रोमाञ्च हो जाता है ।

25. अपाने पित्तयुक्ते तु दाहौष्ण्यं रक्तमूत्रता ।

अधःकाये गुरुत्वं च शीतता च कफावृते ॥ २५ ॥

(सु० नि० १. ३७/२, ३८/१ पा०)

When *apāna vāyu* is associated with *pitta*, there may be a burning sensation, a sensation of warmth and haematuria; when the same is enveloped by *kapha*, there may be heaviness and a feeling of coldness in the lower parts of the body.

(Var. S. S. II. 1. 37/2, 38/1)

२५. अपान वायु जब पित्तावृत्त होता है तो दाह एवं उष्णता के साथ रक्त मिश्रित मूत्र आता है; और जब कफ से आवृत्त होता है तो शरीर के अधोभाग में गुरुता एवं शीतलता होती है ।

26. व्याने पित्तावृते दाहो गात्रविक्षेपणं क्लमः ।

स्तम्भनो दण्डकश्चापि शूलशोथौ कफावृते ॥ २६ ॥

(सु० नि० १. ३८/२, ३९/२ पा०)

When *vyāna vāyu* is enveloped by *pitta*, one gets a burning sensation, convulsions and exhaustion; when the same is enveloped by *kapha*, there is stiffness and rigidity (like a stick), along with pain and swelling (of the whole body).

(Var. S. S. II. 1. 38/2, 39/2)

२६. व्यान वायु के पित्तावृत्त होने पर दाह, शरीर में विक्षेपण (हाथ एवं पैर का इधर उधर फेकना या झटके आना) तथा क्लम उत्पन्न होते हैं; तथा कफावृत्त होने पर सम्पूर्ण शरीर में स्तब्धता तथा डण्डे के समान जकड़ाहट हो जाती है और शूल एवं शोथ भी होता है ।

22. 27, 28/1. Ākṣepaka (Convulsive Disorders)

यदा तु धमनीः सर्वाः कुपितोऽभ्येति मास्तः ।

तदाऽऽक्षिपत्याशु मुहुर्मुहुर्देहं मुहुश्चरः ॥ २७ ॥

मुहुर्मुहुश्चाक्षेपणादाक्षेपक इति स्मृतः ।

(सु० नि० १.५०/२, ५१)

When the quick traversing¹ *vāta* gets aggravated and afflicts all the channels² of the body it produces convulsions again and again in quick succession³. As convulsions are repeatedly produced these conditions are called convulsive disorders.

(S. S. II. 1. 50/2, 51)

२२. २७, २८/१. आक्षेपक

शीघ्रगामी प्रकुपित वायु जब सभी धमनियों को प्रभावित कर देता है तो शरीर में पुनः पुनः अविलम्ब आक्षेप (झटके) आने लगते हैं । बार बार आक्षेप आने के कारण इन व्याधियों को आक्षेपक कहा जाता है ।

22. 28/2-30. Apatantraka (? Hysterical Fits)

क्रुद्धः स्वैः कोपनैर्वायुः स्थानादूर्ध्वं प्रवर्तते ॥ २८ ॥

पीडयन् हृदयं गत्वा शिरःशङ्खौ च पीडयन् ।

धनुर्वन्नमयेद् गात्राण्याक्षिपेन्मोहयेत्तदा ॥ २९ ॥

1. Instant conduction, like neurological impulses.

2. Implies nervous system conducting *vātika* impulses.

3. Clonic contractions.

स कृच्छ्रादुच्छ्वसेच्चापि स्तब्धाक्षोऽथ निमीलकः ।

कपोत इव कूजेच्च निःसंज्ञः सोऽपतन्त्रकः ॥ ३० ॥

(च० सि० ६. १२-१४/१)

When *vāyū*, aggravated on account of its specific vitiating factors, spreads upwards from its (physiological) location, it involves the heart, the head (including the brain) and the temporal regions, and thereafter bends the body like a bow, and produces convulsions and fainting; the patient breathes with difficulty with his eyes fixed or with flickering movements of the eyelids and coos like a pigeon in an unconscious state. The condition is called *āpatantraka*.

(C. S. VIII, 9. 12-14/1)

२२. २८/२-३०. अपतन्त्रक (योषापस्मार)

निज प्रकोपक कारणों से कुपित वायु अपने स्थान से ऊपर फैल कर हृदय, शिर एवं शंख प्रदेश को पीड़ित करता हुआ शरीर को धनुष के समान मोड़ देता है तथा आक्षेप एवं मूर्च्छा को उत्पन्न करता है । रोगी श्वास कष्ट से लेता है, उसके नेत्र स्तब्ध रहते हैं परन्तु पलकें कभी खुलती और कभी बन्द होती रहती हैं तथा रोगी निश्चेष्ट अवस्था में कवूतर के सदृश धुर धुर का शब्द करता है । इस अवस्था को अपतन्त्रक कहा जाता है ।

22. 31, 32/1. Apatānaka

दृष्टि संस्तम्भ्य संज्ञां च हत्वा कण्ठेन कूजति ।

हृदि मुक्ते नरः स्वास्थ्यं याति मोहं वृते पुनः ॥ ३१ ॥

वायुना दारुणं प्राहुरेके तदपतानकम् ।

(च० सि० ६. १४/२, १५)

If the patient becomes unconscious and has fixed eyes along with the production of cooing

sounds from the throat and regains consciousness for a while due to the recovery of the brain¹ function and then faints again (and again) due to the excessive vitiation of *vāta* this sericus disease is called *apatānaka*².

(C. S. VIII. 9. 14/2, 15)

२२. ३१, ३२/१. अपतानक

यदि रोगी का संज्ञानाश हो और दृष्टि खुली हुयी एवं स्तब्ध हो, तथा कण्ठ से कूजन होता हो परन्तु हृदय के दोष से मुक्त होने पर बीच बीच में वह स्वस्थ अनुभव करे तो इस वातजन्य दारुण रोग को अपतानक कहते हैं ।

22. 32/2, 33/1. *Dandāpatānaka*³

कफान्वितो भृशं वायुस्तास्वेव यदि तिष्ठति ॥ ३२ ॥

दण्डवत्स्तम्भयेद्देहं स तु दण्डापतानकः ।

(सु० नि० १. ५२/२, ५३/१)

When the excessively aggravated *vāyu* along with *kapha* afflicts the same (*vātika* channels) and makes the whole body stiff like a stick, the condition is called *dandāpatānaka*.

(S. S. II. 1. 52/2, 53/1)

२२. ३२/२, ३३/१. दण्डापतानक

जब कफ सहित प्रकुपित वायु उन्हीं (नाड़ियों) में आश्रित होकर सम्पूर्ण शरीर को दण्डे के सदृश कड़ा कर देता है तो इस अवस्था को दण्डापतानक कहते हैं ।

1. Brain implies *hṛdaya* here.

2. D. D. *Apatānaka* and *Apatantraka*.

There is no loss of consciousness in *apatantraka* (hysterical fit) while there is a transient loss of consciousness in *apatānaka* due to the involvement of the brain.

3. ? Meningitis.

22. 33/2. *Dhanuḥstambha*¹

धनुस्तुल्यं नमेद्यस्तु स धनुःस्तम्भसंज्ञकः ॥ ३३ ॥

(सु० नि० १.५४/१)

When the same (aetiological factors as above) bend the body like a bow, the condition is called *dhanuḥstambha*.

(S. S. II, 1. 54/1)

२२. ३३/२. धनुःस्तम्भ

जब प्रकुपित वायु शरीर को धनुष के समान झुका दे तो उसे धनुःस्तम्भ कहते हैं ।

22. 34-36/1. *Abhyantarāyāma*²

अङ्गुलीगुल्फजठरहृद्वक्षोगलसंश्रितः ।

स्नायुप्रतानमनिलो यदाऽऽक्षिपति वेगवान् ॥ ३४ ॥

विष्टब्धाक्षः स्तब्धहनुर्भग्नपार्श्वः कफं वमन् ।

अभ्यन्तरं धनुरिव यदा नमति मानवम् ॥ ३५ ॥

तदाऽस्याभ्यन्तरायामं कुरुते मारुतो बली ।

(सु० नि० १.५४/२-५६)

When the aggravated and virulent *vāyu* afflicts the flexor group of (muscles and) tendons³ of the fingers, ankles, the trunk, precordial region, the chest and the neck, it gives rise to convulsions,⁴ a staring look, lock jaw, pain as if the sides of the chest are fractured, as well as mucoid vomiting, and if (in addition) the patient bends ventrally like

1. Opisthotonos and emprosthotonos, as seen in tetanus.

2. Emprosthotonos.

3. Through their nerves.

a bow (producing hyperflexion of the body) the condition is called *abhyantarāyama*.

(S. S. II. 1. 54/2-56)

२२. ३४-३६/१. अभ्यन्तरायाम

प्रकुपित एवं बलवान् वायु जब अंगुली, गुल्फ, जठर, हृद् प्रदेश, वक्ष तथा गले में स्थित होकर वहाँ के स्नायु प्रतान में आक्षेप उत्पन्न करता है और रोगी की आँखें स्थिर हो जाती हैं, जबड़े में जकड़ाहट, भग्न पार्श्व जैसी वेदना और कफ युक्त वमन होता है तथा उसका शरीर घनुष की तरह भीतर झुकने के कारण हो जाता है तो इस अवस्था को अभ्यन्तरायाम कहते हैं ।

22. 36/2, 37/1. Bāhyāyāma¹

बाह्यस्नायुप्रतानस्थो बाह्यायामं करोति च ॥ ३६ ॥

तमसाध्यं बुधाः प्राहुर्वक्षः कट्यूरुभञ्जनम् ।

(सु० नि० १. ५७)

Similarly (when the aggravated *vāyu*) afflicts the extensor group of (muscles and) tendons², it bends the body dorsally³. It may be associated with the fractures of the chest, the pelvis and the thighs; (this condition is called *bāhyāyāma* and) the experts consider it to be incurable.

(S. S. II. 1. 57)

२२. ३६/२-३७/१. बाह्यायाम

जब प्रकुपित वायु बाह्य (पृष्ठ) भाग के स्नायु प्रतान को प्रभावित कर शरीर को बाहर की ओर मोड़ देता है तो इसे बाह्यायाम कहते हैं । इसमें वक्ष, कटि तथा उरु प्रदेश की अस्थियों का भग्न भी हो सकता है और बुद्धिमान चिकित्सक इसे असाध्य मानते हैं ।

1. Opisthotonos.

2. Through their nerves.

3. Dorsiflexion (hyperextension).

22. 37/2, 38/1. Ākṣepaka

कफपित्तान्वितो वायुर्वायुरेव च केवलः ॥ ३७ ॥
 कुर्यादाक्षेपकं त्वन्यं चतुर्थमभिघातजम् ।

(सु० नि० १.५८)

Convulsions produced by (vitiated *vāyu*) are of four types, viz. due to *vāta*, *vāta-pitta*, *vāta-kapha* and due to trauma.

(S. S. I. 1. 58)

२२. ३७/२, ३८/१. आक्षेपक

वायु, स्वतन्त्र या कफ अथवा पित्त के अनुबन्ध से (तीन प्रकार का), तथा चौथे प्रकार का आक्षेपक अभिघात के कारण उत्पन्न करता है ।

22. 38/2, 39/1. Prognosis of Apatānaka

गर्भपातनिमित्तश्च शोणितातिस्रवाच्च यः ॥ ३८ ॥
 अभिघातनिमित्तश्च न सिद्धयत्यपतानकः ।

(सु० नि० १.५९)

The *apatānaka* (? tetanus) following an abortion (or delivery), excessive discharge of blood or trauma is not curable.

(S. S. II. 1. 59)

२२. ३८/२, ३९/१. अपतानक की साध्यासाध्यता

गर्भपात, अति रक्तस्राव या अभिघात के अनन्तर होनेवाला अपतानक असाध्य होता है ।

22. 39/2-41. Pakṣavadha (Hemiplegia)

गृहीत्वार्धं तनोर्वायुः सिराः स्नायूर्विशोष्य च ॥ ३९ ॥

पक्षमन्यन्तरं हन्ति सन्धिबन्धान्विमोक्षयन् ।

कृत्स्नोर्ध्वकायस्तस्य स्यादकर्मण्यो विचेतनः ॥ ४० ॥

एकाङ्गरोगं तं केचिदन्ये पक्षवधं विदुः ।

सर्वाङ्गरोगस्तद्वच्च सर्वकायाश्रितेऽनिले ॥ ४१ ॥

(अ० ह० नि० १५. ३८/२-४०)

When *vāyu* involves one-half of the body afflicting the vessels and the nerves, it produces hemiplegia and loosens the ligamentous supports of the joints. There is motor as well as sensory loss of the patient's whole body or of a half of it.

It is called *ekāṅga roga*¹ by the experts while others name it as *pakṣavadha*². Similarly, if the whole body is involved by *vāta* it is known as *sarvāṅgaroga*³.

(A. H. III. 15. 38/2-40)

२२. ३६/२-४१. पक्षवध

जब वायु शरीर के आधे भाग में स्थित होकर सिराओं एवं स्नायु में शोष उत्पन्न कर सन्धि बन्धनों को शिथिल कर देता है तथा शरीर के अर्ध भाग की क्रिया एवं चेतना को नष्ट कर देता है तो इसे एकांग रोग (अर्द्धांग वात) कहते हैं जब कि कुछ लोग इसी को पक्षवध की संज्ञा देते हैं । इसी प्रकार जब विकृत वायु सम्पूर्ण शरीर में व्याप्त हो जाता है तो इसे सर्वाङ्ग रोग कहते हैं ।

22. 42. Predominance of doṣas in the paralytic cases

दाहसन्तापमूर्च्छाः स्युर्वायौ पित्तसमन्विते ।

शैत्यशोथगुस्त्वानि तस्मिन्नेव कफान्विते ॥ ४२ ॥

If *pitta* is associated with *vāta* (in cases of paralysis) it gives rise to a burning sensation, fever⁴

1. Here it refers to hemiplegia, but commonly it is understood as monoplegia.
2. Hemiplegia.
3. Quadriplegia.
4. ? Pontine haemorrhage.

and fainting (in addition to the other usual clinical features of paralysis); whereas if *kapha* is associated with the same (*vāta*) it gives rise to subnormal temperature, oedema and a feeling of heaviness.

२२.४२. पक्षवध में दोषों का अनुबन्ध

पक्षवध में जब वायु के साथ पित्त का अनुबन्ध होता है तो दाह, सन्ताप और मूर्च्छा भी होती है। तथा जब कफ दोष का अनुबन्ध होता है तो शीतता, शोथ एवं गुरुता होती है।

22. 43. Prognosis of paralytic cases

शुद्धवातहतं पक्षं कृच्छ्रसाध्यतमं विदुः।

साध्यमन्येन संयुक्तमसाध्यं क्षयहेतुकम् ॥ ४३ ॥

(सु० नि० १.६३)

When a part of the body is paralysed due to vitiation of *vāta* alone, the condition is difficult to cure but if it is associated with other *doṣas* (*pitta* or *kapha*) it is curable; whereas if it is due to degenerative changes it becomes incurable.

(S. S. II. 1. 63)

२२.४३. पक्षवध की साध्यासाध्यता

जब केवल वायु के कारण पक्षवध होता है तो वह कृच्छ्रसाध्य रहता है। और यदि इसमें कफ या पित्त का अनुबन्ध रहता है तो साध्य होता है, परन्तु जब वह क्षयजन्य हो तो असाध्य होता है।

22. 44/1, 44/2. Further signs of incurability in paralytic cases

गर्भिणी सूतिकाबालवृद्धक्षीणेष्वसृक्स्रुते।

(सु० नि० १.६८/१)

पक्षाघातं परिहरेद् वेदना रहितो यदि ॥

Paralysis occurring in the pregnant, during puerperium¹, in a child², an old person³, and in an emaciated⁴ one or of haemorrhagic origin⁵, or else if there is unconsciousness should be discarded (from treatment as incurable).

(22. 44/1=S. S. II. 1. 68/1)

२२.४४/१,४४/२. अन्य असाध्य लक्षण

गर्भिणी, सद्यः प्रसूता स्त्री, बालक, वृद्ध एवं अति कृश रोगी में होनेवाला पक्षवध तथा रक्तस्राव जन्य या/और वेदनारहित (संज्ञा शून्य) पक्षवध भी असाध्य होता है ।

ARDITA (FACIAL PARALYSIS) (44/3-48/1)

अर्दित (४४/३-४८/१)

22. 44/3-45/2. Aetiopathogenesis of Ardita

उच्चैर्व्यहिरतोऽत्यर्थं खादतः कठिनानि वा ।

हसतो जृम्भतो वापि भारद्विषमशायिनः ॥ ४४ ॥

शिरोनासौष्ठुचिबुकललाटेक्षणसन्धिगः ।

अर्दयत्यनिलो वक्त्रमर्दितं जनयत्यतः ।

(सु० नि० १. ६८/२-६९)

While a person is shouting persistently at the top of his voice, eating hard articles of diet, laughing or yawning, or else while he is carrying a heavy load (on the head), is lying on an uneven ground, *vāyu* in relation to the head, nose, lips, chin, forehead

1. ? Embolism.

2. E.g. Poliomyelitis.

3. Such as secondaries in the central nervous system.

4. E.g. Tubercular.

5. Such as brain haemorrhage.

and the eyes afflicts the face and produces facial paralysis.

(S. S. II. 1. 68/2-69)

२२. ४४/३-४५/२. हेतु एवं सम्प्राप्ति

अति उच्च स्वर के बोलने से, कड़े पदार्थ के खाने से, जोर से हँसने या जम्माई लेने से, अधिक भार उठाने से और विषम (निम्नोन्नत) भूमि पर शयन करने से मनुष्य के सिर, नासिका, ओष्ठ, हनु, ललाट तथा नेत्र की सन्धियों में स्थित वायु कुपित होकर अर्दित रोग को उत्पन्न करता है ।

22. 45/3, 46. Clinical Features of Ardita

वक्त्रीभवति वक्त्रार्धं ग्रीवा चाप्यपवर्तते ॥ ४५ ॥

शिरश्चलति वाक्सङ्गो नेत्रादीनां च विकृतम् ।

ग्रीवाचिबुकदन्तानां तस्मिन्पार्श्वे च वेदना ॥ ४६ ॥

(सु० नि० १. ७०, ७१/१)

One half of the face becomes twisted and the neck also rotates; the head keeps on shaking, the speech gets blurred and there is asymmetry of the eyes, (the eyebrow and the cheek) etc. At the same time there is ipsilateral pain in the neck, the chin and the teeth.

(S. S. II. 1. 70, 71/1)

२२. ४५/३, ४६. लक्षण

मुख का अर्ध भाग टेढ़ा हो जाता है तथा गर्दन भी मुड़ जाती है, सिर काँपने लगता है, वाणी अवरुद्ध हो जाती है नेत्रादि में विकृति आ जाती है तथा ग्रीवा, हनु और दाँतों में उसी ओर पीड़ा होती है ।

22. 47/1, 47/2. Prodromal Features of Ardita

यस्याग्रजो रोमहर्षो वेपथुर्नेत्रमाविलम् ।

वायुरूध्वं त्वचि स्वापस्तोदो मन्याहनुग्रहः ॥

(सु० नि० १. ७१/२, ७२/१)

Its prodromal features are horripilation, tremors, congestion in the eyes, belching, numbness and pins and needles in the skin along with stiffness of the neck and the jaw.

(S. S. II. 1. 71/2, 72/1)

२२. ४७/१, ४७/२. पूर्व रूप

शरीर में रोमहर्ष, कम्पन, नेत्र मालिन्य, अधिक डकार, त्वचा का शूल्य होना तथा तोड़ होना और मन्या एवं हनु में जकड़ाहट इसके पूर्व रूप होते हैं।

22. 47/3. Definition of Ardita

तर्मदितमिति प्राहुर्व्याधिं व्याधिविचक्षणाः ।

(सु० नि० १. ७२/२)

The well known clinicians diagnose this condition as facial paralysis.

(S. S. II. 1. 72/2)

२२. ४७/३. परिभाषा

विद्वान् चिकित्सक इस रोग को 'अर्दित' कहते हैं।

22. 47/4, 48/1. Prognosis of Ardita

क्षीणस्यानिमिषाक्षस्य प्रसक्ताव्यक्तभाषिणः ॥ ४७ ॥

न सिद्धत्यर्दितं गाढं त्रिवर्षं वेपनस्य च ।

(सु० नि० १. ७३)

Facial paralysis in the emaciated, in the one having fixed eyes and in one whose speech is continuously inarticulate, is not curable, as also when it is advanced, is of three years duration or when it is associated with tremors.

(S. S. II. 1. 73)

२२. ४७/४,४८/१. साध्यासाध्यता

जो रोगी कुश हो, जिसकी आँखें खुली हुई हों (पलकें न झुकें), जो बोलने में असमर्थ हो अथवा अस्पष्ट रूप से बोल पा रहा हो, जिसका अर्दित तीन वर्ष पुराना हो तथा कम्पन युक्त हो तो वह असाध्य होता है।

22. 48/2. Periodicity and Remission in Paralytic Cases

गते वेगे भवेत् स्वास्थ्यं सर्वेष्वक्षेपकादिषु ॥ ४८ ॥

(अ० दृ० नि० १५. २८/२)

In all the above diseases, i.e. beginning from *ākṣepaka* (and ending with *ardita*), the patient is likely to have a remission after the attack is over.

(A. H. III. 15. 28/2)

२२. ४८/२. आक्षेपक के वेग

आक्षेपक से लेकर अर्दित तक के सभी रोगों में आवेग के बाद रोगी स्वस्थ अनुभव करता है।

22. 49,50. Hanugraha (Dislocation Jaw)

जिह्वानिल्लेखनाच्छुष्कभक्षणादभिघाततः ।

कुपितोऽहनुमूलस्थः संसयित्वाऽनिलो हनुम् ॥ ४९ ॥

करोति विवृतास्यत्वमथवा संवृतास्यताम् ।

हनुग्रहः स तेन स्यात् कृच्छ्राच्चवर्णभाषणम् ॥ ५० ॥

(अ० दृ० नि० १५. २९, ३०)

While scraping the tongue or eating dry (hard) food and due to trauma *vāyū*, situated at the (temporo-mandibular) joint of the jaw, becomes vitiated and dislocates the mandible making the

mouth either remain open¹ or closed². The condition is called *hanugraha* (dislocation of the jaw) and it causes inability to masticate and speak.

(A. H. III. 15. 29, 30)

२२. ४६, ५०. हनुग्रह

जिह्वा निर्लेखन के समय या अधिक शुष्क पदार्थ के भक्षण से अथवा आघात से हनुमूल में स्थित वायु प्रकुपित होकर हनुसन्धि का खंसन कर देता है। जिसके फलस्वरूप मुख खुला ही रह जाता है अथवा विलकुल बन्द हो जाता है। इस अवस्था को हनुग्रह कहते हैं। इसके कारण चर्वण क्रिया और बोलने में कठिनाई होती है।

22. 51. Manyāstambha (Torticollis)

दिवास्वप्नासमस्थानविवृतोर्ध्वनिरीक्षणैः ।

मन्यास्तम्भं प्रकुर्वते स एव श्लेष्मणाऽऽवृतः ॥ ५१ ॥

(सु० नि० १. ६७)

Day sleep or (sleeping on) an uneven bed and gazing upwards (for long periods) produces *manyāstambha* (torticollis); in this condition *vāyu* is enveloped by *kapha*.

(S. S. II. 1. 67)

२२. ५१. मन्यास्तम्भ

अधिक दिवास्वाप, विषम स्थान पर शयन तथा ऊपर की ओर अधिक समय तक देखने से, श्लेष्मा से आवृत वायु मन्यास्तम्भ नामक व्याधि को उत्पन्न करता है।

22. 52. Jihvāstambha (Paralysis of the Tongue)

वाग्वाहिनीसिरासंस्थो जिह्वां स्तम्भयतेऽनिलः ।

जिह्वास्तम्भः स तेनान्नपानवाक्येष्वनीशता ॥ ५२ ॥

(अ० ह० नि० १५. ३१)

1. Inability to close the mouth (e.g. temporo-mandibular joint dislocation).

2. Inability to open the mouth (e.g. ankylosis jaw).

Vāyu located in the speech-carrying channels causes immobility of the tongue. This is known as *jihvāstambha* (paralysis of the tongue). This leads to a difficulty in the swallowing of food and drinks and in speaking.

(A. H. III. 15. 31)

२२. ५२. जिह्वास्तम्भ

वाणी वहन करने वाली सिराओं (नाड़ियों) में स्थित वायु जिह्वा में स्तम्भ उत्पन्न कर देता है। इस अवस्था को जिह्वास्तम्भ कहते हैं। जिसके कारण खाने, पीने एवं बोलने में कठिनाई होती है।

22. 53. *Sirāgraha*¹

रक्तमाश्रित्य पवनः कुर्यान्मूर्धधराः सिराः।

रूक्षाः सवेदनाः कृष्णाः सोऽसाध्यः स्यात्सिराग्रहः ॥ ५३ ॥

(अ० ह० नि० १५. ३७/२, ३८/१)

Vāyu vitiating the *rakta* afflicts the vessels going towards the head and produces their roughness, along with pain and blackish discolouration; this condition is called *sirāgraha* and is incurable.

(A. H. III. 15. 37/2, 38/1)

२२. ५३. सिराग्रह

प्रकुपित वायु रक्ताश्रित होकर सिर की ओर जाने वाली सिराओं को रूक्ष कर वेदना एवं कृष्ण वर्ण की कर देता है। इस असाध्य अवस्था को सिराग्रह कहते हैं।

22. 54-56. *Gṛdhrasī* (*Sciatica*)

स्फिक्पूर्वा कटिपृष्ठोरुजानुजंघापदं क्रमात्।

गृध्रसी स्तम्भरुक्तोदैर्गृह्णाति स्पन्दते मुहुः ॥ ५४ ॥

1. ? Venous thrombosis of the head and the neck.

वाताद् वातकफात्तन्द्रा गौरवारोचकान्विता ।

(च० चि० २८.५६, ५७/१)

वातजायां भवेत्तोदो देहस्यापि प्रवक्रता ।

जानुकटचूरुसन्वीनां स्फुरणं स्तब्धता भृशम् ॥ ५५ ॥

वातश्लेष्मोद्भवायां तु निमित्तं वृद्धिमार्दवम् ।

तन्द्रानुखप्रसेकश्च भक्तद्वेषस्तथैव च ॥ ५६ ॥

(The pain in) sciatica starts from the buttock, the waist or the back and radiates gradually towards the thigh, the knee, the leg and the foot. If there is stiffness, pain, pins and needles, restricted mobility and frequent catching sensation, it is due to *vāta*; on the other hand, if drowsiness, heaviness and anorexia are present in addition it is due to *vāyu* and *kapha*.

(C. S. VI. 28. 56, 57/1)

In *vātika* sciatica there is pricking type of pain, as also marked flexion of the body and severe twitching sensation in and inability to move the joints of the waist, the thigh and the knee. However, cases of *vāta* and *kapha* types are due to hypo-functioning of the digestive mechanism; these are associated with drowsiness, salivation and an aversion to food.

२२. ५४-५६. गृध्रसी

एक विशिष्ट वेदना जो स्निग्ध प्रदेश से आरम्भ होकर कटि के पृष्ठ भाग, उरु, जानु, जंघा एवं पाद तक क्रम से जाती है इसे गृध्रसी कहते हैं। इसमें स्तम्भ, पीड़ा, सुई की चुभन एवं स्पन्दन (फड़कन) होते हैं। यह वात के कारण होता है। यदि यह वात एवं कफ के कारण होता है तो तन्द्रा, गुरुता तथा अरोचक के लक्षण होते हैं। इसके अतिरिक्त वातिक गृध्रसी में तोद (सुई की चुभन) एवं शरीर का वक्र होना पाया जाता है। छुटने, कटि और उरु की सन्धियों में स्फुरण एवं स्तम्भन रहता है। जब कि वात एवं कफ अन्य

गृध्रसी में अग्निमंदता के साथ तन्द्रा, मुख से लाला स्राव और अन्न द्वेष होता है ।

22. 57,58/1. Viśvācī (Brachial Neuralgia)

तलं प्रत्यङ्गुलीनां याः कण्डरा बाहुपृष्ठतः ॥ ५७ ॥

बाह्वोः कर्मक्षयकरी विश्वाची चेति सोच्यते ।

(सु० नि० १.७५)

When the nerves from the dorsal aspect of the arm to the base of the fingers of the hand are involved leading to a loss of function of the superior extremity, the condition is known as brachial neuralgia.

(S. S. II. 1. 75)

२२. ५७,५८/१. विश्वाची

बाहु के पृष्ठ भाग से आरम्भ होकर हाथ एवं अंगुलियों के अधर भाग की नाड़ियों (कण्डराओं) को विकृत कर बाहु के कार्य में कठिनाई उत्पन्न करने वाली व्याधि को विश्वाची कहते हैं ।

22. 58/2, 59/1. Kroṣṭukaśīrṣa (Synovitis of the knee joint)

वातशोणितजः शोथो जानुमध्ये महारुजः ॥ ५८ ॥

ज्ञेयः क्रोष्टुकशीर्षस्तु स्थूलः क्रोष्टुकशीर्षवत् ।

(सु० नि० १.७६)

An excessively painful and a big swelling in the knee giving it an appearance like that of the head of a jackal is called *kroṣṭukaśīrṣa*¹; it is caused by (vitiated) *vāta* and *śoṇita*.

(S. S. II. 1. 76)

¹ 1. Usually observed in the monoarticular variety of rheumatoid arthritis of the knee joint.

२२. ५८/२, ५९/१. क्रोष्टुक शीर्ष

वात एवं रक्त दुष्टि के कारण घुटने में तीव्र वेदना युक्त स्थूल शोथ जिससे जानु संधि गीदड़ के सिर के समान दिखाई पड़ती है उसे क्रोष्टुक शीर्ष कहते हैं ।

22. 59/2, 60/1. Khañja and Paṅgu (Lame and Cripple)

वायुः कट्याश्रितः सक्थनः कण्डरामाक्षिपेद्यदा ॥ ५९ ॥

खञ्जस्तदा भवेज्जन्तु पङ्गुः सक्थनोर्द्वयोर्वधात् ।

(सु० नि० १. ७७)

When the vitiated *vāyu* situated in the lumbar region (partially) afflicts the big nerves of one lower extremity of the human beings, it is called *khañja*; whereas when both the lower extremities are paralysed it is called *paṅgu*.

(S. S. II. 1. 77)

२२. ५९/२, ६०/१. खञ्ज एवं पंगु

कट्याश्रित कुपित वायु जब एक टाँग की कण्डरा (नाडी) को प्रभावित करता है तो खञ्ज या लँगड़ापन उत्पन्न करता है और जब दोनों पैर को विकृत कर उनमें अकर्मण्यता करता है तो उसे पंगु कहते हैं ।

22. 60/2, 61/1. Kalāyakhāñja (Khesari Palsy, Lathyrism)

प्रक्रामन् वेपते यस्तु खञ्जन्निव च गच्छति ॥ ६० ॥

कलायखञ्जं तं विद्यान्मुक्तसन्धिप्रबन्धनम् ।

(सु० नि० १. ७८)

When one trembles and limps on walking like (the gait of) a *khañjana* bird¹, the condition is

1. A species of the wag tail (Apte p. 174).

known as *kalāya*¹-*khañja*; there is a loss of the (neurological) control of the joint.

(S. S. II. 1. 78)

२२. ६०/२, ६१/१. कलाय खञ्ज

जब रोगी चलते समय खञ्जन पक्षी की तरह अत्यधिक काँपता और लँगड़ाता है तो इसे कलाय खञ्ज कहते हैं; इसमें संधि बन्धन ढीले हो जाते हैं।

22. 61/2, 62/1. *Vātakañṭaka* (Ankle sprain)

रुक् पादे विषमन्यस्ते श्रमाद्वा जायते यदा ॥ ६१ ॥

वातेन गुल्फमाश्रित्य तमाहुर्वीतकण्टकम् ।

(अ० हृ० नि० १५.५३)

Walking on an uneven ground or strenuous exercise lead to vitiation of *vāta* in the region of the ankle joint to produce pain in the feet; the condition is called *vātakañṭaka*.

(A. H. III. 15. 53)

२२. ६१/२, ६२/१. वात कण्टक

विषम भूमि पर चलने से अथवा अत्यधिक परिश्रम से प्रकुपित वायु जब गुल्फ संधि में आश्रित होकर पैर में वेदना उत्पन्न करता है तो उसे वात कण्टक कहते हैं।

22. 62/2, 63/1. *Pādādāha* (Burning feet syndrome)

पादयोः कुरुते दाहं पित्तासृक्सहितोऽनिलः ॥ ६२ ॥

विशेषतश्चङ्क्रमतः पाददाहं तमादिशेत् ।

(सु० नि० १.८०)

When *vāyu* associated with *pitta* and *rakta* produces a burning sensation in the feet which is

1. *Kalāya*—a leguminous seed (Apte p. 139).

specially felt while walking, the condition should be known as *pādadaḥa*.

(S. S. II. 1. 80)

२२. ६२/२, ६३/१. पाद दाह

कुपित वायु पित्त एवं रक्त से मिल कर पैर में दाह उत्पन्न करता है जो मुख्यतया चलने पर अनुभव होता है; उसे पाद दाह कहते हैं ।

22. 63/2, 64/1. Pādahaṛṣa (Peripheral Neuritis of the Feet)

हृष्येते चरणौ यस्य भवेतां चापि सुप्तकौ ॥ ६३ ॥

पादहर्षः स विज्ञेयः कफवातप्रकोपतः ।

(सु० नि० १. ८१)

One who feels the sensation of tingling in the feet associated with numbness should be known to be suffering from *pādahaṛṣa*; it is due to the aggravation of *kapha* and *vāta*.

(S. S. II. 1. 81)

२२. ६३/२, ६४/१. पाद हर्ष

रोगी जब पैरों में सुप्तता के साथ साथ हर्ष (झनझनाहट) का अनुभव करता है तो इस अवस्था को पादहर्ष कहते हैं । यह प्रकुपित कफ एवं वात के कारण होता है ।

22. 64/2. Aṁśaśoṣa (Atrophy of the shoulder region)

अंसदेशस्थितो वायुः शोषयेदंसवन्धनम् ॥ ६४ ॥

(सु० नि० १. ८२/१)

Vāyu located in the shoulder region causes atrophy of the structures¹ binding the shoulder joint.

(S. S. II. 1. 82/1)

1. Mainly muscles and ligaments around the shoulder joint.

२२. ६४/२. अंस शोष

अंस प्रदेश में स्थित वायु प्रकुपित होकर अंस बंधन (मांसपेशी एवं स्नायु) में शोष उत्पन्न कर 'अंस शोष' उत्पन्न करता है ।

22. 65/1. Avabāhuka (? Frozen shoulder)

सिराश्चाकुञ्च्य तत्रस्थो जनयेदववाहुकम् ।

(सु० नि० १. ८२/२)

When the same (atrophy around the shoulder joint) is produced by vitiated *vāta* leading to the contractures of the surrounding ligaments the condition is known as *avabāhuka*.

(S. S. II. 1. 82/2)

२२. ६५/१. अववाहुक

अंस प्रदेश में स्थित वायु प्रकुपित होकर वहाँ की सिराओं (वात नाडियों) को आकुञ्चित करके अववाहुक रोग को उत्पन्न करता है ।

**22. 65/2, 66/1. Mūka, Minmina and Gadgada
(Speech disorders)**

आवृत्य वायुः सकफो धमनीः शब्दवाहिनीः ॥ ६५ ॥

नरान् करोत्यक्रियकान् मूकमिन्मिनगद्गदान् ।

(सु० नि० १. ८५)

When the speech-carrying channels get blocked up by the vitiated *vāyu* along with *kapha*, it disables the persons and produces aphasia, nasal twang and stammering.

(S. S. II. 1. 85)

२२. ६५/२, ६६/१. मूक, मिन्मिन एवं गद्गद

शब्द वाहिनी धमनी जब कुपित वायु एवं कफ द्वारा अवरुद्ध हो जाती है तो इससे मनुष्य की बोलने की शक्ति नष्ट हो जाती है तथा वह मूक, मिन्मिन या गद्गद स्वर वाला हो जाता है ।

22. 66/2, 67/1. Tūnī (Bladder pain)

अधो या वेदना याति वर्चोमूत्राशयोत्थिता ॥ ६६ ॥

भिन्दतीव गुदोपस्थं सा तूनी नाम नामतः ।

(सु० नि० १.८६)

When the pain arising from the rectum and urinary bladder travels down and produces tearing sensation in the anus and the genitals, that is known as *tūnī*.

(S. S. II. 1. 86)

२२. ६६/२, ६७/१. तूनी

जब मलाशय एवं मूत्राशय से पीड़ा आरम्भ होकर नीचे की ओर गुदा एवं मूत्रेन्द्रिय का भेदन सा करती हुई प्रतीत हो तो उसे तूनी कहते हैं ।

22. 67/2, 68/1. Pratitūnī (Proctalgia)

गुदोपस्थोत्थिता या तु प्रतिलोमं प्रधाविता ॥ ६७ ॥

वेगैः पक्वाशयं याति प्रतितूनीति सोच्यते ।

(सु० नि० १.८७)

If the pain arises from the ano-rectal and penile regions and radiates quickly upwards towards the colon, it is known as *pratitūnī*.

(S. S. II. 1. 87)

२२. ६७/२, ६८/१. प्रतितूनी

जब पीड़ा गुदा एवं उपस्थ प्रदेश से प्रारम्भ होकर प्रतिलोम गति से वेगपूर्वक पक्वाशय की ओर जाय तो उसे प्रतितूनी कहते हैं ।

22. 68/2, 69/1. Ādhmāna (Tympanitis, Meteorism)

साटोपमत्युग्ररुजमाध्मातमुदरं भृशम् ॥ ६८ ॥

आध्मानमिति तं विद्याद् घोरं वातनिरोधजम् ।

(सु० नि० १.८८)

When very severe pain accompanied by borborygmi and excessive distension of the abdomen is produced due to severe obstruction of *vāta* the condition is known as *ādhmāna*.

(S. S. II. 1. 88)

२२. ६८/२, ६९/१. आध्मान

वात के निरोध के कारण जब सम्पूर्ण उदर में आटोप, तीव्र पीड़ा एवं तनाव हो जाय तो उसे आध्मान कहते हैं ।

22. 69/2, 70/1. *Pratyādhmāna* (? Acute Gastric Dilatation)

विमुक्तपार्श्वहृदयं तदेवामाशयोत्थितम् ॥ ६९ ॥

प्रत्याध्मानं विजानीयात् कफव्याकुलितानिलम् ।

(सु० नि० १. ८६)

When the sides and the precordium are free and (the distension) originates from the stomach due to the vitiated *vāta* with *kapha*, it is known as *pratyādhmāna*.

(S. S. II. 1. 89)

२२. ६९/२, ७०/१. प्रत्याध्मान

जब पार्श्व एवं हृदय प्रदेश को छोड़ कर आमाशय में तनाव उत्पन्न हो तो उसे प्रत्याध्मान कहते हैं । यह प्रकुपित कफ एवं वायु के कारण होता है ।

22. 70/2, 71. *Vātāṣṭhīlā* (Benign Prostatic Enlargement)

नाभेरधस्तात् सञ्जातः सञ्चारी यदि वाऽचलः ॥ ७० ॥

अष्टीलावद् घनो ग्रन्थिरूर्ध्वमायत उन्नतः ।

वाताष्टीलां विजानीयाद् बहिर्माग्विरोधिनीम् ॥ ७१ ॥

(सु० नि० १. ९०)

When a stony hard globular gland enlarges upwards prominently and produces a fixed or mobile swelling below the umbilicus it is known as *vātāṣṭhīlā*; it produces obstruction in the excretory (urinary and faecal) channels.

(S. S. II. 1. 90)

२२. ७०/२, ७१. वाताष्ठीला

जब नाभि से निचले भाग में पत्थर के समान गतिशील अथवा अचल ग्रन्थि ऊपर की ओर बढ़ कर उभर आती है तो उसे वाताष्ठीला कहते हैं । यह उत्सर्जन मार्ग (मल एवं मूत्र) का अवरोध करती है ।

22. 72. *Pratyāṣṭhīlā* (? Malignant Prostatic Enlargement)

एतामेव रुजोपेतां वातविण्मूत्ररोधिनीम् ।

प्रत्यष्ठीलामिति वदेज्जठरे तिर्यगुत्थिताम् ॥ ७२ ॥

(सु० नि० १. ६१)

When the same is associated with pain along with obstruction to the passage of flatus, stool and urine it is known as *pratyāṣṭhīlā*; this enlargement is (irregular and) in an oblique direction towards the abdomen.

(S. S. II. 1. 91)

२२. ७२. प्रत्यष्ठीला

यदि यही ग्रन्थि उदर में तिर्यक् रूप से बढ़े और वेदना के साथ मल, मूत्र तथा वायु को अवरुद्ध कर दे तो उसे प्रत्यष्ठीला कहते हैं ।

22. 73. Urinary Reflux

मास्तेऽनुगुणे वस्ती मूत्रं सम्यक् प्रवर्तते ।

विकारा विविधाश्चात्र प्रतिलोमे भवन्ति च ॥ ७३ ॥

As long as *vāta* is functioning normally within the urinary bladder, the urine flows out properly; and on its going in the reverse direction¹ various types of diseases may develop.

२२.७३. वातविकृतिजन्य सूत्रावरोध

वस्तिगत वायु जब अनुलोम रहता है तो मूत्र का सुचारु रूप से निस्सरण होता है किन्तु जब वायु प्रतिलोम हो जाता है तो अनेक प्रकार के वस्तिगत विकार उत्पन्न होते हैं।

22. 74/1. Kampavāta or Vepathu (? Parkinsonism)

सर्वाङ्गकम्पः शिरसो वायुर्वेपथुसंज्ञकः ।

Generalised involuntary movements of all parts of the body or of the head only is known as *vepathu*²; it is due to (vitiated) *vāta*.

२२.७४/१. कम्पवात अथवा वेपथु

सर्वाङ्ग कम्प या शिर के कम्पन को वेपथु (या कम्पवात) कहते हैं। यह वायु के कारण होता है।

22. 74/2. Khalli (Cramps / ? Tetany)

खल्ली तु पादजङ्घोस्करमूलावमोटनी ॥ ७४ ॥

(च० चि० २८.५७/२)

Khalli is characterised by cramps in the feet, the calf muscles, thighs as well as (the hands and) the wrists.

(C. S. VI. 28. 57/2)

1. ? Urinary reflux.

2. Commonly known as *kampavāta*.

२२.७४/२. खल्ली

पाद, जंघा, उरु और हाथ के मूल में ऐंठन उत्पन्न करने वाली व्याधि को खल्ली कहते हैं ।

22. 75. Ūrdhvavāta (Eructation)

अधः प्रतिहतो वायुः श्लेष्मणा मारुतेन वा ।

करोत्युद्गारबाहुल्यमूर्ध्ववातः स उच्यते ॥ ७५ ॥

When the normal movements of gases is obstructed by *kapha* or *vāta* it produces excessive belching; the condition is known as *ūrdhvavāta*.

२२.७५. ऊर्ध्ववात

कफ अथवा कुपित वायु से आवृत्त होने पर प्रतिलोम वायु अत्यधिक उद्गार को उत्पन्न करता है तो उसे ऊर्ध्व वात कहते हैं ।

22. 76. Unmentioned Diseases of Vāyu

स्थाननामानुरूपैश्च लिङ्गैः शेषान्विनिर्दिशेत् ।

सर्वेष्वेतेषु संसर्गं पित्ताद्यैरुपलक्षयेत् ॥ ७६ ॥

The rest of the (*vātika*) diseases should be diagnosed according to the clinical features manifesting at the various sites of lesion. Further, in all these conditions, the association of *pitta*, etc. should also be kept in mind.

२२.७६. अवर्णित वात रोग

शेष व्याधियों का ज्ञान उनके लक्षणों के आधार पर एवं विकृति स्थान के नाम पर कर लेना चाहिए । तथा उनमें वायु के साथ पित्तादि दोषों के संसर्ग की भी कल्पना कर लेनी चाहिए ।

22. 77, 78/1. Prognosis

हनुस्तम्भादिताक्षेपपक्षाघातापतानकाः ।
 कालेन महता वाता यत्नात्सिध्यन्ति वा न वा ॥ ७७ ॥
 नरान् बलवतस्त्वेतान् साधयेन्निरुपद्रवान् ।

Lock jaw (*hanustambha*), facial paralysis (*ardita*), convulsive disorders (*ākṣepaka*), hemiplegia (*pakṣā-ghāta*), and *apatānaka* (? tetanus) *vātika* diseases may be curable only after a long careful management or even then they may not get cured. Hence, patients with good general condition and no complications should only be taken up for treatment.

२२. ७७, ७८/१. साध्यासाध्यता

हनुस्तम्भ, अर्दित, आक्षेप, पक्षाघात तथा अपतानक रोग दीर्घ काल तक यत्नपूर्वक चिकित्सा करने पर भी कभी ठीक हो सकते हैं अथवा कभी नहीं । अतः रोगी बलवान तथा उपद्रव रहित हों तभी चिकित्सा करनी चाहिये ।

22. 78/2, 79. Complications

विसर्पदाहस्कृस्ङ्गमूर्च्छारुच्यग्निमार्दवैः ॥ ७८ ॥
 क्षीणमांसबलं वाता घ्नन्ति पक्षववादयः ।

शूनं सुप्तत्वचं भग्नं कम्पाधमाननिपीडितम् ।
 रुजातिमन्तं च नरं वातव्याधिर्विनाशयेत् ॥ ७९ ॥

(सु० सू० ३३.७)

The patient suffering from hemiplegia and other *vātika* disorders are likely to succumb who develop complications like spreading cellulitis, a burning sensation, (severe) pain, obstruction (to the passage of urine and faeces etc.), fainting, anorexia, poor digestive power, emaciation and loss of power.

(Similarly) a person suffering from *vātavyādhī*, who is distressed with oedema, loss of sensation in

the skin, fractures, tremors, tympanitis and has severe pain, is likely to die.

(S. S. I. 33. 7)

२२. ७८/२, ७९. उपद्रव

पक्षवध से पीड़ित रोगी यदि अन्य वात विकार तथा विसर्प, दाह, अत्यधिक पीड़ा, मल-मूत्रावरोध, मूर्छा, अरुचि, अग्निमांद्य आदि उपद्रवों से पीड़ित हो तथा मांस एवं बल से क्षीण हो तो मृत्यु को प्राप्त होता है। इसके अतिरिक्त जो शोथयुक्त हो, जिसकी त्वचा सुत हो गयी हो, जिसका अंग भंग हो गया हो, जो कम्पवात एवं आध्मान से ग्रसित हो तथा तीव्र वेदना से पीड़ित हो वह रोगी भी वात-व्याधि से मृत्यु को प्राप्त होता है।

22. 80. Importance of normal vāyu

अव्याहतगतिर्यस्य स्थानस्थः प्रकृतिस्थितः ।

वायुः स्यात्स्योऽधिकं जीवेद्वीतरोगः समाः शतम् ॥ ८० ॥

If *vāta*, having powers of unlimited movement, remains localised within its own anatomical and physiological limits, the person lives for (the full span of the life of) a hundred years without suffering from any disease.

२२. ८०. प्रकृतिस्थ वायु के लक्षण

जिस मनुष्य में वायु की गति अवरुद्ध न हो तथा वायु अपने स्थान पर प्रकृतिस्थ कार्य करे तो वह मनुष्य निरोग रहते हुए सौ वर्ष तक जीवित रहता है।

इति श्रीमाधवकरविरचिते माधवनिदाने वातव्याधिनिदानं समाप्तम् ॥२२॥

Thus ends (the twenty-second chapter entitled) 'The Diagnosis of *Vātika* Diseases' of Mādhava Nidāna, as compiled by Śrī Mādhavakara.

इस प्रकार श्रीमाधवकर द्वारा सङ्कलित माधव-निदान का वातव्याधिनिदान (नामक बाईसवाँ अध्याय) समाप्त हुआ।

M. N. 22

SUGGESTED RESEARCH PROBLEMS

1. Books/chapters on the History of Medicine should be corrected to record India's historical importance on the diseases mentioned in this chapter.
2. Clinical studies should be conducted to establish the identity of the various and diverse conditions mentioned in this chapter.
3. As vitiation of *vāta* is the common factor in the causation of these diseases, this chapter could form a strong background to find out its exact identity : experimental, clinical and biochemical studies to begin with and later to be confirmed by a common therapeutic measure, if possible.

With this end in view one working classification of the *vātika* diseases is suggested below :

Classification of the Vātika Diseases

1. Diseases due to vitiated *vāta* afflicting/located in the various organs/regions of the body

Koṣṭha or the abdomino-thoracic cavities (10).

Sarvāṅga or the entire body as ?peripheral neuritis (11).

Gudapradeśa or the ano-rectal region (12).

Amāśaya or the stomach (13).

Pakvāśaya or the colonic area (14).

Indriyas or the sense organs (15/1).

Basti or the urinary bladder (? urinary reflux) (73).

2. Diseases due to vitiated vāta located in/afflicting the various tissues of the body

Skin (15/2, 15/3).

Blood (16).

Muscles (17).

Fatty tissue (17).

Bones, bone marrow and joints (18, 21/2).

Semen/ovum (19).

Vessels (20/1).

Ligaments (20/2, 21/1).

3. Diseases due to envelopment of vāta by other humours

Envelopment of the five types of vāta, viz. *prāṇa vāyu*, *udāna vāyu*, *samāna vāyu*, *apāna vāyu* and *vyāna vāyu* by *pitta* and *kapha* (22-26).

4. Paralytic and spastic conditions

Ākṣepaka or repeated convulsions (27, 28/1, 37/2, 38/1).

Apatantraka or ? hysterical fits (28/2-30).

Apatānaka (31-37/1, 38/2, 39/1).

Daṇḍāpatānaka or ? meningitis (32/2, 33/1).

Dhanuḥstambha or ? tetanus (33/2).

Abhyantarāyāma or emprosthotonos (34-36/1).

Bāhyāyāma or opisthotonos (36/2, 37/1).

Manyūstambha or torticollis (51).

Jihvāstambha or tongue paralysis (52).

Sirāgraha or ? venous thrombosis of the head and the neck (53).

Kampavāta (syn. *vepathu*) or ? parkinsonism (74/1).

Khalli or ? tetany (74/2).

5. Paralytic conditions with or without loss of sensation

Pakṣavādha (syn. *ekāṅga roga*) or hemiplegia (39/2-44/2).

Ardita or facial paralysis (44/3-48/1).

Gṛdhrasī or sciatica (54-56).

Viśvāci or brachial neuralgia (57, 58/1).

Khañja and *Paṅgu* or lame and cripple (59/2, 60/1).

Kālāya khañja or lathyrism (60/2, 61/1).

6. Hyperaesthesia

Pādadāha or burning feet syndrome (62/2, 63/1).

Pādaharṣa or peripheral neuritis of the feet (63/2, 64/1).

7. Speech Disorders

Mūka or aphasia

Minmina or nasal twang

Gadgad or stammering

} (65/2, 66/2)

8. Tympanitis and Obstructive conditions

Ādhmāna or tympanitis (68/2, 69/1).

Ūrdhvavāta or eructations (75).

Pratyādhmāna or ?acute gastric dilatation (69/2, 70/1).

Aṣṭhīlā or benign prostatic enlargement (70/2, 71).

Pratyāṣṭhīlā or ? malignant prostatic enlargement (72).

9. Specific Joint Disorders

Kroṣṭuka śīrṣa or synovitis of the knee joint (58/2, 59/1).

Aṃsaśoṣa or atrophy of the shoulder (64/2).

Avabāhuka or ? frozen shoulder (65/1).

Hanugraha or jaw dislocation (49, 50).

Vātakāṇṭaka or ankle sprain (61/2, 62/1).

10. Pain and Colics

Tūnī or bladder pain (66/2, 67/1).

Pratitūnī or proctalgia (67/2, 68/1).

11. Unmentioned diseases (76)



1. The first of these is the fact that the veteran is a man of war, and as such, he is a man of action. He is a man who has seen the world, and he is a man who has been through the fire. He is a man who has been tested, and he is a man who has been found to be of value. He is a man who is a credit to his country, and he is a man who is a credit to his race.

2. The second of these is the fact that the veteran is a man of honor. He is a man who has been tested, and he is a man who has been found to be of value. He is a man who is a credit to his country, and he is a man who is a credit to his race.

3. The third of these is the fact that the veteran is a man of courage. He is a man who has been tested, and he is a man who has been found to be of value. He is a man who is a credit to his country, and he is a man who is a credit to his race.

4. The fourth of these is the fact that the veteran is a man of loyalty. He is a man who has been tested, and he is a man who has been found to be of value. He is a man who is a credit to his country, and he is a man who is a credit to his race.

5. The fifth of these is the fact that the veteran is a man of integrity. He is a man who has been tested, and he is a man who has been found to be of value. He is a man who is a credit to his country, and he is a man who is a credit to his race.

THE VETERAN IN AMERICA

The veteran is a man of war, and as such, he is a man of action. He is a man who has seen the world, and he is a man who has been through the fire. He is a man who has been tested, and he is a man who has been found to be of value. He is a man who is a credit to his country, and he is a man who is a credit to his race.

The veteran is a man of honor, and as such, he is a man of action. He is a man who has seen the world, and he is a man who has been through the fire. He is a man who has been tested, and he is a man who has been found to be of value. He is a man who is a credit to his country, and he is a man who is a credit to his race.

The veteran is a man of courage, and as such, he is a man of action. He is a man who has seen the world, and he is a man who has been through the fire. He is a man who has been tested, and he is a man who has been found to be of value. He is a man who is a credit to his country, and he is a man who is a credit to his race.

The veteran is a man of loyalty, and as such, he is a man of action. He is a man who has seen the world, and he is a man who has been through the fire. He is a man who has been tested, and he is a man who has been found to be of value. He is a man who is a credit to his country, and he is a man who is a credit to his race.

The veteran is a man of integrity, and as such, he is a man of action. He is a man who has seen the world, and he is a man who has been through the fire. He is a man who has been tested, and he is a man who has been found to be of value. He is a man who is a credit to his country, and he is a man who is a credit to his race.

माधवनिदानम्

त्रयोविंशतितमोऽध्यायः

वातरक्तनिदानम्

THE DIAGNOSIS OF THE *VĀTARAKTA* (GOUT)

CHAPTER TWENTY-THREE

MĀDHAVA-NIDĀNA

THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO

LIBRARY

THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO

LIBRARY

THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO
LIBRARY

M. N. 23

SUMMARY

This chapter deals with the diagnosis of gout.

Aetio-pathogenesis (1-4)

Unsalutary diets and habits are given which aggravate *vāta* and *rakta* in the delicate, obese and sedentary persons (1-3); excessive riding on elephants, etc. and consumption of heart-burn producing food gravitates the vitiated *rakta* (blood) to the feet and it getting saturated there with the deranged *vāyu* produces *vātarakta* (gout) (4).

Clinical Features (5-13)

Sensory disturbances, transient pains in the joints of the extremities and sweat disorders, etc. are mentioned as the **prodromal features** (5-7). A vivid description of the local lesion along with the general **signs and symptoms** due to the predominance of the various humours are given (8-12). The disease starts from the base of the toes (metatarso-phalangeal joint region) or sometimes from the hands and spreads all over the body like a virulent rat poison (13).

Prognosis (14-18)

The features of **incurability** include chronicity of more than a year with emaciation, general complications like mental confusion, hiccough etc., local complications as toe deformities, skin exfoliation, cracks and oozing, suppuration and tumour

formation, etc., and a predominance of all the humours; milder features and predominance of two humours indicate the disease to be still **relievable**; whereas an early lesion, without any complication and with the predominance of one humour only is considered **curable**.

त्रयोविंशतितमोऽध्यायः

CHAPTER TWENTY-THREE

वातरक्तनिदानम्

THE DIAGNOSIS OF VĀTARAKTA (GOUT)

23. 1-3. Aetiology

लवणाम्लकटुक्षारस्निग्धोष्णाजीर्णभोजनैः ।

क्लिन्नशुष्काम्बुजानूपमांसपिण्याकमूलकैः ॥ १ ॥

कुलत्थमाषनिष्पावशाकादिपल्लेक्षुभिः ।

दध्यारनालसौवीरशुक्ततक्रसुरासवैः ॥ २ ॥

विरुद्धाध्यशनक्रोधदिवास्वप्नप्रजागरैः ।

(च० चि० २६.५-७/१)

प्रायशः सुकुमाराणां मिथ्याहारविहारिणाम् ।

स्थूलानां सुखिनां चापि कुप्यते वातशोणितम् ॥ ३ ॥

(सु० चि० ५.५)

(Excessive) intake of salty, sour, pungent, alkaline, fatty and hot food, taking meals while one is having indigestion, curried or fried preparations of meat of aquatic or swampy animals, dried (meat and cereal) ball preparations, radishes, *kulattha*¹, *māṣa*², *niṣpāva*³, different varieties of leafy vegetables and

1. *Dolichos biflorus* Linn.

2. *Phaseolus mungo* Linn.

3. *Dolichos lablab* Linn.

1-3. Various pulses.

meat, sugarcane and yoghurt, *āranāla*¹, *sauvira*², *śukta*³, buttermilk⁴, wine⁵ and *āsava*⁶, eating incompatible articles of diet, eating before the previous meal has been digested⁷, anger, day sleep and keeping awake at night :

(C. S. VI. 29. 5-7/1)

the above aetiological factors aggravate *vāyu* and *rakta* usually in those who are delicate, obese, lead a life of comfort and indulge in unsalutary diet and regimen.

(S. S. IV. 5. 5)

२३. १-३. हेतु

अति लवण, अम्ल, कटु, क्षारीय, स्निग्ध और उष्ण भोजन करने से, अजीर्णवस्था में भोजन करने से, क्लिन्न और शुष्क मांस, मछली अथवा आनुपदेशीय प्राणियों के मांस के सेवन से, तिल की खली एवं मूल-शाकों के अधिक सेवन से, कुलत्थ, उड़द, विभिन्न प्रकार के शाक एवं मांस, गन्ना, दही, कांजी, सिरका, तक्र, सुरा तथा आसव के अधिक सेवन से, विरुद्ध भोजन, अध्यशन, क्रोध, दिन में सोना एवं रात्रि जागरण तथा मिथ्या आहार विहार से प्रायः सुकुमार, सुखी एवं स्थूल लोगों में वात एवं रक्त दूषित होकर वातशोणित व्याधि को उत्पन्न करता है ।

23. 4. Pathogenesis

हृस्त्यश्वोष्ट्रैगच्छतश्चाश्नतश्च विदाह्यन्नं स विदाहोऽशनस्य ।

1. *Kañjī* or sour fermented rice water.

2. Sour fermented barley water (S. S. I. 44. 35-40/1).

3. Vinegar.

4. *Takra*.

5. *Surā*.

6. Medicated spirit.

1-6. Fermented alcoholic and non-alcoholic preparations.

7. Too frequent eating.

कृत्स्नं रक्तं विदहत्याशु तच्च स्रस्तं दुष्टं पादयोश्चीयते तु ।

तत्संपृक्तं वायुना दूषितेन तत्प्राबल्यादुच्यते वातरक्तम् ॥ ४ ॥

(सु० नि० १.४४/१)

Riding on an elephant, a horse or a camel and an intake of heart-burn producing articles of diet causes improper digestion of food leading quickly to vitiation of blood, which then gravitates and accumulates in the feet.

Thereafter, it (the blood) gets saturated with the deranged *vāyu*, on account of the predominance of which it is called *vātarakta* (gout).

(S. S. II. 1. 44/1)

२३.४. सम्प्राप्ति

हाथी, घोड़े एवं जूट पर अधिक सवारी करने से तथा विदाही अन्न के सेवन से भोजन का विदग्ध पाक हो जाता है जो रक्त को दूषित कर देता है । यह दूषित रक्त नीचे की ओर पैरों में एकत्रित होकर स्वकारणों से दूषित वायु से मिल कर व्याधि को उत्पन्न करता है । वायु की प्रबलता के कारण इसे वातरक्त कहा जाता है ।

23.5-7. Prodromal Features

स्वेदोऽत्यर्थं न वा काष्ण्यं स्पर्शज्ञित्वं क्षतेऽतिरुक् ।

सन्धिशैथिल्यमालस्यं सदनं पिङ्गकोद्गमः ॥ ५ ॥

जानुजङ्घोरुकट्यंसहस्तपादाङ्गसन्धिषु ।

निस्तोदः स्फुरणं भेदो गुरुत्वं सुप्तिरेव च ॥ ६ ॥

कण्डूः सन्धिषु रूग् भूत्वा भूत्वा नश्यति चासकृत् ।

वैवर्ण्यं मण्डलोत्पत्तिर्वातासृक्पूर्वलक्षणम् ॥ ७ ॥

(च० चि० २६. १६-१८)

The (general) prodromal symptoms and signs of *vātarakta* are profuse perspiration or anhidrosis,

blackish discolouration, loss of the sense of touch, severe pain on (even mildest) trauma, slackness of the joints, indolence and malaise; (the local) appearance of eruptions on the knees, legs, thighs, loins, shoulders, hands, feet and the joints of the body, severe pricking type of pain, twitchings, tearing pain, heaviness, numbness and an itching sensation, pain in the joints which comes and goes again and again¹, local discolouration and circumscribed patches (also occur).

(C.S. VI. 29. 16-18)

२३. ५-७. पूर्व रूप

अति स्वेद या स्वेद का सर्वथा अभाव, शरीर में कालापन, स्पर्श की अनुभूति न होना, आघात से अत्यधिक पीड़ा होना, सन्धियों में शिथिलता, आलस्य, शरीर में भारीपन एवं जानु, जंघा, उरु, कटि, अंस, हाथ और पैर की सन्धियों में पिड़िकाओं की उत्पत्ति, निस्तोद, स्फुरण, भेद, गुरुत्व, सुप्ति और खुजली, सन्धियों में बार बार पीड़ा होकर शीघ्र ही शान्त हो जाना, त्वचा में वैवर्ण्य तथा मण्डलोत्पत्ति वातरक्त के पूर्व रूप होते हैं ।

23. 8,9. Vātarakta with predominance of vāta

वातेऽधिकेऽधिकं तत्र शूलस्फुरणभञ्जनम् ।

शोथस्य रौक्ष्यं कृष्णत्वं श्यावता वृद्धिहानयः ॥ ८ ॥

धमन्यङ्गुलिसन्धीनां संकोचोऽङ्गग्रहोऽतिरूक् ।

शीतद्वेषानुपशयौ स्तम्भवेपथुसुप्तयः ॥ ९ ॥

(अ० ह० नि० १६. १२, १३)

With the predominance of *vāta*, there is excessive pain, twitchings and splitting sensation in the lesions.

1. Periods of exacerbation and remission.

The (inflammatory) swelling is dry, black or blackish, and increases or decreases at times. The arteries and the joints of the fingers (and toes) become narrow, and movements of the part (local joints) are restricted and severely painful. There is an aversion and intolerance to cold as well as rigidity, tremors and numbness in the limbs.

(A. H. III. 16. 12, 13)

२३. ८, ९. वातोल्वण वातरक्त के लक्षण

वाताधिक्य में शूल, स्फुरण तथा भंजनयुक्त पीड़ा अधिक रहती है । शोथ में रुक्षता, कृष्णता या श्यावता और कभी वृद्धि तथा कभी ह्रास हो जाता है । अंगुलियों की धमनियाँ तथा सन्धियाँ संकुचित हो जाती हैं, इनकी गति में अवरोध उत्पन्न हो जाता है और उनमें पीड़ा होती है । रोगी शीत से द्वेष करता है तथा यह रोग की वृद्धि में अनुपशय स्वरूप होता है । शरीर में स्तम्भ, कम्पन तथा सुप्तता हो जाती है ।

23. 10. Vātarakta with predominance of rakta

रक्ते शोथोऽतिरुक्तोदस्ताम्रश्चिमिचिमायते ।

स्निग्धरुक्षैः शमं नैति कण्डूक्लेदसमन्वितः ॥ १० ॥

(अ० हृ० नि० १६. १४)

With the predominance of *rakta*, there is severe pain as well as pricking and tingling sensations in the (inflammatory) swelling which is coppery-red and is associated with an itching sensation and a moist discharge; it subsides neither with fatty nor with dry medicaments.

(A. H. III. 16. 14)

२३. १०. रक्तोल्वण वातरक्त के लक्षण

रक्त के दूषित होने से सुई चुभने के समान अति वेदनायुक्त तथा चुन-चुनाहट के साथ ताम्रवर्ण का शोथ होता है । यह न तो स्निग्ध और न रुक्ष पदार्थों के ही प्रयोग से शान्त होता है तथा कण्डू एवं क्लेदयुक्त होता है ।

23. 11. Vātarakta with predominance of pitta

पित्ते विदाहः संमोहः स्वेदो मूर्च्छा मदःसतृट् ।

स्पर्शसिहत्वं रुग्णः शोथः पाको भृशोष्मता ॥ ११ ॥

(अ० हृ० नि० १६. १५)

With the predominance of *pitta*, one suffers from heart-burn, mental confusion, perspiration, fainting, intoxication and thirst; there is hyperaesthesia, severe pain, redness, excessive heat and suppuration in the (inflammatory) swelling.

(A. H. III. 16. 15)

२३. ११. पित्तजन्य वातरक्त के लक्षण

पित्त के आधिक्य से विदाह, मोह, स्वेद, मूर्च्छा, मद, तृष्णा, स्पर्शसिद्धता, वेदना, लालिमा, शोथ, पाक तथा अत्यधिक उष्णता आदि लक्षण होते हैं ।

23. 12. Vātarakta with predominance of kapha

कफे स्तैमित्यगुरुतासुप्तिस्निग्धत्वशीतताः ।

कण्डूर्मन्दा च रुग् द्वन्द्वं सर्वलिङ्गं च संकरात् ॥ १२ ॥

(अ० हृ० नि० १६. १६)

With the *kapha* predominance, the body is felt as if covered with wet clothes, heavy, insensitive to touch, oily and cold. There is an itching sensation and mild pain (locally).

With the predominance of two *doṣas* or of all the *doṣas*, mixed features (of the concerned *doṣas*) are present.

(A. H. III. 16. 16)

२३. १२. कफजन्य, द्वन्द्व तथा त्रिदोषज वातरक्त के लक्षण

कफ के आधिक्य से स्तैमित्यता (शरीर का गीला होना), गुरुत्व, सुप्ति, स्निग्धता एवं शैत्य होता है । इसके अतिरिक्त कण्डू एवं मन्द मन्द पीड़ा होती है ।

दो दोषों के आधिक्य से द्वन्द्व लक्षण तथा तीनों दोषों के रहने पर सभी लक्षण पाए जाते हैं ।

23. 13. Spread

पादयोर्मूलमास्थाय कदाचिद्वस्तयोरपि ।

आखोविषमिव क्रुद्धं तद्देहमुपसर्पति ॥ १३ ॥

(सु० नि० १. ४८)

The disease spreads all over the body like a virulent rat poison beginning from the root¹ of (the toes of) the feet or sometimes from the hands.

(S. S. II. 1. 48)

२३. १३. प्रसार

यह पैर के मूल से अथवा कभी कभी हाथों के मूल से प्रारम्भ होकर चूहे के तीव्र विष के समान शरीर के अन्य अंगों में प्रसार करता है ।

PROGNOSIS (23. 14-18)

साध्यासाध्यता (२३. १४-१८)

23. 14, 15/1.

आजानु स्फुटितं यच्च प्रभिन्नं प्रसृतं च यत् ।

उपद्रवैश्च यज्जुष्टं प्राणमांसक्षयादिभिः ॥ १४ ॥

वातरक्तमसाध्यं स्याद्याप्यं संवत्सरोत्थितम् ।

(सु० नि० १. ४६, ५०/१)

That *vātarakta* in which exfoliation occurs upto the knee, which cracks and oozes, which is associated with complications, and in which loss of vitality and emaciation are present is incurable; that which is of one year's duration is relievable only.

(S. S. II. 1. 49, 50/1)

1. Metatarso-phalangeal joint region.

२३. १४, १५/१.

यदि वातरक्त (अंगुष्ठ से प्रारम्भ होकर) जानुसन्धि तक पहुँच गया हो और त्वचा फट गई हो तथा खाव हो रहा हो तथा जो (रोगी) बल क्षय एवं मांस क्षय आदि उपद्रवों से युक्त हो उसे असाध्य मानना चाहिये । एक वर्ष पुराना वातरक्त याप्य होता है ।

23. 15/2-17.

अस्वप्नारोचकश्वासमांसकोथशिरोग्रहाः ॥ १५ ॥

संमूर्च्छामदस्कृत्तृष्णाज्वरमोहप्रवेपकाः ।

ह्रिक्कापांगुल्यवीसर्पपाकतोदभ्रमक्लमाः ॥ १६ ॥

अङ्गुलोवक्रतास्फोटदाहमर्मग्रहावुदाः ।

एतैरुपद्रवैर्वर्ज्यं मोहनैकेन वाऽपि यत् ॥ १७ ॥

(च० चि० २६. ३१-३३/१)

A case of *vātarakta* should not be taken up for treatment if complications like insomnia, anorexia, dyspnoea, sloughing, fixity¹ of the head (at the joints of the neck), fainting, pain, thirst, fever, mental confusion, tremors, hiccough, inability to walk, spreading cellulitis, suppuration, pricking pain, dizziness, tiredness, digital² deformities, appearance of blisters, burning sensation, affection of the vital organs³ and tumours have supervened, or else if mental confusion⁴ alone has developed.

(C. S. VI. 29. 31-33/1)

-
1. ? Cervical spondylosis.
 2. Toes and fingers.
 3. Such as the brain, the heart and the kidneys.
 4. Involvement of the C. N. S.

२३. १५/२-१७.

नींद का न आना, भोजन में अरुचि, श्वास, मांस का सड़ना, शिरोग्रह, मूर्च्छा, मद, वेदना, तृष्णा, ज्वर, मोह, गात्रकम्प, हिक्का, पङ्क्तुत्व, विसर्प, पाक, तोद, भ्रम, क्लम, अंगुलियों का टेढ़ापन, स्फोट, दाह, मर्मों में जकड़न तथा अर्बुद आदि उपद्रवों से पीड़ित वातरक्त का रोगी असाध्य होता है। इन उपद्रवों में से केवल मोह मात्र हो तो भी रोगी असाध्य होता है।

23. 18/1.

अकृत्स्नोपद्रवं याप्यं साध्यं स्यान्निरुपद्रवम् ।

(च० चि० २६. ३४/२)

If all the complications have not appeared, the condition is relievable, whereas if there are no complications at all it is curable.

(C. S. VI. 29. 34/2)

२३. १८/१.

यदि सब उपद्रव न प्रगट हुए हों तो वातरक्त याप्य होता है तथा उपद्रव-रहित होने पर साध्य होता है।

23. 18/2, 18/3.

एकदोषानुगं साध्यं नवं याप्यं द्विदोषजम् ।

त्रिदोषजमसाध्यं स्याद्यस्य च स्युरुपद्रवाः ॥ १८ ॥

(च० चि० २६. ३०)

Vātarakta with the predominance of one *doṣa* alone and of recent origin is curable; with the predominance of two *doṣas*, it becomes relievable only. On the contrary, if there is a predominance of all the three *doṣas* and if it is associated with the complications it becomes incurable.

(C. S. VI. 29. 30)

२३. १८/२, १८/३.

एक दोषानुगत एवं नवीन वातरक्त साध्य होता है; द्विदोषज याप्य तथा त्रिदोषज एवं उपद्रवयुक्त रोग असाध्य होता है ।

इति श्रीमाधवकरविरचिते माधवनिदाने वातरक्तनिदानम् समाप्तम् ॥२३॥

Thus ends (the twenty-third chapter entitled) 'The Diagnosis of *Vātarakta* (Gout)' of Mādhava Nidāna, as compiled by Śrī Mādhavakara.

इस प्रकार श्रीमाधवकर द्वारा सङ्कलित माधव-निदान का 'वातरक्त निदान' (नामक तेईसवाँ अध्याय) समाप्त हुआ ।

M. N. 23

SUGGESTED RESEARCH PROBLEMS

1. All good History of Medicine books and chapters should be corrected to include the references of gout as given in this chapter.
 2. A historical and comparative research into the various conceptual aspects of gout and allied disorders as mentioned in this chapter is indicated.
 3. A clinical study to correlate the various conditions described in this chapter in terms of modern terminology could be done.
 4. Clinical and experimental studies could be planned to find the role of the aetiological factors (1-4) of gout and related joint disorders.
-

RECOMMENDED REVISIONS TO THE

1. All good history of the climate system and its changes should be covered to include the historical and modern periods.
2. A brief and representative treatment of the various aspects of the climate system and its changes is required in the chapter on the climate system.
3. A brief and representative treatment of the various conditions and processes in the climate system is required in the chapter on the climate system.
4. A brief and representative treatment of the various conditions and processes in the climate system is required in the chapter on the climate system.
5. A brief and representative treatment of the various conditions and processes in the climate system is required in the chapter on the climate system.
6. A brief and representative treatment of the various conditions and processes in the climate system is required in the chapter on the climate system.
7. A brief and representative treatment of the various conditions and processes in the climate system is required in the chapter on the climate system.
8. A brief and representative treatment of the various conditions and processes in the climate system is required in the chapter on the climate system.
9. A brief and representative treatment of the various conditions and processes in the climate system is required in the chapter on the climate system.
10. A brief and representative treatment of the various conditions and processes in the climate system is required in the chapter on the climate system.

माधवनिदानम्

चतुर्विंशतितमोऽध्यायः

उरुस्तम्भनिदानम्

THE DIAGNOSIS OF THE *URUSTAMBHA*

CHAPTER TWENTY-FOUR

MĀDHAVA-NIDĀNA

M. N. 24

SUMMARY

A clinical syndrome, called *urustambha* or *ādhyavāta* characterized by rigidity of the lower limbs which are also cold, show diminished sensory perception, feel heavy as if belonging to another person and are very painful, in association with general symptomatology of fever, anorexia, drowsiness, vomiting, bodyache, worried look and a sensation as if covered with moist clothes is dealt with in this chapter under the following aspects : aetiopathogenesis (1-3/2a), clinical features (3/2b-5 and 7-9), prodromal features (6) and prognosis (10).

चतुर्विंशतितमोऽध्यायः

CHAPTER TWENTY-FOUR

उरुस्तम्भनिदानम्

THE DIAGNOSIS OF THE URUSTAMBHA

24. 1-3/2a. Aetiopathogenesis

शीतोष्णद्रवसंशुष्कगुरुस्निग्धैर्निषेवितैः ।
जीर्णजीर्णे तथाऽऽयाससंक्षोभस्वप्नजागरैः ॥ १ ॥
सश्लेष्ममेदः पवनः साममत्यर्थसञ्चितम् ।
अभिभूयेतरं दोषमूख चेत्प्रतिपद्यते ॥ २ ॥
सक्थ्यस्थिनी प्रपूर्यान्तः श्लेष्मणा स्तिमितेन च ।
तदा स्तम्भनाति-

(अ० हृ० नि० १५. ४७-४६/२अ)

Due to the (excessive) intake of cold, hot, liquid, very dry, heavy¹ and fatty food, without taking care if the previous meal has been digested (or not), as also (tiredness) due to excessive physical work, great stress, (day) sleep, or wakefulness *vāyu* in association with too much of accumulated *āma doṣa*, *kapha* and *medas* overpowers the other *doṣa* (*pitta*), migrates to the thighs and fills up the musculo-skeletal system of the thigh with the moist *kapha*. As a result, stiffness (of both thighs) occurs.

(A. H. III. 15. 47-49/2a)

1. Difficult to digest.

२४. १-३/२अ. निदान एवं सम्प्राप्ति

अत्यधिक शीत, उष्ण, द्रव, शुष्क, गुरु एवं स्निग्ध पदार्थों के सेवन से, जीर्णाजीर्ण का बिना विचार किए भोजन करने से, अति परिश्रम से, संक्षोभ से, दिवास्वाप एवं रात्रि जागरण से, संचित आम, मेद एवं श्लेष्म से युक्त वात अन्य दोष (पित्त) को अभिभूत करके उरु में संचित होकर सक्थियों को अस्थि तक स्तिमित श्लेष्मा से परिपूर्ण कर देता है । इस प्रकार उरु में स्तम्भ उत्पन्न हो जाता है ।

24. 3/2b-5. Clinical Features

—तेनोरुस्तब्धौ शीतावचेतनौ ॥ ३ ॥

परकीयाविव गुरु स्यातामतिभृशव्यथौ ।

ध्यानाङ्गमर्दस्तैमित्यतन्द्राच्छर्द्यरुचिज्वरैः ॥ ४ ॥

संयुक्तौ पादसदनकृच्छ्रोद्धरणसुप्तिभिः ।

तमूरुस्तम्भमित्याहुराढ्यवातमथापरे ॥ ५ ॥

(अ० ह० नि० १५. ४६/२ब-५१)

Consequently the thighs become stiff, cold and insensitive (to touch). They feel heavy, as if belonging to another person. They become excessively painful. The patient looks worried, gets bodyache, a sensation as if covered with moist clothes, drowsiness, vomiting, anorexia and fever. The lower extremities develop languor, there is inability to lift them up and they are benumbed. This condition is called *urustambha*; others call it *ādhyavāta*.

(A. H. III. 15. 49/2b-51)

२४. ३/२ब-५. लक्षण

इससे उरु में स्तब्धता, शैत्य और अचेतनता हो जाती है । रोगी अपने उरु को भारी तथा पराए के समान अनुभव करता है तथा इसमें अत्यधिक पीड़ा होती है । रोगी चिन्ता, अङ्गमर्द, स्तैमित्य, तन्द्रा, छर्दि, अरुचि तथा ज्वर से पीड़ित रहता है । पैरों में अवसाद एवं सुप्तता रहती है तथा वह उन्हें

कष्टपूर्वक उठा पाता है । उक्त लक्षणों से युक्त रोग को उरुस्तम्भ कहते हैं ।
कुछ लोग इसे आढ्यवात कहते हैं ।

24. 6. Prodromal Features

प्राग्रूपं तस्य निद्राऽतिध्यानं स्तिमितता ज्वरः ।

रोमहर्षोऽरुचिश्छर्दिर्जङ्घोर्वोः सदनं तथा ॥ ६ ॥

(च० चि० २७. १५)

During the prodromal stage, the patient feels sleepy, is excessively anxious, gets the sensation as if wrapped up with wet clothes, develops fever, horripilation, anorexia, vomiting and languor of the calf (muscles) and the thighs.

(C. S. VI. 27. 15)

२४. ६. पूर्वरूप

निद्रा, अत्यन्त चिन्ता, स्तिमितता, ज्वर, रोमहर्ष, अरुचि, छर्दि तथा जंघा एवं उरु में अवसाद होना उरुस्तम्भ का पूर्वरूप होता है ।

24. 7-9. Aggravation of the disease

वातशङ्खिभिरज्ञानात्तस्य स्यात्स्नेहनात्पुनः ।

पादयोः सदनं सुप्तिः कृच्छ्रादुद्धरणं तथा ॥ ७ ॥

जङ्घोरुग्लानिरत्यर्थं शश्वच्चादाहवेदने ।

पादं च व्यथते न्यस्तं शीतस्पर्शं न वेत्ति च ॥ ८ ॥

संस्थाने पीडने गत्यां चालने चाप्यनीश्वरः ।

अन्यस्येव हि सम्भगनावूरु पादौ च मन्यते ॥ ९ ॥

(च० चि० २७. १६-१८)

On account of ignorance, if people mistaking it for a *vātika* disease apply oleation, languor and

numbness get exaggerated and the capacity of lifting the legs is further reduced. There is excessive apathy to use the calf (muscles) and the thighs. There is a constant burning sensation and pain (locally). Further, as soon as the leg is put (on the ground), it gives rise to pain and is insensitive to touch or cold. The patient is incapable of standing (on the legs), applying pressure (by them), walking or moving them to and fro. He feels his thighs and legs as if fractured or else belonging to another person.

(C. S. VI. 27. 16-18)

२४.७-९. अनुपशय

अज्ञानवश वातव्याधि की शंका से यदि इसमें स्नेहन करा दिया जाय तो पैरों में सदन तथा सुति बढ़ जाती है । रोगी पैरों को कठिनाई से उठाता है । जंघा एवं उरु में भी अवसाद हो जाता है । निरन्तर दाह और वेदना होती है । पैर रखने पर अत्यधिक पीड़ा होती है तथा रोगी को शीत स्पर्श की अनुमति नहीं होती । इससे पीड़ित रोगी खड़े होने, पैर से किसी वस्तु को दवाने, चलने तथा पैर को हिलाने में असमर्थ हो जाता है । वह ऐसा अनुभव करता है कि उसके पैर (अपने न होकर) दूसरे के हैं या अपने उरु का भग्न हो गया है ।

24. 10, Prognosis

यदा दाहार्तितोदार्षो वेपनः पुरुषो भवेत् ।

ऊरुस्तम्भस्तदा हन्यात्साधयेदन्यथा नवम् ॥ १० ॥

(च० चि० २७. १६)

The *urustambha* would prove to be fatal when the patient is distressed with a burning sensation, pain, pricking sensation and tremors; the condition should otherwise be treated, as also if it is of a recent onset.

(C. S. VI. 27. 19)

२४. १०. साध्यासाध्यता

यदि उरुस्तम्भ में अत्यधिक दाह, तीव्र पीड़ा, तोद तथा कम्प हो तो यह मारक होता है । इसके विपरीत लक्षणों वाले तथा नवीन उरुस्तम्भ भी साध्य होते हैं ।

इति श्रीमाधवकरविरचिते माधवनिदाने उरुस्तम्भनिदानम् समाप्तम् ॥ २४ ॥

Thus ends (the twenty-fourth chapter entitled)
'The Diagnosis of the *Urustambha*' of Mādhava-
Nidāna as compiled by Śrī Mādhavakara.

इस प्रकार श्रीमाधवकर द्वारा सङ्कलित माधव-निदान का
उरुस्तम्भनिदान (नामक चौबीसवाँ अध्याय) समाप्त हुआ ।

M. N. 24

SUGGESTED RESEARCH PROBLEMS

1. A historical and comparative research into the conceptual aspects of this disease is indicated.
2. A clinical correlation between the disease *uru-stambha* as given in this chapter in terms of modern terminology of diseases in which both lower limbs show sensory and motor loss along with the other specified features would be highly beneficial to understand this condition.



माधवनिदानम्

पञ्चविंशतितमोऽध्यायः

आमवातनिदानम्

THE DIAGNOSIS OF *ĀMAVĀTA*

CHAPTER TWENTY-FIVE

MĀDHAVA - NIDĀNA

M, N. 25

SUMMARY

This chapter describes the aetiopathogenesis, clinical features and prognosis of *āma*vāta (rheumatoid arthritis and allied conditions).

Āma, a product of impaired digestion/metabolism, is carried by *vāyu*, obstructs the channels at different sites and causes inflammation of joints; the condition has been termed *āma*vāta (1-5).

General clinical features (6) of *āma*vāta and their exacerbations including the specific involvement of joints and chronicity (7-11) are described. Refractoriness of the condition to treatment is mentioned (12).

SUMMARY

This chapter describes the anthropometric
physical features and movements of the human (1900-
1950) and the effect of environment.
The first part of the chapter is a description
of the human body, its structure and function.
The second part of the chapter is a description
of the human body, its structure and function.
The third part of the chapter is a description
of the human body, its structure and function.
The fourth part of the chapter is a description
of the human body, its structure and function.
The fifth part of the chapter is a description
of the human body, its structure and function.

पञ्चविंशतितमोऽध्यायः

CHAPTER TWENTY-FIVE

आमवातनिदानम्

THE DIAGNOSIS OF *ĀMAVĀTA*
(RHEUMATOID ARTHRITIS, ETC.)¹

25. 1-5. Aetiopathogenesis

विरुद्धाहारचेष्टस्य मन्दाग्नेनिश्चलस्य च ।
स्निग्धं भुक्तवतो ह्यन्नं व्यायामं कुर्वतस्तथा ॥ १ ॥
वायुना प्रेरितो ह्यामः श्लेष्मस्थानं प्रधावति ।
तेनात्यर्थं विदग्धोऽसौ घमनीः प्रतिपद्यते ॥ २ ॥
वातपित्तकफैर्भूयो दूषितः सोऽन्नजो रसः ।
स्रोतांस्यभिष्यन्दयति नानावर्णोऽतिपिच्छिलः ॥ ३ ॥
जनयत्याशु दौर्बल्यं गौरवं हृदयस्य च ।
व्याधीनामाश्रयो ह्येष आमसंज्ञोऽतिदारुणः ॥ ४ ॥
युगपत् कुपितावन्तस्त्रिकसन्धिप्रवेशकौ ।
स्तब्धं च कुरुतो गात्रमामवातः स उच्यते ॥ ५ ॥

When a person of sedentary habits with hypo-functioning digestive mechanism indulges in incompatible diet and regimen, or does physical exer-

1. ¹Ref. 'Comparative Study of Rheumatoid Arthritis' by Tripathi, S. N. : in the book 'Advances in Research in Indian Medicine' (1970) by Udupa, K. N., Chaturvedi, G. N. & Tripathi, S. N. Banaras Hindu University, Varanasi (India).

cise after taking fatty food the *āma*¹ is (formed and) propelled by *vāyu* and reaches the site of *śleṣma*. The *āmarasa*, on being incompletely processed and very much vitiated by *vāta*, *pitta* and *kapha* is circulated (all over the body) through the vessels. It then takes on multiple colours, becomes excessively mucoid and accumulates² in the small channels. It renders the patient weak in no time and produces a feeling of heaviness in the precordial region. This substance named *āma* is the cause of so many distressing diseases. When this aggravated *āma* simultaneously afflicts the (pelvic and shoulder) girdles and other joints³ making the body stiff, the condition is known as *āmavāta*.

२५. १-५. निदान एवं सम्प्राप्ति

मन्दाभियुक्त एवं अल्प चेष्टा वाला व्यक्ति जब विरुद्ध आहार विहार करता है अथवा स्निग्ध भोजन करने के पश्चात् तत्काल व्यायाम करता है तो उत्पन्न हुआ आम वायु से प्रेरित होकर श्लेष्मा के स्थान पर पहुँचता है। यह विदग्ध (अर्धपक्व) आमरस वात, पित्त एवं कफ द्वारा पुनः पुनः अत्यधिक दूषित होकर धमनियों में पहुँच जाता है और सम्पूर्ण शरीर में संचरण करता है। यह अनेक वर्ण धारण कर लेता है और अत्यधिक पिच्छिल होकर स्रोतों को अभिष्यन्दित कर देता है। यह शीघ्र ही दुर्बलता एवं हृदय प्रदेश में गुरुता उत्पन्न करता है। यह आम संज्ञक पदार्थ अनेक व्याधियों का कारण होने से अत्यन्त भयङ्कर होता है। जब यह कुपित आम एक साथ त्रिक प्रदेश एवं सन्धियों में प्रविष्ट हो जाता है तो सम्पूर्ण शरीर को जकड़ देता है। इस अवस्था को आमवात कहा जाता है।

-
1. A product of maldigestion.
 2. Producing inflammation.
 3. Spine, peripheral joints, etc.

25. 6. General Clinical Features

अङ्गमर्दोऽरुचिस्तृष्णा ह्यालस्यं गौरवं ज्वरः ।

अपाकः शूनताऽङ्गानामामवातस्य लक्षणम् ॥ ६ ॥

Bodyache, anorexia, thirst, malaise, a feeling of heaviness, fever, indigestion and inflammation of the body parts¹ are the general signs and symptoms of *āmavāta*.

२५. ६. सामान्य लक्षण

शरीर में वेदना, अरुचि, तृष्णा, आलस्य, गौरव, ज्वर, अविपाक तथा शरीर के अङ्गों में सूजन होना आमवात के सामान्य लक्षण हैं ।

25. 7-10. Exacerbation of Āmavāta

स कष्टः सर्वरोगाणां यदा प्रकुपितो भवेत् ।

हस्तपादशिरोगुल्फत्रिकजानूरुसन्धिषु ॥ ७ ॥

करोति सरुजं शोथं यत्र दोषः प्रपद्यते ।

स देशो रुजतेऽत्यर्थं व्याविद्ध इव वृश्चिकैः ॥ ८ ॥

जनयेत् सोऽग्निदौर्बल्यं प्रसेकारुचिगौरवम् ।

उत्साहहानिं वैरस्यं दाहं च बहुमूत्रताम् ॥ ९ ॥

कुक्षौ कठिनां शूलं तथा निद्राविपर्ययम् ।

तृट्छर्दिभ्रममूर्च्छाश्च हृदग्रहं विड्विबद्धताम् ।

जाड्यान्त्रकूजमानाहं कष्टांश्चान्यानुपद्रवान् ॥ १० ॥

When *āmavāta* gets exacerbated it becomes most distressing of all the diseases. Whereever the (*āma*) *doṣa* reaches it produces painful swellings such as in

1. E.g. myositis, fibrositis, arthritis, etc. (like a collagen disease).

the joints of the hands and feet, cervical region, (pelvic and shoulder) girdles, knees and thighs. The affected part is excessively painful as if it is being bitten by scorpions. It gives rise to hypo-functioning of the digestive system, excessive salivation, anorexia and a feeling of heaviness, loss of the drive, bad taste in the mouth, polyuria and a burning sensation, hardness in the abdomen, colicky pain and reversal of normal sleeping habit, thirst, vomiting, vertigo, fainting, precordial discomfort, constipation, stiffness, gurgling intestinal sounds, meteorism and other troublesome complications.

२५. ७-१०. प्रवृद्ध आमवात के लक्षण

आमवात जब प्रवृद्ध अथवा प्रकुपित हो जाता है तो सभी रोगों से अधिक कष्टदायक होता है। यह (आम) दोष जहाँ भी पहुँचता है, यथा हाथ, पैर, शिर, गुल्फ, त्रिक्, जानु तथा उरु की सन्धियों में वेदनायुक्त शोथ उत्पन्न करता है। प्रभावित उन भागों में वृश्चिक दंश के समान अत्यधिक वेदना होती है। यह अग्निमांश, लालास्राव, अरुचि एवं शरीर में गौरव की अनुभूति उत्पन्न करता है। उत्साह हानि, मुख में विरसता एवं शरीर में दाह की प्रतीति होती है। बहुमूत्रता, पेट में कड़ापन, शूल तथा निद्रा विपर्यय उत्पन्न हो जाता है। प्यास, वमन, भ्रम, मूर्च्छा, हृद्ग्रह तथा विबन्ध हो जाता है। जड़ता, आन्त्रकूजन, आनाह एवं अन्य कष्टप्रद उपद्रव भी उत्पन्न हो सकते हैं।

25. 11. Features of Doṣika predominance in Āmavāta

पित्तात् सदाहरागं च सशूलं पवनानुगम् ।

स्तिमितं गुरुकण्डूं च कफदुष्टं तमादिशेत् ॥ ११ ॥

With the predominance of *pitta* there is redness and heat (locally); whereas with the predominance

of *vāta*, the pain is severe. If *kapha* is predominant, a feeling of being covered with wet clothes, heaviness and an itching sensation are present.

२५.११. आमवात में दोषानुबन्ध के लक्षण

पित्त का आधिक्य होने पर (रुग्ण स्थान) पर दाह और लालिमा होती है । वात के अनुबन्ध से वेदना का आधिक्य होता है । कफानुबन्ध होने पर स्तिमितता, गुरुता एवं कण्डु के लक्षण उपस्थित होते हैं ।

25. 12. Prognosis

एकदोषानुगः साध्यो द्विदोषो याप्य उच्यते ।

सर्वदेहचरः शोथः स कृच्छ्रः सान्निपातिकः ॥ १२ ॥

When one *doṣa* is involved, it (the disease) is curable; with the involvement of two *doṣas* it is said to be relievable (only). When all the three *doṣas* are involved and there is an inflammation all over the body the condition is difficult to cure.

२५.१२. साध्यासाध्यता

एक दोषज आमवात साध्य होता है । द्विदोषज आमवात याप्य और सर्व-शरीरचारी शोथ सान्निपातिक आमवात कृच्छ्रसाध्य होता है ।

इति श्रीमाधवकरविरचिते माधवनिदाने आमवातनिदानम् समाप्तम् ॥२५॥

Thus ends (the twenty-fifth chapter entitled) 'The Diagnosis of *Āmavāta*' of Mādhava Nidāna as compiled by Śrī Mādhavakara.

इस प्रकार श्रीमाधवकर द्वारा सङ्कलित माधव-निदान का आमवात निदान (नामक पच्चीसवाँ अध्याय) समाप्त हुआ ।

M. N. 25

SUGGESTED RESEARCH PROBLEMS

1. A historical and comparative study into the conceptual aspects of rheumatoid arthritis and allied conditions (*āmaṇvāta*) as given in this chapter should be done.
2. Clinical and experimental investigations could be planned to study the aetiological factors (1-5), especially the impairment of digestive mechanism.
3. The clinical features (6-11) should be correlated in terms of modern clinical terminology.



माधवनिदानम्

षड्विंशतितमोऽध्यायः

शूलपरिणामशूलान्नद्रवशूलनिदानम्

DIAGNOSIS OF THE ABDOMINAL COLICS,
DUODENAL ULCER AND GASTRIC ULCER

CHAPTER TWENTY-SIX

MĀDHAVA-NIDĀNA

THE UNIVERSITY

OF CALIFORNIA

LIBRARY

PHYSICS

AND

ASTRONOMY

DEPARTMENT

OF PHYSICS

AND

ASTRONOMY

LIBRARY

PHYSICS

AND

ASTRONOMY

DEPARTMENT

OF PHYSICS

AND

ASTRONOMY

LIBRARY

PHYSICS

AND

ASTRONOMY

DEPARTMENT

OF PHYSICS

AND

ASTRONOMY

LIBRARY

PHYSICS

AND

ASTRONOMY

M. N. 26

SUMMARY

This chapter discusses the diagnosis of various types of abdominal colic, duodenal ulcer and gastric ulcer.

Abdominal colic (*śūla*) is described to be of eight types (1). They are due to vitiated humours acting singly or in various combinations; aetiopathogenesis and clinical features of each type is dealt with (2-14/1). Their prognosis is mentioned (14/2, 15/1). *Āmaja śūla* (12) could be a condition leading to paralytic ileus.

The salient features of the duodenal ulcer (*pariṇāma śūla*) (15/2-20) and gastric ulcer (21/2-23) are given. The *tridoṣaja pariṇāma śūla* (21/1) could be a description of gastric ulcer going on to malignancy (ulcer cancer).

SUMMARY

The chapter discusses the history of the study of the human mind, from the ancient Greeks to the present day.

It begins with a brief history of psychology, from the ancient Greeks to the present day. It then discusses the development of psychology as a science, from the late 19th century to the present day. It then discusses the development of psychology as a profession, from the late 19th century to the present day. It then discusses the development of psychology as a field of study, from the late 19th century to the present day. It then discusses the development of psychology as a discipline, from the late 19th century to the present day. It then discusses the development of psychology as a profession, from the late 19th century to the present day. It then discusses the development of psychology as a field of study, from the late 19th century to the present day. It then discusses the development of psychology as a discipline, from the late 19th century to the present day.

The chapter then discusses the development of psychology as a profession, from the late 19th century to the present day. It then discusses the development of psychology as a field of study, from the late 19th century to the present day. It then discusses the development of psychology as a discipline, from the late 19th century to the present day. It then discusses the development of psychology as a profession, from the late 19th century to the present day. It then discusses the development of psychology as a field of study, from the late 19th century to the present day. It then discusses the development of psychology as a discipline, from the late 19th century to the present day. It then discusses the development of psychology as a profession, from the late 19th century to the present day. It then discusses the development of psychology as a field of study, from the late 19th century to the present day. It then discusses the development of psychology as a discipline, from the late 19th century to the present day.

षड्विंशतितमोऽध्यायः

CHAPTER TWENTY-SIX

शूलपरिणामशूलान्नद्रवशूलनिदानम्

THE DIAGNOSIS OF
ABDOMINAL COLICS (*ŚŪLA*),
DUODENAL ULCER (*PARIṆĀMA ŚŪLA*) AND
GASTRIC ULCER (*ANNADRAVA ŚŪLA*)

26. 1. Types of Colics (*Śūlas*)

दोषैः पृथक् समस्तामद्वन्द्वैः शूलोऽष्टधा भवेत् ।

सर्वेष्वेतेषु शूलेषु प्रायेण पवनः प्रभुः ॥ १ ॥

Śūlas (colics) are of eight types : they are (three) due to the three *doṣas* (*vāyu*, *pitta* and *kapha*) separately, (fourth) due to a combination of all the (three) *doṣas*, (fifth) due to *āma doṣa*, and (three more) due to the combinations of two *doṣas* (namely, *vāyu* and *kapha*, *kapha* and *pitta* and *vāyu* and *pitta*). However, in all these (eight types of) colics *vāyu* has a predominant role.

२६. १. भेद

पृथक्-पृथक् दोषों से (वातज, पित्तज, कफज), द्वन्द्वज (वातपित्तज, वात-कफज, पित्तकफज), सन्निपातज तथा आमज; ये आठ प्रकार के शूल होते हैं । फिर भी, इन सभी प्रकार के शूलों में प्रायः वायु की ही प्रधानता होती है ।

26. 2-5. Vātika Colic

व्यायामयानादतिमैथुनाच्च प्रजागराच्छीतजलातिपानात् ।
 कलायमुद्गाढकिंकोरदूषादत्यर्थरूक्षाध्यशनाभिघातात् ॥ २ ॥
 कषायतिक्तातिविरूढजान्नविरुद्धबलूरकशुष्कशाकात् ।
 विदुश्चक्रमुत्रानिलवेगरोधाच्छोकोपवासादतिहास्यभाष्यात् ॥ ३ ॥
 वायुः प्रवृद्धो जनयेद्वि शूलं हृत्पार्श्वपृष्ठत्रिकवस्तिदेशे ।
 जीर्णे प्रदोषे च घनागमे च शीते च कोपं समुपैति गाढम् ॥ ४ ॥
 मुहुर्मुहुश्चोपशमप्रकोपी विड्वातसंस्तम्भनतोदभेदैः ।
 संस्वेदनाभ्यञ्जनमर्दनाद्यैः स्निग्धोष्णभोज्यैश्च शमं प्रयाति ॥ ५ ॥

Aetiopathogenesis (2-4/1)

In the *vātika śūla vāta* is severely excited by excessive physical exercise, riding (on animals, vehicles, etc.), excessive sexual intercourse, keeping awake at nights, drinking too much of cold water, eating plenty of (pulses like) *kalāya*¹, *mudga*² and *ādḥaki*³ and *koradūṣa*⁴ (cereal) or of extremely dry (non-fatty) food, eating before the previous meal has been digested, trauma, consumption of astringent or bitter food, over-germinated cereals, incompatible food or dry (non-fatty) meat and vegetables, suppression of the urge to defaecate, ejaculate, urinate or pass flatus, grief, fasting and excessive laughter or talking and produces colicky pain in (five regions, viz.) the precordial region, flanks, back, sacral and the vesical regions.

-
1. *Lathyrus sativus* Linn. (Coll. *Khesāri*)
 2. *Phaseolus radiatus* Linn. (Coll. *Mūṅga*)
 3. *Cajanus cajan* (Linn.) Millsp. (Coll. *Arahara*)
 4. *Paspalum scrobiculatum* Linn. (Coll. *Kodon*)

Clinical Features (4/2, 5)

It is characterised by periods of exacerbations and remissions again and again and is associated with retention of faeces and flatus and pricking and tearing types of pain.

This (colicky pain) becomes acutely exacerbated after the food has been digested, at twilights, during the cloudy weather and when it is cold.

On the other hand, it is relieved by sudation, inunction¹ or massage² (with oil), etc., as well as by the intake of fatty and hot food.

२६. २-५. वातिक शूल

अत्यधिक व्यायाम, सवारी तथा मैथुन से, रात्रि जागरण से, अति शीतल जल के पीने से, कलाय, मुद्ग, अरहर, कोदो या अन्य अति रुक्ष पदार्थ खाने से, अध्यशन से, अभिघात से, कषाय, तिक्त, अङ्कुरित अन्न, विरुद्ध अन्न तथा शुष्क शाक या मांस खाने से, मल, शुक्र, मूत्र एवं अपान वायु के वेग को रोकने से, शोक या उपवास करने से, तथा अत्यधिक हँसने या बोलने से प्रकुपित हुआ वायु हृदय, पार्श्व, पृष्ठ, कटि एवं बस्ति (इन पाँच) प्रदेशों में शूल उत्पन्न करता है ।

यह शूल अन्न के जीर्ण होने पर, प्रदोष के समय (सायं तथा प्रातः), बादल घिर आने पर तथा शीतकाल में तीव्र रूप से कुपित होता है या बढ़ता है । यह शूल बार बार प्रकुपित और शान्त होता है । इसमें मल तथा अपान वायु का अवरोध तथा तोदन एवं भेदनवत् वेदना होती है । यह स्वेदन, अभ्यङ्ग तथा मर्दन आदि से तथा स्निग्ध व उष्ण भोजन करने से शान्त होता है ।

26. 6-8. Paittika Śūla

क्षारातितीक्ष्णोष्णविदाहितैलनिष्पावपिण्याककुलत्थयूषैः ।

कट्वम्लसौवीरसुराविकारैः क्रोधानलायासरविप्रतापैः ॥ ६ ॥

1. *Abhyāṅga* is light massage.

2. *Mardana* is massage with pressure.

ग्राम्यातियोगादशनैर्विदग्धैः पित्तं प्रकुप्याशु करोति शूलम् ।
 तृणमोहदाहार्तिकरं हि नाभ्यां संस्वेदमूर्च्छाभ्रमचोषयुक्तम् ॥ ७ ॥
 मध्यन्दिने कुप्यति चार्धरात्रे विदाहकाले जलदात्यये च ।
 शीते च शीतैः समुपैति शान्तिं सुस्वादुशीतैरपि भोजनैश्च ॥ ८ ॥

Aetiopathogenesis (6, 7/1)

In *paitika śūla pitta* gets aggravated very soon by the (excessive) intake of alkaline substances, extremely pungent, hot and heart-burn producing food, oils, legumes, oil cakes or *kulattha*¹ soup, too acrid or too sour food, *sauvira*² and various wines, anger, (excessive) sitting in front of fire or physical exercise, too much of basking in the hot sun and over-indulgence in sexual intercourse causing ill digestion of food.

Clinical Features (7/2, 8)

It produces colicky pain accompanied with thirst, fainting, a burning sensation and pain in the umbilical region. (This colic is also associated with) perspiration, swooning, vertigo and a sucking sensation.

It gets exacerbated at noon and midnight, at the time of digestion of food and during the autumn season.

On the other hand, it is relieved during the cold season, by the use of cold objects as well as by eating delicious sweet and cold food.

1. *Dolichos biflorus* Linn.

2. *Zizyphus sativa* Gaertn.

२६.६-८. पैंतिक शूल

अत्यधिक क्षार, तीक्ष्ण, उष्ण एवं विदाहि पदार्थ, तैल, निष्पाव (शिम्वी या फली जैसे मटर या सेम आदि), पिण्याक (कोफता), कुलथ यूष, कटु एवं अम्ल पदार्थ, सौवीर (कांजी) तथा मद्य के किसी प्रकार का सेवन करने से, क्रोध करने तथा (अत्यधिक) अग्नि सेवन, व्यायाम या धूप सेवन से और अत्यधिक मैथुन से विदग्ध हुआ अन्न शीघ्र ही पित्त को प्रकुपित करके शूल उत्पन्न कर देता है। इसमें तृष्णा, मोह, दाह, नाभि में (चारो ओर) वेदना, पसीना आना, मूर्च्छा, भ्रम तथा चूसने सदृश वेदना होती है। यह शूल मध्याह्न तथा अर्ध रात्रि में, अन्न के विदाह या पाचन के काल में तथा शरद् ऋतु में बढ़ता है। शीत काल में शीतल पदार्थों से तथा मधुर व शीतल भोजन करने से इस शूल की शान्ति होती है।

26. 9,10. Kaphaja Śūla

आनूपवारिजकिलाट पयोविकारैर्मासेक्षुपिष्टकृशरातिलशङ्कुलोभिः ।
 अन्धर्वलासजनकैरपि हेतुभिश्च श्लेष्मा प्रकोपमुपगम्य करोति शूलम् ॥ ९ ॥
 हृल्लासकाससदनारुचिसंप्रसेकौरामाशये स्तिमितकोष्ठशिरोगुस्त्वैः ।
 भुक्ते सदैव हि रुजं कुस्तेऽतिमात्रं सूर्योदयेऽथ शिशिरे कुसुमागमे च ॥ १० ॥

Consumption of (too much of) meat of swampy and aquatic animals, of *kilāṭa*¹ and other milk preparations, of meat (of other animals), sugarcane juice, pasty preparations, *kṛsārā*², sesamum pudding and pancakes, as well as other *kapha*-vitiating aetiological factors produce aggravation of *kapha* and give rise to colicky pain. It is associated with nausea, cough, malaise, anorexia, excessive salivation, sensation of the stomach (region) being covered with wet clothes and a feeling of heaviness in the abdomen

1. Cheese or solid part of inspissated milk. (S. S. I, 45. 91.)

2. Mixed preparations of rice and pulses.

and the head. This (colicky) pain always gets aggravated after meals, at sunrise, during winter and the early spring.

२६. ६, १०. श्लैष्मिक शूल

आनूप एवं जलीय प्राणियों का मांस, किलाट (खोवा या श्रीखण्ड आदि), दुग्ध विकार (छेना या दुग्ध से बने अन्य पदार्थ) आदि के सेवन से, (अत्यधिक) मांस खाने से, इक्षु, पिष्टि (उड़द की पीसी हुई दाल), कुशरा, तिल तथा पूड़ी आदि (अत्यधिक) खाने से एवं कफवर्धक कारणों से श्लेष्मा प्रकुपित होकर शूल उत्पन्न करता है। इसमें हृत्तास, कास, अङ्गसाद, अरुचि, अत्यधिक लालास्राव या कफोद्रेक, गीले वस्त्र से कोष्ठ के आच्छादन सदृश अनुभूति तथा शिर में भारीपन आदि लक्षण होते हैं। यह शूल भोजन के तुरन्त बाद, सूर्योदय के समय, शिशिर ऋतु में तथा वसंत ऋतु के आगमन काल में अत्यधिक बढ़ता है।

26. 11. Sannipātaja Śūla

सर्वेषु दोषेषु च सर्वलिङ्गं विद्याद्भिषक् सर्वभवं हि शूलम् ।

सुकष्टमेनं विषवज्रकल्पं विवर्जनीयं प्रवदन्ति तज्ज्ञाः ॥११॥

This type of colic is caused by the simultaneous vitiation of all (the three) *doṣas* producing a mixture of all the above clinical features. The clinicians regard this to be a very troublesome condition like poisoning or an attack by thunder; hence the specialists advise it to be discarded (from routine treatment).

२६. ११. सन्निपातज शूल

सभी दोषों के प्रकुपित होने से तथा सभी दोषों के लक्षणों वाले शूल को चिकित्सक सन्निपातज शूल समझें। विद्वानों का कथन है कि यह विष एवं वज्र के समान कष्टकारी तथा त्याज्य (या असाध्य) होता है।

26. 12. Āmaja Śūla¹

आटोपहृल्लासवमीगुरुत्वस्तैमित्यकानाहकफप्रसेकैः ।

कफस्य लिङ्गेन समानलिङ्गमामोद्धवं शूलमुदाहरन्ति ॥ १२ ॥

Distension with gurgling intestinal sounds, nausea, vomiting, sensations of heaviness and of being covered with wet clothes, constipation, excessive salivation and other features of *kaphaja śūla* are the characteristic signs and symptoms of *āmaja śūla*.

२६. १२. आमज शूल

आटोप (पेट फूलना), हृल्लास, वमन, भारीपन, गीले वस्त्र से आच्छादित होने सदृश अनुभूति, आनाह, कफप्रसेक तथा श्लैष्मिक शूल के सदृश लक्षणों वाला शूल आमज होता है ।

26. 13, 14/1. Dvidosaja Śūla

वस्तौ हृत्पार्श्वपृष्ठेषु स शूलः कफवातिकः ।

कुक्षौ हृन्नाभिमध्येषु स शूलः कफपैत्तिकः ॥ १३ ॥

दाहज्वरकरो घोरो विज्ञेयो वातपैत्तिकः ।

The site of pain of *kapha-vātika śūla* is in the region of the urinary bladder, precordium, flanks and back, of the *kapha-paittika śūla* is in the epigastric, cardiac and the mid-umbilical regions, whereas the *vāta-paittika śūla* is characterised by a burning sensation and fever and is very severe.

२६. १३, १४/१. द्विदोषज शूल

वस्ति तथा हृदय प्रदेश, पृष्ठ एवं पार्श्व में कफवातिक शूल; कुक्षि, हृदय

1. Some ayurvedic scholars consider later stages of this condition as ? paralytic ileus.

प्रदेश तथा नाभि के मध्य में कफपैत्तिक शूल; तथा दाह और ज्वर से युक्त एवं अति तीव्र वातपैत्तिक शूल होता है ।

26. 14/2, 15/1. Prognosis of Doṣika Śūlas

एकदोषोत्थितः साध्यः कृच्छ्रसाध्यो द्विदोषजः ॥ १४ ॥

सर्वदोषोत्थितो घोरस्त्वसाध्यो भूर्युपद्रवः ।

The colic due to a single humour is curable; that due to a dual combination of humours is difficult to cure; whereas the severe colic due to vitiation of all the humours and also one associated with complications is incurable.

२६. १४/२, १५/१. साध्यासाध्यता

एकदोषज शूल साध्य, द्विदोषज कृच्छ्रसाध्य तथा सन्निपातज एवं उपद्रवों से युक्त तीव्र शूल असाध्य होता है ।

26. 15/2-17/1. Parīṇāma Śūla (? Duodenal Ulcer)

स्वैर्निदानैः प्रकुपितो वायुः संनिहितस्तदा ॥ १५ ॥

कफपित्ते समावृत्य शूलकारी भवेद् बली ।

भुक्ते जीर्यति यच्छूलं तदेव परिणामजम् ॥ १६ ॥

तस्य लक्षणमप्येतत् समासेनाभिधीयते ।

When *vāyu*, deranged on account of its specific aetiological factors, gets localised, and getting enveloped by *kapha* and *pitta* becomes more powerful, it produces colicky pain. This colic occurs during the period of digestion and is called *parīṇāmaja śūla*; in brief, this characteristic is its salient feature.

२६. १५/२-१७/१. परिणाम शूल

अपने हेतुओं से प्रकुपित वायु एक स्थान में स्थित होकर कफ एवं पित्त से आवृत्त होने पर अधिक बलवान होता हुआ शूल को उत्पन्न करता है । यह

शूल भोजन की पाचनावस्था में होता है; अतः इसे परिणाम शूल कहते हैं और संक्षेप में यही इस शूल का लक्षण है ।

26. 17/2-20. Further Classification of *Pariṇāma Śūla*

आध्मानाटोपविष्णुमूत्रविबन्धारतिवेपनैः ॥ १७ ॥

स्निग्धोष्णोपशमप्रायं वातिकं तद् वदेद् भिषक् ।

तृष्णादाहारतिस्वेदं कट्वम्ललवणोत्तरम् ॥ १८ ॥

शूलं शीतशमप्रायं पैत्तिकं लक्षयेद् बुधः ।

छर्दिहृल्लाससंमोहं स्वल्परुग् दीर्घसन्तति ॥ १९ ॥

कटुतिक्तोपशान्तं च तच्च ज्ञेयं कफात्मकम् ।

संसृष्टलक्षणं बुद्ध्वा द्विदोषं परिकल्पयेत् ॥ २० ॥

The clinicians recognise the *pariṇāma śūla* to be *vātika* when it is associated with flatulence, tympanitis, constipation, oliguria, restlessness and spasms and the pain gets relieved usually on taking fatty and warm substances.

It is said to be *paittika* when the colic is accompanied with thirst, a burning sensation, uneasiness and perspiration; it gets aggravated by taking pungent, sour and salty food and is relieved by taking substances having a cold property.

It is to be diagnosed as *kaphaja* when the colic is associated with vomiting, nausea, confusion, and the pain is mild but remains persistent for a long time; it gets relieved on taking pungent and bitter substances.

Mixed clinical features are seen when this is due to vitiation of two humours.

२६. १७/२-२०. परिणामशूल के दोषानुसार लक्षण

आध्मान, आटोप, मल-मूत्र का अवरोध, अरति (या किसी काम में मन न लगना) तथा कम्पन युक्त एवं स्निग्ध और उष्ण पदार्थों के प्रयोग से शान्त होने वाले शूल को चिकित्सक लोग वातिक परिणाम शूल कहते हैं ।

तृष्णा, दाह, अरति, स्वेद आदि लक्षणों से युक्त, कटु, अम्ल एवं लवण पदार्थों के प्रयोग से बढ़ने वाले तथा शीतल द्रव्यों से शान्त होने वाले शूल को विद्वान् पैत्तिक परिणाम शूल बताते हैं ।

छर्दि, हृत्तास एवं भ्रम से युक्त, धीमे धीमे बहुत देर तक होनेवाले तथा कटु व तिक्त पदार्थों के प्रयोग से शान्त होने वाले शूल को कफज परिणाम शूल जानना चाहिए ।

संसृष्ट या मिश्रित लक्षणों का देख कर द्विदोषज परिणाम शूल की कल्पना करनी चाहिए ।

26. 21/1. Tridoṣaja Parīṇāma Śūla (? Ulcer Cancer)

त्रिदोषजमसाध्यं तु क्षीणमांसवल्गनलम् ।

The colic due to the vitiation of all the three humours and also one associated with cachexia, excessive weakness and markedly diminished digestive capacity¹ ought to be considered as incurable.

२६. २१/१. त्रिदोषज परिणाम शूल

त्रिदोषज तथा मांस, बल एवं अग्नि क्षय से युक्त परिणाम शूल असाध्य होता है ।

26. 21/2-23. Annadrava Śūla (? Gastric Ulcer)

जीर्णे जीर्यत्यजीर्णे वा यच्छूलमुपजायते ॥ २१ ॥

पथ्यापथ्यप्रयोगेण भोजनाभोजनेन च ।

न शमं याति नियमात् सोऽन्नद्रव उदाहृतः ॥ २२ ॥

1. ? Achlorhydria.

अन्नद्रवाख्यशूलेषु न तावत् स्वास्थ्यमश्नुते ।

वान्तमात्रे जरत्पित्तं शूलमाशु व्यपोहति ॥ २३ ॥

Annadrava śūla is known to be that condition when the pain occurs either after the food has been digested, during its digestion or (even) before it has been digested; it neither subsides by the use of salutary or unsalutary substances nor by taking food or by remaining without food.

In a patient of *annadrava śūla*, the pain is not relieved as long as *jarat pitta* (digestive juice) is not expelled out by vomiting; it is then followed by a quick relief.

२६. २१/२-२३. अन्नद्रव शूल

भोजन के जीर्ण हो जाने पर, जीर्ण होते समय या जीर्ण होने के पूर्व भी जो शूल उत्पन्न हो सकता है और पथ्य अथवा अपथ्य के प्रयोग से या भोजन करने या न करने से जो शूल नियमानुसार शान्त नहीं होता उसे अन्नद्रव शूल कहते हैं । अन्नद्रव शूल में रोगी को तब तक स्वास्थ्यलाभ नहीं होता जब तक वमन द्वारा जरत् पित्त बाहर नहीं निकल जाता । इसके उपरान्त शूल शीघ्र ही शान्त हो जाता है ।

इति श्रीमाधवकरविरचिते माधवनिदाने शूलपरिणामशूलान्नद्रव-

शूलनिदानम् समाप्तम् ॥ २६ ॥

Thus ends (the twenty-sixth chapter entitled) 'The Diagnosis of the Abdominal Colics (*Śūla*), Duodenal Ulcer (*Parināma Śūla*) and Gastric Ulcer (*Annadrava Śūla*)' of Mādhava-Nidāna as compiled by Śrī Mādhavakara.

इस प्रकार श्रीमाधवकर द्वारा सङ्कलित माधव-निदान का शूलपरिणामशूल-

अन्नद्रवशूलनिदान (नामक छब्बीसवाँ अध्याय) समाप्त हुआ ।

M. N. 26

SUGGESTED RESEARCH PROBLEMS**I. Abdominal Colics (1-15/1)**

1. A historical and comparative study on the
different types of abdominal colics
to bring out new facts to
bring out the role
of the factors
involved which
determine the factors
3. correlate these
with the clinical

**II. Duodenal Ulcer, Gastric Ulcer and Ulcer Cancer
(15/2-23)**

1. History of Medicine books and chapters/articles
on duodenal/gastric ulcers should be corrected
to give recognition to these historical facts.
 2. Clinical studies could be planned to assess the
role of the aetiological/aggravating factors and
relieving factors.
-

माधवनिदानम्
सप्तविंशतितमोऽध्यायः

उदावर्तानाहनिदानम्
THE DIAGNOSIS OF *UDĀVARTĀ* AND *ĀNĀHA*

CHAPTER TWENTY-SEVEN
MĀDHAVA-NIDĀNA

M. N. 27

SUMMARY

This chapter describes the clinical features of two groups of important abdominal conditions, viz. *udāvarta* (various manifestations due to withholding the physiological urges of evacuatory reflexes, etc.) and *ānāha* (? chronic intestinal obstruction).

I. *Udāvarta* (1-16 & 20)

The aetiological factors of the thirteen types of *udāvarta* have been enumerated (1), the clinical features of these individual types resulting from the suppression of flatus (2), faeces (3), urine (4), yawning (5), lacrymation (6), sneezing (7), belching (8), vomiting (9), ejaculation of semen (10), hunger (11/1), thirst (11/2), respiration (12/1) and sleep (12/2) have then been described.

A fourteenth type of *udāvarta*, caused by vitiated *vāta* has been described to be caused by eating inappropriate diet producing a syndrome with mixed features (13-16).

Features of incurability of *udāvarta* have been mentioned (20).

II. *Ānāha* (17-19)

The definition and aetiopathogenesis of *ānāha* (? chronic intestinal obstruction) has been given (17); two types have been described, viz. *āmaja* (? upper gastro-intestinal tract obstruction) (18), and *pakvāśayaja* or *purīṣaja* (? lower bowel obstruction) (19).



SUMMARY

This chapter describes the clinical features of two groups of important abdominal conditions which present manifestations due to withdrawal of the physiological organs of excretion, namely, the kidneys, and certain functional disturbances.

I. Uremia (1-10)

The etiological factors of the various types of uremia have been summarized (1), the clinical features of these individual types resulting from the suppression of kidneys (2), factors (3), causes (4), vomiting (5), intoxication (6), weakness (7), hypotension (8), elevation of serum (9), changes (10), thirst (11), respiration (12), and sleep (13) have been described.

A fourth type of uremia caused by various factors has been described as being caused by eating an appropriate diet producing a syndrome with various features (14-16).

Features of insubility of uremia have been mentioned (17).

II. Azotemia (17-21)

The definition and pathogenesis of azotemia is given (17), the clinical features of the various types have been described, the types of azotemia are described (18), and the clinical features of the various types are described (19).

सप्तविंशतितमोऽध्यायः

CHAPTER TWENTY-SEVEN

उदावर्तानाहनिदानम्

THE DIAGNOSIS OF UDĀVARTĀ & ĀNĀHA

27. 1. Aetiology of Udāvarta

वातविण्मूत्रजृम्भासक्षवोद्गारवमीन्द्रियाः ।

क्षुत्तृष्णोच्छ्वासनिद्राणां धृत्योदावर्तसंभवः ॥ १ ॥

(सु० उ० ५५. ४/१, ५/१ पा०)

Suppression of the natural (physiological) urges of passing flatus, faeces and urine, yawning, sneezing, eructations, vomiting and ejaculation and also of hunger, thirst, respiration and sleep leads to *udāvarta*.

(Var- S. S. VI. 55. 4/1, 5/1)

२७. १. उदावर्त के हेतु

अपान वायु, मल, मूत्र, जंभाई, अश्रु, छींक, उद्गार, वमन, इन्द्रिय (शुक्र), भूख, प्यास, श्वासोच्छ्वास एवं निद्रा आदि के (स्वाभाविक) वेगों को रोकने से उदावर्त रोग की उत्पत्ति होती है ।

27. 2. Udāvarta due to suppression of the urge to pass flatus

वातमूत्रपुरीषाणां सङ्गोद्भूतानं क्लमो रुजा ।

जठरे वातजाश्चान्ये रोगाः स्युर्वातनिग्रहात् ॥ २ ॥

(च० सू० ७. १२)

Obstruction to the passage of flatus, urine and faeces, tympanitis, fatigue, pain and various other *vātika* abdominal diseases may develop after suppression of the urge to pass wind.

(C. S. I. 7. 12)

२७.२. अपान वायु निरोधजन्य उदावर्त

अपान वायु के वेग को रोकने से वात, मूत्र एवं पुरीष का अवरोध तथा आध्मान, क्लम, पीड़ा तथा उदर में अन्य वातिक विकार उत्पन्न हो सकते हैं ।

27. 3. *Udāvarta due to suppression of the urge to pass faeces*

आटोपशूलौ परिकर्तिका च सङ्गः पुरीषस्य तथोर्ध्ववातः ।

पुरीषमास्यादथवा निरेति पुरीषवेगेऽभिहते नरस्य ॥ ३ ॥

(सु० उ० ५५. ८/२, ६/१)

Distension with gurgling intestinal sounds, abdominal colic, cutting pain in the anal region, obstruction to the passage of faeces, eructations or even faecal vomiting may be caused in the human beings by the suppression of the urge to pass faeces.

(S. S. VI, 55. 8/2, 9/1)

२७.३. पुरीष निरोधजन्य उदावर्त

पुरीष के वेग को रोकने से मनुष्यों के उदर में आटोप, शूल, परिकर्तिका, पुरीष का अवरोध, उद्गार बाहुल्य या कभी-कभी पुरीष-वमन भी होता है ।

27. 4. *Udāvarta due to withholding urine*

वस्तिमेहनयोः शूलं मूत्रकृच्छ्रं शिरोरुजा ।

विनामो वङ्क्षणानाहः स्याल्लिङ्गं मूत्रनिग्रहे ॥ ४ ॥

(च० सू० ७. ६)

Severe pain in the vesical and penile regions, dysuria, headache, bending of the body (due to pain), and distension in the lower abdomen are produced on withholding the urge for urination.

(C. S. I. 7.6)

२७.४. मूत्र निरोधजन्य उदावर्त

मूत्र के वेग को रोकने से वस्ति एवं शिश्न में तीव्र वेदना, मूत्रकृच्छ्र, शिरःशूल, (वेदना के कारण) शरीर का आगे की ओर झुक जाना तथा वङ्क्षण प्रदेश में आनाह आदि लक्षण होते हैं ।

27. 5. Udāvarta due to suppression of the urge for yawning

मन्यागलस्तम्भशिरोविकारा जृम्भोपघातात्पवनात्मकाः स्युः ।

तथाऽक्षिनासावदनामयाश्च भवन्ति तीव्राः सह कर्णरोगैः ॥ ५ ॥

(सु० उ० ५५. ११ पा०)

*Stiffness in the muscles of *manyā* (jugular) and other regions of the neck, *vātika* disorders of the head and serious diseases of the ears, the mouth, the nose and the eyes are caused by the suppression of the yawning urge.

(Var, S. S. VI. 55. 11)

२७.५. जृम्भा निरोधजन्य उदावर्त

जृम्भा के वेग का उपघात करने से, मन्यास्तम्भ, ग्रीवास्तम्भ, शिर के वातजन्य विकार तथा आँख, नाक, मुख एवं कान के तीव्र रोग हो जाते हैं ।

27. 6. Udāvarta due to suppression of the urge to shed tears

आनन्दजं वाऽप्यथ शोकजं वा नेत्रोदकं प्राप्तममुञ्चतो हि ।

शिरोगुस्त्वं नयनामयाश्च भवन्ति तीव्राः सह पीनसेन ॥ ६ ॥

(सु० उ० ५५. १२)

Withholding tears, excited either by (excessive) happiness or grief, causes heaviness in the head and serious diseases of the eyes along with rhinitis.

(S. S. VI. 55. 12)

२७. ६. अश्रु निरोधजन्य उदावर्त

आनन्द अथवा शोक के कारण उत्पन्न अश्रु का यदि त्याग न किया जाय तो शिर में भारीपन, तीव्र नेत्ररोग तथा पीनस रोग हो जाते हैं ।

27. 7. Udāvarta due to the suppression of the urge to sneeze

मन्यास्तम्भः शिरःशूलमर्दितार्धावभेदकौ ।

इन्द्रियाणां च दौर्बल्यं क्षवथोः स्याद्विधारणात् ॥ ७ ॥

(च० सू० ७. १६)

If one suppresses the urge to sneeze stiffness in the muscles of *manyā* (jugular regions), headache, facial paralysis, hemicrania and diminished functioning of the (sensory and motor) organs are produced.

(C. S. I. 7. 16)

२७. ७. क्षवथु निरोधजन्य उदावर्त

छींक का वेग धारण करने से मन्यास्तम्भ, शिरःशूल, अर्दित, अर्धावभेदक तथा इन्द्रियदौर्बल्य आदि लक्षण उत्पन्न हो जाते हैं ।

27. 8. Udāvarta due to the suppression of belching

कण्ठास्यपूर्णत्वमतीव तोदः कूजश्च वायोरथवाऽप्रवृत्तिः ।

उद्गारवेगोऽभिहते भवन्ति घोरा विकाराः पवनप्रसृताः ॥ ८ ॥

(सु० उ० ५५. १३/२, १४/१)

If a person suppresses the desire of belching (a sensation of) fullness and severe pricking pain in

the throat and the mouth, intestinal gurgling sounds, cessation of the passage of wind (flatus) and other serious diseases due to *vāyū* follow.

(S. S. VI. 55. 13/2, 14/1)

२७. ८. उद्गार निरोधजन्य उदावर्त

उद्गार के वेग को रोकने से कण्ठ एवं मुख में पूर्णता (अवरोध) की अनुभूति, अत्यधिक तोद (कण्ठ में सुई चुभने के समान वेदना), आन्त्रकूजन, वायु की अप्रवृत्ति तथा अन्य वातजन्य घोर विकार हो जाते हैं ।

27. 9. Udāvarta due to the suppression of the urge to vomit

कण्डूकोठारुचिव्यङ्गशोथपाण्ड्वामयज्वराः ।

कुष्ठवीसर्पहृत्लासाश्छर्दिनिग्रहजा गदाः ॥ ९ ॥

(च० सू० ७. १४)

When one suppresses the vomiting bouts, he gets an itching sensation, erythematous rashes, anorexia, black pigmented patches, oedema, anaemic disorders, fever, skin diseases, spreading cellulitis and nausea.

(C. S. I. 7. 14)

२७. ९. छर्दि निरोधजन्य उदावर्त

छर्दि के वेग को रोकने से कण्डू, कोठ, अरुचि, व्यङ्ग, शोथ, पाण्डु, ज्वर, कुष्ठ, विसर्प तथा हृत्लास आदि उत्पन्न होते हैं ।

27. 10. Udāvarta due to the suppression of ejaculation

मूत्राशये वै गुदमुष्कयोश्च शोथो रुजा मूत्रविनिग्रहश्च ।

शुक्राश्मरी तत्स्रवणं भवेच्च ते ते विकारा विहते च शुक्रे ॥ १० ॥

(सु० उ० ५५. १५)

There is inflammation and pain in the bladder, the rectum and both sides of the scrotum, urinary retention, formation of seminal concretions, (involuntary) seminal discharge and other related disorders due to the suppression of ejaculation.

(S. S. VI. 55. 15)

२७. १०. शुक्र निरोधजन्य उदावर्त

शुक्र के वेग को रोकने से मूत्राशय, गुद तथा अण्डकोष में शोथ तथा वेदना, मूत्र का अवरोध, शुक्राश्मरी का निर्माण, शुक्रलाव तथा अन्य विकार उत्पन्न हो जाते हैं ।

27. 11/1. Udāvarta due to the suppression of hunger

तन्द्राऽङ्गमर्दावरुचिः श्रमश्च क्षुधाभिघातात्कृशता च दृष्टेः ।

(सु० उ० ५५. १६/१)

If one suppresses hunger, there would be drowsiness, bodyache, anorexia, fatigue and diminished vision.

(S. S. VI. 55. 16/1)

२७. ११/१. क्षुधा निरोधजन्य उदावर्त

क्षुधा के वेग को रोकने से तन्द्रा, अङ्गमर्द, अरुचि, श्रम तथा दृष्टि दौर्बल्य आदि लक्षण होते हैं ।

27. 11/2. Udāvarta due to the suppression of thirst

कण्ठास्यशोषः श्रवणावरोधस्तृष्णाविघाताद्दृढदये व्यथा च ॥११॥

(सु० उ० ५५. १६/२)

In a case of suppression of thirst, there would be dryness of the throat and the mouth, difficulty in hearing and pain in the precordial region.

(S. S. VI. 55. 16/2)

२७. ११/२. तृष्णा निरोधजन्य उदावर्त

तृष्णा के वेग को रोकने से कण्ठ एवं मुख का सूखना, सुनने में कठिनाई एवं हृदय प्रदेश में वेदना आदि लक्षण होते हैं ।

27. 12/1. Udāvarta due to the suppression of rapid respiration

श्रान्तस्य निःश्वासविनिग्रहेण हृद्रोगमोहावथवाऽपि गुल्मः ।

(सु० उ० ५५. १७/१)

Heart disease, fainting and (localised) abdominal swellings may develop when one attempts to check the rapid respiration following exercise.

(S. S. VI. 55. 17/1)

२७. १२/१. श्वासवेग निरोधजन्य उदावर्त

परिश्रम करने से बढ़े हुए श्वास का वेग रोकने से हृदय रोग, मूर्च्छा तथा गुल्म रोग उत्पन्न हो सकते हैं ।

27. 12/2. Udāvarta due to refraining from sleep

जृम्भाऽङ्गमर्दोऽक्षिशिरोतिजाड्यं निद्राभिघातादथवाऽपि तन्द्रा ॥१२॥

(सु० उ० ५५. १७/२)

Yawning, bodyache, excessive heaviness of the eyes and the head and drowsiness follow when one withholds the urge to sleep.

(S. S. VI. 55. 17/2)

२७. १२/२. निद्रा निरोधजन्य उदावर्त

निद्रा का वेग रोकने से जृम्भा, अङ्गमर्द, आँखों तथा शिर में अत्यधिक जकड़ाहट और तन्द्रा आदि लक्षण उत्पन्न होते हैं ।

27. 13-16. Vātaja Udāvarta¹

वायुः कोष्ठानुगो रूक्षः कषायकटुतिक्तकैः ।
 भोजनैः कुपितः सद्य उदावर्तं करोति हि ॥ १३ ॥
 वातमूत्रपुरीषासृक्कफमेदोवहानि वै ।
 स्रोतांस्युदावर्तयति पुरीषं चातिवर्तयेत् ॥ १४ ॥
 ततो हृद्बस्तिशूलार्तो हृल्लासारतिपीडितः ।
 वातमूत्रपुरीषाणि कृच्छ्रेण लभते नरः ॥ १५ ॥
 श्वासकासप्रतिश्यायदाहमोहवृषाज्वरान् ।
 वमिह्मिक्काशिरोरोगमनःश्रवणविभ्रमान् ।
 बहूनन्यांश्च लभते विकारान् वातकोपजान् ॥ १६ ॥

(सु० उ० ५५. ३७-४१/१)

On eating an excess of dry², astringent, acrid and bitter food, abdominal *vāyu* becomes aggravated and soon produces *udāvarta*.

This vitiated *vāta* reverses (obstructs) the movement of flatus, urine, faeces, blood, *kapha* and *medas* in their respective channels and also hardens the stools excessively. Thereafter, the patient gets pain in the precordial and hypogastric regions and suffers from nausea and langour. He passes flatus, urine and stools with difficulty. Ultimately he develops many diseases like dyspnoea, cough, coryza, burning sensation, confusion, fever, vomiting, thirst,

1. The 13 types of *udāvarta* described above are due to the suppression of one or the other physiological urges, whereas this one is caused by eating inappropriate diet producing a syndrome having mixed features.
2. Non-fatty and fibrous.

hiccough, headache, psychological disorders, hearing defects and many other pathological conditions caused by the excitation of *vāta*.

(S. S. VI. 55. 37-41/1).

२७. १३-१६. वातज उदावर्त

अत्यधिक रुक्ष, कषाय, कटु तथा तिक्त भोजन करने से कोष्ठ स्थित वायु शीघ्र ही कुपित होकर उदावर्त उत्पन्न कर देता है ।

यह प्रकुपित वायु वात, मूत्र, पुरीष, रक्त, कफ एवं मेदोबह स्रोतों का उदावर्तन कर देता है अर्थात् इन स्रोतों की गति विपरीत हो जाती है । पुरीष सूख कर कड़ा हो जाता है । परिणामस्वरूप हृदय तथा वस्ति प्रदेश में तीव्र वेदना, हृल्लास तथा अरति से व्यक्ति पीड़ित होता है । रोगी वात, मूत्र तथा पुरीष का त्याग बड़ी कठिनाई से करता है । उसे श्वास, कास, प्रतिश्याय, दाह, मोह, तृष्णा, ज्वर, वमन, हिकका, शिरोरोग, मनोविभ्रम, श्रवणविभ्रम तथा अन्य वातप्रकोपजन्य विकार हो जाते हैं ।

27. 17. Ānāha (? Chronic Intestinal Obstruction)

आमं शकृद्धा निचितं क्रमेण भूयो विबद्धं त्रिगुणानिलेन ।

प्रवर्तमानं न यथास्वमेनं विकारमानाहमुदाहरन्ति ॥ १७ ॥

(सु० उ० ५६. २०/२, २१/१)

The condition in which the undigested food material^{1,2} or the fully formed faeces³ gradually accumulate and later get obstructed due to the abnormal *vāta* resulting in non-propulsion in their normal tract is called *ānāha*.

(S. S. VI. 56. 20/2, 21/1)

1. *Āma*

2. ? Upper G. I. tract obstruction.

3. ? Lower bowel obstruction.

२७. १७. आनाह रोग

जिस व्याधि में आम अथवा पुरीष क्रमशः (धीरे धीरे) संचित होते रहें एवं वायु की विगुणता से और भी अवरुद्ध होकर अपने मार्ग से प्रवर्तित न हों उस व्याधि को आनाह कहते हैं ।

27. 18. Āmaja ānāha (? Upper G. I. Tract Obstruction)

तस्मिन् भवन्त्यामसमुद्धवे तु तृष्णाप्रतिश्यायशिरोविदाहाः ।

आमाशये शूलमथो गुरुत्वं हृत्स्तम्भ उद्गारविघातनं च ॥ १८ ॥

(सु० उ० ५६. २१/२, २२/१)

In the *āmaja* type of *ānāha* thirst, coryza, a burning sensation in the head, colicky pain along with a fullness in the epigastric region, a feeling of tightness in the precordial region and an absence of eructations occur.

(S. S. VI. 56. 21/2, 22/1)

२७. १८. आमाशयज (आमज) आनाह

आमजन्य आनाह में तृष्णा, प्रतिश्याय, शिरोविदाह, आमाशय में शूल, गुरुत्व, हृदय प्रदेश में स्तम्भ तथा उद्गार का विघात आदि लक्षण होते हैं ।

27. 19. Pakvāsāyaja (Purīṣaja) Ānāha

(? Lower Bowel Obstruction)

स्तम्भः कटीपृष्ठपुरीषमूत्रे शूलोऽथ मूर्च्छा शकृतश्च छदिः ।

श्वासश्च पक्वाशयजे भवन्ति तथाऽलसोक्तानि च लक्षणानि ॥ १९ ॥

(सु० उ० ५६. २२/२, २३/१)

The clinical features of *pakvāsāyaja* (*purīṣaja*) *ānāha* are stiffness of the back and the waist, retention of stool and urine, abdominal pain, fainting,

faecal vomiting, dyspnoea and other symptoms of *alasa*¹.

(S. S. VI. 56. 22/2, 23/1)

२७. १६. पक्वाशयज (पुरीषज) आनाह

पक्वाशयज आनाह में कटि एवं पृष्ठ का स्तम्भ, पुरीष एवं मूत्र का अवरोध, शूल, मूर्च्छा, शकृत्-वमन, श्वास तथा अलसक रोग के लक्षण होते हैं ।

27. 20. Incurable Udāvarta

तृष्णादितं परिक्लिष्टं क्षीणं शूलैरभिद्रुतम् ।

शकृद्वमन्तं मतिमानुदावर्तिनमुत्सृजेत् ॥ २० ॥

(सु० उ० ५५. १८)

The patient of *udāvarta* suffering from excessive thirst², restlessness, emaciation, abdominal colics and faecal vomiting should be discarded (from treatment as incurable) by the wise clinician.

(S. S. VI. 55. 18)

२७. २०. असाध्य उदावर्त

अत्यधिक तृष्णा से पीड़ित, बेचैन, क्षीण, शूल से व्यथित तथा शकृत् वमन करता हुआ उदावर्त का रोगी बुद्धिमान चिकित्सक द्वारा त्याग दिया जाना चाहिये । (यह उदावर्त की असाध्य अवस्था है) ।

इति श्रीमाधवकरविरचिते माधवनिदाने उदावर्तानाहनिदानं समाप्तम् ॥२७॥

Thus ends (the twenty-seventh chapter entitled) 'The Diagnosis of *Udāvarta* and *Ānāha*' of Mādhava Nidāna, as compiled by Śrī Mādhavakara.

इस प्रकार श्रीमाधवकर द्वारा सङ्कलित माधव-निदान का उदावर्त और आनाह निदान (नामक सत्ताईसवाँ अध्याय) समाप्त हुआ ।

1. ? Mechanical intestinal obstruction. Ref. M.N. 6. 19, 20.

(page 135).

2. Dehydration.

M. N. 27

SUGGESTED RESEARCH PROBLEMS

1. A comparative investigation into this concept of diseases resulting from the suppression of the natural physiological urges (*udāvarta*) would bring many new historical facts to light (1-16); similar studies on *ānāha* (? chronic intestinal obstruction of two types, viz. upper and lower bowel obstructions) are also indicated (17-19).
 2. Clinical and experimental studies should be planned to establish the identity of the various types of *udāvarta* and *ānāha* mentioned in this chapter.
-

माधवनिदानम्
अष्टाविंशतितमोऽध्यायः

गुल्मनिदानम्
THE DIAGNOSIS OF *GULMA*
(ABDOMINAL SWELLINGS)


CHAPTER TWENTY-EIGHT
MĀDHAVA-NIDĀNA

M. N. 28

SUMMARY

This chapter describes the aetiology, pathogenesis, diagnosis and prognosis of *gulmas* or the various abdominal swellings.

Their aetio-pathogenesis and the five sites of location (1) have been described. The definition (2), types (3) and premonitory symptoms (4) have been given. The general clinical features (5), followed by the specific ones of the *vātika* (6-8), *paittika* (9,10), *kaphaja* (11,12) and *sanniṣṭika* (13) *gulmas* have been discussed. The special clinical features of the *tridoṣaja* (14) and *raktaja* (15,16) *gulmas* have been described separately. The prognostic factors (17-20), especially the fatal ones and the signs of incurability, have also been given.



MAY 23, 1935

SUMMARY

This chapter describes the aetiology, pathogenesis, diagnosis and prognosis of various abdominal swellings.

Then acute phlegmons and the liver abscess location have been described. The diagnosis (1), types (2) and the non-tuberculous symptoms (3) have been given. The general clinical features (4) followed by the special features of the abscess (5-8), namely (9-12), hepatic (13-15) and splenic (16) abscess have been described. The special clinical features of the abscess (14) and cysts (15-16) have been described separately. The prognosis (17-20) especially the fatal ones and the special nature of the abscess have also been given.

अष्टाविंशतितमोऽध्यायः

CHAPTER TWENTY-EIGHT

गुल्मनिदानम्

THE DIAGNOSIS OF *GULMA* (ABDOMINAL SWELLINGS)

28. 1. Aetio-pathogenesis

दुष्टा वातादयोऽत्यर्थं मिथ्याहारविहारतः ।
कुर्वन्ति पञ्चधा गुल्मं कोष्ठान्तग्रन्थिरूपिणम् ।
तस्य पञ्चविधं स्थानं पार्श्वहृन्नाभिवस्तयः ॥ १ ॥

Due to the unsalutary food and (improper) regimen of life, *vāta* and other (i.e. *pitta* and *kapha*) *doṣas* get excessively vitiated and produce five kinds of *gulma* as lumps in the abdominal cavity. Their five sites of location are both flanks, the epigastric, umbilical and vesical regions.

२८. १. कारण एवं सम्प्राप्ति

मिथ्या आहार-विहार के कारण अत्यधिक प्रकुपित हुए वातादि दोष कोष्ठ के अन्दर ग्रन्थि के आकार के पाँच प्रकार के गुल्म उत्पन्न करते हैं । दोनों पार्श्व, हृदय, नाभि एवं वस्ति उनके पाँच स्थान हैं ।

28. 2. Definition

हृन्नाभ्योरन्तरे ग्रन्थिः सञ्चारी यदि वाऽचलः ।
वृत्तश्चयापचयवान् स गुल्म इति कीर्तितः ॥ २ ॥

(सु० उ० ४२.४)

A spherical, mobile or fixed lump, in the space between the heart and the umbilical region, which may increase or decrease in size is known as a *gulma*.

(S. S. VI. 42. 4)

२८. २. परिभाषा

हृदय एवं नाभि के बीच संचारी या अचल एवं बढ़ने या घटने वाली गोल ग्रन्थि को गुल्म कहते हैं ।

28. 3. Types

स व्यस्तैर्जायते दोषैः समस्तैरपि चोच्छ्रितैः ।

पुरुषाणां तथा स्त्रीणां ज्ञेयो रक्तेन चापरः ॥ ३ ॥

(सु० उ० ४२. ७/२, ८/१)

The *gulmas* arise due to the (three) aggravated *doṣas*, singly or in combination, in the human beings; in women an additional (i.e. the fifth) variety due to *rakta* is also known to occur.

(S. S. VI. 42. 7/2, 8/1)

२८. ३. भेद

यह (गुल्म) मनुष्यों के बढ़े हुए (तीन) पृथक्-पृथक् (वात, पित्त तथा कफ) एवं सम्मिलित त्रिदोषों से होते हैं । इनके अतिरिक्त स्त्रियों में (पाँचवीं प्रकार का) रक्तज गुल्म भी होता है ।

28. 4. Premonitory symptoms

उद्गारबाहुल्यपुरीषबन्धतृप्यक्षमत्वान्त्रविकूजनानि ।

आटोप आघ्मानमपक्तिशक्तिरासन्नगुल्मस्य वदन्ति चिह्नम् ॥ ४ ॥

(अ० ह० नि० ११. ६३)

Excessive eructations, constipation, aversion to food, fatigue, mild intestinal gurgling sounds, bor-

borygmi, abdominal distension and poor digestive power : these are the premonitory symptoms of a *gulma*.

(A. H. III. 11. 63)

२८. ४. पूर्वरूप

उद्गार की अधिकता, विबन्ध, भोजन की अनिच्छा, (कार्य करने की) अक्षमता, आन्त्रों में कूजन, आटोप, आध्मान एवं पाचन शक्ति का हास गुल्म के पूर्वरूपावस्था में पाये जाते हैं ।

28. 5. General Clinical Features

अरुचिः कृच्छ्रविण्मूत्रवातताञ्ज्रविकूजनम् ।

आनाहश्चोर्ध्ववातत्वं सर्वगुल्मेषु लक्षयेत् ॥ ५ ॥

Anorexia, difficulty in passing stool, urine and flatus, mild intestinal gurgling sounds, tympanitis and excessive eructations : these are the common clinical features of all the *gulmas*.

२८. ५. सामान्य लक्षण

अरुचि, पुरीष, मूत्र तथा अपान वायु के त्याग करने में कष्ट, आन्त्रकूजन, आनाह एवं उद्गार सभी प्रकार के गुल्मों के लक्षण हैं ।

28. 6-8. Vātika Gulma

रूक्षान्नपानं विषमातिमात्रं विचेष्टनं वेगविनिग्रहश्च ।

शोकोऽभिघातोऽतिमलक्षयश्च निरन्नता चानिलगुल्महेतुः ॥ ६ ॥

यः स्थानसंस्थानरुजां विकल्पं विड्वातसङ्गं गलवक्त्रशोषम् ।

श्यावारुणत्वं शिशिरज्वरं च हृत्कुक्षिपार्श्वसशिरोरुजं च ॥ ७ ॥

करोति जीर्णे त्वधिकं प्रकोपं भुक्ते मृदुत्वं समुपैति यश्च ।

वातात् स गुल्मो न च तत्र रूक्षं कषायतित्तं कटु चोपशेते ॥ ८ ॥

(च० चि० ५. ६-११)

Excessive use of dry (non-fatty) and incompatible food and drinks, undertaking almost impossible tasks, suppression of the natural (evacuatory) urges, grief, trauma, excessive loss of the excreta and fasting are the aetiological factors of a *vātika gulma*.

(In a case of *vātika gulma*) the site, size and shape as well as the pain varies (from time to time)¹.

There is cessation of the passage of faeces and flatus, dryness of the throat and the mouth, blackish or reddish discolouration of the body, fever with rigor and pain in the precordium, flanks, sides, shoulders and the head which gets aggravated when the food has been digested (i. e. on an empty stomach) and is relieved on taking food. This is known as a *vātika gulma* and in this condition, dry (non-fatty), astringent, bitter or pungent food do not suit.

(C. S. VI. 5. 9-11)

२८. ६-८. वातिक गुल्म

रूक्ष एवं विषम अन्न पान का अत्यधिक सेवन, विरुद्ध चेष्टा, वेग-धारण, शोक, अभिघात, पुरीष का अत्यधिक क्षय एवं निराहारता (उपवास आदि) वातिक गुल्म के कारण हैं।

(वातिक गुल्म में) स्थान, संस्थान एवं रुजा का विकल्प होता है (स्थान, आकृति एवं वेदना की प्रकृति परिवर्तित होती रहती है)। अपान वायु एवं पुरीष का अवरोध हो जाता है। कण्ठ एवं मुख की शुष्कता, शरीर का श्याव

1. It may move from the umbilical region to the sides or elsewhere in the abdomen. So also its size may be round, elongated, small or big at different times. The type of pain also is variable, i.e. pricking or splitting and slight or intense.

या अरुण हो जाना, शीत-ज्वर तथा हृदय प्रदेश, कुक्षि, पार्श्व, अंस एवं शिर में वेदना होती है ।

यह (गुल्म) भोजन के जीर्ण होने पर अधिक प्रकुपित तथा भोजन कर लेने पर मृदु हो जाता है । इसे वातिक गुल्म कहते हैं । इसमें रुक्ष, तिक्त, कटु एवं कषाय पदार्थों का सेवन अनुकूल नहीं होता ।

28. 9,10. Paittika Gulma

कट्वस्लतीक्ष्णविदाहिरुक्षक्रोधातिमद्याकंहुताशसेवा ।

आमाभिघातो रुधिरं च दुष्टं पैतस्य गुल्मस्य निमित्तमुक्तम् ॥ ९ ॥

ज्वरः पिपासा वदनाङ्गरागः शूलं महज्जीर्यति भोजने च ।

स्वेदो विदाहो व्रणवच्च गुल्मः स्पर्शासहः पैत्तिकगुल्मरूपम् ॥ १० ॥

(च० चि० ५. १२, १३)

Acrid, sour, spicy and hot, heartburn producing and dry (non-fatty) food, anger, excessive alcoholism, too much exposure to the sun and the fire, improper digestion of food, and trauma leading to vitiation of *rakta*¹ are said to be the causes of a *paittika gulma*.

Fever, thirst, flushing of the face and the body, severe colicky pain when the food is being digested, perspiration and heartburn are the general signs and symptoms of a *paittika gulma*; there is also (a local) inability to tolerate touch² as in (inflammatory and) ulcerative lesions.

(G. S. VI. 5. 12, 13)

1. ? Traumatic haematoma formation.

2. Hyperaesthesia/tenderness.

२८.६,१०. पैत्तिक गुल्म

कटु, अम्ल, तीक्ष्ण, उष्ण, विदाहि और रूक्ष पदार्थों एवं मद्य, आतप तथा अग्नि का अत्यधिक सेवन, क्रोध, आम की उत्पत्ति, अभिघात एवं रक्त का दुष्ट होना पैत्तिक गुल्म के कारण हैं ।

ज्वर, पिपासा, मुख एवं शरीर का रक्तवर्ण होना, भोजन के परिपाक काल में तीव्र शूल, स्वेद, विदाह तथा व्रण के सदृश स्पर्श की असह्यता (आदि) पैत्तिक गुल्म के लक्षण हैं ।

28. 11,12. Kaphaja Gulma

शीतं गुरुस्निग्धमचेष्टनं च सम्पूरणं प्रस्वपनं दिवा च ।

गुल्मस्य हेतुः कफसम्भवस्य सर्वस्तु दुष्टो निचयात्मकस्य ॥११॥

स्तैमित्यशीतज्वरगात्रसादहृल्लासकासारुचिगौरवाणि ।

शैत्यं खलपा कठिनोन्नतत्वं गुल्मस्य रूपाणि कफात्मकस्य ॥१२॥

(च० चि० ५. १४, १५)

Indulgence in cold, heavy and fatty food, inactivity, heavy meals and day sleep are the causes of a *kaphaja gulma*. The collective aetiological factors of (all) the three humours produce a *sannipatika gulma*.

A sensation as if covered with wet clothes, fever with rigor, tiredness of the limbs, nausea, cough, anorexia, a feeling of heaviness, or of chill and mild pain are the signs and symptoms of a *kaphaja gulma*. This (*gulma*, abdominal swelling) is hard and very prominent.

(C. S. VI. 5. 14, 15)

२८. ११, १२. श्लैष्मिक गुल्म

शीत, गुरु एवं स्निग्ध पदार्थों का सेवन, व्यायाम न करना, भर पेट भोजन करना एवं दिवा स्वप्न (आदि) श्लैष्मिक गुल्म के कारण हैं । सभी दोषों के प्रकोपक कारण एक साथ मिल कर सान्निपातिक गुल्म के उत्पादक होते हैं ।

स्तैमित्य (अङ्गों का गीलापन), शीत-ज्वर, अङ्ग-प्रसुप्तता, मिचली आना, कास, अरुचि, भारीपन, शीतानुभूति, कठोरता, उन्नतता तथा अल्प वेदना कफज गुल्म के लक्षण हैं ।

28. 13. Gulmas due to dual combinations of humours¹

निमित्तरूपाण्युपलभ्य गुल्मे द्विदोषजे दोषवलावलं च ।
व्यामिश्रलङ्घनपरांश्च गुल्मांस्त्रीनादिशेदौषधकल्पनार्थम् ॥१३॥
(च० चि० ५. १६)

Taking into account the aetiological factors and the signs and symptoms, three additional types of *gulmas* caused by the dual combinations of the humours should be diagnosed according to the preponderance or weakness of the *doṣa* concerned in order to select the proper therapy for all the three types.

(C. S. VI. 5. 16)

२८. १३. द्वन्द्वज गुल्म

हेतु, लक्षण तथा दोषों के बलावल के आधार पर मिश्रित लक्षणों वाले तीन अतिरिक्त द्विदोषज गुल्मों का भी निर्देश औषधि कल्पना के लिए करना चाहिए ।

28. 14. Gulma due to vitiation of all humours

महारुजं दाहपरीतमश्मवद् घनोन्नतं शीघ्रविदाहि दाहणम् ।
मनःशरीराग्निबलापहारिणं त्रिदोषजं गुल्ममसाध्यमादिशेत् ॥१४॥
(च० चि० ५. १७)

A stony hard and prominent swelling, associated with an intense pain and a burning sensation all

1. *Vāta-pitta*, *Vāta-kapha* and *Pitta-kapha*.

over the body and which suppurates quickly, is very distressing; it is called a *tridoṣaja gulma* and it destroys the functional capacity of the psyche and the soma as well as of the digestive power and the physical strength. It is considered incurable.

(C. S. VI. 5. 17)

२८. १४. सान्निपातिक गुल्म

त्रिदोषज गुल्म अत्यधिक पीड़ा एवं जलन से युक्त, पत्थर के सदृश कठिन तथा उन्नत परन्तु शीघ्र पाक वाला और भयंकर होता है। यह मन, शरीर, अग्नि एवं बल को क्षीण करने वाला तथा असाध्य होता है।

28. 15, 16. Raktaja Gulma

नवप्रसूताऽहितभोजना या चामगर्भं विसृजेद्वतौ वा ।

वायुर्हि तस्याः परिगृह्य रक्तं करोति गुल्मं स्रजं सदाहम् ।

पैतस्य लिङ्गेन समानलिङ्गं विशेषणं चाप्यपरं निबोध ॥१५॥

(सु० उ० ४२. १३/२, १४)

यः स्पन्दते पिण्डित एव नाङ्गैश्चिरात्सशूलः समगर्भलिङ्गः ।

स रौधिरः स्त्रीभव एव गुल्मो मासे व्यतीते दशमे चिकित्स्यः ॥१६॥

(च० चि० ५. १६)

Indulgence in unsalutary diet by women during early puerperium, during the period after an abortion of early pregnancy or during the menses leads to vitiation of *vāyu* which having afflicted the (menstrual) blood produces a *gulma* associated with a burning sensation and pain; it has the clinical features similar to those of a *paittika gulma*. However, their specific features are as follows :

(S. S. VI. 42. 13/2, 14)

This *rakta gulma*, which occurs only in women, has the clinical features like those of a pregnancy

except that in this condition though quickening is present, it gives a feeling of just a mass instead of different body parts of the foetus. The intervals (between quickenings) are long; it (the quickening) is also associated with pain. It (the *rakta gulma*) should (only) be treated after the tenth month.

(C. S. VI. 5, 19)

२८. १५, १६. रक्तज गुल्म

नवीन प्रसव के बाद, गर्भस्त्राव के पश्चात् अथवा ऋतुकाल के समय में जो स्त्री अहित भोजन का सेवन करती है उसमें प्रकुपित वायु रक्त (मासिक स्त्राव) को लेकर वेदना एवं दाह युक्त गुल्म को उत्पन्न कर देती है। इसके लक्षण पैत्तिक गुल्म के सदृश होते हैं। अन्य विशिष्ट लक्षणों को सुनें।

यह केवल स्त्रियों में ही होनेवाला रक्तज गुल्म अङ्गों के बिना, पिण्डित रूप में, देर देर से तथा शूल के साथ स्पन्दन करता है। इसके अतिरिक्त अन्य लक्षण गर्भ के समान ही होते हैं। दसवाँ महीना बीतने पर ही इसकी चिकित्सा करनी चाहिए।

28. 17-20. Fatal Prognostic Features

सञ्चितः क्रमशो गुल्मो महावास्तुपरिग्रहः ।

कृतमूलः सिरानद्धो यदा कूर्म इवोत्थितः ॥१७॥

दौर्बल्यारुचिहृल्लासकासच्छर्दरतिज्वरैः ।

तृष्णातन्द्राप्रतिश्यायैर्युज्यते स न सिध्यति ॥१८॥

(च० चि० ५. १६६, १७०)

गृहीत्वा सज्वरं श्वासच्छर्दतीसारपीडितम् ।

हृन्नाभिहस्तपादेषु शोथः कर्षति गुल्मिनम् ॥१९॥

(च० चि० ५. १७१)

श्वासः शूलं पिपासाऽन्नविद्वेषो ग्रन्थिमूढता ।

जायते दुर्बलत्वं च गुल्मिनो मरणाय वै ॥२०॥

(सु० सु० ३३. २१)

17,18. A Malignant Tumour

The patient with an abdominal swelling (*gulma*) which goes on increasing¹ in size gradually till it has involved a very wide area, has become fixed² at its base, shows venous prominence³, is protuberant⁴ like (the back of) a tortoise, as well as has (developed the complications⁵ like) weakness, anorexia, nausea, cough, vomiting, restlessness, fever, excessive thirst, drowsiness and common cold is not likely to get cured.

(C. S. VI. 5. 169, 170)

19. Association with severe complications

A patient suffering from a *gulma* who has fever, dyspnoea, vomiting, diarrhoea, oedema over the precordium, the umbilical region and both the upper and the lower extremities should be considered incurable.

(C. S. VI. 5. 171)

20. Bursting of an intra-abdominal mass

The (onset of such) complications as dyspnoea, abdominal colics, excessive thirst, aversion to food, sudden disappearance⁶ of the *gulma* and weakness indicate an impending death.

(S. S. I. 33. 21)

२८. १७-२०. असाध्य गुल्म के लक्षण

१७, १८. जो गुल्म क्रमशः बढ़ता हुआ काफी स्थान को आच्छादित कर ले, जिसने मूल पकड़ लिया हो, सिराओं से आच्छादित एवं कच्छप सदृश उठा हुआ हो, जिसमें रोगी दुर्बलता, अरुचि, हृत्तास, कास, छर्दि, वेचैनी, ज्वर, तृष्णा, तन्द्रा तथा प्रतिश्याय से ग्रसित हो वह गुल्म असाध्य होता है।

1-5. Signs of malignancy.

6. Bursting of an intra-abdominal cystic mass.

१६. जो गुल्म-रोगी ज्वर, श्वास, वमन एवं अतिसार से पीड़ित हो तथा जिसके हृदय एवं नाभि-प्रदेश और हाथ-पैरों में शोथ हो वह असाध्य है ।

२०. श्वास, शूल, पिपासा, अन्न-विद्वेष, गुल्म की ग्रन्थि का लुप्त हो जाना एवं दुर्बलता गुल्म रोगी के मृत्यु सूचक लक्षण हैं ।

इति श्रीमाधवकरविरचिते माधवनिदाने गुल्मनिदानम् समाप्तम् ॥ २८ ॥

Thus ends (the twenty-eighth chapter entitled)
'The Diagnosis of the *Gulma* (Abdominal Swellings)'
of Mādhava-Nidāna, as compiled by Śrī Mādhava-
kara.

इस प्रकार श्रीमाधवकर द्वारा सङ्कलित माधव-निदान का
गुल्मनिदान (नामक अट्ठाईसवाँ अध्याय) समाप्त हुआ ।

M. N. 28

SUGGESTED RESEARCH PROBLEMS

1. A comparative and historical study on the various concepts of *gulmas* as outlined in this chapter would be interesting.
 2. A clinical study could be planned to identify the various conditions mentioned in this chapter.
-

माधवनिदानम्
एकोनत्रिंशत्तमोऽध्यायः

हृद्रोगनिदानम्

THE DIAGNOSIS OF THE HEART DISEASES

CHAPTER TWENTY-NINE
MĀDHAVA-NIDĀNA

M. N. 29

SUMMARY

This chapter describes the aetio-pathogenesis and clinical features of the heart diseases.

Aetiological factors (1) have been mentioned which lead to the vitiation of *doṣas* impairing the cardiac function (2). These give rise to five types of heart diseases (3-6).

Clinical features of the five types of heart diseases, viz. *vātika* (3), *pañtika* (4), *kaphaja* (5), *tridoṣaja* (6/1a) and *kṛmija* (6/1b, 6/2, 6/3) have been given.

The chapter ends by mentioning their complications (7).

SUMMARY

This chapter describes the anatomy and clinical features of the heart and lungs.

Anatomical factors (1) have been mentioned which lead to the various types of heart disease. These give rise to the various clinical features of the heart disease.

Clinical features of the two types of heart disease are given (2) and the various types of heart disease are given (3).

The chapter ends by mentioning the various conditions (4).

एकोनत्रिंशत्तमोऽध्यायः

CHAPTER TWENTY-NINE

हृद्रोगनिदानम्

THE DIAGNOSIS OF THE HEART DISEASES

29. 1. Aetiological Factors

अत्युष्णगुर्वन्नकषायतिक्तश्रमाभिघाताध्यशनप्रसङ्गैः ।

संचिन्तनैर्वेगविधारणैश्च हृदामयः पञ्चविधः प्रदिष्टः ॥ १ ॥

Eating excessively hot and heavy food, use of astringent and bitter substances, doing a lot of physical exercise¹, trauma, habitually taking food before the previous one has been digested², constant worrying³ and suppression of the natural urges may give rise to heart diseases; these are of five types.

२९. १. कारण

अत्यन्त उष्ण एवं गुरु अन्न ग्रहण करने तथा कषाय और तिक्त द्रव्यों के सेवन से एवं श्रम, चोट, सतत अध्यशन, अधिक चिन्तन और वेगों को रोकने से उत्पन्न हृदय रोग पाँच प्रकार का होता है ।

1. Physical strain.

2. Frequent overeating.

3. Mental strain.

DOṢIKA HEART DISEASES¹ (29. 2-6/1a)

29. 2. Pathogenesis

दूषयित्वा रसं दोषा विगुणा हृदयं गताः ।

हृदि बाधां प्रकुर्वन्ति हृद्रोगं तं प्रचक्षते ॥ २ ॥

(सु० उ० ४३. ४)

Doṣas vitiated (by their aetiological factors) produce some abnormality of *rasa*² which afflicts the heart and impairs its functions; the condition is known as the heart³ disease.

(S. S. VI. 43. 4)

२६. २. सम्प्राप्ति

विकृत हुये दोष हृदय में जाकर रस को दूषित कर हृदय में विकार उत्पन्न कर देते हैं । इसे हृद्रोग कहा जाता है ।

1. These clinical features are only the specific differentiating features of the involvement of the particular *doṣa* and are associated with the **general / common clinical picture** of the heart disease described by Caraka as follows :

वैदर्भ्यमूर्च्छाज्वरकासहृत्काश्वासास्यवैरस्यतृषाप्रमोहाः ।

छर्दिः कफोत्प्लेशश्चोऽरुचिश्च हृद्रोगजाः स्युर्विविधास्तथाऽन्ये ॥

(च० चि० २६. ७८)

“Discolouration (e.g. pallor, cyanosis, flushing), syncope, fever, cough, dyspnoea, hiccough, distaste, thirst, drowsiness, vomiting, nausea and loss of appetite are the common (general) clinical features of the heart diseases along with the other (differentiating) features (which may be according to the predominance of *doṣa*/*doṣas* concerned).”

(C. S. VI. 26. 78)

2. ? Plasma.
3. Includes the vessels here.

29. 3. Vātika heart disease

आयम्यते मास्तजे हृदयं तुद्यते तथा ।

निर्मथ्यते दीर्यते च स्फोटयते पाटयतेऽपि च ॥ ३ ॥

(सु० उ० ४३. ६)

A stretching sensation is felt over the heart in the *vātika* (heart) disease and is accompanied with pricking, churning, tearing, bursting and splitting types of pain.

(S. S. VI. 43. 6)

२९. ३. वातिक हृदय रोग

वातजन्य हृद्रोग में हृदय में खिंचाव अनुभव होता है; और सुई चुभने, मथे जाने, विदीर्ण होने, फूटने अथवा कट जाने के समान पीड़ा का अनुभव होता है ।

29. 4. Paittika heart disease

तृष्णोष्मादाहचोषाः स्युः पैत्तिके हृदयक्लमः ।

धूमायनं च मूर्च्छा च स्वेदः शोषो मुखस्य च ॥ ४ ॥

(सु० उ० ४३. ७)

The heart disease of *pitta* origin presents with thirst, warmth, burning and sucking sensations, a feeling of fatigue in the heart, smoky eructations, fainting, perspiration and dryness of the mouth.

(S. S. VI. 43. 7)

२९. ४. पैत्तिक हृदय रोग

प्यास, ऊष्मा, दाह, चोष, हृदयक्लम, धुवाँ सा निकलने की प्रतीति, मूर्च्छा, पसीना आना और मुख का सूखना पित्तज हृद्रोग के लक्षण हैं ।

29. 5. Kaphaja heart disease

गौरवं कफसंस्त्रावोऽरुचिः स्तम्भोऽग्निमार्दवम् ।

माधुर्यमपि चास्यस्य बलासावतते हृदि ॥ ५ ॥

(सु० उ० ४३. ८)

When *kapha* pervades the heart a feeling of heaviness, (excessive) secretion of *kapha*, anorexia, a sense of constriction (in the precordium), lassitude, impaired digestive fire and a sweetish taste in the mouth (are the manifest features).

(S. S. VI. 43. 8)

२६. ५. श्लैष्मिक हृदय रोग

जब हृदय कफ दोष से प्रभावित होता है तो शरीर में भारीपन, कफ का छाव, अरुचि, हृदय में जकड़न, अग्निमांद्य तथा मुख का स्वाद मधुर होना ये लक्षण उत्पन्न होते हैं ।

29. 6/1a. Tridoṣaja heart disease

विद्यात्त्रिदोषं त्वपि सर्वलिङ्गं—

(च० चि० २८. ८०/२अ)

When there is involvement of all the three *doṣas* the cardiac disease presents mixed features.

(C. S. VI. 28. 80/2a)

२६. ६/१अ. सान्निपातिक हृद्रोग

त्रिदोषज हृदय रोग में (तीनों दोषों के) सभी लक्षण पाये जाते हैं ।

29. 6/1b, 6/2, 6/3. Kṛmija heart disease

—तीव्रार्तितोदं क्रिमिजं सकण्डम् ।

(च० चि० २८. ८०/२ब)

उत्क्लेदः घ्रीवनं तोदः शूलं हृल्लासकस्तमः ।

अरुचिः श्यावनेत्रत्वं शोथश्च क्रिमिजे भवेत् ॥ ६ ॥

(सु० उ० ४३. ६)

In the *kṛmija* heart disease, there is severe distress and a pricking type of pain (in the precordial region), an itching sensation, salivation (welling up of watery discharge in the mouth), spitting, pricking

sensation, colicky pain, nausea, darkness before the eyes, anorexia, blackish discolouration¹ of the eyes and oedema.

(C. S. VI. 28. 80/2b)

(S. S. VI. 43. 9)

२६. ६/१ब, ६/२, ६/३. कृमिज हृद्रोग

कृमिज हृद्रोग में तीव्र एवं सुई चुभने जैसी व्यथा, खुजली, उत्क्लेद, थूकने की प्रवृत्ति, तोद, शूल, जी मिचलाना, आँखों के आगे अँधेरा छा जाना, अरुचि, आँखों (के नीचे के भाग) में कालापन एवं शोथ के लक्षण होते हैं।

29. 7. Complications of heart diseases

क्लमः सादो भ्रमः शोषो ज्ञेयास्तेषामुपद्रवाः ।

क्रिमिजे क्रिमिजातीनां श्लैष्मिकाणां च ये मताः ॥ ७ ॥

(सु० उ० ४३. १०)

Tiredness, depression, giddiness and emaciation are the complications of the heart diseases.

In the *kṛmija* heart disease, the complications are like those produced by worms of the *ślaiṣmika* origin.

(S. S. VI. 43. 10)

२६. ७. हृदय रोग के उपद्रव

क्लम (मानसिक थकावट), अवसाद, भ्रम तथा शोष हृदय रोग के उपद्रव हैं। कफज कृमियों के उपद्रव ही कृमिज हृद्रोग में भी होते हैं।

इति श्रीमाधवकरविरचिते माधवनिदाने हृद्रोगनिदानम् समाप्तम् ॥२६॥

Thus ends (the twenty-ninth chapter entitled) 'The Diagnosis of the Heart Diseases' of Mādhava Nidāna, as compiled by Śrī Mādhavakara.

इस प्रकार श्रीमाधवकर द्वारा सङ्कलित माधव-निदान का 'हृदय रोग निदान' (नामक उन्तीसवाँ अध्याय) समाप्त हुआ।

M. N. 29

SUGGESTED RESEARCH PROBLEMS

1. A historical and comparative study on the concepts of aetiological factors, pathogenesis, clinical features and the complications of the heart diseases as outlined in this chapter would be interesting.
 2. A clinical study to evaluate these heart diseases and their complications in terms of modern clinical terminology is indicated.
-

माधवनिदानम्

त्रिंशत्तमोऽध्यायः

सूत्रकृच्छ्रनिदानम्

THE DIAGNOSIS OF *MŪTRAKR̥CCHRA* (DYSURIA)

CHAPTER THIRTY

MĀDHAVA-NIDĀNA

महाराष्ट्र

महाराष्ट्र

महाराष्ट्र

THE UNIVERSITY OF MUMBAI (FORMERLY THE UNIVERSITY OF BOMBAY)

CHARTERED

MADRAS

M. N. 30

SUMMARY

This chapter describes the aetiopathogenesis and clinical features of the various types of dysuria.

The aetiopathogenesis of dysurias has been described (1,2) followed by the clinical features of the *doṣika* types (3,4).

Various other types of dysuria such as those due to a foreign body or trauma (5,6/1), faecal retention (6/2,7/1), urinary calculi (7/2), spermaturia (8) and those due to gravel (crystalluria) (9-12) have also been discussed.

त्रिशत्तमोऽध्यायः

CHAPTER THIRTY

मूत्रकृच्छ्रनिदानम्

THE DIAGNOSIS OF *MŪTRAKṚCCHRA*
(DYSURIA)

30. 1,2. Aetiopathogenesis

व्यायामतीक्ष्णौषधरुक्षमद्यप्रसङ्गनित्यद्रुतपृष्ठयानात् ।

आनूपमांसाध्यशनादजीर्णात्स्युर्मूत्रकृच्छ्राणि नृणां तथाऽष्टौ ॥ १ ॥

पृथङ्मलाः स्वैः कुपिता निदानैः सर्वेऽथवा कोपमुपेत्य बस्तौ ।

मूत्रस्य मार्गं परिपीडयन्ति यदा तदा मूत्रयतीह कृच्छ्रात् ॥ २ ॥

(च० चि० २६. ३२, ३३)

Excessive physical exercise, irritant drugs, dry (non-fatty) food, excessive drinking and daily sexual intercourse, riding on the back of fast moving animals (or conveyances) daily, consumption of meat of swampy animals, eating before the previous meal has been digested and indigestion lead to the eight types of dysuria in the human beings.

When the *doṣas* individually or combined together get vitiated on account of their specific exciting factors (as above) and reach the bladder, they afflict the urinary passage; as a result, the patient passes urine with difficulty.

(C. S. VI, 26. 32, 33)

३०. १, २. हेतु एवं सम्प्राप्ति

अत्यधिक व्यायाम, तीक्ष्ण औषध, रुक्ष आहार, मद्यपान की आदत, नित्य स्त्री-प्रसङ्ग, तेज चलनेवाले यान पर नित्य सवारी, आनूप-मांस सेवन, अध्यशन एवं अजीर्ण आदि से मनुष्यों में आठ प्रकार के मूत्रकृच्छ्र उत्पन्न हो जाते हैं ।

जब दोष अपने-अपने प्रकोपक हेतुओं के कारण प्रकुपित होकर अलग-अलग अथवा एक साथ मिल कर वस्ति में पहुँच कर मूत्र मार्ग में पीड़न उत्पन्न करते हैं तब मूत्र-त्याग करते समय रोगी को कष्ट होता है ।

30, 3, 4. Clinical features of Doṣika Dysurias

तीव्रार्तिरुग्वङ्क्षणवस्तिमेढ्रे स्वल्पं मुहुर्मूत्रयतीह वातात् ।
पीतं सरक्तं सरुजं सदाहं कृच्छ्रं मुहुर्मूत्रयतीह पित्तात् ॥ ३ ॥
वस्तेः सलिङ्गस्य गुदत्वशोथौ मूत्रं सपिच्छं कफमूत्रकृच्छ्रे ।
सर्वाणि रूपाणि तु सन्निपाताद्भवन्ति तत्कृच्छ्रतमं हि कृच्छ्रम् ॥ ४ ॥

(च० चि० २६. ३४, ३५)

When dysuria is due to *vāta*, there is severe discomfort and pain in the inguinal, vesical and penile regions and the patient passes urine in small quantities again and again.

In dysuria due to *pitta*, the patient passes yellow urine with blood again and again and with difficulty, pain and burning sensation.

In dysuria due to *kapha*, there is a swelling and heaviness in the vesical and penile regions and the urine is slimy.

Dysuria due to the combined (three) *doṣas* presents the clinical features of (dysuria due to) all the three *doṣas*; it is the most difficult to cure.

(C. S. VI. 26. 34, 35)

३०. ३,४. दोषज मूत्रकृच्छ्र

वातज मूत्रकृच्छ्र में वंक्षण, वस्ति एवं मेढू में भयंकर वेदना होती है एवं अल्प-अल्प तथा बार-बार मूत्र-त्याग होता है ।

पैत्तिक मूत्रकृच्छ्र में मूत्र पीला और रक्तमिश्रित होता है एवं मूत्र-त्याग बार-बार कठिनता से, दाह तथा वेदना के साथ होता है ।

कफज मूत्रकृच्छ्र में वस्ति एवं लिङ्ग में गुरुता एवं शोथ तथा मूत्र पिच्छिल होता है ।

सन्निपातज मूत्रकृच्छ्र में सभी प्रकार के लक्षण होते हैं एवं यह सभी मूत्र-कृच्छ्रों में कृच्छ्रतम होता है ।

30. 5,6/1. Dysuria due to a foreign body or trauma

मूत्रवाहिषु शल्येन क्षतेष्वभिहतेषु वा ।

मूत्रकृच्छ्रं तदाघाताज्जायते भृशदारुणम् ॥ ५ ॥

वातकृच्छ्रेण तुल्यानि तस्य लिङ्गानि निर्दिशेत् ।

(सु० उ० ५६. ८, ९/१ पा०)

When the urine-carrying channels get wounded by a foreign body or any other trauma, this injury gives rise to a very severe type of dysuria; its clinical features are similar to those of *vātaja* dysuria.

(Var. S. S. VI. 59. 8, 9/1)

३०. ५,६/१. शल्यज एवं अभिघातज मूत्रकृच्छ्र

मूत्रवह स्त्रोतों में शल्य या आघात से क्षत हो जाने के कारण आघातजन्य अत्यन्त भयंकर मूत्रकृच्छ्र उत्पन्न होता है । इसके लक्षण वातज मूत्रकृच्छ्र के सदृश ही होते हैं ।

30. 6/2,7/1. Dysuria due to Faecal Retention

शकृतस्तु प्रतीघाताद्वायुर्विगुणतां गतः ॥ ६ ॥

आध्मानं वातशूलं च मूत्रसङ्गं करोति च ।

(सु० उ० ५६. ६/२, १०/१)

Due to the faecal retention, movement of the (*apāna*) *vāyu* gets reversed and produces tympanitis, *vātaja* abdominal colic and urinary retention.

(S. S. VI. 59. 9/2, 10/1)

३०. ६/२, ७/१. शकृद्विघातज मूत्रकृच्छ्र

मल के अवरुद्ध होने से वायु विगुण होकर आध्मान, वातिक शूल एवं मत्रसङ्ग उत्पन्न कर देता है ।

30. 7/2. Dysuria due to Urinary Calculi

अश्मरीहेतु तत्पूर्वं मूत्रकृच्छ्रमुदाहरेत् ॥ ७ ॥

(सु० उ० ५६. १०/२ पा०)

When it is preceded by a stone (in the bladder) the dysuria should be understood to be due to the same (urolithiasis¹).

(Var. S. S. VI. 59. 10/2)

३०. ७/२. अश्मरीजन्य मूत्रकृच्छ्र

अश्मरी के कारण होनेवाला अश्मरीजन्य मूत्रकृच्छ्र कहा जाता है ।

30. 8. Dysuria with Spermaturia

शुक्रे दोषैरुपहते मूत्रमार्गे विधाविते ।

सशुक्रं मूत्रयेत्कृच्छ्राद्वस्तिमेहनशूलवान् ॥ ८ ॥

When semen, afflicted by the *doṣas*, reaches the urinary channel, the patient passes semen mixed urine with difficulty along with pain in the vesical and penile regions.

1. M. N. 32 and S. S. II. 3.

३०.८. शुक्रज मूत्रकृच्छ्र

जब (प्रकुपित) दोषों से आक्रान्त शुक्र मूत्र मार्ग में पहुँचता है तब रोगी बस्ति एवं मेदू में शूल के साथ शुक्रमिश्रित मूत्र कष्ट पूर्वक त्याग करता है ।

30. 9-12. Dysuria due to Gravel

अश्मरी शर्करा चैव तुल्यसम्भवलक्षणे ।

विशेषणं शर्करायाः शृणु कीर्तयतो मम ॥ ९ ॥

पच्यमानाऽश्मरी पित्ताच्छोष्यमाणा च वायुना ।

विमुक्तकफसन्धाना क्षरन्ती शर्करा मता ॥ १० ॥

हृत्पीडा वेपथुः शूलं कुक्षावग्निश्च दुर्बलः ।

तथा भवति मूर्च्छा च मूत्रकृच्छ्रं च दाहणम् ॥ ११ ॥

मूत्रवेगनिरस्ताभिः प्रशमं याति वेदना ।

यावदस्याः पुनर्नैति गुडिका स्रोतसो मुखम् ॥ १२ ॥

(सु० उ० ५६. ११-१४)

The aetiopathogenesis and clinical features of the vesical calculi and urinary gravel are similar, in general; now, please listen to the specific ones of the gravel hereafter being described by me. When an *aśmari* (a urinary calculus) undergoes a transformation due to *pitta*, further gets dried up by *vāta* and finally when the cementing *kapha* gets worn out, it disintegrates and is passed (with urine); these are called *śarkarā* (crystalluria, urinary gravel).

Precordial pain, rigor, colicky pain in the flanks¹, impaired digestive power, fainting and severe dysuria are caused by them (gravel). When they (the gravel)

1. Renal / ureteric colic.

are passed with the flow of urine, pain subsides and this period of remission lasts as long as another gravel does not obstruct the urinary passage.

(S. S. VI. 59. 11-14)

३०.६-१२. शर्कराजन्य मूत्रकृच्छ्र

अश्मरी एवं शर्करा के निदान एवं लक्षण समान होते हैं । अब मेरे द्वारा शर्करा के विशिष्ट लक्षणों को सुनें ।

अश्मरी ही पित्त के द्वारा पच्यमान, वायु के द्वारा शुष्क तथा कफ के सम्बन्ध से मुक्त हो जाने के कारण विघटित हो जाती है । इसी को शर्करा कहते हैं ।

इस अवस्था में हृदय-प्रदेश में पीड़ा, कम्प, कुक्षि-शूल, अग्नि-दौर्बल्य, मूर्च्छा एवं तीव्र मूत्रकृच्छ्र होता है । मूत्र-वेग के साथ शर्करा निकल जाने पर तब तक वेदना शान्त रहती है जब तक पुनः गुडिका (शर्करा का बड़ा कण) आकर मूत्रवह स्रोतस के मुख का अवरोध न कर दे ।

इति श्रीमाधवकरविरचिते माधवनिदाने मूत्रकृच्छ्रनिदानम् समाप्तम् ॥३०॥

Thus ends (the thirtieth chapter entitled) 'The Diagnosis of *Mūtrakṛcchra* (Dysuria)' of Mādhava-Nidāna as compiled by Śrī Mādhavakara.

इस प्रकार श्रीमाधवकर द्वारा सङ्कलित माधव-निदान का मूत्रकृच्छ्र-निदान (नामक तीसवाँ अध्याय) समाप्त हुआ ।

M. N. 30

SUGGESTED RESEARCH PROBLEMS

1. A historical and comparative study on the concepts of dysuria as outlined in this chapter would be interesting.
 2. A study to interpret the various types of dysuria in terms of modern clinical terminology is indicated.
-

माधवनिदानम्

एकत्रिंशत्तमोऽध्यायः

मूत्राघातनिदानम्

DIAGNOSIS OF THE OBSTRUCTIVE UROPATHY

CHAPTER THIRTY-ONE

MĀDHAVA-NIDĀNA

THE

INDIAN

THE

DIAGNOSIS OF THE OBSTRUCTIVE PROSTATE

BY

MADHAVAN N. N.

1919

M. N. 31

SUMMARY

It deals with the following 13 varieties of obstructive uropathy.

1. *Vātakuṇḍalikā* (Spasmodic painful dysuria with ? lower urinary tract inflammation) (2, 3).
2. *Aṣṭhīlā* (Enlarged prostate) (4).
3. *Vātabastī* (Bladder outlet obstruction with retention of urine) (5, 6).
4. *Mūtrātīta* (Temporary bladder atonia) (7).
5. *Mūtrajāṭhara* (Bladder outlet obstruction + ? reflex paralytic ileus) (8, 9).
6. *Mūtrotsaṅga* (Urethral obstruction, with or without infection) (10, 11).
7. *Mūtrakṣaya* (Suppression of urine, oliguria) (12).
8. *Mūtragranthī* (Enlarged middle lobe of the prostate or a tumour of the urinary bladder near the internal urinary meatus) (13).
9. *Mūtraśukra* (Spermaturia) (14, 15/1).
10. *Uṣṇavāta* (? Acute cysto-urethritis, probably gonorrhoeal) (15/2-17/1).
11. *Mūtrasāda* (? Chyluria, with or without haematuria, and with infection) (17/2-19/1).
12. *Viḍvighāta* (Rectovesical or rectourethral fistula) (19/2, 20).
13. *Bastikuṇḍala* (? Acute cystitis with retention of urine and overflow incontinence) (21-26).

SUMMARY

1. The following is a summary of the results of the investigation.
2. The results of the investigation are as follows:
3. The results of the investigation are as follows:
4. The results of the investigation are as follows:
5. The results of the investigation are as follows:
6. The results of the investigation are as follows:
7. The results of the investigation are as follows:
8. The results of the investigation are as follows:
9. The results of the investigation are as follows:
10. The results of the investigation are as follows:
11. The results of the investigation are as follows:
12. The results of the investigation are as follows:
13. The results of the investigation are as follows:
14. The results of the investigation are as follows:
15. The results of the investigation are as follows:
16. The results of the investigation are as follows:
17. The results of the investigation are as follows:
18. The results of the investigation are as follows:
19. The results of the investigation are as follows:
20. The results of the investigation are as follows:

एकत्रिंशत्तमोऽध्यायः

CHAPTER THIRTY-ONE

मूत्राघातनिदानम्

THE DIAGNOSIS OF *MŪTRĀGHĀTA*
(OBSTRUCTIVE UROPATHY)

31. 1. Introduction

जायन्ते कुपितैर्दोषैर्मूत्राघातास्त्रयोदश ।

प्रायो मूत्रविघाताद्यैर्वातकुण्डलिकादयः ॥ १ ॥

Generally due to the suppression of (the urge to pass) urine, etc. the *doṣas* become aggravated and produce thirteen varieties of obstructive uropathy, as *vātakuṇḍalikā*, etc.

३१. १. संख्या सम्प्राप्ति

प्रायः मूत्र आदि के वेग को रोकने से प्रकुपित हुए दोष वातकुण्डलिका आदि तेरह प्रकार के मूत्राघातों को उत्पन्न करते हैं ।

31. 2,3. *Vātakuṇḍalikā*¹

रौक्ष्याद्वेगविघाताद्वा वायुर्बस्ती सवेदनः ।

मूत्रमाविश्य चरति विगुणः कुण्डलीकृतः ॥ २ ॥

मूत्रमल्पाल्पमथवा सरुजं संप्रवर्तते ।

वातकुण्डलिकां तां तु व्याधि विद्यात्सुदारुणम् ॥ ३ ॥

(सु० उ० ५८. ५, ६ पा०)

-
1. Spasmodic painful dysuria, probably with inflammation of the lower urinary tract.

Due to (an excessive intake of) dry food or suppression of the natural (evacuatory) urges, *vāyu* located in the bladder, gets vitiated and getting mixed up with the urine moves about (within the bladder) like a whirl producing pain. The patient either passes urine little by little or the urine dribbles with pain. The condition is known as *vātakunḍalikā* which is a very serious disease.

(Var. S. S. VI. 58. 5, 6)

३१.२,३. वातकुण्डलिका

रुसता से अथवा वेगों को धारण करने से प्रकुपित हुआ वस्तिगत वायु मूत्र के साथ मिल कर वेदना के सहित कुण्डलाकार रूप में सञ्चार करता है। इसमें मूत्र थोड़ा-थोड़ा अथवा वेदना के साथ निकलता है। इस दारुण व्याधि को 'वातकुण्डलिका' कहते हैं।

31. 4. Aṣṭhīlā (Enlarged prostate)

आध्मापयन्वस्तिगुदं रुद्ध्वा वायुश्चलोल्लताम् ।

कुर्यात्तीव्रातिमष्टीलां मूत्रविण्मार्गरोधिनीम् ॥ ४ ॥

(Vitiated) *vāyu* obstructs the bladder and the rectal (outlet) regions producing (suprapubic) distension and *aṣṭhīlā*, a mobile, elevated and an intensely painful (glandular) swelling which obstructs the passages of urine and faeces.

३१.४. अष्टीला

(प्रकुपित) वायु वस्ति एवं गुदा मार्ग को अवरुद्ध कर आध्मान एवं एक चल, उन्नत और तीव्र वेदना युक्त अष्टीला (ग्रन्थि) को उत्पन्न करता है; यह मूत्र और मल के मार्ग का अवरोध करता है।

31. 5,6. Vātabasti¹

वेगं विधारयेद्यस्तु मूत्रस्याकुशलो नरः ।

निरुणद्धि मुखं तस्य बस्तेर्बस्तिगतोऽनिलः ॥ ५ ॥

मूत्रसङ्गो भवेत्तेन बस्तिकुक्षिनिपीडितः ।

वातबस्तिः स विज्ञेयो व्याधिः कृच्छ्रप्रसाधनः ॥ ६ ॥

(सु० उ० ५८. ६, १०)

When an unwise person suppresses the urge of micturition *vāyu* in the bladder obstructs the vesical outlet leading to retention of urine along with pain in the bladder and the abdomen. This condition is known as *vātabasti* and is curable with difficulty.

(S. S. VI. 58. 9, 10)

३१. ५, ६. वातबस्ति

यदि अज्ञानी व्यक्ति मूत्र के वेग का धारण करता है तो बस्तिगत वायु प्रकुपित होकर बस्ति मुख का अवरोध कर देता है । इससे मूत्रावरोध हो जाता है जिससे बस्ति प्रदेश एवं कुक्षि प्रदेश में पीड़ा होती है । इस कष्टसाध्य व्याधि को वातबस्ति कहते हैं ।

31. 7. Mūtrātita²

चिरं धारयतो मूत्रं त्वरया न प्रवर्तते ।

मेहमानस्य मन्दं वा मूत्रातीतः स उच्यते ॥ ७ ॥

After withholding the urine for a long time, when the patient attempts to micturate his urinary flow is either much delayed to start or is very slow; the condition is called *mūtrātita*.

1. Bladder outlet obstruction with retention of urine.

2. Temporary bladder atonia.

३१.७. मूत्रातीत

अधिक समय तक मूत्र के वेग को रोकने के बाद मूत्र की प्रवृत्ति शीघ्र नहीं होती है तथा मूत्र बहुत मन्द गति से निकलता है । इसे मूत्रातीत कहते हैं ।

31. 8,9. Mūtrajaṭhara^{1,2}

मूत्रस्य वेगोऽभिहते तदुदावर्तहेतुकः ।

अपानः कुपितो वायुरुदरं पूरयेद्भृशम् ॥ ८ ॥

नाभेरधस्तादाध्मानं जनयेत्तीव्रवेदनम् ।

तन्मूत्रजठरं विद्यादधोवस्तिनिरोधनम् ॥ ९ ॥

(सु० उ० ५८. १३, १४)

When the urge of urination is withheld it leads to the vitiation of the *apāna vāyu* which causes distension of the abdomen due to an excessive gaseous collection.

The abdominal distension below the umbilicus produces severe pain. This type of bladder outlet obstruction is known as *mūtrajaṭhara*.

(S. S. VI. 58. 13, 14)

३१. ८, ९. मूत्रजठर

मूत्र के वेग को रोकने से अपान वायु कुपित होकर उदावर्त के कारण उदर को वायु से अत्यधिक पूर्ण कर देता है ।

नाभि के अधो भाग में तीव्र वेदना युक्त आध्मान रहता है । यह अधो-वस्ति में अवरोध उत्पन्न करनेवाली मूत्रजठर व्याधि है ।

1. Bladder outlet obstruction with ? reflex paralytic ileus.

2. *Mūtra*=urine

Jaṭhara=Abdomen, G. I. Tract.

Mūtrajaṭhara=Syndrome with mixed features of urinary tract obstruction and abdominal symptoms.

31. 10, 11. Mūtrotsaṅga¹

बस्तौ वाऽप्यथवा नाले मणौ वा यस्य देहिनः ।

मूत्रं प्रवृत्तं सज्जेत सरक्तं वा प्रवाहतः ॥ १० ॥

स्रवेच्छनैरल्पमल्पं सरुजं वाऽथ नीरुजम् ।

विगुणानिलजो व्याधिः स मूत्रोत्सङ्गसंज्ञितः ॥ ११ ॥

(सु० उ० ५८. १५, १६)

When the flow of urine in a person gets obstructed at the level of the bladder, the urethra and/or the glans penis and if on straining it dribbles slowly with blood or is passed in small quantities, with or without pain, the disease is known as *mūtrotsaṅga* and is caused by the vitiation of *vāta*.

(S. S. VI. 58. 15, 16)

३१. १०, ११. मूत्रोत्सङ्ग

मनुष्य का प्रवृत्त हुआ मूत्र बस्ति, शिशनाल अथवा शिश्र-मणि में रुक जाता है । प्रवाहण करने पर रक्त के साथ अथवा थोड़ी-थोड़ी मात्रा में घीरे-घीरे वेदना के साथ या बिना वेदना के ही निकलता है । विगुण वायु-जनित इस व्याधि का नाम मूत्रोत्सङ्ग है ।

31. 12. Mūtrakṣaya (Suppression of urine)

रूक्षस्य क्लान्तदेहस्य बस्तिस्थौ पित्तमास्तौ ।

मूत्रक्षयं सरुग्दाहं जनयेतां तदाह्वयम् ॥ १२ ॥

(सु० उ० ५८. १७ पा०)

(Vitiated) *pitta* and *vāta* situated in the urinary system of a dehydrated or an exhausted person²

1. Urethral obstruction with or without infection, e.g. ? impacted urethral stone, acute urethritis, etc.
2. As after a sunstroke.

produces oliguria associated with pain and a burning sensation; this condition is called *mūtrakṣaya*.

(Var. S. S. VI. 58, 17)

३१.१२. मूत्रक्षय

रूक्ष एवं क्लान्त शरीर वाले व्यक्ति में वस्ति स्थित पित्त एवं वायु (प्रकुपित होकर) मूत्र का क्षय, दाह एवं पीड़ा उत्पन्न कर देते हैं। इसे मूत्रक्षय कहा जाता है।

31. 13. Mūtragranthi¹

अन्तर्बस्तिमुखे वृत्तः स्थिरोऽल्पः सहसा भवेत् ।

अश्मरीतुल्यग्रन्थिर्मूत्रग्रन्थिः स उच्यते ॥ १३ ॥

(अ० ह० नि० ६. ३१)

When a small, round and fixed glandular swelling develops all of a sudden near the internal urinary meatus of the bladder and which is associated with pain as in a case of vesical calculus, the condition is called *mūtragranthi*.

(A. H. III, 9. 31)

३१.१३. मूत्रग्रन्थि

वस्तिमुख के अन्दर अकस्मात् गोल, स्थिर, छोटी, अश्मरी के समान तथा वेदना देनेवाली ग्रन्थि उत्पन्न हो जाती है। इसे मूत्रग्रन्थि कहते हैं।

31. 14, 15/1. Mūtrasūkra (Spermaturia)

मूत्रितस्य स्त्रियं यातो वायुना शुक्रमुद्धतम् ।

स्थानाच्च्युतं मूत्रयतः प्राक् पञ्चाद्वा प्रवर्तते ॥ १४ ॥

भस्मोदकप्रतीकाशं मूत्रशुक्रं तदुच्यते ।

(अ० ह० नि० ६. ३२, ३३/१)

1. Enlarged middle lobe of the prostate or a tumour near the internal urinary meatus,

When a person, having the urge for micturition indulges in sexual intercourse with a woman, his *vāyu* becomes vitiated and dislodges semen from its normal location. Semen then comes out either before or at the end of urination and appears like lime water; the condition is called *mūtraśukra*.

(A. H. III. 9. 32, 33/1)

३१. १४, १५/१. मूत्रशुक्र

मूत्र का वेग रहने पर स्त्री के साथ मैथुन करने से वायु द्वारा प्रेरित एवं अपने स्थान से च्युत शुक्र मूत्र त्याग के पहले या पीछे प्रवर्तित होता है जिसका वर्ण भस्मोदक के समान होता है। इसे मूत्रशुक्र कहते हैं।

31. 15/2-17/1. Uṣṇavāta (? Acute cysto-urethritis)¹

व्यायामाध्वातपैः पित्तं बस्ति प्राप्यानिलान्वितम् ॥ १५ ॥

बस्ति मेढ्रं गुदं चैव प्रदहेत् स्रावयेदधः ।

मूत्रं हारिद्रमथवा सरक्तं रक्तमेव वा ॥ १६ ॥

कृच्छ्रात्पुनः पुनर्जन्तोऽरुणवातं ब्रुवन्ति तम् ।

(सु० उ० ५८. २२, २३)

Pitta along with *vāyu* reaching the urinary bladder and having got vitiated due to excessive physical exercise, long journey on foot, and exposure to the sun produces burning sensation in the urinary bladder, penis and rectum; the patient then passes urine with difficulty again and again and it is either (deep yellow) turmeric coloured or is mixed with blood or else consists of frank blood only. The condition is called *uṣṇavāta*. (S. S. VI. 58. 22, 23)

-
1. Some Ayurvedic practitioners regard this condition as the modern equivalent of venereal diseases, specially gonorrhoeal urethritis.

३१.१५/२-१७/१. उष्णवात

(अत्यधिक) व्यायाम करने से, पैदल चलने से या धूप से (प्रकुपित) वायु सहित पित्त ब्रिंति में पहुँच कर वस्ति, मेढू एवं गुदा में दाह उत्पन्न करता है। (रोगी) हरिद्रा वर्ण का या रक्त मिश्रित मूत्र अथवा केवल रक्त ही कठिनता से बार-बार त्याग करता है। इसे उष्णवात कहा जाता है।

31. 17/2-19/1. Mūtrasāda¹

पित्तं कफो द्वावपि वा संहन्येतेऽनिलेन चेत् ॥ १७ ॥

कृच्छ्रान्मूत्रं तदा पीतं श्वेतं रक्तं घनं सृजेत् ।

सदाहं रोचनाशङ्खचूर्णवर्णं भवेत्तु तत् ॥ १८ ॥

शुष्कं समस्तवर्णं वा मूत्रसादं वदन्ति तम् ।

(अ० ह० नि० ६. ३८, ३९)

When *pitta* and/or *kapha* solidify on account of *vāyu* the person passes with difficulty viscid urine of yellow, white or red colour with a burning sensation. On drying² it assumes the colour of *rocana*³ or conch-shell powder⁴ and (ultimately) may attain any colour. This condition is called *mūtrasāda*.

(A. H. III. 9. 38, 39)

३१.१७/२-१९/१. मूत्रसाद

वायु के द्वारा यदि पित्त एवं कफ पृथक्-पृथक् अथवा एक साथ गाढ़े हो जाते हैं तो रोगी कठिनता से, पीला, श्वेत अथवा रक्त वर्ण का, घना तथा दाह-युक्त मूत्र त्याग करता है। सूखने पर (मूत्र त्याग करने का स्थान) गोरोचना या शंख चूर्ण के रंग का हो जाता है और (अन्ततोगत्वा) किसी भी रंग का हो सकता है। इसे मूत्रसाद कहते हैं।

1. ? Chyluria, with or without haematuria, and with infection.
2. After urine has dried at the spot where it has been passed.
3. Gall stone of a cow or an ox (dirty yellow colour).
4. Dirty white colour as in chyluria.

31. 19/2, 20. Vidvighāta

(Rectovesical or rectourethral fistula)

रूक्षदुर्बल्योवतिनोदावृत्तं शकृद्यदा ॥ १९ ॥

मूत्रस्रोतोऽनुपद्येत विट्संसृष्टं तदा नरः ।

विङ्गन्धं मूत्रयेत्कृच्छ्राद्विङ्गविघातं विनिर्दिशेत् ॥ २० ॥

(अ० ह० नि० ६. ३३/२, ३४ पा०)

When the faeces of a dehydrated and weak person move upwards due to *vāyu* and enter the urinary passage, the patient passes urine of faecal odour mixed with stool with great difficulty. The condition is called *vidvighāta*.

(Var. A. H. III. 9. 33/2, 34)

३१. १९/२, २०. विङ्गविघात

रूक्ष एवं दुर्बल व्यक्ति का मल जब वायु के द्वारा उदावृत्त (विलोम) होकर मूत्र स्रोत में पहुँच जाता है तो व्यक्ति मल से मिश्रित तथा मल की गन्ध वाले मूत्र का कठिनता से त्याग करता है । इसे विङ्गविघात कहते हैं ।

31. 21-26. Bastikundala¹

द्रुताध्वलङ्घनायासैरभिघातात्प्रपीडनात् ।

स्वस्थानाद्वस्तिरुद्वृत्तः स्थूलस्तिष्ठति गर्भवत् ॥ २१ ॥

शूलस्पन्दनदाहार्तो बिन्दुं बिन्दुं स्रवत्यपि ।

पीडितस्तु सृजेद्वारां संस्तम्भोद्वेष्टनार्तिमात् ॥ २२ ॥

वस्तिकुण्डलमाहुस्तं घोरं शस्त्रविषोपमम् ।

पवनप्रबलं प्रायो दुर्निवारमबुद्धिभिः ॥ २३ ॥

तस्मिन्पित्तान्विते दाहः शूलं मूत्रविवर्णता ।

श्लेष्मणा गौरवं शोथः स्निग्धं मूत्रं घनं सितम् ॥ २४ ॥

1. ? Acute cystitis with retention of urine and overflow incontinence.

श्लेष्मरुद्धबिलो बस्तिः पित्तोदीर्णो न सिध्यति ।

अविभ्रान्तबिलः साध्यो न तु यः कुण्डलीकृतः ॥ २५ ॥

स्याद्बस्तौ कुण्डलीभूते तृण्मोहः श्वास एव च ॥ २६ ॥

When due to brisk walking for a long distance, jumping, excessive physical exercise, trauma or compression the bladder gets displaced upwards and remains as a big mass like a foetus, the patient is distressed with colicky pain, pulsating and burning sensations and passes urine drop by drop. The bladder, on pressure, evacuates urine in a stream. The patient feels rigidity and cramp like pain. It is called *bastikuṇḍala*, has predominance of *vāyu*, is as dangerous as a sharp weapon or a poison and is usually beyond the control of the less intelligent people.

When *bastikuṇḍala* is associated with *pitta*, there is a burning sensation, colicky pain and discolouration of urine. If there is an association of *kapha*, a feeling of heaviness and oedema is present, and the urine becomes unctuous, dense and white.

When the orifice of the bladder is occluded by *kapha* and *pitta* is dominant, the case becomes incurable.

When the orifice of the bladder is not blocked (by *kapha*) and the bladder is not getting (whirls like) spasms the condition is curable.

When spasms are occurring in the bladder, the patient gets thirst, fainting and dyspnoea.

३१. २१-२६. वस्तिकुण्डल

द्रुत गति से चलने, कूदने, अधिक व्यायाम करने, अभिघात अथवा प्रपीड़न से वस्ति अपने स्थान से ऊपर की ओर जाकर और स्थूल होकर गर्भ के समान स्थित हो जाती है। इसमें (वस्ति में) शूल, स्पन्दन, दाह एवं बूँद-बूँद मूत्र त्याग होता है। (वस्ति को) दवाने पर शरीर में स्तम्भन व जकड़ाहट के साथ धारा के रूप में मूत्र त्याग होता है। यह शूल एवं विष के समान घोर तथा वायु प्रधान व्याधि वस्ति कुण्डल है। यह रोग अल्प बुद्धि वाले वैद्य द्वारा अचिकित्स्य है।

यदि इसमें (वस्ति-कुण्डल में) पित्त का अनुबन्धन हो जाता है तो दाह, शूल तथा मूत्र में विवर्णता हो जाती है। कफ का अनुबन्ध होने पर गुरुता, शोथ, मूत्र में स्निग्धता, घनता एवं श्वेतवर्णता हो जाती है।

श्लेष्मा से मूत्र मार्ग का अवरोध होने पर एवं पित्त का प्राबल्य होने पर यह असाध्य होता है; किन्तु मूत्र मार्ग के अवरुद्ध न होने पर एवं जो कुण्डली कृत नहीं हुआ हो (ऐसा वस्तिकुण्डल) साध्य होता है।

वस्ति के कुण्डलीभूत होने पर तृष्णा, मूर्च्छा एवं श्वास आदि लक्षण हो जाते हैं।

इति श्रीमाधवकरविरचिते माधवनिदाने मूत्राघातनिदानं समाप्तम् ॥३१॥

Thus ends (the thirty-first chapter entitled) 'The Diagnosis of Obstructive Uropathy' of Mādhava Nidāna, as compiled by Śrī Mādhavakara.

इस प्रकार श्रीमाधवकर द्वारा सङ्कलित माधव-निदान का मूत्राघात निदान (नामक इकतीसवाँ अध्याय) समाप्त हुआ।

M. N. 31

SUGGESTED RESEARCH PROBLEMS

1. An attempt should be made to identify all these thirteen conditions of obstructive uropathy in terms of modern clinical terminology.
2. A historical and comparative study on these conditions is indicated.



माधवनिदानम्

द्वात्रिंशत्तमोऽध्यायः

अश्मरीनिदानम्

THE DIAGNOSIS OF UROLITHIASIS

CHAPTER THIRTY-TWO
MĀDHAVA-NIDĀNA

THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO

LIBRARY

PHYSICS DEPARTMENT

5720 S. UNIVERSITY AVE.

CHICAGO, ILL. 60637

U.S.A.

TEL. 733-7321

1968

THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO

LIBRARY

PHYSICS DEPARTMENT

1968

M. N. 32

SUMMARY

This chapter deals with the pathogenesis and the diagnosis of urolithiasis (mainly vesical calculi) and the seminal concretions.

Vesical calculi have been stated to be of three main types; seminal concretions have also been mentioned, as a fourth type (1). Their pathogenesis (2, 3/1 a), prodromal features (3/1b-4/1) and general clinical features (4/2-6/1) have been described.

Specific clinical features produced by the three types of vesical calculi, viz. the *vātika* or oxalate calculus (6/2-8/1), the *paittika* or uric acid and urate calculi (8/2, 9/1) and the *kaphaja* or phosphate calculus (9/2, 10/1) have been described along with their gross appearance.

All types of vesical calculi have been mentioned to be a common paediatric surgical problem (10/2, 11/1).

The pathogenesis, clinical features and other aspects of spermoliths or seminal concretions (11/2-14/1a) have been given.

Gravel (*śarkarā*, crystalluria) have been separately discussed (14/1b-15/1); it has been considered to be the cause of renal colic and other complications (15/2, 16).

Features which indicate a grave prognosis in urolithiasis have been given (17).



द्वात्रिंशत्तमोऽध्यायः

CHAPTER THIRTY-TWO

अश्मरीनिदानम्

THE DIAGNOSIS OF UROLITHIASIS

32. 1. Types

वातपित्तकफैस्तिस्रश्चतुर्थी शुक्रजाऽपरा ।

प्रायः श्लेष्माश्रयाः सर्वा अश्मर्यः स्युर्यमोपमाः ॥ १ ॥

Three types of urinary calculi are due to *vāta*, *pitta* and *kapha* and the fourth one is due to *śukra*¹. *Śleṣmā* is usually the basis of all of them and this disease is (as terrible) as *Yama*² himself.

३२.१. भेद

अश्मरी वात, पित्त तथा कफ द्वारा तीन प्रकार की एवं चौथी शुक्र द्वारा उत्पन्न होती हैं । प्रायः सभी प्रकार की अश्मरियाँ कफाश्रित होती हैं और यम के समान (घातक) होती हैं ।

32. 2,3/1a. Pathogenesis

विशोषयेद्बस्तिगतं सशुक्रं मूत्रं सपित्तं पवनः कफं वा ।

यदा तदाश्मर्युपजायते तु क्रमेण पित्तेष्विव रोचना गोः ॥ २ ॥

नैक दोषाश्रयाः सर्वाः-

(च० चि० २६. ३६)

1. Semen.

2. The God of death.

When *vāta* dries up the urine in the bladder along with *śukra*, *pitta* or *kapha* a calculus is gradually formed just as gall stones are formed from the bile of a cow. They (the calculi) are not dependent on just a single vitiated *dōṣa* but on all of them.

(C. S. VI. 26. 36)

३२. २, ३/१अ. सम्प्राप्ति

बस्तिगत शुक्र, मूत्र, पित्त या कफ को जब वायु सुखा देता है तो गाय के पित्ताशय में गोरोचन के समान ही धीरे-धीरे इन अश्मरियों की भी उत्पत्ति होती है। अश्मरियाँ एक दोषाश्रित न होकर सर्व दोषाश्रित होती हैं।

32. 3/1b-4/1. Prodromal features

—अथासां पूर्वलक्षणम् ।

बत्स्याध्मानं तदासन्नदेशेषु परितोऽतिरूक् ॥ ३ ॥

मूत्रे बस्तसगन्धत्वं मूत्रकृच्छ्रं ज्वरोऽरुचिः ।

(अ० ह० नि० ६. ७/२ब, ङ)

Their prodromal features are distension of the urinary bladder, severe pain in and around that region, goat's odour¹ in the urine, dysuria, fever and a dislike for food.

(A. H. III. 9. 7/2b, 8)

३२. ३/१ब-४/१. पूर्वरूप

बस्ति का आध्मान, उसके समीपस्थ भागों में अत्यधिक वेदना, मूत्र में बकरे के समान गन्ध होना, मूत्रकृच्छ्रता, ज्वर तथा अरुचि अश्मरी रोग के पूर्वरूप हैं।

32. 4/2-6/1. General clinical features

सामान्यलिङ्गं रुङ्नाभिसेवनीबस्तिमूर्धसु ॥ ४ ॥

1. Uriniferous odour due to dribbling.

विशीर्णधारं मूत्रं स्यात्तया मार्गे निरोधिते ।
 तद्वचपायात्सुखं मेहेदच्छं गोमेदकोपमम् ॥ ५ ॥
 तत्संक्षोभात्क्षते सास्रमायासाच्चातिरुग्भवेत् ।

(अ० ह० नि० ६. ६, १०)

The general clinical features (of vesical calculi) are pain in the umbilical region, perineal raphe and base of the urinary bladder. Scattering of the urinary stream occurs due to the obstruction (by the calculus) to the urinary passage; when it gets displaced, the patient comfortably¹ passes clear urine of *gomeda*² colour³. However, when that (urinary passage) gets traumatised due to the irritation produced by the stone, the patient passes blood mixed urine⁴ on straining along with severe pain⁵.

(A. H. III. 9. 9, 10)

३२. ४/२-६/१. सामान्य लक्षण

नाभि, सेवनी तथा बस्तिशिर में वेदना होती है । उसके (अश्मरी) द्वारा मार्ग अवरुद्ध हो जाने से मूत्र कई घाराओं में बँटकर निकलता है । अश्मरी जब मार्ग से हट जाती है तो गोमेद के समान एवं स्वच्छ मूत्र सरलतापूर्वक निकलता है । और जब अश्मरी के क्षोभ से क्षत उत्पन्न हो जाता है तो रक्त-मिश्रित मूत्र बल लगाने पर निकलता है और साथ में अत्यन्त वेदना होती है ।

32. 6/2-8/1. *Vātika calculus* (oxalate calculus)

तत्र वाताद् भृशं चार्तो दन्तान् खादति वेपते ॥ ६ ॥

1. Easily, without pain.

2. A gem; also called cinnamon stone, sardonyx.

3. Smoky colour.

4. Haematuria.

5. Dysuria.

गृह्णाति मेहनं नाभि पीडयत्यनिशं क्वणन् ।
 सानिलं मुञ्चति शक्नुमुद्वर्हेति बिन्दुशः ॥ ७ ॥
 श्यावारुणाश्मरी चास्य स्याच्चिता कण्टकैरिव ।

(अ० ह० नि० ६. ११, १२)

A patient with a *vātika* calculus remains in great distress, gnashes his teeth, shivers, holds the penis, squeezes the umbilical region incessantly groaning in agony, and faeces along with flatus get expelled while passing urine which comes out repeatedly in drops¹. The stone is blackish or reddish in colour and appears to be covered with thorns.

(A. H. III. 9. 11, 12)

३२. ६/२-८/१. वातज अश्मरी

वातज अश्मरी में अत्यधिक वेदना के कारण रोगी दाँत किटकिटाता रहता है और काँपने लगता है। वह मूत्रेन्द्रिय को पकड़े रहता है और कराहता हुआ लगातार नाभि को दबाता रहता है। वायु के साथ पुरीष निकल जाता है और बार बार बूँद बूँद करके मूत्र त्याग होता है। इस अश्मरी का रंग श्यावारुण होता है और इसमें काँटों के समान उभार होते हैं।

32. 8/2, 9/1. *Paittika calculus*

(*Uric acid and Urate calculi*)

पित्तेन दह्यते वस्तिः पच्यमान इवोष्मवान् ॥ ८ ॥

भल्लातकास्थिसंस्थाना रक्तपीताऽसिताश्मरी ।

(अ० ह० नि० ६. १३)

In a case of the *paittika* calculus there is a burning sensation in the vesical region and it feels hot like a

1. Dribbles.

ripening abscess. The calculus is shaped like a *bhallataka*¹ seed² and is red, yellow or black in colour.

(A. H. III. 9. 13)

३२. ८/२, ९/१. पित्तज अश्मरी

पित्तज अश्मरी द्वारा वस्ति में दाह तथा पच्यमान विद्रधि के समान ताप होता है। इसकी आकृति भल्लातक की गुठली के समान होती है तथा इसका रंग लाल, पीला या काला होता है।

32. 9/2, 10/1. *Kaphaja calculus* (*Phosphate calculus*)

वस्तिनिस्तुद्यत इव श्लेष्मणा शीतलो गुरुः ॥ ९ ॥

अश्मरी महती श्लक्षणा मधुवर्णास्थिवा सिता ।

(अ० ह० नि० ९. १४)

In a case of the *kaphaja* calculus, there is a pin-prick like sensation in the vesical region along with a feeling of coldness and heaviness; the stone is large, smooth and honey coloured or white.

(A. H. III. 9. 14)

३२. ९/२, १०/१. कफज अश्मरी

श्लैष्मिक अश्मरी में वस्ति में तोद की अनुभूति तथा शीतलता एवं गुरुता प्रतीत होती है। यह अश्मरी बड़ी और चिकनी रहती है और इसका रंग शहद के समान अथवा श्वेत होता है।

32. 10/2, 11/1. *Vesical calculus*

A paediatric surgical problem

एता भवन्ति बालानां तेषामेव च भूयसा ॥ १० ॥

आश्रयोपचयाल्पत्वाद्ग्रहणाहरणे सुखाः ।

(अ० ह० नि० ९. १५)

1. *Semecarpus anacardium* Linn. f.

2. Marking nut, washerman's nut.

All these calculi occur in children; however, it is easy to grasp and extract these out as the size of the bladder is small and the fatty tissue are less developed in them.

(A. H. III. 9. 15)

३२. १०/२, ११/१. वस्ति अश्मरी — एक बालशल्य रोग

ये अश्मरियाँ बालकों में अधिक हुआ करती हैं। आश्रय एवं उपचय की अल्पता के कारण (शल्यक्रिया द्वारा) सरलता से पकड़ी व निकाली जा सकती हैं।

32. 11/2-14/1a. Spermoliths

शुक्राश्मरी तु महतां जायते शुक्रधारणात् ॥ ११ ॥

स्थानाच्च्युतममुक्तं हि मुष्कयोरन्तरेऽनिलः ।

शोषयत्युपसंगृह्य शुक्रं तच्छुक्रमश्मरी ॥ १२ ॥

वस्तिरुद्धमूत्रकृच्छ्रत्वमुष्कश्चयथुकारिणी ।

तस्यामुत्पन्नमात्रायां शुक्रमेति विलीयते ॥ १३ ॥

पीडिते त्वक्काशेऽस्मिन्—

(अ० हृ० नि० ६. १६-१८/२अ)

The seminal concretions occur in adults due to the suppression of the urge to ejaculate. When the semen has been dislodged from its site (of origin) but has not been ejaculated the *vāyu* between both testes¹ consolidates it and dries it up; these are called *śukrāśmarī* (spermoliths). They give rise to pain in the bladder region, dysuria and a swelling of the scrotum.

After it has formed and when pressure is applied over the (penoscrotal) region, it (the seminal

1. Root of the penis, bulbous urethra.

concretion) disappears followed by the passage of semen.

(A. H. III. 9. 16-18/2a)

३२. ११/२-१४/१अ. शुक्राश्मरी

शुक्र का वेग धारण करने से वयस्कों में शुक्राश्मरी उत्पन्न होती है। स्थानच्युत शुक्र के दोनों अण्डकोषों के मध्य (शिश्न के प्रारम्भिक भाग) में रुक जाने और वायु द्वारा सुखा दिये जाने पर वह शुक्र अश्मरी के समान हो जाता है। इससे वस्ति में वेदना, मूत्रकृच्छ्र तथा अण्डकोषों में शोथ उत्पन्न हो जाता है। अश्मरी के स्थान पर दवाने से वह विलीन (अदृश्य) हो जाती है तथा अवरुद्ध शुक्र मूत्र मार्ग द्वारा निकल जाता है।

32. 14/1b-15/1. Gravel in the urine

—अश्मर्येव च शर्करा।

अणुशो वायुना भिन्ना सा तस्मिन्ननुलोमगे ॥ १४ ॥

निरेति सह मूत्रेण प्रतिलोमे निरुध्यते।

(अ० ह० नि० ६. १८/२ब, १६)

Sarkarā (gravel, crystalluria) is similar to an *āśmarī* (vesical calculus).

Āśmarī (vesical calculus) gets fragmented into minute particles by *vāyu*; these particles come out with urine if the movement of *vāyu* is in its normal direction, whereas they get held up if the *vāyu* moves in the reverse direction.

(A. H. III. 9. 18/2b, 19)

३२. १४/१ब-१५/१. शर्करा

शर्करा भी अश्मरी के समान ही होती है। वही (अश्मरी ही) वायु के द्वारा छोटे छोटे टुकड़ों में बँट कर वायु के अनुलोम होने पर मूत्र के साथ बाहर सरलता से निकल जाती है परन्तु वायु के प्रतिलोम होने पर यह अवरुद्ध हो जाती है।

32. 15/2, 16. Renal colic and other complications of gravel

मूत्रस्रोतःप्रवृत्ता सा सक्ता कुर्यादुपद्रवान् ॥ १५ ॥

दौर्बल्यं सदनं काश्यं कुक्षिशूलमथारुचिम् ।

पाण्डुत्वमुष्णवातं च तृष्णां हृत्पीडनं वमिम् ॥ १६ ॥

(सु० नि० ३. १६/२, १७)

That (*śarkarā*, gravel) during its passage through the urinary channels¹ gets stuck up and produces complications like weakness, depression, emaciation, pain in the lumbar regions, anorexia, pallor, burning sensation during micturition², thirst, precordial pain and vomiting.

(S. S. II. 3. 16/2, 17)

३२. १५/२, १६. शर्कराजन्य उपद्रव

वह (शर्करा) मूत्रवहस्रोतस में अवरुद्ध होकर दौर्बल्य, वेदना, काश्यं, कुक्षिशूल, अरुचि, पाण्डु, उष्णवात, तृष्णा, हृत्पीडा तथा वमन आदि उपद्रवों को उत्पन्न करती है ।

32. 17. Prognostic features

प्रशूननाभिवृषणं बद्धमूत्रं रुजातुरम् ।

अश्मरी क्षपयत्याशु सिकता शर्करान्विता ॥ १७ ॥

(सु० सू० ३३. १२)

A case of urolithiasis with concretions and gravel, if associated with a swelling in the umbilical region and the scrotum³, urinary retention and excessive pain is sure to die in a short time.

(S. S. I. 33. 12)

1. Ureters, bladder and urethra.

2. *Uṣṇavāta* (?Gonococcal cysto-urethritis). M. N. 31. 15/2-17/1.

3. ? Extravasation of urine.

३२.१७. अश्मरी को असाध्यता

जिस रोगी में नाभि एवं वृषण शोथयुक्त हों, मूत्र का अवरोध हो, अत्यधिक वेदना हो और अश्मरी के साथ शर्करा एवं सिका का अनुबन्ध हो उसकी शीघ्र ही मृत्यु हो जाती है ।

इति श्रीमाधवकरविरचिते माधवनिदाने अश्मरीनिदानम् समाप्तम् ॥ ३२ ॥

Thus ends (the thirty-second chapter entitled)
'The Diagnosis of the Urolithiasis' of Mādhava-
Nidāna, as compiled by Śrī Mādhavakara.

इस प्रकार श्रीमाधवकर द्वारा सङ्कलित माधव-निदान का
अश्मरी निदान (नामक बत्तीसवाँ अध्याय) समाप्त हुआ ।

M. N. 32

SUGGESTED RESEARCH PROBLEMS

1. Historical and comparative studies on the types of vesical calculi (1), their pathogenesis (2, 3/1a), prodromal (3/1b-4/1) and general clinical features (4/2-6/1) are indicated.
2. It would be of interest to work out the historical and comparative aspects of the three specific types of vesical calculi, viz. the *vātika* or oxalate calculus (6/2-8/1), the *phaittika* or uric acid and urate calculi (8/2-9/1) and the *kaphaja* or phosphate calculus (9/2, 10/1).
3. [Historical and comparative analysis of other topics also needs to be carried out, viz. spermo-liths or seminal concretions (11/2-14/1a), gravel (crystalluria, *śarkarā*) (14/1b-15/1), renal colic (15/2, 16) and the grave prognostic signs of urolithiasis (17).



